



EnterpriseOne Xe Sales Order Management PeopleBook

September 2000

J.D. Edwards World Source Company
7601 Technology Way
Denver, CO 80237

Portions of this document were reproduced from material prepared by J.D. Edwards.

Copyright ©J.D. Edwards World Source Company, 2000

All Rights Reserved

SKU XeEASO

J.D. Edwards is a registered trademark of J.D. Edwards & Company. The names of all other products and services of J.D. Edwards used herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of J.D. Edwards World Source Company.

All other product names used are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The information in this guide is confidential and a proprietary trade secret of J.D. Edwards World Source Company. It may not be copied, distributed, or disclosed without prior written permission. This guide is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of J.D. Edwards & Company and/or its subsidiaries. The software described in this guide is furnished under a license agreement and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. J.D. Edwards World Source Company uses automatic software disabling routines to monitor the license agreement. For more details about these routines, please refer to the technical product documentation.

Table of Contents

Overviews	1-1
Industry Overview	1-3
Industry Environments and Concepts for Sales Order Management .	1-3
Customer Service	1-4
Multiple Order Types	1-4
Credit Checking	1-4
Partial Order Holds	1-4
Preference Profiles	1-5
Order Templates	1-5
Store and Forward	1-5
Customer Self-Service	1-5
Promotion Management	1-6
Idea to Action: The Competitive Advantage	1-6
Sales Order Management System Overview	1-9
System Integration	1-9
Integration with Accounting and Distribution Systems	1-10
General Accounting	1-10
Address Book	1-10
Inventory Management	1-10
Procurement	1-11
Advanced Pricing	1-11
Advanced Warehouse Management	1-11
Transportation Management	1-11
Enterprise-Wide Profitability Solution	1-12
Features of Sales Order Management	1-12
Order Entry	1-12
Customer Self Service	1-13
Prepayment Processing	1-13
Templates	1-13
Order Release	1-13
Processing Orders	1-14
Updating Status Codes	1-16
Sales Order Information	1-16
End of Day Processing	1-17
Pricing	1-17
Preferences	1-18
System Setup	1-18
Menu Overview	1-19

Daily

Sales Order Entry	2-1
Working with Header Information	2-5
Understanding Header Information	2-6
Entering Header Information	2-7
Updating Header Information to the Detail Form	2-12
Adding Messages to Sales Orders	2-13
Working with Detail Information	2-15
Understanding Default Information in Sales Order Detail Revisions	2-16
Entering Item and Quantity Information	2-17
Retrieving a Base Price	2-17
Changing Tax Information	2-18
Processing Serial Number Requirements	2-19
Entering Multicurrency Information	2-19
Entering Commission Information	2-19
Understanding Workflow Processing During Sales Order Entry	2-20
Integrating Other Systems with Sales Order Entry	2-20
Reviewing Quality and Test Results	2-21
Entering Orders for Agreements	2-22
Entering ECS Information	2-22
Creating Shipments for Sales Orders	2-23
Entering Detail Information	2-23
Entering Substitute and Associated Items	2-33
Working with Subsystem Processing in Sales Order Entry	2-35
Processing Options for Sales Order Entry	2-39
Generating a Proposal	2-71
Setting Up Proposal Components	2-71
Setting Up Proposal Templates	2-72
Setting Up Boilerplate Text	2-73
Setting up Sales Quotes for Proposals	2-73
Setting Up Text Substitution Tags	2-74
Defining Documents for Sales Proposal Generation	2-75
Processing Options for Generated Document Revisions	2-81
Generating a Proposal during Order Entry	2-81
Entering Sales Orders with Templates	2-85
Entering Recurring Sales Orders	2-89
Working With Recurring Orders	2-89
Processing Options for Batch Order Entry	2-92
Processing Recurring Orders	2-92
Processing Options for Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor	2-93
Working with Kits and Configured Items	2-95
Entering Kit Orders	2-96
Understanding Configured Item Orders	2-99
Working with Store and Forward Orders	2-101
Downloading Master Tables to the Workstation	2-104
Creating Orders That You Store and Forward	2-106
Uploading Orders to the Server	2-108
Processing Batch Sales Orders	2-109
Correcting Batch Sales Orders	2-110

Processing Options for R4210Z Sales Order Batch Trans. Editor	2-111
Understanding Batch of One	2-111
Customer Self-Service	3-1
Setting up Customer Self-Service	3-3
Understanding Security Issues	3-4
Setting Up Product Hierarchies	3-5
Processing Options for Item Hierarchy (Web)	3-7
Creating Sales Orders with Customer Self-Service	3-9
Using Keyword Search	3-11
Using Product Catalog	3-12
Working with Your Favorites	3-15
See Also	3-15
Reviewing Sales Orders for Customer Self-Service	3-19
Inquiring on Orders	3-20
Revising Orders	3-21
Reviewing Product Availability	3-22
Reviewing Customer Information	3-23
Changing Name, Address, and Telephone Information	3-24
Personalizing Customer Information	3-24
Reviewing Customer Forecasts	3-25
Reviewing Credit Status	3-25
Reviewing Account Information	3-27
Tracking Shipments	3-28
Additional Order Entry and Release	4-1
Working with Order Releases	4-3
Releasing Orders on Hold	4-4
Processing Options for Held Order Release	4-6
Releasing Backorders Online	4-7
Processing Options for Backorder Release	4-10
Releasing Backorders in a Batch	4-16
Processing Options for Backorder Release and Report	4-16
Entering Credit Orders	4-21
Entering Credit Orders Manually	4-21
Entering System-Generated Credit Orders	4-22
Processing Options for Sales Ledger Inquiry	4-25
Entering Transfer Orders	4-27
Working with Direct Ship Orders	4-31
Maintaining Integrity between Related Sales and Purchase Orders	4-32
Entering Direct Ship Orders	4-33
Working with Blanket Orders	4-35
Entering a Blanket Order	4-36
Creating a Sales Order from a Blanket Order	4-36
Releasing a Blanket Order	4-38
Processing Options for Sales Blanket Order Release	4-40
Releasing Multiple Blanket Orders	4-40
Working with Quote Orders	4-43
Entering a Quote Order	4-44
Creating a Sales Order from a Quote Order	4-44
Releasing a Quote Order	4-46

Processing Options for Sales Order Quote Release	4-49
Releasing Multiple Quote Orders	4-49
Working with Intercompany Orders	4-51
Understanding Default Information in Interbranch Orders	4-52
Entering Interbranch Orders	4-53
Creating Intercompany Orders during Shipment Confirmation	4-55
Printing Intercompany Invoices	4-55
Updating Interbranch and Intercompany Transactions	4-56
Sales Order Information	5-1
Working with Item Information	5-3
Duplicating Sales Order Information	5-3
Reviewing Price and Availability Information	5-4
Processing Options for Check Price and Availability	5-7
Locating Quantity Information	5-7
Processing Options for Item Availability	5-10
Reviewing Supply and Demand Information	5-11
Processing Options for Supply and Demand Inquiry	5-12
Working with Customer and Sales Information	5-15
Reviewing Customer Account Information	5-15
Reviewing Customer Ledger Information	5-18
Reviewing Sales Orders	5-20
Generating Order Status Reports	5-23
Generating the Open Orders by Item Report	5-24
Generating the Open Orders by Customer Report	5-24
Processing Options for Open SO Print	5-25
Generating the Held Orders Report	5-25
Reviewing Sales Ledger Information	5-25
Processing Options for Sales Ledger Inquiry	5-27
Reviewing Delivery Notes	5-28
Processing Options for Delivery Notes Inquiry	5-29
Generating Sales History Reports	5-29
Generating the Sales Ledger Detail Report	5-29
Processing Options for Sales Ledger Report	5-30
Generating the Sales Analysis Summary Report	5-30
Processing Options for Sales Analysis Summary	5-30
Working with Billing Information	5-31
Reviewing Online Invoices	5-31
Processing Options for Online Invoice Inquiry	5-34
Printing Order Acknowledgements	5-35
Processing Options for Print Sales Order Acknowledgements ..	5-35
UCC 128 Compliance	6-1
Understanding UCC 128 Compliance	6-3
Setting Up UCC 128 Processing	6-13
Setting Up Customer Information	6-13
Setting Up Hierarchical Configurations	6-14
Setting Up Ship Notice/Manifest Requirements	6-18
Setting Up Item Information	6-20
Processing Shipments	6-23
Preparing the Shipment	6-23

Creating Shipments for Sales Orders	6-24
Entering UCC 128 Header and Shipment Information	6-24
Confirming Tare and Pack Information	6-28
Sales Order Processing	7-1
Updating Status Codes	7-3
Working with Picking Documents	7-5
Processing Options for Print Pick Slips (R42520)	7-7
Processing Serial Number Information	7-13
Understanding Serial Number Processing in the Distribution System	7-14
Entering Serial Number Requirements during Initial Item Entry	7-14
Accessing Serial Numbers during Purchase Order Receipts	7-15
Entering Serial Numbers during Order Entry	7-15
Entering Serial Numbers during Shipment Confirmation	7-16
Working with Serial Numbers in a Branch/Plant	7-17
Working with Shipments	7-19
Additional Order Processing during Ship Confirm	7-19
Confirming Shipments	7-23
Processing Options: Shipment Confirmation (P4205)	7-26
Confirming Shipments in Batches	7-40
Printing Shipping Documents	7-43
Printing Bills of Lading	7-44
Processing Options for Bill of Lading	7-45
Printing Delivery Notes	7-45
Processing Options for Delivery Notes Print	7-46
Shipping Partial Order Quantities for Kits and Configured Items ...	7-47
Prepayment Processing	8-1
Setting Up Prepayment Processing	8-3
Setting Up Status Flow for Prepayments	8-3
Setting Up Prepayment Types	8-4
Setting Up Prepayment Hold Codes	8-5
Authorizing Credit Card Transactions	8-7
Processing Options for Authorize Prepayment Transactions	8-7
Updating Prepayment Transactions	8-9
Changing Prepayment Transactions during Order Processing	8-9
Manually Updating Transaction Status	8-12
Reviewing Transaction Status	8-15
Processing Options for Prepayment Transaction Report	8-15
Settling Prepayment Transactions	8-17
Processing Options for Settle Prepayment Transactions	8-17
Working with Drafts	8-19
Understanding Preauthorized Drafts for Prepayments	8-19
Understanding Draft Collection for Prepayments	8-19
Invoices	9-1
Setting Up Invoice Cycles	9-3
Example: Scheduled Invoice Date Calculation	9-4
Running Cycle Billing	9-9
Reviewing the Cycle Billing Transaction Report	9-11

Printing Standard Invoices	9-13
Processing Options: Print Invoices (R42565)	9-15
End of Day Processing	10-1
Updating Sales Information	10-3
Updating Customer Sales	10-3
Processing Options: Sales Update And Report	10-9
Using AAIs with Sales Update	10-22
Reviewing Sales Update Reports	10-24
Reviewing the Invoice Journal	10-24
Reviewing the Sales Journal	10-25
Processing Options for Sales Journal Print	10-25
Converting Customer Limit Amounts	10-27
Example: How Converted Limit Amounts Are Rounded	10-28
Reposting Orders	10-29
Recommiting Future Sales Orders	10-29
Restoring Active Orders	10-30
Processing Options: Repost Active Sales Orders (R42995)	10-31
Reviewing and Approving Journal Entries	10-35
Processing Options for General Journal by Account	10-40
Posting Journal Entries	10-41
Posting Batches of Journal Entries	10-41
Processing Options for General Ledger Post Report	10-42
Verifying the Post of Journal Entries	10-45
Purging Data	10-47
Running the Sales Order Header Purge	10-48
Running the Extended Text Purge	10-48
Running the Batch Receiver Purge	10-48
Running Detail to History	10-49

Periodic

Pricing	11-1
Setting Up a Base Pricing Structure	11-3
Setting Up Customer Price Groups	11-3
Setting Up Item Price Groups	11-5
Defining the Pricing Hierarchy	11-6
Setting Up Base Prices	11-9
Working with Complex Price Groups	11-17
Setting Up Complex Customer Price Groups	11-17
Setting Up Complex Item Price Groups	11-20
Generating Price Group Relationships	11-22
Working with Standard Price Adjustments	11-23
Setting Up Inventory Pricing Rules	11-24
Setting Up Trade Discounts	11-30
Setting Up Contract Pricing	11-32
Updating Base Prices	11-35
Updating Prices	11-35
Changing Existing Prices	11-36

Creating Future Prices	11-36
Processing Options for Base/Price Maintenance – Batch	11-37
Updating Prices for a Customer	11-37
Processing Options for Sale Order Batch Price/Cost Update ...	11-39
Converting Price Levels	11-40
Processing Options for Item Sales Price Level Conversion	11-40
Generating New Base Prices in a Different Currency	11-43
Processing Options for Generate Base Price/Currency	11-44
Preferences	12-1
What Is a Preference?	12-1
How Does the System Use Preferences?	12-2
Example: Applying a Preference	12-2
What Are the Preference Types?	12-3
Working with the Preference Master and Hierarchy	12-9
Setting Up Preference Master Information	12-9
Arranging the Preference Hierarchy	12-12
Example: Preference Hierarchy for Payment Terms	12-13
Assigning Customers and Items to Groups	12-15
Assigning a Customer to a Preference Group	12-15
Assigning an Item to a Preference Group	12-20
Setting Up Preferences	12-23
Entering Standard Preference Information	12-23
Entering Custom Preference Information	12-26
Customer Currency Preference	12-26
Delivery Date Preference	12-27
Example: Applying Dates for Products	12-28
Document Distribution Preference	12-29
Example: Document Distribution Preference	12-29
Document Set Preference	12-30
Example: Document Set Preference	12-30
End Use Preference	12-31
Freight Preference	12-31
Grade and Potency Preference	12-32
Inventory Commitment Preference	12-33
Example: Inventory Commitment Preference	12-33
Line of Business Preference	12-35
Mode of Transport Preference	12-35
Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations	12-35
Next Order Status Preference	12-36
Options and Equipment Preference	12-37
Order Preparation Days Preference	12-37
Example: Applying Dates for Products	12-37
Payment Terms Preference	12-38
Price Adjustment Schedule Preference	12-39
Pricing Unit of Measure Preference	12-39
Product Allocation Preference	12-40
Quality Management Preference	12-41
Revenue Business Unit Preference	12-42
Example: Revenue Business Unit Preference	12-42
Sales Commission Preference	12-43

User Defined Price Code Preference	12-43
Working with Preferences	12-45
Activating Preferences	12-45
Processing Options for Preference Profile Processing Options ..	12-46
Locating Preferences	12-46
Tax Information	13-1
Setting Up Tax Authorities	13-3
Setting Up Tax Rates and Areas	13-7
Processing Options for Tax Rates Options	13-12
Setting Up Tax Rules by Company	13-13
Examples: Calculation Rules	13-16
Example: Calculate Tax on Gross with Discount	13-16
Example: Calculate Tax on Gross without Discount	13-17
Example: Calculate Discount on Gross with Tax	13-17
Example: Calculate Discount on Gross without Tax	13-18
Assigning Tax Information to Customers	13-19
What Are the Types of Tax Explanation Codes?	13-19
How Does the System Calculate Taxes?	13-20
Example: Sales Tax (S)	13-20
Example: VAT (V)	13-21
Example: VAT + Sales Tax	13-21
Example: VAT + Use Tax (B)	13-22
Setting Up AAIs for Taxes	13-25

Setup

System Setup	14-1
Defining Related Addresses	14-3
Entering Related Addresses	14-4
Defining the Invoicing Address	14-6
Defining Default Address Types	14-7
Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions	14-11
Setting Up Constants	14-27
Defining Branch/Plant Constants	14-28
Defining Item Availability	14-31
Defining System Constants	14-32
Defining Batch Control Constants	14-34
Setting Up Location Control	14-36
Setting Up Order Line Types	14-45
Setting Up Order Activity Rules	14-53
Setting Up Order Templates	14-57
Creating a Standard Template	14-58
Updating an Existing Template	14-60
Creating a System-Generated Template	14-60
Processing Options for Customer History Template Rebuild ...	14-61
Setting Up Order Hold Information	14-63
Defining Order Hold Codes	14-64
Setting Up Minimum and Maximum Order Amounts	14-66

Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Credit Checking	14-67
Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Margin Checking	14-69
Setting Up Partial Order Holds	14-71
Assigning Hold Codes during Order Entry	14-72
Assigning Hold Codes in the Customer Billing Instructions	14-73
Setting Up Commission Information	14-75
Setting Up a Sales Group	14-76
Assigning Commission Information	14-78
Setting Up Additional Commission Information	14-80
Reviewing Commission Information	14-83
Setting Up Branch Sales Markups	14-85
Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions	14-89
AAIs for the Sales Order Management System	14-89
Defining Flexible Account Numbers	14-95
Base Sales Order Management AAIs	14-99
Advanced Pricing AAIs	14-99

Advanced & Technical

Interoperability	15-1
Setting Up for Interoperability Transactions	15-3
Reviewing Record Types	15-4
Setting Up Transaction Types	15-5
Setting Up Data Export Controls	15-5
Setting Up the Flat File Cross-Reference	15-9
Running the Conversion Program	15-11
Processing Options for Inbound Flat File Conversion	15-11
Receiving Transactions into OneWorld	15-13
Reviewing and Revising Interoperability Transactions	15-15
Reviewing the Processing Log	15-17
Sending Transactions from OneWorld	15-19
Purging Interoperability Transaction Records	15-21

Appendices

Appendix A: Vertex Quantum for Sales and Use Tax	A-1
Setting Up the J.D. Edwards/Quantum Interface	A-9
Activating Quantum	A-10
Testing the Quantum Connection	A-12
Activating Quantum Logging	A-14
Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions for Quantum	A-15
Setting Up User Defined Codes for Quantum	A-16
Assigning Non-Stock Product Categories to Order Types	A-16
Defining Tax Information for Items	A-19
Assigning GeoCodes to Address Book Records	A-21
Assigning GeoCodes Globally to Address Book Records	A-23
Assigning GeoCodes Manually to Address Book Records	A-24
Calculating Taxes for Related Addresses	A-29

The GeoCode Hierarchy	A-29
Accounts Payable - Use or Exempt Tax	A-29
Accounts Payable - Sales Tax	A-30
Accounts Receivable - Sales Tax	A-31
Sales Order Management - Sales Tax	A-31
Procurement - Use Tax	A-32
CSMS - Service Contract Sales Tax	A-33
CSMS - Service Order Sales Tax	A-34
CSMS - Service Order Use Tax	A-34
CSMS - Call Sales Tax	A-35
Contract/Service Billing - Sales Tax	A-35
Working with Quantum Taxes	A-37
Overriding GeoCodes on an Invoice	A-39
Overriding GeoCodes on a Voucher	A-40
Overriding GeoCodes on a Sales Order	A-41
Overriding GeoCodes on a Purchase Order	A-43
Overriding GeoCodes on a Service Contract	A-44
Overriding GeoCodes on a Service Order	A-45
Overriding GeoCodes on a Call	A-46
Overriding GeoCodes on Contract Billing	A-48
Overriding GeoCodes on Service Billing	A-52
Processing Quantum Tax Information	A-57
Printing Tax Information	A-57
Posting Tax Information	A-58

Index



Overviews

About Overviews

Customer-focused supply chain execution has emerged as the key to sustained competitive advantage and growth. Mass customization of products and changing methods of distribution require more personalized sales order management.

Sales order management involves much more than taking an order and shipping it. Today's requirements include sophisticated order management, inventory allocation, kits and configurations, and promotional pricing. The Sales Order Management system allows you to address these issues.

Overviews consist of the following:

- ☐ Industry overview
- ☐ Sales Order Management system overview



Industry Overview

Industry Overview

Customer focused supply chain execution has emerged as the key to sustained competitive advantage and growth. Just as the “one size fits all” product no longer satisfies today’s customer, the “one size fits all” order no longer works in the sales industry.

This industry overview consists of the following topics:

- ☐ Industry environments and concepts for Sales Order Management
- ☐ Idea to Action: the competitive advantage

Industry Environments and Concepts for Sales Order Management

Today’s companies need to quickly respond to the most complex requests with the ability to combine any type of transaction on the same sales order – from stock items, to configured items, to manufactured items, from promotional management to special shipping, and from simple invoicing to multisite billing arrangements. To be a viable force in today’s sales market, you need to make the most of sales opportunities with rapid access from a single screen to all of the information that you need to configure products, evaluate pricing options, verify delivery dates, calculate freight, and check customer credit.

Managing your sales environment includes the consideration of the following topics:

- Customer service
- Multiple order types
- Credit checking
- Partial order holds
- Preference profiles
- Order templates
- Store and forward
- Customer self-service
- Promotion management

Customer Service

To stay competitive, you need to maintain excellent customer service. You need to provide immediate, knowledgeable response to customer inquiries by answering any customer question about product availability, order status, order history, credit, and invoicing, from a single screen.

Customer service personnel need to guide customers to the best solutions that their company offers with built-in product options and full prompting of valid configuration and feature choices at sales order entry. Excellent customer service can also require offering alternatives from an online substitution list when requested items are out of stock.

Customer service also means integrating enterprise-wide product supply and customer information. High product visibility is important, and needs to provide accurate supply information with access to the most current inventory, sales, purchasing, and manufacturing data. To provide excellent customer service, sales personnel need to be able to enter the desired quantities and availability dates directly into the sales order, as well as to expedite sales with the online review of customer credit statuses, ship-to and bill-to information, and payment terms.

Multiple Order Types

To be successful, you need to manage all order types from the same system, including quotes, blanket orders, transfers, direct ship requests, and credits. For example, companies in the commodities industry lock in agreements with their customers to purchase items at an agreed-upon price and quantity over a specified period of time. Blanket or contract orders are often entered to lock in a price for items.

Credit Checking

To help eliminate the risk of processing orders from customers with bad credit, you need a method of checking your customers' credit based on a defined credit limit. If orders go on hold because a customer is over the credit limit, the system that you use should not process the order until that hold is released.

Partial Order Holds

You can strengthen your strategic connection with your customers with flexible sales order management. If your customers request not to receive any shipment of their order until it is filled in its entirety, or if they want their orders parceled out to them as items are available, you should use a method of partial shipments, or partial order holds to meet these specific customer demands.

Preference Profiles

You can implement a method of direct sales order workflow by utilizing easy-to-maintain, rule-based preference profiles. Preference profiles can save time in fulfilling the sales strategies that you have established with your customers.

When you use preference profiles, you can define your internal processes (such as reports, labels, workflow, quality, and shipping) based upon a customer or customer group. You can allow customer-specific, item-specific, or customer and item-specific information for product allocations, supply locations, pricing, terms, delivery, and invoicing. Preference profiles are a low cost and efficient means of responding to customer needs.

Order Templates

To speed sales transactions, you can use system-generated order templates that you base on customer buying patterns. Templates streamline order workflow by setting up a preliminary order for an established pattern of customer activity. Organizing order workflow recognizes not only the needs of your customers, but also realizes the realities of your operating environment.

Store and Forward

If you use store and forward features, you use your laptop computer to configure and enter sales orders which are later downloaded into a parent system. Sales representatives often work on sales with customers at the client site and need to transfer data to the parent system electronically.

Store and forward features can also be helpful in sales environments that embrace manufacture-to-order or configure-to-order processes.

Customer Self-Service

Internet commerce has become an essential ingredient of conducting business for many companies. Customers look for companies that are “open” to customers 24 hours a day.

Research estimates that businesses purchased \$43 billion USD over the internet in 1998, and predicts that over 90% of the estimated \$1.4 trillion USD in e-commerce transactions in 2003 will be business to business.

In order to provide excellent customer self-service, you must capitalize on the communication features available on the internet. You must learn to speed communication across the supply chain by defining user types and interface methods. You need to maintain security without having to dictate hardware and software standards to your customers and supply chain partners, but you also need to provide access through client/servers, thin clients or web browsers, regardless of the operating system or software that you deploy.

Promotion Management

In highly competitive markets, accurate pricing can be the difference that sets you apart from other companies. By combining regular discounts and promotions with the capability of applying more than one pricing adjustment to any item on a sales order, and managing rebate accruals into defined ledger accounts, you can improve profitability and competitiveness.

Your sales and marketing organizations can develop pricing strategies to target different market sectors, which gives them the ability to react promptly and effectively to their competitor's pricing strategies and marketing conditions. Ideally, multiple costs and prices should be maintained by item, customer, or both, with effectivity dates, to cover all of the pricing scenarios.

Idea to Action: The Competitive Advantage

The following examples are typical problems that occur during the Sales Order Management processes. For each example, a corresponding business activator is described, which you can use to resolve each problem. Where applicable, information regarding the return on investment is also provided.

How can we protect ourselves from customers with bad credit?

Use the Sales Order Management system's hold code features to stop the processing of orders that put customers over their credit limit. If an order is on hold, the order will not be processed until it is released from the hold. When you lower the debt owed you from your customers, your revenue increases.

How can we ensure that our profit margins aren't affected by price manipulations during order entry?

Use profit margin hold codes to place orders on hold that are below or above a specified profit margin range. You can also use protect price columns during sales order entry.

Maintaining a profit margin range can ensure consistently high revenue. Protecting pricing columns reduces errors during order entry, which improves quality and increases customer satisfaction.

How can we increase the speed of our sales transactions?

Use the Sales Order Management system's order templates to speed up the process of sales order entry. Templates speed order processing by displaying your customer's most frequently ordered items. A template is a system-generated "best guess" about what your customer will order. Using templates generates customer satisfaction.

How can we integrate enterprise-wide product supply and customer information?

Use the Supply/Demand Inquiry program to check available-to-promise product schedules in real time. You can also view desired quantities and availability dates from the Supply/Demand Inquiry program, and pull them directly into the sales order. Having access to your inventory in this way increases product visibility.

How can we best meet our customers kit processing and configure-to-order needs?

Use the Sales Order Management system's kit processing features, or the Sales Configurator system to guide customers to the best kit processing or configured product solutions. Your customers can take advantage of built-in product options in kit processing. Configuration checking and valid feature choices are performed by the system during sales order entry. Providing options to customers increases customer satisfaction and can ultimately increase revenue.

We want to move toward a "to order/to postponement" environment. How can we implement this model?

Use the Sales Order Management system's store and forward functionality in conjunction with the Sales Configurator system. Your sales force representatives can work with clients on site, and transfer the data to the system at a later time.

How can commodities businesses lock in prices?

Use the Sales Order Management system's contract and blanket order features to lock in prices that vary due to market fluctuations and supply challenges. Locking in prices helps you to stabilize your profit margins.

How can we utilize business to business commerce?

Use the Sales Order Management system's customer self-service features to allow your customers to enter their own orders, inquire upon the status of orders and inquire on inventory, all through the internet. Your customers will have immediate customer service and up-to-date information on their accounts.

Utilizing the internet for your business-to-business solutions can help you develop new business models and gain new customers.

How can we set up multiple customer master records for one customer?

Use the Sales Order Management system's line of business preferences to differentiate multiple customer processing instructions while maintaining the same, singular address book record for the customer. Often, one enterprise deals with customers through multiple lines of business. Product, division or geography may be differentiators of the lines of business. You can also set up separate credit limits by line of business.

How can we automate our methods of controlling and monitoring changes to prices and price adjustments?	Use the Advanced Pricing system's Price Approvals program to set up a process and workflow for approving price changes. These price changes are automatic, self-documenting and routed through workflow processing so that the appropriate personnel within your organization can approve changes.
How do we allow for payment at the time of order entry?	Use the Sales Order Management system's prepayment processing to generate a customer receipt in place of an invoice, or to perform credit card authorizations and final settlements.
How can we generate sales proposals?	Use the Sales Order Management system's Automatic Document Generation program to create sales proposals. The Automatic Document Generation program can combine information such as the sales configuration, quotes, financial highlights and pricing information. The program can retrieve various pieces of information from different departments across your company and can utilize media objects. Proposals created by the Automatic Document Generation program can be easily and quickly modified by sales force personnel.

Sales Order Management System Overview

About the Sales Order Management System

Sales order management involves much more than taking an order and shipping it. Today's requirements include sophisticated order management, inventory allocation, kits and configurations, and promotional pricing. The Sales Order Management system allows you to address these issues.

The Sales Order Management system provides the following features:

- Extensive user defined information
- Recurring order and order template processing
- Customer and item preference profiles
- Online inventory availability and available-to-promise information
- Comprehensive order and line status tracking
- Flexible pricing and discounting, which supports promotions, contracts, and allowances.

You can enhance customer service by using the Sales Order Management system to create order templates, standing or blanket orders, and quote orders. Also, the Sales Order Management system provides additional customer service support through online displays that provide the following:

- Pertinent order, inventory, transportation, and financial information
- Net profitability of a product line when promotions, discounts, and allowances are applied

You must manage pricing efficiently, given the complexity of customer- and market-specific contracts, special promotions, allowances, and date effectiveness. The Sales Order Management system allows you to set up a flexible base pricing structure. You can then define price adjustments to revise and update prices when necessary.

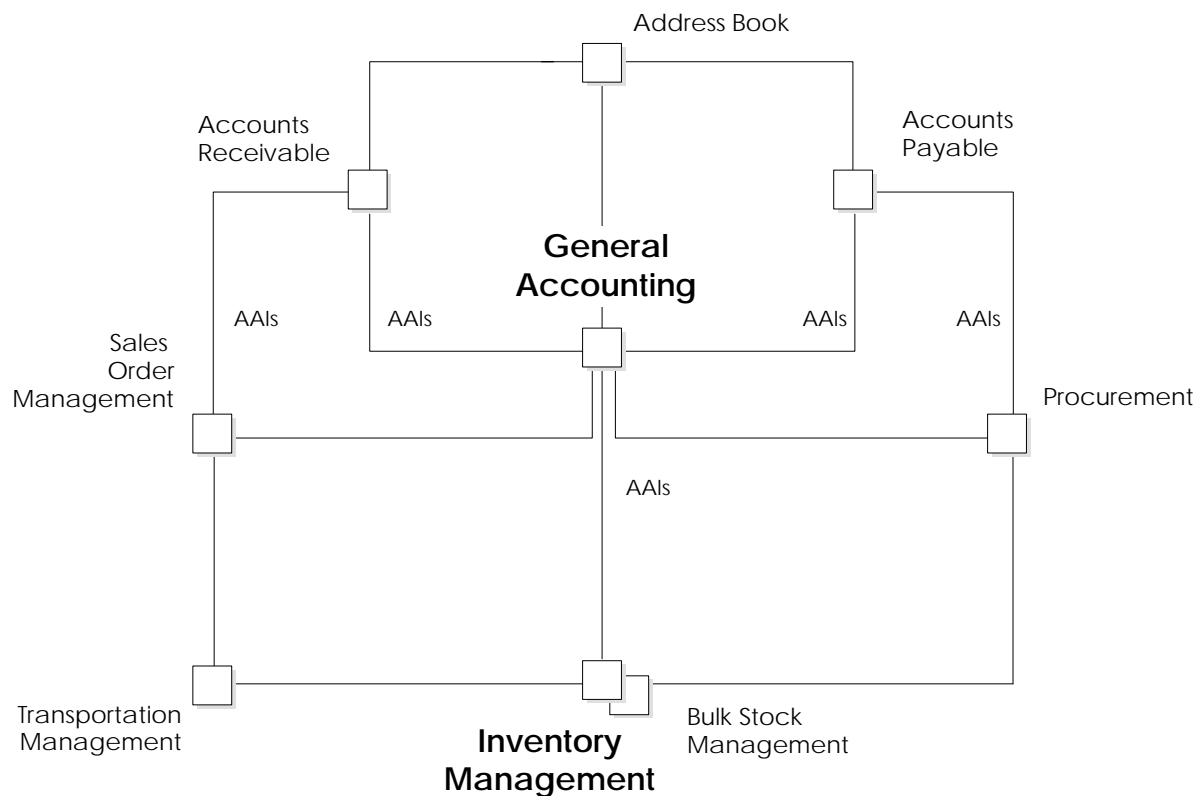
System Integration

J.D. Edwards Sales Order Management system works with other distribution, logistics, and manufacturing systems to ensure that customer demand is met. Supply and demand components must balance to ensure that this takes place.

The key is integration and the proactive use of distribution and logistics information.

Integration with Accounting and Distribution Systems

The following graphic illustrates and describes how the Sales Order Management system integrates with the General Accounting system and other systems.



General Accounting

The central point of integration is the General Accounting system which tracks sales order accounting. All distribution systems interface with the General Accounting system through the use of automatic accounting instructions (AAIs).

Address Book

The Address Book system stores up-to-date customer billing and warehouse address information.

Inventory Management

The Inventory Management system stores item information for the Sales Order Management, Purchase Management, and manufacturing systems. It also stores

sales and purchasing costs and quantities available by location and tracks holds for locations that should not be sold from. Any change in inventory valuation, count variances, or movement updates the general ledger.

Procurement

The Procurement system supports direct ship order and transfer order processing. You can use the system to release receipts to backordered items.

Advanced Pricing

You can use the Advanced Pricing system in conjunction with the Sales Order Management system. This system integrates with many of the price-related programs in the Sales Order Management system and provides additional pricing, preference, reporting, and setup functionality.

Advanced Warehouse Management

You can use the Advanced Warehouse Management system in conjunction with the Sales Order Management system. This system integrates with many of the programs related to items and provides additional reporting, picking, and setup functionality.

Transportation Management

Sales Order Management can be closely integrated with the Transportation Management system to provide carrier, shipment and advanced sales order (ECS) functionality.

If you set up the Sales Order Management system to interface with Transportation Management, you process sales orders to:

- Build trips
- Load and deliver bulk and packaged items
- Calculate freight charges

At load and delivery confirmation, the system retrieves cost information and relieves inventory from the Inventory Management system. This retrieval information is based on any sales orders that are load and delivery confirmed as reported by the Sales Order Management system.

In addition, the system updates the general ledger based on the following scenarios:

If you create the following scenario:

Load confirm only with an invoice date in the future

Load confirm only without a future invoice date

Load and delivery confirm with an invoice date in the future

The system will perform the following tasks:

- Create in-transit entries
- Cycle Billing creates deferred costs of goods sold, revenue, and accounts receivable entries
- Create in-transit entries
- Cycle Billing creates inventory, deferred costs of goods sold, and Accounts Receivable entries

Enterprise-Wide Profitability Solution

Optionally, you can use the Enterprise-Wide Profitability Solution with the Sales Order Management system. This system integrates with many of the programs related to managerial accounting and activity-based costing functionality.

Features of Sales Order Management

Order Entry

Order entry allows you to record information about your customers and the items that they have ordered. When you enter a sales order, the system automatically enters pertinent information that currently exists in the customer, item, preference, and pricing records. Sales order processing begins as soon as you complete the order entry process.

The Sales Order Management system provides the following types of additional orders to accommodate specific ordering situations:

- Quote orders
- Blanket orders
- Direct ship orders
- Interbranch sales orders
- Credit orders

You enter these types of orders in the same way that you enter basic sales orders. However, the system processes each type of order differently. Some orders, such as blanket and quote orders, can be prerequisites to actual sales orders. That is, you must enter these types of orders before you can enter sales orders based on them.

Customer Self Service

With Customer Self Service, you can set up sales order processing to accommodate transactions that occur on the Internet. Your customers can place orders, review your inventory and availability, select products, check the status of shipped items, inquire on existing orders, and review order history.

Prepayment Processing

When you enter orders for your customers, you can accept multiple forms of payment in a method that is mutually convenient to you and your customer. You can generate invoices to send to your customers for payment or you can accept payment up front, such as payment from credit card, cash or check. You can generate an invoice as a customer receipt, and for credit card transactions, a corresponding draft that you can collect from the credit card company.

Templates

With some advance preparation and setup, you can significantly speed up the order entry process. One way to do this is to create and assign order templates for your customers. Templates speed the order entry process by reducing repetition.

An order template displays frequently ordered items and quantities. You can create two types of templates:

Standard templates

A standard template applies to all customers. You can assign a standard template to appear every time you enter an order.

Customer-specific templates

Customer-specific templates include a specific customer's most frequently ordered items. You can display a customer-specific template only when you enter orders for that customer.

Order Release

You might have orders on hold for several reasons. For example, you might place orders on hold that do not meet margin requirements. When an order is on hold, it must be released back into the processing cycle for any additional processing to take place.

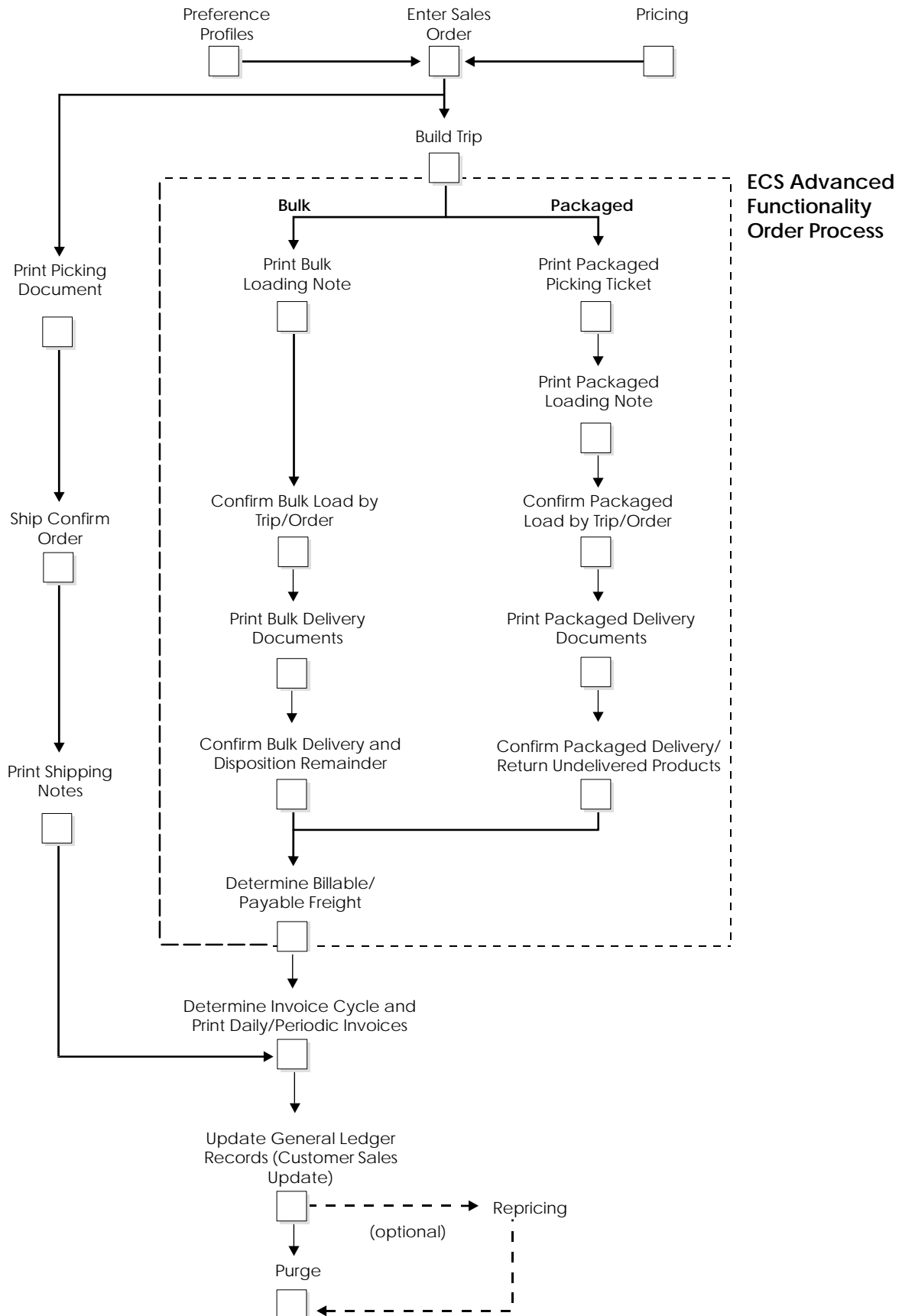
The system can withhold an order or order line from the processing cycle if you do not have the quantity to fill the order or order line. This type of hold is a backorder. You release backorders when inventory becomes available.

Processing Orders

After you enter sales orders, you typically advance them through the processing cycle in the following sequence:

1. Print control pick lists and pick slips
2. Confirm shipment
3. Generate invoices
4. Update information to the general ledger (G/L)

If you have activated ECS Control, the process that you define for your sales order may include additional steps to accommodate ECS advanced functions. You can monitor order processing from order entry through delivery confirmation.



Updating Status Codes

Each step of the order process has user defined status codes that you define in the order activity rules. The system uses each status code to track where an order is within the sales order process. For example, if you are ready to confirm for shipment, the order might have a status code of 560.

The process that you define for your sales orders may include additional steps, depending on the types of customers that you have.

If you have activated ECS Control in System Constants, the process that you define for your sales order might include additional steps to accommodate advanced ECS features. The following table illustrates the relationship between processing steps and status codes.

Standard Functionality Order Process			ECS Advanced Functionality Order Process		
Last Status		Next Status	Last Status		Next Status
520	Enter Sales Order	540	520	Enter Sales Order	525
540	Print Pick Slips	560	525	Assign a Trip	542
560	Confirm Shipments	578	542	Print Loading Notes	562
578	Run Cycle Billing	580	562	Load Confirm	573
580	Print Invoices	600	573	Delivery Confirm	575
999	Closed		575	Billable Freight	576
			576	Payable Freight	578
			578	Run Cycle Billing	580
			580	Print Invoices	600
			600	Sales Update	999
			999	Closed	

Sales Order Information

You can review and analyze sales order information and generate reports to track the status of sales orders and invoices. For example, you can review the present status of any order, such as an order that is on hold, to accurately plan for future needs.

When entering or reviewing a sales order, you can quickly access item information, such as the item number, availability, quantity cost-breaks, and so on. This is helpful when you are speaking directly to the customer.

You can also access information about customer accounts and open and closed sales orders. For example, you can use the Check Credit program to compare a customer's total accounts receivable and open orders with their credit limit. You can also review sales history information and billing information that doesn't print on the invoice that the customer receives.

End of Day Processing

You perform end-of-day processing to complete the order processing cycle. Performing end of day processing consists of running batch programs to:

- Update all tables and records related to customer sales
- Post journal entries resulting from the order processing cycle

You should run the Update Customer Sales program each day to keep the most accurate sales information. You update your sales information on a daily basis to do the following:

- Keep accounts receivable records current
- Provide daily activity reports
- Keep general ledger accounts current for inventory, cost of goods sold, sales, and freight
- Keep inventory on-hand balances accurate
- Keep interim sales and commission reports accurate

Pricing

For each item that you sell, you must define the price at which to sell it. You use Sales Order Management pricing to define a base pricing structure. The system uses this base pricing structure to retrieve prices when you enter items on an order and to calculate price adjustments and updates. You can define base prices for any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups.

After you define base prices, you can set up price adjustments that might include the following types of price calculations:

- Contract pricing, which applies special pricing for an item to a single customer or customer group
- Trade discount pricing, which is a discount percentage on all items for a specific customer
- Cash discount pricing, which you can apply to individual sales order detail lines
- Repricing, which are additional discounts or markups that you can set up or to recalculate sales orders

Preferences

You can use preferences to customize the way that sales orders are processed. For sales order processing, J.D. Edwards has provided preferences that you can customize to meet your specific business requirements.

Typically, you create preferences when you have consistent business requirements that differ from the default values for the Sales Order Management system. For example, you can create preferences to suit the needs of:

- Your customer's specific requirements
- Your company's policies
- Regulatory agencies' rules

System Setup

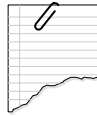
You can customize the Sales Order Management system to meet your company's needs and customer demand. Before you use the Sales Order Management system to process sales orders, you must perform the following system setup tasks:

- Set up constants that provide the system with default information for day-to-day transactions within a branch/plant
- Set up customer billing instructions, which are rules that the system uses to process a customer's order
- Set up order line types, which are codes that determine how the system processes a detail line in an order
- Set up order activity rules to establish the sequence of allowable steps that an order takes from beginning to end
- Define the codes that the system uses to place sales orders on hold
- Define branch sales markups, which are transfer costs that apply to interbranch sales or transfer orders
- Set up commission information for a specific salesperson or a group of salespeople
- Set up automatic accounting instructions (AAIs), which provide the Sales Order Management system with accounting information and general ledger relationships for interacting with the General Accounting system

Menu Overview

Menu Overview – Sales Order Management

Sales Order Management G42



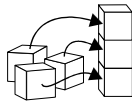
Daily Operations

- Sales Order Processing G4211
- Additional Order Processes G4212
- End of Day Processing G4213



Periodic Operations

- Customer Revisions G4221
- Price Management G4222



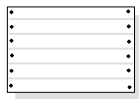
Setup Operations

- Sales Tax Definition G0021
- Sales User Defined Codes G42411
- Sales Order Management Setup G4241



Advanced and Technical Operations

- Price Management G4222
- Advanced Price and Adjustments G42311
- Data File Purges G42312
- Flexible File Definition G42313
- Interoperability G42A313



Reports and Inquiries

- Sales Order Reports G42111
- Sales Order Inquiries G42112
- Commission/Royalty Management G4223

Daily



Sales Order Entry

You enter sales orders to input information about your customers and the items that they order. When you complete the required fields for the sales order, the system retrieves the appropriate customer, item, preference, and pricing records from the following tables:

- Address Book
- Customer Billing Instructions
- Customer Master Information
- Item Master Information
- Price Management
- Preferences

You can review the information on an order and make any necessary changes. If you change the default information in an order, the new values do not affect information in the master records. To change the default information, you can access the appropriate form.

Sales order entry includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Working with header information
- ☐ Working with detail information
- ☐ Generating a proposal
- ☐ Entering sales orders with templates
- ☐ Entering recurring sales orders
- ☐ Working with kits and configured items
- ☐ Working with store and forward orders

You can enter international sales orders using the same procedures as domestic sales orders if you activate the multi-currency conversion option.



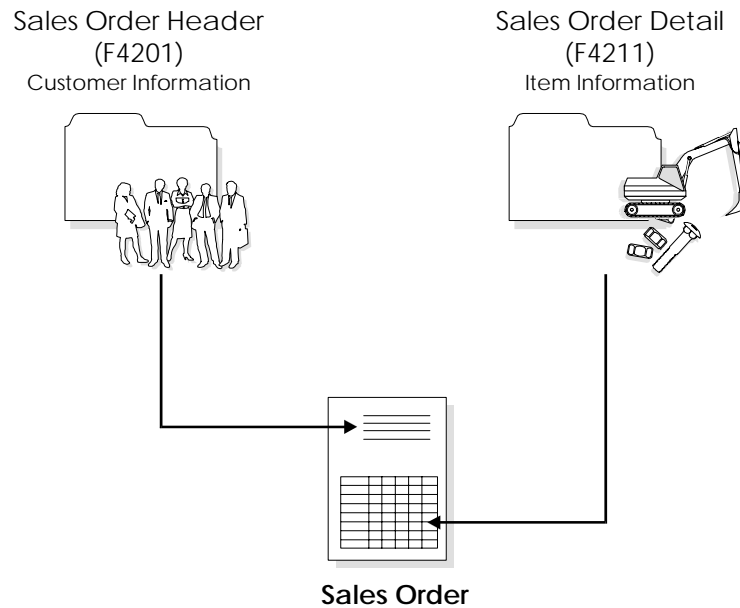
A sales order has two types of information:

Header information

This information relates to an entire order. The system maintains this information in the Sales Order Header table (F4201). The system also retrieves information from the Address Book table (F0101) and the billing instructions in the Customer Master table (F0301) to complete the order.

Detail information

This information primarily relates to individual lines in a sales order and to items. The system maintains this information in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). The system also retrieves information from the Sales Order Header (F4201), the Item Master (F4101), the Item Location (F41021), and the Customer Master (F0301) tables to complete the order.



Before You Begin

- ☐ For ECS processing, verify that the following tasks are complete:
 - Turn on ECS Control in the System Constants.
- ☐ Verify that the following information is set up prior to entering sales orders:
 - Address information for each customer in the Address Book table (F0101). See *Entering Address Book Records* in the *Address Book Guide*.
 - Master information for each customer in the Customer Master table (F0301). See *Creating Customer Records* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide*.
 - *Billing instructions for each customer in the Billing Instructions (F0301) and Customer Master tables. See Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions.*
 - Item Information in the Item Master (F4101) and Bulk Item Master (F4011) tables. See *Entering Item Master Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide*.
 - Branch/plant information for each of your branch/plants in the Branch/Plant Constants table (F41001). See *Setting Up Constants*.
 - Item and branch/plant information in the Item Branch table (F4102), the Item Location table (F41021), and the Item Master table (F4101) for each item that you stock.
 - Preferences for customer and item combinations. See *Working with Preferences*.
 - Default location and printers for your terminal or user profile in the Default Location and Printers table (F40095).
 - Multi-currency, if you are processing orders using different currencies. See *Setting Up Multi-Currency* in the *General Accounting Guide*.

Working with Header Information

Each sales order has header information that is primarily customer-related and can pertain to the entire order, including:

- Billing address
- Currency code and exchange rate
- Payment terms and payment instrument
- Order hold codes
- Order dates

Header information also contains information about the conditions that affect how the system processes a sales order, such as billing instructions and delivery dates.

Working with header information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Understanding header information
- ☐ Entering header information
- ☐ Updating header information to the detail form
- ☐ Adding messages to sales orders

Most of the remaining header information consists of default values from the Address Book, Customer Billing Instructions, and Customer Master tables, such as tax code and area, shipping address, and freight information. During order header entry, you can review and change the values that apply to a specific order. To change the information that the system retrieves for future orders, you can access the appropriate form to change the master information.

In addition to the header information that you enter, you can create a message and attach it to a sales order so that it appears on the sales order header when you print it.

The processing options are the same for both header and detail information on sales orders.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the processing options in the Sales Order Entry program are set up to display header information before the detail information.
- ☐ Verify that you can process multi-currency sales orders, if necessary.

Understanding Header Information

Header information is primarily customer-related and pertains to the entire order. Most header information consists of default values from the Address Book, Customer Billing Instructions, and Customer Master tables, such as tax code and area, shipping address, and freight information.

When you enter an order header, you can review and change the values that apply to a specific order. To change the information that the system retrieves for future orders, you can access the appropriate master table, such as Address Book Master, to change the information. The only header information that you cannot change is the order number, company, and document type, because this information uniquely identifies the record.

Related Addresses

When you set up Customer Master Information and Customer Billing Instructions, you define the address to which you send the invoice as the Sold-To address and the address to which you send the shipment as the Ship To address. You can define related addresses for a customer if the order information, such as the shipping requirements, differs from the billing information, such as invoice copies and payment terms. The system fills in the sold-to address whenever you enter the ship-to address.

During order entry, the system retrieves accounts receivable information, such as tax explanation codes and rate areas, from the Customer Master Information table. For direct ship, transfer orders, or sales orders with differing sold to and ship to addresses, the system retrieves the tax explanation code from the sold to address and the tax rate and area from the ship-to address. Other accounts receivable information defaults from the Customer Billing Instructions, such as billing address type (sold to, ship to, or both), credit information, and invoice copies. If your customer requests multiple copies of an invoice, use the Customer Billing Instructions form for the sold to address to designate the number of copies.

Reviewing Credit Information

When you enter an order, you can verify the accounts receivable and aging balances for the sold-to address. You can use this information to assist your customer on the current order.

You access the Credit Check program from the Form menu in Sales Header Revisions to review information about a customer's account and credit status. You can compare the customer's total accounts receivable and open orders to the customer's current credit limit assigned in the Customer Master table to determine if the credit limit has been exceeded.

In Credit Check, you can access the following types of information:

- Accounts receivable (for example, any balances that are currently due)
- Account history (for example, customer ABC ranking, invoice, and payment information)
- Open sales orders (for example, order dates and amounts)

See Also

- *Reviewing Customer Account Information* for more information

Entering Commission Information

To apply salesperson or sales group and commission information to a single order, enter the information in the order header during order entry. If you enter salesperson and commission information, the system does not retrieve default information.

Note: After you enter order information, the system prompts you to review header information before accepting the order header. This is only a reminder. After you accept the order header information, the system displays the Sales Order Detail Revisions form.

Entering Header Information

When you enter a sales order, the system creates entries in two tables, the Sales Order Header table (F4201), and the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). Based on your processing option selection, you can enter header information before you enter detail information. If you do not enter header information before you enter detail information, the system creates an order header record based on the Sold To and Ship To address information that you enter in the detail information form.

► To enter header information

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Enter Orders Header.

1. On Work With Sales Order Headers, click Add.

The screenshot shows the 'Enter Orders Header - [Sales Order Header]' window. The window has a menu bar (File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Window, Help) and a toolbar with buttons like OK, Cancel, Dis..., and a toolbar with icons for Links, Bgld T..., OLE..., and Internet. Below the toolbar, there are input fields for 'SO' and a 'Branch/Plant' dropdown. The main area is divided into two tabs: 'Sales Order Header' (selected) and 'Additional Header Information'. The 'Sales Order Header' tab contains several sections: 'Currency' with 'Exchange Rate' and 'Base' fields, a 'Foreign' checkbox, and a 'Messages' text area; 'Address Numbers' with 'Sold To' and 'Ship To' fields; 'Customer PO' with 'Print Message', 'Hold Code', 'Tax Area/Code', and 'Tax Certificate No.' fields; 'Dates' with a 'Cancel' field; 'Price Picking' with a checked checkbox, 'Invoice Copies' field, 'Ordered By' field, and 'Taken By' field.

2. On Sales Order Header, complete the following fields:
 - Branch/Plant
 - Sold To
 - Ship To
3. To override currency information, complete the following fields:
 - Currency
 - Exchange Rate
 - Foreign
4. Complete the following optional fields:
 - Customer PO
 - Print Message
 - Hold Code
 - Tax Area/Code
 - Tax Certificate No
 - Order

- Requested
 - Cancel
 - Ordered By
5. To review additional header information, click the Additional Header Information tab.

6. Review the default information and modify it, as necessary.
7. On Sales Order Header, click OK.

The system displays a reminder to review order header information before accepting the order header.

8. Click OK a second time to accept the order.

The system displays the Sales Order Detail Revisions form. After you enter header information, follow the steps to enter detail information.

Field	Explanation				
Branch/Plant	<p>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, branch, or plant.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, employee, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p>Note: The system uses the job number for journal entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</p>				
Sold To	A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, a location, and any other address book members.				
Ship To	The address number of the location to which you want to ship this order. The address book provides default values for customer address, including street, city, state, zip code, and country.				
Currency	A code specifying the currency of the company that the transaction is associated with. This can be any code defined for your system on the Designate Currency Codes form.				
Base	A code that specifies the currency of the transaction. This can be any code defined for your system on the Designate Currency Codes screen.				
Exchange Rate	The conversion rate that the system uses to convert foreign currencies to the domestic currency. If the Multi-Currency Conversion field in General Accounting Constants is set to Y, the multiplier rate is used for all calculations. If set to Z, the system uses the divisor to calculate currency conversions.				
Foreign	<p>A code that specifying whether amounts are in the domestic currency of the company that the transaction is associated with or in the foreign currency of the customer.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <table><tr><td>D</td><td>Domestic</td></tr><tr><td>F</td><td>Foreign</td></tr></table>	D	Domestic	F	Foreign
D	Domestic				
F	Foreign				
Customer PO	An alphanumeric value used as a cross-reference or secondary reference number. Typically, this is the customer number, supplier number, or job number.				

Field	Explanation
Print Message	A user defined code (40/PM) that represents a predefined message set up on Print Message Revisions. You can print the message on sales orders, purchase orders, and so forth.
Hold Code	A user defined code (42/HC) that identifies why an order is on hold.
Tax Area/Code	<p>A code that identifies a tax or geographic area that has common tax rates and tax distribution. The tax rate/area must be defined to include the tax authorities (for example, state, county, city, rapid transit district, or province), and their rates. To be valid, a code must be set up in the Tax Rate/Area table (F4008).</p> <p>Typically, U.S. sales and use taxes require multiple tax authorities per tax rate/area, whereas value-added tax (VAT) requires only one simple rate.</p> <p>The system uses this code to properly calculate the tax amount.</p>
Tax Certificate No	A number that identifies a license or certificate that tax authorities issue to tax-exempt individuals and companies.
Order	The date that an order was entered into the system. This date determines which effective level the system uses for inventory pricing.
Requested	The date that the customer requests to receive the order. You can enter a single date for the entire order or several dates for individual detail lines.
Cancel	The date that the order should be canceled if the goods have not been sent to the customer or the goods have not been received from the supplier. This is a memo-only field and does not cause the system to perform any type of automatic processing.
Ordered By	SALES ORDER SYSTEM: An optional entry field, intended for the name of the customer placing the order.

Updating Header Information to the Detail Form

Most of the header information consists of default values from the Address Book, Customer Billing Instructions, and Customer Master tables, such as tax code and area, shipping address, and freight information. You can override this information when you enter an order or when you inquire on an order. If you change header information after you inquire on an order, you can ensure that changes to the header information are reflected in the detail information.

You can use two methods for updating header information to the detail form:

Automatic update

First, you must set the processing option in Sales Order Entry (P4210) to automatically load header changes to detail lines. Then, use the Define Header Columns to Detail table to identify the fields that the system automatically updates to the detail form. If you change the header information in fields that you have selected in the table, the system updates the detail form.

Manual update

After you inquire on the Sales Order Header form and make changes, use the Define Header Columns to Detail table to identify the fields that system automatically updates to the detail form. Then, choose the menu option to populate the detail form with these fields. The system updates the detail form for this order only.

If you have set the processing option, Next status limit for line changes, in Sales Order Entry (P4210), you can only make changes to orders that are not at your defined status.

To update header default information

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Enter Orders Header.

1. On Work With Sales Order Headers, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Header, from the Form menu, choose Header to Detail, and then choose Define.

Select	Data Item	Row Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHCMC1	Commission Code 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHCMR1	Commission Rate 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHCMC2	Commission Code 2
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHCMR2	Commission Rate 2
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHURCD	User Reserved Code
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHURDT	User Reserved Date
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHURAT	User Reserved Amount
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHURAB	User Reserved Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHURRF	User Reserved Reference
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHASN	Adjustment Schedule
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHTRDC	Trade Discount
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHEMCU	Header Business Unit

3. On Define Header Columns to Detail Table, enter a 1 in the Select field and click OK.
4. From the Form menu, choose Header to Detail, then choose Populate to update the information from the header form to the detail form.
5. On Sales Order Header Revisions, click OK.

Adding Messages to Sales Orders

You can attach a message, such as special packing instructions, to a sales order. For example, you can:

- Create your own text
- Copy text from existing messages
- Use a predefined text message

Regardless of the method that you use to add a message, you can view the message online and print it on the invoice and pick slip.

To print the associated text on the invoice, you must set the appropriate processing option in the Print Invoices program.

See *Printing Standard Invoices* for more information.

To add messages to sales orders

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Enter Orders Header.

1. On Work With Sales Order Headers, locate the sales order to which you want to add a message.
2. From the Row menu, choose Attachments to access the Media Objects form.
3. On Media Objects, from the File menu, choose Add and then choose the appropriate media object type.
4. From the File menu, choose Save and Exit.

Working with Detail Information

After you add header information to a sales order, you can add detail information about the items on the order, such as item identifiers, quantities, prices, and costs. You can specify information that prints on the customer's invoice, such as backordered and shipped quantities. You can also add messages to individual detail lines.

Working with detail information consists of:

- ☐ Understanding default information in Sales Order Detail Revisions
- ☐ Integrating other systems with order entry
- ☐ Entering detail information
- ☐ Entering substitute and associated items
- ☐ Working with subsystem processing in sales order entry

Because the system retrieves most of the detail information from other tables, you need to enter only a minimum of information. You can review and change the values as necessary.

You can enter the required customer and order information on either the header or detail information form. You might choose to access header information before accessing detail information to review the default values before you enter the order. To locate and review orders, you might want to directly access the detail information.

Understanding Default Information in Sales Order Detail Revisions

When you enter a sales order, the system creates entries in two tables, the Sales Order Header table (F4201) and the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). Based on your processing option selection, you can enter header information before you enter detail information. If you do not enter header information before you enter detail information, the system creates an order header record based on the sold to and ship to address information that you enter in the detail information form.

When you enter sales order detail information, the system retrieves the default information from tables, such as:

- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Item Master (F4101)
- Customer Master (F0301)
- Item Branch Information (F4102)
- Item Location (F41021)
- Item Cost Ledger (F4105)
- Base Price (F4106) tables.

The information in the sales order detail is specific to the item and customer combination. Changes in the detail form affect only the order detail line to which you have made the change.

Because the system retrieves most of the information from other tables, you need to enter the sold to address, the ship to address, the requested item, and the quantity of the item.

Review the following topics:

- Entering item and quantity information
- Retrieving a base price
- Changing tax information
- Processing serial number requirements
- Entering multicurrency information
- Entering commission information
- Understanding workflow processing during sales order entry

Entering Item and Quantity Information

If you do not know the item number, you can click on the visual assist in the Item Number field to access the Item Search form to find it. The system can retrieve item information using any of the product identifiers, and the replacement, substitute, or cross-reference numbers, such as supplier's or customer's part number. The cross-reference information must be set up in the Item Cross-Reference Revisions program.

See Also

- *Locating Item Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide*.

Retrieving a Base Price

When you enter an item in the Item Master Information table (F4101), you specify the level at which the system maintains a standard price for an item, or whether that price differs between branch/plants or locations and lots within the branch/plant. If you use multicurrency, you must set the pricing level so that the system maintains prices for the item based on the branch/plant or the location and lots within each branch/plant.

The unit price that you enter during sales order entry overrides pricing that you have set up in the Base Price Revisions form. If you do not enter a unit price during sales order entry, the system retrieves a price based on pricing hierarchy.

The hierarchy that you set up for the Base Price Preference (51) determines the sequence that it searches Base Price Revisions table (F4106). The base price hierarchy is a matrix comprised of combinations of customers and items and customer and item price groups. You use the intersection of the rows and columns to determine your hierarchy sequence.

The system retrieves price information based on entries in the Customer Billing Instructions and then Base Price Revisions table in the following manner:

- If you have entered a trade discount in the Customer Billing Instructions, which is a flat percentage that is calculated against the order total, the system calculates the percentage against the price for the item based on the branch/plant from which it is sold, and no other discount or pricing agreement applies. If you have not entered a trade discount, the system then searches for a contract price based on the base price preference hierarchy.

- If you have entered a contract price, which is an agreed-upon price between you and the customer for a specific item, the system applies the price that you have defined for the item and customer combination. The order date must be within the effective dates of the contract price. The system retrieves the contract price based on the base price preference hierarchy and uses the price with the earliest expiration date. If you have not set up a contract price, the system searches for an inventory pricing rule.
- If you have set up an inventory pricing rule, which is an agreed-upon price between you and the customer for discounts based on quantities of items purchased, the system applies the price that you have defined for the item or item group and customer or customer group combination. The order date and quantities must be within the effective dates and levels of the inventory pricing rule.
- The system then searches item or item group and customer or customer group combinations based on the base price preference hierarchy, and uses the price with the earliest expiration date and corresponding currency code. The system searches for the item price based on the pricing level that you define in the Item Master Information table (F4101).
- If the price adjustments do not apply to the order, the system retrieves the price that you define for an item within a branch/plant or a location within a branch/plant.
- If the system does not find a price for the item within a branch/plant or location (depending on the pricing level), you receive an error message indicating that no base price is in effect.

During order entry you can use the Check Price form to review price information before selecting a price for an item.

See Also

- *Setting Up Base Prices*

Changing Tax Information

During order entry, the system retrieves the tax explanation code and rate areas from the Customer Master Information. For direct ship, transfer orders, or sales orders with alternate sold to and ship to addresses, the system retrieves the tax explanation code from the Sold To address and the tax rate and area from the ship to address, but you can override this rate.

If the system retrieves the tax explanation code and tax rate and area from the header information, but the Sales Taxable option in Item Branch/Plant Information for the item in the detail line is set to N, the system does not calculate tax for this detail line.

See Also

- *Assigning Tax Information to Customers*

Processing Serial Number Requirements

Based on the serial number requirements that you have defined for an item in Item Branch Information, the following rules apply if a serial number is required during sales order entry:

- The transaction unit of measure must be the same as the primary unit of measure for the serialized item.
- The quantity must be equal to 1 when you enter a location and serial number combination.
- You must enter a valid and available location and serial number combination.

You might receive an error because a location or serial number, and item combination that you enter is not available or because the quantity on hand is zero. Serial numbers are unavailable if the quantity for the item/location/serial number combination is:

- In Inspection
- In Operation 1
- In Operation 2
- In Transit

See Also

- *Processing Serial Number Information*

Entering Multicurrency Information

When you set up Customer Master Information, you specify the currency code with which the system processes the customer's transactions and the currency code by which the system records and stores transaction history. When you enter an order, you can override the currency code and the exchange rate for the sales order. After you have entered header information, you cannot change the currency information.

Entering Commission Information

The system applies commission information from the header to the detail. To apply salesperson or sales group and commission information to a single line within an order, enter the commission information in the order detail information.

If you have activated the JDESOENTRY Workflow process, an action message is sent to the salesperson responsible for the hold code if the current order is placed on hold. The message is sent following the system's completion of hold code processing. If the system does not put the order on hold, an action message is sent to the salesperson, as defined in Commission Maintenance (P42120), with the sold-to number indicating that the order is being processed. You can view messages sent during the workflow process in the Work Center.

See Also

- *Setting Up Commission Information*

Understanding Workflow Processing During Sales Order Entry

The system processes the order through order hold checking. After you click OK to accept the order, the system checks the processing options for hold codes and compares the order against the order hold information.

If you have activated the JDESOENTRY Workflow process, after the system puts the order on hold, an action message is sent to the person responsible for the hold code notifying them that the current order is on hold. If the system does not put the order on hold, an action message is sent to the salesperson, as defined in Commission Maintenance (P42120), with the sold-to number indicating that the order is being processed. You can view messages sent during the workflow process in the Work Center.

NOTE: The JDESOENTRY process can affect performance. You cannot enter another order until the system has processed the previous order and terminated the workflow process.

Integrating Other Systems with Sales Order Entry

J.D. Edwards Sales Order Management system works with other distribution/logistics and manufacturing systems to ensure that customer demand is met. In addition to J.D. Edwards distribution software, such as Inventory Management and Procurement, you might work with additional J.D. Edwards modules, such as Configuration Management, Transportation Management, and Quality Management.

During order entry, you can access the modules in order to enter or verify additional information that is required for order processing, item configuration, manufacturing specifications, shipping, and so on.

Integrating other systems in order entry includes the following concepts:

- Reviewing quality and test results
- Entering orders for agreements

- Entering ECS information
- Creating shipments for sales orders

Reviewing Quality and Test Results

If you use J.D. Edwards Quality Management system and have activated Quality Control in the branch/plant constants for the shipping branch/plant, the system verifies that the inventory that leaves your warehouse meets customer or manufacturing specifications.

As you enter an order, you access Multi-Item Search from the Form menu to review additional item information. From the Multi-Item Search form, you can access Test Results Inquiry to do the following:

- View test results for an item, lot, and customer to determine whether customer specifications are being met
- Search for items that meet your customer requirements, using a test ID or test ranges
- Locate items based on Preferred or Allowed Minimum and Maximum fields in the processing options of the version of Test Results Revisions
- Determine if the lots that you review on Item Search meet the customer or manufacturing specifications
- Add lots that meet your customer requirements to the sales order

After you enter test results, the system processes them to determine if the results you collected pass the tests that you defined.

The system evaluates the results against minimum and maximum values and adjusts the status of the lot for each order detail line to pass or fail. During order entry, you can search for the item and select a lot that meets the quality criteria for the customer and item on the sales order.

See Also

- *Working with Test Results* in the *Quality Management Guide*
- *Locating Item Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for more information about the Multi-Item Search form

Entering Orders for Agreements

If you use the Agreement Management system, you can enter process orders against agreements. Agreements are either formal or informal contracts between partners to move inventory between the partners' locations or to the partners' customers. When you enter a sales order, the system selects agreements that meet the following criteria:

- The item on the sales order and the agreement must be the same.
- The Due To on the agreement must be P (partner), which indicates that product is due to the partner for this product and agreement.
- The Sold To or Ship To on the sales order must be the same as the Destination on the agreement.
- The detail branch/plant or its owner on the sales order must be the source on the agreement.
- The date on the sales order is within the active date range for the agreement.
- For agreements that have quantity control activated, the quantity on the sales order does not exceed the quantity remaining to be fulfilled before the system selects the agreement.

You can set the Agreement processing options to assign agreements that best fit your business needs. You can:

- Manually assign the agreement numbers to transactions
- Choose from a list of agreements that is selected by the system
- Allow the system to assign the agreement automatically

See Also

- *Assigning Agreements* in the *Agreement Management Guide*

Entering ECS Information

If you have activated ECS Control in the system constants, you can enter additional detail information, such as mode of transport, duty status, load and delivery dates, agreement numbers, and other information.

You can set up different document type to identify orders for bulk products. The system automatically creates shipment for an order based on the order type and line type combination that you define in the user defined code table (49/SD). From there you can revise or add to your shipment or even create loads with your shipments on them.

Because the system retrieves most of the information from other tables, including Load and Transportation Constants and ECS Preferences, you need to enter only a minimum of information.

See Also

- *About Delivery Operations* in *Transportation Management Guide*
- *About Bulk Stock Management* in the *Bulk Stock Management Guide* for more information about bulk products

Creating Shipments for Sales Orders

If you use the Transportation Management system, you can set up processing so that the system automatically creates a shipment for an order based on the order type and line type combination that you define in the user defined code table (49/SD). The shipment is a request to transport goods from the branch/plant to the customer. If you do not enter a carrier and mode of transport during order entry, the system retrieves default carrier and transport information from any of the following:

- Item branch/plant information
- Customer master information
- Inventory commitment preference

When you review routing options in Advanced Transportation Management, you can review and revise the carrier and mode of transport. If you do not specify a carrier in either of the master tables or during order entry, the system populates the carrier and mode of transport based on the Carrier transportation preference.

See Also

- *Working with Shipments* in the *Transportation Management Guide* for more information about entering shipment and load information

Entering Detail Information

Because the system retrieves most of the information from other tables, you need to enter only a minimum of information. Entering detail information includes the following tasks:

- Entering item information
- Entering default line information
- Reviewing order information

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set the processing options in the Sales Order Entry program.
- ☐ Verify that you have activated or deactivated the workflow process, JDESOENTRY.

See Also

- *Creating Workflow Processes* in the *Enterprise Workflow Management Guide* for more information about activating workflow processes.

► To enter item information

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Enter Orders Header.

After you enter header information on the Sales Order Header form, you can enter information for each line in the sales order.

1. On Work With Sales Order Headers, complete the steps to enter header information.

After you click OK to accept the header information, the system automatically displays the Sales Order Detail Revisions form.

Enter Orders Header - [Sales Order Detail Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Form Row Window Help

OK Can... New... Dis... Abo Links A/B Inf... OLE ... Internet

Detail Revisions Line Defaults

Order Number 2401 SO 00200 Branch/Plant M30

Sold To 4242 Capital System Order Date 8/10/05

Ship To 4242 Capital System Cust PO

Currency USD Exchange Rate Base USD ☐ Foreign

Quantity Ordered	UoM	Item Number	Ln Ty	Unit Price	Extended Price	Branch/Plant
134	EA	220	S	650.0000	87,100.00	M30
50	EA	210	S	798.0000	39,900.00	M30
80	EA	220	S	650.0000	52,000.00	M30
230	EA	210	S	798.0000	183,540.00	M30
74	EA	220	S	650.0000	48,100.00	M30
250	EA	210	S	798.0000	199,500.00	M30
60	EA	220	S	650.0000	39,000.00	M30
45	EA	220	S	650.0000	29,250.00	M30
			S	0.0000		

Row:1

2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields and click OK:

- Ship To
- Quantity Ordered
- UoM
- Item Number
- Ln Ty
- Unit Price

Because the system retrieves most of the detail information from other tables, you need to enter only a minimum of information. You can review and change the values as necessary. See *Reviewing Order Information* for additional field descriptions.

Depending on how you set your processing options, you might have to accept the order before the system records the order information.

3. On Order Acceptance, review the order information.

Item Number	Description	Order Date	UM	Quantity	Extended Price
	Order Total . .				67
	Taxable Amount				
	@ Tax Rate 0 %				
	Freight Charges				
	INVOICE TOTAL				67

4. To accept the order, click Place Order. The system creates records in the Sales Order Header table (F4201) and the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

Field	Explanation														
Quantity Ordered	The quantity of units affected by this transaction.														
Item Number	The number assigned to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format.														
UoM	A user defined code (00/UM) that indicates the quantity in which to express an inventory item, for example, CS (case) or BX (box).														
Unit Price	The list or base price to be charged for one unit of this item. In sales order entry, all prices must be set up in the Base Price table (F4106).														
Ln Ty	<p>A code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces, such as General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management. It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. Codes include the following:</p> <table><tr><td>S</td><td>Stock item</td></tr><tr><td>J</td><td>Job cost</td></tr><tr><td>N</td><td>Nonstock item</td></tr><tr><td>F</td><td>Freight</td></tr><tr><td>T</td><td>Text information</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>Miscellaneous charges and credits</td></tr><tr><td>W</td><td>Work order</td></tr></table>	S	Stock item	J	Job cost	N	Nonstock item	F	Freight	T	Text information	M	Miscellaneous charges and credits	W	Work order
S	Stock item														
J	Job cost														
N	Nonstock item														
F	Freight														
T	Text information														
M	Miscellaneous charges and credits														
W	Work order														

To enter default line information

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

Default line information is useful when you need to specify pick, ship, and requested dates, as well a customer purchase order or branch/plant other than the branch/plant in the header information. This is very useful if you do not enter header information before you enter detail information or if you have an alternate branch/plant for many detail lines. You can use this feature only when you add sales orders. Although you can override the information as you enter each detail line, the system will not update the information for each order detail line if you inquire and change the sales detail line defaults.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, click the Line Defaults tab.

Quantity Ordered	UoM	Item Number	Ln Ty	Unit Price	Extended Price	Branch/ Plant
134	EA	220	S	650.0000	87,100.00	M30
50	EA	210	S	798.0000	39,900.00	M30
80	EA	220	S	650.0000	52,000.00	M30
230	EA	210	S	798.0000	183,540.00	M30
74	EA	220	S	650.0000	48,100.00	M30
250	EA	210	S	798.0000	199,500.00	M30
60	EA	220	S	650.0000	39,000.00	M30
45	EA	220	S	650.0000	29,250.00	M30
			S	0.0000		

3. Complete the following fields:

- Branch/ Plant
- Cust PO
- Promised Delivery
- Scheduled Pick
- Cancel Date

4. Click OK.

After you enter default line information, complete the steps to enter item information.

► To review order information

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, locate the order to review and select the order detail line.
2. From the Row menu, choose Order, and then choose Sales Order Detail Revisions.

Quantity Ordered	UoM	Item Number	Ln Ty	Unit Price	Extended Price	Branch/Plant
134	EA	220	S	650.0000	87,100.00	M30
50	EA	210	S	798.0000	39,900.00	M30
80	EA	220	S	650.0000	52,000.00	M30
230	EA	210	S	798.0000	183,540.00	M30
74	EA	220	S	650.0000	48,100.00	M30
250	EA	210	S	798.0000	199,500.00	M30
60	EA	220	S	650.0000	39,000.00	M30
45	EA	220	S	650.0000	29,250.00	M30
			S	0.0000		

3. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, review the following fields and make any necessary changes:
 - Extended Price
 - PR UoM
 - Last Status
 - Branch/ Plant
 - Location
 - Lot Number
 - Description 1
 - Supplier Number
4. Review the pricing information for each line in the sales order:
 - Unit Price
 - Extended Price
 - Foreign Unit Price
 - Foreign Extended Price
 - Extended Weight
 - Unit Cost
 - PR UoM
 - PC 1
 - PC 2

- PC 3
- % Profit Margin

If you change pricing-related information, such as detail branch/plant, unit of measure, or lot and location, the system will update the detail line information accordingly.

5. Review the following commitment information fields for each line in the sales order:
 - Quantity Backordered
 - Quantity Canceled
 - Quantity Shipped
 - Quantity Available
6. Review the following cost and tax information fields for each line in the sales order and make any necessary changes:
 - Tax Expl Code 1
 - Taxable
 - Tax Rate/Area
 - Extended Cost
 - Unit Cost
7. Review the following freight information fields for each line in the sales order and make any necessary changes:
 - Wt U/M
 - Volume Unit of Measure
 - *SAME
8. Review the following fields regarding miscellaneous item and preference information:
 - Item Price Group
 - Discount % – Cash
 - Payment Terms Code
 - Pay Inst
 - Print Message
 - Priority – Processing
 - Reason Code
 - G/L Offset
 - Subledger – G/L

9. If you have activated ECS control in the system constants, review the following fields:
 - Agreement Exists
 - Carrier Number
 - Agreement Supplement
 - Agreement Number
 - Duty Sts
 - End Use
 - Line of Business
 - Mod Trn
 - Wt U/M
10. If you change any order information, click OK to update the order with the new information.

Field	Explanation
Extended Price	The extended price is the quantity available for shipping multiplied by the unit price. The system calculates this price. If you enter the extended amount and quantity, the system can calculate the unit price.
Last Status	A user defined code (40/AT) that specifies the last step in the processing cycle that this order line successfully completed.
Next Status	A user defined code (40/AT) that indicates the next step in the order process.
Branch/ Plant	<p>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, branch, or plant.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, employee, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p>Note: The system uses the job number for journal entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</p>
Location	The storage location from which goods will be moved.

Field	Explanation
Description 1	<p>A description can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brief information about an item • A remark • An explanation
Supplier Number	<p>The address book number of the preferred provider of this item.</p> <p>You can enter the number for the supplier or you can have the system enter it each time that you receive the item from a supplier. You specify whether the system enters the supplier using processing options for Enter Receipts.</p>
Quantity Backordered	<p>The number of units backordered in Sales Order Management or in Work Order Processing, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p>
Quantity Canceled	<p>The number of units canceled in Sales Order or Work Order Processing, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p> <p>In manufacturing, this can also be the number of units scrapped to date.</p>
Quantity Shipped	<p>The number of units committed for shipment in Sales Order Entry, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p> <p>In the Manufacturing system and Work Order Time Entry, this field can indicate completed or scrapped quantities. The quantity type is determined by the type code entered.</p>
Tax Expl Code 1	<p>A user defined code (00/EX) that controls how a tax is assessed and distributed to the general ledger revenue and expense accounts.</p> <p>A single invoice can have both taxable and non-taxable items. The entire invoice, however, must have one tax explanation code.</p> <p>The Tax Explanation Code is used in conjunction with the Tax Rate Area and Tax Rules by Company to determine how the tax is calculated. Each transaction pay item can be defined with a different tax explanation code, including E, to exempt the pay item from calculating taxes.</p>

Field	Explanation																				
Tax Rate/Area	<p>A code that identifies a tax or geographic area that has common tax rates and tax distribution. The tax rate/area must be defined to include the tax authorities (for example, state, county, city, rapid transit district, or province), and their rates. To be valid, a code must be set up in the Tax Rate/Area table (F4008).</p> <p>Typically, U.S. sales and use taxes require multiple tax authorities per tax rate/area, whereas value-added tax (VAT) requires only one simple rate.</p> <p>The system uses this code to properly calculate the tax amount.</p>																				
Extended Cost	For accounts receivable and accounts payable, this is the invoice (gross) amount. For sales orders and purchase orders, this is the unit cost times the number of units.																				
Unit Cost	The amount per unit, derived by dividing the total cost by the unit quantity.																				
Wt U/M	<p>The unit of measure that indicates the weight of an individual item. Typical weight units of measure are:</p> <table><tr><td>GM</td><td>Gram</td></tr><tr><td>OZ</td><td>Ounce</td></tr><tr><td>LB</td><td>Pound</td></tr><tr><td>KG</td><td>Kilogram</td></tr><tr><td>CW</td><td>Hundredweight</td></tr><tr><td>TN</td><td>Ton</td></tr><tr><td>KG</td><td>Kilogram</td></tr><tr><td>CW</td><td>Hundredweight</td></tr><tr><td>TN</td><td>Ton</td></tr></table>	GM	Gram	OZ	Ounce	LB	Pound	KG	Kilogram	CW	Hundredweight	TN	Ton	KG	Kilogram	CW	Hundredweight	TN	Ton		
GM	Gram																				
OZ	Ounce																				
LB	Pound																				
KG	Kilogram																				
CW	Hundredweight																				
TN	Ton																				
KG	Kilogram																				
CW	Hundredweight																				
TN	Ton																				
Volume Unit of Measure	<p>The unit of measure for the cubic space occupied by an inventory item. Typical volume unit of measures are:</p> <table><tr><td>ML</td><td>Milliliter</td></tr><tr><td>OZ</td><td>Fluid Ounce</td></tr><tr><td>PT</td><td>Pint</td></tr><tr><td>LT</td><td>Liter</td></tr><tr><td>CF</td><td>Cubic Foot</td></tr><tr><td>CM</td><td>Cubic Meter</td></tr><tr><td>CY</td><td>Cubic Yard</td></tr><tr><td>CF</td><td>Cubic Foot</td></tr><tr><td>CY</td><td>Cubic Yard</td></tr><tr><td>CM</td><td>Cubic Meter</td></tr></table>	ML	Milliliter	OZ	Fluid Ounce	PT	Pint	LT	Liter	CF	Cubic Foot	CM	Cubic Meter	CY	Cubic Yard	CF	Cubic Foot	CY	Cubic Yard	CM	Cubic Meter
ML	Milliliter																				
OZ	Fluid Ounce																				
PT	Pint																				
LT	Liter																				
CF	Cubic Foot																				
CM	Cubic Meter																				
CY	Cubic Yard																				
CF	Cubic Foot																				
CY	Cubic Yard																				
CM	Cubic Meter																				
Unit Volume	The total volume of the items on an order line. This is determined by multiplying the quantity ordered in primary unit of measure by the item's unit volume.																				

Entering Substitute and Associated Items

If only part of the quantity for an item is available, you can use a substitute item to provide the quantity that you need to complete an order. For example, a customer orders a standard bike chain, but you find that they are backordered. You can specify a substitute item, such as an equivalent bike chain from another manufacturer, to fill the order.

Substituting an item on a sales order cancels any quantities for the original item that are backordered. After you add a substitute item, the original order line displays a “Canceled by Substitution” status, and the new order line displays a “Sold as a Substitute” status. Order lines show the split between the original and the substituted items.

If your company sells items in associated with each other, you can set up the system to prompt you before adding the associated items to the order. For example, you can associate a tire pump with a tire repair kit. When you enter the item number for tire pump on a sales order, the system displays a check mark in the row header and column to indicate that associated items exist. If you choose to add the associated item, such as the tire repair kit, the system adds the order detail line to the sales order.

Use substitutions to replace obsolete items on a sales order if the item and a replacement for it are set up in the Item Cross-Reference Revisions program. You activate the system to check for substitutions and associated and replacement items in the cross-reference processing options for the Sales Order Entry program.

You can set up substitute or complementary items during sales order entry. From Substitute/Complementary Items, access the Item X-Reference Revisions form and enter cross-reference information.

See *Setting Up Item Cross-References* in the *Inventory Management Guide*.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that cross-reference processing options are set in the Sales Order Entry program to display item cross-reference information for substitute, associated, and replacement items
- ☐ Verify that you have activated availability checking in the Sales Order Entry processing options.
- ☐ Verify that the customer accepts substitute items in Customer Billing Instructions.

► To enter substitute and associated items

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, complete the steps to enter the detail information.

After you enter a detail line, the system indicates additional information processing. For substitute and complementary items, the system displays a check mark in the row header and column.

2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, from the Row menu, choose Subst/Compl Items.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Sales Order Detail - [Substitute/Complementary Items]". The window has a menu bar (File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Window, Help) and a toolbar with icons for OK, Find, Can..., New..., Dis..., and Abo. Below the toolbar, there are several input fields: "Item Number" with the value "220", "Cross Reference Type" with the value "S", "Branch/Plant" with the value "M30", "Quantity Backordered" with a value of 0 and a unit of "EA", and "Unit Price" with the value "650.0000" and a unit of "EA". To the right of these fields is a "Substitutes" section with a "On Find" dropdown menu. The dropdown menu has two options: "Show ALL ITEMS" (selected) and "Show ALL AVAILABLE ITEMS". Below the input fields is a table with the following columns: "Quantity Ordered", "UM", "Item Number", "Unit Price", "PR UM", "Quantity Available", and "Branch Plant". The table is currently empty.

3. On Substitute/Complementary Items, choose either of the following option and click Find:
 - Show ALL ITEMS
 - Show ALL AVAILABLE ITEMS
4. Review the following fields:
 - Item Number
 - Cross Reference Type
 - Unit Price
 - Quantity Available

5. Choose the item that you want to substitute on the order line, complete the following field, and then click OK:
 - Quantity Ordered

Field	Explanation
Cross Reference Type	A user defined code (41/DT) that identifies the type of cross-reference set up for this customer. Examples of cross-reference types include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Substitutes • Replacements • Bar codes • Customer item numbers • Supplier item numbers
Item Number	The number assigned to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format.
Unit Price	The list or base price to be charged for one unit of this item. In sales order entry, all prices must be set up in the Base Price table (F4106).
Quantity Available	The number of units that are physically in stock. The system displays the quantity on-hand in the primary unit of measure.
Quantity Ordered	The quantity of units affected by this transaction.

Working with Subsystem Processing in Sales Order Entry

If you need the pick slip or invoice when you finish the order entry process, you can set up and activate the subsystem. You might want this instant print capability if you:

- Operate in an environment that has a high volume of same-day-delivery orders, and you want to create the pick slip as soon as you enter the order
- Have many counter sales, where the customer expects to leave your premises with both the merchandise and the invoice for that merchandise

Working with subsystem processing in sales order entry includes the following tasks:

- Setting up subsystem processing
- Ending subsystem processing

Subsystem processing is activated by processing options in Sales Order Entry (P4210). For example, in the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) that you use for printing pick slips immediately after order entry, you would set the value in the processing options to print pick slips and then identify the version of the Print Pick Slips program. You must set a value to activate the subsystem processing and then identify the corresponding subsystem version of the programs to run the following programs:

- Pick Slip Print (R42520)
- Print Subsystem Invoices (R42565)
- Online/Subsystem Commitments (R42997)
- Batch Transaction Editor (R4210Z)

Caution: You must stop the subsystem processing before performing end of day processing. You can also stop one or more jobs in the subsystem at any time.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Define default output queues for print programs. See the *Server and Workstation Administration Guide*.
- ☐ Create a new version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) specifically for subsystem processing.

To set up subsystem processing

On System Administration Tools (GH9011), choose Batch Versions (P98305)

1. On Work with Batch Versions, enter the appropriate batch application and click Find.
2. Select the subsystem version and specify data selection and sequence.
3. Click Submit and set the appropriate processing options.
4. In the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) for subsystem processing, enter the appropriate values to activate subsystem processing and identify the corresponding version in the processing options.

► **To end subsystem processing**

On System Administration Tools (GH9011), choose Work with Servers (P986116).

1. Locate and choose the appropriate server on which the subsystem is running.
2. From the Row menu, choose Subsystem Jobs.

You can track the status of each record that the system submits to the subsystem queue.

3. To end subsystem processing, choose the appropriate job and choose End Job from the Row menu.

Processing Options for Sales Order Entry

Processing Options for Sales Order Entry (P4210)

Defaults Tab

These processing options specify default values, such as the document type, that the Sales Order Entry program (P4210) uses when other values are not entered for the transaction.

Except for the required order type, the following defaults apply during order entry only. If you are inquiring on written records, the system retrieves orders based on the order information in the form header first, then it uses the parameters that you define in Inquiry processing options.

You can override information that appears on the header and detail forms. If information is hidden, the system processes orders based on the default information that is set up in the processing options or the master tables.

1. Order Type (Required)

Use this processing option to identify the type of document. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program.

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (00/DT).

If you use this version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) in other programs, the defaults for the program in which the original order is created override the sales order defaults. For example, if you use this version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) in Blanket Order Release, the order line type in the blanket order override the default line type in the sales order.

2. Line Type

Use this processing option to specify a code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. Line types controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces (General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management). Valid values are defined in the Line Type Constants Revisions form (P40205) and include:

S	Stock item.
J	Job cost.

N	Non-stock item.
D	Direct ship item.
F	Freight.
T	Text information.
M	Miscellaneous charges and credits.
W	Work order.

In the Line Type Constants Revisions form (P420205), you can set up a line type for non-stock items that retrieves information from the Item Master but does not commit quantities. The flag, Edit the Item Master for Non-Stock Items, is used when the Inventory Interface is set for non-stock item, such as D or N.

When you enter a direct ship item line type, the system uses a version of Purchase Order Entry (P4310) to create the purchase order that is related to this sales order. Specify the version in the Sales Order Entry (P4210), Versions tab, processing option for Purchase Order Entry.

When you enter a work order line type, the system uses the version of Work Order Entry (P48013) that you specify in the P4210, Versions tab, processing option for Work Order Entry to create the work order.

If you use this version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) in other programs, the defaults for the program in which the original order is created override the sales order defaults. For example, if you use this version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) in Blanket Order Release, the order line type in the blanket order override the default line type in the sales order.

3. Beginning Status

Use this processing option to indicate the current point in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of the beginning status and the next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

4. Override Next Status

Use this processing option to indicate the next step in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The override status is another allowed step in the process. The combination of the beginning status and the override next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

5. Line Number Increment

Use this processing option to specify the increment the system uses to automatically number your order lines. You should choose a whole number since other processes, such as kit entry, create decimal increments.

6. Reason Code

This memo only field is used for reporting purposes. You can enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (42/RC).

7. Transaction Unit of Measure

Use this processing option to specify the unit of measure for an item in an order. Valid values are defined in a user defined code table (00/UM).

If you do not enter a value in this processing option, the system retrieves the primary unit of measure that is defined in the Item Master (F4101).

8. Pricing Unit of Measure

Use this processing option to identify the value with which the system retrieves the unit of measure used to price the item. Valid values are:

Blank The system uses the sales price retrieval unit of measure, as defined in System Constants.

- 1 The system uses the transaction unit of measure as pricing unit of measure.

9. Address Book Revisions

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prompts users to add new customers to the Address Book system during sales order entry. If you enter a customer address book number in the Sold To or the Ship To field that the system does not recognize, the system does not allow you to enter an order. Valid values are:

Blank You must manually access Address Book Revisions and add customer information before entering an order.

- 1 The system automatically displays Address Book Revisions.

Whether you access Address Book Revisions from a Form menu option or choose the option to automatically add customers, the system uses the Address Book Revisions, version ZJDE0003.

10. Update Header to Detail

Use this processing option to specify whether the system updates corresponding information in the detail information form if you change the header information. Use Define Header Columns to Detail (P40HDR) table to identify the fields that system uses to update to the detail form. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not update information in Sales Order Detail Revisions unless you choose the Populate option from the Header to Detail form menu.

- 1 The system automatically updates the detail lines to reflect changes that you make to header information.

11. Header Branch/Plant

Use this processing option to specify the value with which the system selects the default branch/plant for tracking costs. You can set up header branch/plant defaults based on the user ID or terminal, or based on the business unit for the Ship To address in Address Book Revisions (P0101). Valid values are:

Blank The system uses the default location based on the user ID or terminal ID and displays the branch/plant in the order header form. You set up the default branch/plant based on your user or terminal ID in Default Location and Printers (P400951).

- 1 The system uses the business unit that you specify on the Address Book Revisions form for the customer to which you are shipping the goods.

12. Default Branch/Plant

Use this processing option to specify the default branch/plant that appears in the order header.

13. Order Template

Use this processing option to identify a standard template that applies to all customers. You can create a standard template that lists frequently ordered items. Although the system displays this template for every order, you do not have to apply any or all of the items during order entry.

Duplication Tab

These processing options specify values, such as the document type, that the Sales Order Entry program (P4210) uses when you duplicate a sales order. If you click Copy on the tool bar in the Customer Service Inquiry form, the system duplicates information based on your processing option selection.

1. Order Type

Use this processing option to identify the order type of duplicated document. When you click Copy on the tool bar in the Browse/Inquiry form, the system creates a duplicate order with this order type. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program.

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (00/DT).

If you leave this option blank, the system uses values from the P4210, Defaults tab, Order Type processing option in this version.

2. Beginning Status

Use this processing option to indicate the current status for the duplicated line. When you click Copy on the tool bar in the Browse/Inquiry form, the system creates a duplicate order at this status. You must use a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of the beginning status and the next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

3. Next Status

Use this processing option to indicate the next step in the order process for the duplicate order. You specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The override status is another allowed step in the process. The combination of the beginning status and the override next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

4. Copy Associated Text

Use this processing option to specify which messages and associated text are copied when you duplicate orders. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not copy associated text or messages.

- 1 The system copies messages and text that are attached to an order detail line.
- 2 The system copies messages or text attached to the header, as well as messages attached to the order detail line.
- 3 The system copies messages or text attached to the header, but not a particular order detail line.

Order Holds Tab

These processing options activate order hold processing. You must specify the hold code in any of the following processing options to activate order hold processing. You set up hold parameters in Order Hold Information (P42090). Multiple hold codes might result in multiple holds for a single order. You must release the sales order from all holds before the system processes the order.

1. Customer Credit Check

Use this processing option to identify a credit hold code the system uses to automatically compare the credit limit that you set up for your customer in Customer Master Information against the order and any outstanding balances in accounts receivable.

You define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold in Order Hold Information (P42090) and attach those conditions to a hold code. You

must specify the hold code in this processing option to activate order hold processing.

You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 42/HC.

2. Order Margin Check

Use this processing option to identify an order margin check the system uses to verify that all sales orders meet a specific margin.

The system uses the following equation to calculate margin:

$$(\text{Price} - \text{Cost}) / \text{Price} * 100 = \text{Margin}.$$

You can define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold in Order Hold Information (P42090) and attach those conditions to a hold code. You must specify the hold code in this processing option to activate the order hold processing.

You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 42/HC.

3. Order Line Margin Check

Use this processing option to identify an order line margin check the system uses to verify that all order detail lines meet a specific margin.

The system uses the following equation to calculate margin:

$$(\text{Price} - \text{Cost}) / \text{Price} * 100 = \text{Margin}.$$

You can define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold in Order Hold Information (P42090) and attach those conditions to a hold code. You must specify the hold code in this processing option to activate the order hold processing.

You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 42/HC.

4. Order Minimum Value Check

Use this processing option to identify a code the system uses to automatically compare the order minimum that you set up for your customer in Customer Billing Instructions against the order total.

You can define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold in Order Hold Information (P42090) and attach those conditions to a hold code. You must specify the hold code in this processing option to activate order hold processing.

You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 42/HC.

5. Order Maximum Value Check

Use this processing option to identify a code the system uses to automatically compare the order maximum that you set up for your customer in Customer Billing Instructions against the order total.

You can define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold and attach those conditions to a hold code. You must specify the hold code in this processing option to activate the hold code.

You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 42/HC.

6. Partial Order Hold

Use this processing option to identify a code the system uses to hold an entire order if quantity is not available to fill an order detail line. You can release a partial order hold at any time. The system can then backorder, cancel, or ship available quantities based on backorder information in the Customer Billing Instructions, Item Master Information, Item Branch/Plant Information and Branch/Plant Constants.

You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 42/HC.

7. Product Allocation Hold

Use this processing option to specify a hold code the system uses to restrict the amount of an item or item group that a customer or customer group can purchase.

You must set up the Product Allocation preference in the Preference Master (P40070), activate the preference through the Preference Selection (R40400), set up the hold code information in Order Hold Information (P42090) and then activate preference profile processing in the P4210, Versions, Preference Profile processing option. You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 42/HC.

8. Authorization Hold for Prepayment Processing

Use this processing option to identify the default value hold code for the Authorization Code in Prepayment Processing.

9. Settlement Hold for Prepayment Processing

Use this processing option to identify the default hold code for Settlement Prepayment Processing.

10. Order Process Hold

Use this processing option to identify a hold code that the system uses to prevent the order from going through various stages of sales order processing. This hold code does not have any special processing associated with it, such as Credit Check, Minimum/Maximum Margin Check and so forth. It can be used to create an additional approval step for sales orders.

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code (42/HC).

Display Tab

These processing options control whether the system displays certain types of sales order information, such as cost and price fields, closed lines and kits, and whether you can change the information.

1. Display or Hide Cost Fields

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system protects or hides cost fields. Valid values are:

Blank The cost fields appear on the form and the information can be overridden.

- 1 The system protect costs from change. If you protect the cost fields from changes, the costs are visible on the form, but cannot be changed.
- 2 The system hides the cost fields. If you hide the cost fields, the cost fields do not appear on the form. However, the system still writes cost information from the Item Cost Ledger (F4105) to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

The system retrieves default cost information from the Item Cost Ledger table (F4105).

2. Display or Hide Price Fields

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system protects or hides price fields. Valid values are:

Blank Price fields remain visible and entry-enabled. You can override the information for this order only.

- 1 The system protect prices from change. The unit and extended price will be visible on the form, but you will not be able to override the information.
- 2 The system does not display price information. If you hide the price fields, the system still writes the price information to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

3. Disable or Hide Price Related Fields

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system disable pricing related fields that affect the calculated price. Valid values are:

Blank Pricing related fields remain visible and entry-enabled.

- 1 The system displays pricing related fields but you can not override the information.

4. Disable or Hide Status Codes

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system protects or hides status codes. Valid values are:

Blank You can override the information for this order only. If you enter status codes, they must be set up as an other allowed status code in the Order Activity Rules for the document type and line type combination. Additionally, combination of the beginning status and the next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

- 1 The system protects status codes from change. If you protect the status codes from being changed, the current and next status will be visible on the form, but you will not be able to override the information.
- 2 The system hides the status codes. If you hide the status codes, the last and next status codes do not display. The system processes orders based on the current and next status that is set up in the Order Activity Rules.

5. Hide Closed Detail Lines

During inquiry, you might choose to review active order detail lines only. Use this processing option to indicate whether the system displays active, closed, or canceled detail lines. Valid values are:

Blank The system displays all order detail lines that will appear on the detail form.

- 1 Any line with a status of 999 will not appear on the detail form. However, the record for the line still remains in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) or Sales Order Detail – History (F42119).

6. Hide Credit Card Information

Use this processing option to indicate whether a user can access customer credit card information. Valid values are:

Blank You can access credit card information during order entry.

- 1 You can not access credit card information during order entry.

7. Hide Freight and Carrier Information

Use this processing option to specify whether the system displays freight and carrier information fields. You can standardize your freight and carrier information fields so that freight rate calculations are accurately calculated for the appropriate route, stop, and zone or that a preferred carrier is always responsible for delivering the item to a customer. Valid values are:

Blank Freight and carrier information fields does appear on the order detail form and can be overridden.

- 1 Freight and carrier information fields do not appear on the order detail form. The system processes orders based on the default information that is set up in the Customer Billing Instructions or the Item Master Information.

8. Hide Commission Information

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system displays commission information. Valid values are:

Blank You can review commission information and override default information that affects the current order only.

- 1 The system does not display commission information. Orders are processed based on the default information that is set up in Commissions Table (F42005).

9. Hide Kit Components

Use this processing option to indicate whether kit components appear on the Sales Order Detail Revisions form either after you select features and options in the kit or when you re-inquire on the order. Valid values are:

Blank The system displays the parent item, as well as selected features and options, when you re-inquire on the order.

- 1 After you select the features and options during order entry or when you re-inquire on the order, the system displays only the parent line. However, the parent line and all component lines are written to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

Commitment Tab

Use these processing options to activate availability checking and commitments to generic buckets. Based on your item availability calculations for each branch/plant, commitment calculation affects how the system calculates backorders, cancellations, and customer delivery time.

To determine how the system calculates item availability, you define the factors that subtract from or add to the available quantity of an item. Factors that subtract from an item's availability include sales orders and work orders. Factors that add to an item's availability include purchase orders that are in transit. You define the various factors on the Availability Calculations form, which you can access from Branch/Plant Revisions.

1. Activate Availability Checking

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system verifies the available quantity for requested items. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not perform availability checking. You might choose this option for blanket or quote order entry.

- 1 The system performs availability checking. If quantity is unavailable, the system issues a warning that the quantity for this item exceeds the available quantity. The system automatically backorders or cancels any quantity that is unavailable, based on backorder information that is set up in Item Master, Item Branch/Plant, Branch/Plant Constants and Customer Billing Instructions.
- 2 The system performs availability checking. If quantity is unavailable, the system issues a warning that the quantity for this item exceeds the available quantity. However, the system does not backorder or cancel any quantity. The quantity remains shippable.

You can allow backorders by item, or by customer, and specify whether the backorders are allowed at a specific branch/plant. To backorder an item, you must set the option, Backorders Allowed, in Item Master, Item Branch/Plant, Branch/Plant Constants and Customer Billing Instructions. If you allow backorders, the system holds the order detail line until quantity is available. If you do not allow backorders, the system cancels the order detail line.

After the system processes an order detail line, you can review backordered, canceled, and shipped information in the appropriate fields in the order detail lines.

2. Commit to Quantity 1 or Quantity 2

Use this processing option to indicate the generic buckets to which the system commits quantities. Commonly used for orders that do not affect your item availability, you can use these buckets to anticipate demand or forecast future sales. For example, you can set up a version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) for quote orders and commit quantities to bucket, Quantity 1. For blanket orders, you can set up another version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) and commit quantities to bucket, Quantity 2. You can review availability information on the Summary Availability form. Valid values are:

Blank The system commits the quantity based on the factors that you define for sales orders in the Availability Calculations form in the Branch/Plant Constants.

- 1 The system commits quantities to bucket Quantity 1.
- 2 The system commits quantities to bucket Quantity 2.

You determine how the system calculates item availability by defining the factors that subtract from the available quantities (such as sales or work orders), add to the available quantities (such as purchase orders that are in transit), or do not affect available quantities (such as blanket and quote orders) in Branch/Plant Constants.

If the system neither adds nor subtracts quantities from these orders from available inventory, clear the Sales Order Entry (P4210), Commitment tab, Activate Availability Checking processing option so that the system does not perform availability checking.

3. Display Supply and Demand Inquiry Form

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system automatically displays the Supply/Demand Inquiry form when quantity for an item is not available.

Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not display the Supply and Demand Inquiry form and backorders or cancels the order detail line when quantity is not available. However, you can manually access this information from the Sales Order Detail Revisions form to monitor information about how many items are on demand, available in supply, and available to be promised.
- 1 The system automatically displays the Supply and Demand Inquiry form when quantity is not available. The system uses the version of the Supply and Demand Inquiry form that you enter in the corresponding processing option on the Versions tab.

Currency Tab

These processing options allow you to specify information about the tolerance percentage, currency code for As If amounts, and the As Of date for processing the exchange rate for As If amounts.

1. Tolerance Limit

Use this processing option to enter a tolerance limit for multi-currency orders. If you enter an option in Set Daily Transaction Rates (F00151) to allow spot rates, you can manually enter or override an exchange rate during order entry. If the currency rate that you enter is outside this tolerance limit, the system issues a warning.

2. Currency Code

Use this processing option to indicate the currency code in which the system displays transactions.

3. "As Of" Date

Use this processing option to indicate the date with which the system retrieves the exchange rate for the As-If currency. If you leave this option blank, the system uses the system date.

Process Tab

These processing options control whether the Sales Order Entry program performs as follows:

- Allows changes to orders that are past a certain point in the process
- Activates subsystem processing
- Displays the Sales Order Header Revisions form before the Sales Order Detail Revisions form
- Prompts you to review order information before the system creates an order
- Allows automatic order-repricing to recalculate order totals
- Activates order template processing based on the sold to or ship to address
- Allows orders to be processed against existing agreements, blanket and quote orders
- Indicates whether the system applies the specified markup to the unit cost or price

1. Status Code Limit for Changes

Use this processing option to indicate a point at which you can not make changes to an order detail line. If you enter an order in a version of Sales Order Entry in which there is a defined status code limit, you can not re-inquire and make changes to the order if the order is past this status.

If you enter an order in a version of Sales Order Entry where there is a defined status code limit, but re-inquire on another version in which this processing option is not activated, you can make changes to the order regardless of the status.

You must specify a user defined code (00/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type combination.

2. Subsystem Processing

To print the pick slip or invoice immediately after the order entry process, you can set up and activate the subsystem. Valid values are:

- 1 The system uses this version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) for subsystem processing to print pick slips and activate the subsystem processing. Identify the corresponding version of the program in the Sales Order Entry (P4210), Versions, Pick Slip Print processing options.
- 2 The system uses this version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) for subsystem processing to print invoices and activate the subsystem processing. Identify the corresponding version of the program in the Sales Order Entry (P4210), Versions, Invoice Print processing options.
- 3 The system uses this version of Sales Order Entry for subsystem commitment processing and does not commit inventory until you complete the order. After you accept the order, the system processes the order through the subsystem batch program while you enter another order.
- 4 The system uses this version of Sales Order Entry for online commitment processing and the system does not process order detail lines asynchronously. After you enter the order, the system processes commitments for the complete order before you can enter another order. This allows you to review commitments online as the system processes availability for each order detail line in the order.
- 5 The system uses this version of Sales Order Entry for entering and processing orders in a store and forward mode. Identify the appropriate version of the program, Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor (R4210Z), in the Sales Order Entry (P421), Versions tab, Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor (R4210Z) processing option.

3. Display Header of Detail

Use this processing option to determine whether the system first displays the Sales Order Header Revisions form or the Sales Order Detail Revisions when you add an order. You can enter header information before detail information and edit default information that affects the order. Valid values are:

- Blank The system displays Sales Order Detail Revisions form first. It creates an order header record based on the branch/plant and customer information that you set up for the Sold To and Ship To address entered in the detail information form. You can access Sales Order Header Revisions to override default information, as necessary.
- 1 The system displays Sales Order Header Revisions form first. You review or override the default order information the system enters for the Sold To and Ship To addresses, such as billing instructions, delivery dates, and payment terms.

4. Auto Order Repricing

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system uses auto order repricing to re-calculate order totals. The system evaluates the items and quantities and makes adjustment based on the entire order. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not use auto-order repricing.

- 1 The system uses auto order repricing to re-calculate order totals. The system uses the version of Standard Order/Basket Reprice (FUTURE) or Advanced Order/Reprice (R42750) that you specify in the Sales Order Entry (P4210), Versions tab, Basket/Order Reprice processing option. If you are not using the Advanced Pricing system, you must enter a version of Standard Order/Basket Reprice. If you use Advanced Pricing, you must enter a version of Advanced Order/Reprice (R42750).

5. Display Before Accept Prompt

You use this processing option to indicate whether the system prompts you to review the order before creating a record in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). Review is a good way to ensure accuracy when you enter or change orders. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not prompt you to review the order, but creates a record in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) when you click OK.

- 1 The system displays the order, order total, taxes and applicable discounts for you to review the order before creating a record in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). You can return to Sales Order Detail Revisions to make changes. The system does not create a record in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) until you choose the option from the Form menu to accept the order.

6. Order Template Processing

Use this processing option to indicate which template the system uses during order entry. A template contains information about frequently ordered items. You create and assign order templates to speed up the order entry process. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not use order template processing.

- 1 The system displays the order template that you have assigned to the Sold To address in the Customer Billing Instructions.
- 2 The system displays the order template that you have assigned to the Ship To address in the Customer Billing Instructions.

You can set up a customer template based on order history in Customer Template Rebuild (R42815) or you can create a template for your customer in Customer Template Revisions (P4015). Assign an order template to the Sold To address and the Ship To address in the Customer Billing Instructions.

7. Blanket/Quote Order Processing

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system processes sales orders against blanket or quote orders. Use a quote order when a customer requests pricing information but is not ready to commit to a sales order. Use a blanket order when a customer agrees to purchase a quantity of an item over a specified period of time. When you use blanket or quote order processing, the

system locates applicable blanket or quote orders from which you can create either multiple sales orders for partial quantities or a single sales order when you release the complete quantity. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not use blankets or quote order processing.

- 1 The system processes blanket/quote orders based on the Ship To address.
- 2 The system processes blanket/quote orders based on the Sold To address.

You can have multiple blanket or quote orders for the Sold To address or the Ship To address. After you enter a detail line, the system displays a check mark in the row header and column to indicate a blanket or quote order exists. You can view the blanket or quote order on the Blanket Release form and choose the appropriate order from which the system can create a related sales order.

8. Agreement Processing

Use this processing to indicate whether the system processes sales orders against agreements in the Agreement Management System. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not use agreement processing.

- 1 The system searches all available agreements and automatically assigns the sales order to an agreement.
- 2 The system searches all available agreements, and displays a check mark in the row header and column to indicate multiple agreements exists. On the Agreement Selection Window, the system displays agreements that meet the criteria.
- 3 The system searches on all available agreements and automatically assigns the sales order to the agreement with the earliest expiration date.

When you enter a sales order, the system selects agreements that meet the following criteria:

- The item on the sales order and agreement must be the same.
- The Due To on the agreement must be P (partner), which indicates that product is due to the partner for this product and agreement.
- The Sold To or Ship To on the sales order must be the same as the Destination on the agreement.
- The detail branch/plant or its owner on the sales order must be the source on the agreement.
- The date on the sales order is within the active date range for the agreement.
- For agreements that have quantity control activated, the quantity on the sales order does not exceed the quantity remaining to be fulfilled before the system selects the agreement.

9. Customer Self-Service Functionality

This code indicates whether you are creating an order in standard order entry mode or Customer Self-Service mode. If you choose Customer Self-Service mode, you can select items from multiple applications before using Sales Order Entry (P4210) to create an order. You might use this feature if you are entering orders in a web environment. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not use shopping cart functionality.
1 The system uses shopping cart functionality.

10. Generate Proposal Name

Use this processing option to indicate the name of the document that is automatically generated upon entry into a word processor based on a template document, boilerplates and text substitution.

11. Cost or Base Price Markup

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system applies a markup based on cost or price. You use branch sales markups to set up the additional costs that are associated with an interbranch or transfer sales order. The transfer price is the amount the supplying branch/plant is selling the item to the receiving branch/plant. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not apply an additional cost, but retrieves the cost defined in the Item Cost Ledger (F4105).
1 The system retrieves the markup from the Branch Sales Markup table (P3403) and re-calculates the transfer price with the included markup. This markup is applied to the inventory cost.
2 The system applies the base price that is set by the supplying branch/plant, defined in Base Price Revisions table (F4106).

12. Ship and Debit Processing

Use this processing option to specify whether the system will use subsystem or batch processing (R45100) to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements. Valid values are:

- Blank Do not use subsystem or batch processing
1 Use subsystem processing
2 Use batch processing

Cross Ref Tab

These processing options specify the cross-reference types for substitute, replacement, complementary, and associated items. You create the cross-reference information in Item Cross Reference Revisions program (P4104). Cross-references associate your internal item numbers with other internal item numbers or those from other entities.

1. Substitute Items

Use this processing option to identify the code with which the system searches cross-reference information for substitute items. Substitute items are goods which are sold in place of the original item when you do not have the quantity on hand for the original item. This code is typically S in the Item Cross Reference Revisions program (P4104). You can only use substitutions for customers who, in the Customer Billing Instructions, allow substitutes.

If you have a substitute item, the system displays a checkmark in the row header and column. Optionally, you can access Substitute/Complementary Items form to sell the substitute item in place of the original item. If you enter a quantity for the substitute item, the system creates a second order detail line with the substitute item information.

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (41/DT).

2. Complementary Items

Use this processing option to identify the code with which the system searches cross-reference information for complementary items. Complementary items are recommended items as part of the sale. Complementary items are not free goods, but are sold in addition to the original item. This code is typically C in the Item Cross Reference Revisions program (P4104).

If you have a complementary item, the system displays a checkmark in the row header and column. Optionally, you can access Substitute/Complementary Items form to sell the complementary item with the original item. If you enter a quantity for the complementary item, the system creates a second order detail line with the complementary item information.

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (41/DT).

3. Replacement Items

Use this processing option to identify the code with which the system searches cross-reference information for replacement items. Replacement items are goods which are sold in place of the original item when you or your suppliers discontinue an item. The replacement code is typically R in Item Cross Reference Revisions program (P4104). You can only create replacement

cross-references for those items whose stocking type in the Item Master or Item Branch Plant is O (obsolete) or U (use up).

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (41/DT).

4. Pricing for Substitute Items

Use this processing option to indicate which price the system retrieves when you sell substitute items. Substitute items are goods which are sold in place of the original item when you do not have the quantity available for the original item. If you substitute an item, you can charge the customer the price for the item that was originally ordered or you can use the price that you set up for the substitute item. Valid values are:

Blank The system uses the price of the original item, defined in the Base Price Revisions table (F4106).

1 The system retrieves the price of the substitute item, defined in Base Price Revisions table (F4106).

Versions Tab

These processing options specify the version that the system uses when you choose the associated row or form exit on Sales Order Header or Detail forms.

Versions control how programs display information. Therefore, for a version to meet your needs, you might need to indicate specific versions in the processing options.

1. Pick Slip Print (R42520)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Print Pick Slip program (P42520) that the system uses to process pick slips through the subsystem after order entry. Ensure that you specify the version that is set up for subsystem processing.

2. Supply and Demand Inquiry (P4021)

Use this processing option to identify the the version of Supply and Demand Inquiry (P4021) that the system uses to verify commitments and availability. The system calls this version whether you automatically display this form when quantity is not available or manually access Supply and Demand Inquiry from from the Sales Order Detail Revisions form. If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

To automatically display the Supply and Demand Inquiry form when quantity is not available, choose the appropriate option in the Sales Order Entry (P4210), Commitment tab, Display Supply and Demand Inquiry processing option.

3. Pick Slip Print On Demand (R42520)

Use this processing option to specify which version of the Print Pick Slip On Demand program (R42520) is available to you from the Customer Service Inquiry form. If you leave this processing option blank, the system uses version ZJDE0003.

4. Order/Basket Reprice (R42570)

Use this processing to identify the version of Standard Order/Basket Reprice (FUTURE) or Advanced Order/Reprice (R42750) that the system uses to calculate order totals. If you do not use Advanced Pricing, you must enter a version of Standard Order/Basket Reprice.

If you use Advanced Pricing, you must enter a version of Advanced Order/Reprice (R42750). If left blank and you have set the Sales Order Entry (P4210), Process tab, Auto order repricing processing option to auto order reprice, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

5. Online Invoice Inquiry (P42230)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Online Invoice Inquiry program (P42230) that the system uses to display billing information. If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

If you inquire by sales order number, the system displays open lines that have not gone through sales update. If you inquire by invoice number, the system displays only those lines that have been assigned the invoice number, either through the Print Invoices (R42565) or Sales Update (R42800).

6. Preference Profile (P40070)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Preference Profiles program (P42520) that the system uses to process orders based on preferences that you activated in the Preference Selection form. If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

The Preference Profiles program does not include the inventory commitment preference.

7. Check Price and Availability (P41261)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Check Price and Availability that the system uses to retrieve price adjustment information. If you do not use the Advanced Pricing system to set up price adjustments, you must enter a version of Standard Check Price and Availability (P41261). If you set up advanced price adjustments in the Advanced Pricing system, you must enter a version of Advanced Check Price and Availability (P4074).

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001 of the program that is appropriate to your system.

8. Purchase Order Entry (P4310)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Purchase Order Entry (P4310) that the system uses to create related direct ship and transfer orders. The system does not use all default information that is set up in the processing options for Purchase Order Entry. For example, when the system creates the related purchase order, the sales order line type overrides the default purchase order line type.

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

9. Sales Ledger Inquiry (P42025)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Sales Ledger Inquiry (P42025) that the system uses to create a credit order from a previous order. The system retrieves order information from the Sales Order Detail Ledger (F42199).

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

10. Bill of Material Inquiry (P30200)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Bill of Material Inquiry (P30200) that the system uses to retrieve information all features and options that are related to the kit. In the distribution systems, a bill of material is used to locate and assemble a group of items.

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

11. Work Order Entry (P4801)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Work Order Entry (P4801) that the system uses to create work orders. When you enter a sales order with a line type W, the system automatically generates a work order in the Manufacturing system.

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

12. Print Invoice (R42565)

Use this processing option to identify the subsystem version of the Print Invoice program (R42565) for printing invoices through the subsystem. You must activate the processing option in the Process tab, Subsystem Processing to print invoices and specify the version of the Print Invoice program (R42565).

13. Online/Subsystem Commitment (R42997)

Use this processing option to identify the version of the Commitments program the system uses for either online or subsystem commitments. You must activate the appropriate processing option in the Process tab, Subsystem processing for either online or subsystem commitments and specify the version of the corresponding Commitments program.

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

14. Configured Items (P32942)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Configured Items (P32942) that the system uses when you enter an order for a configured item.

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

15. Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor (R4210Z)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor (R4210Z) that the system uses when you enter sales orders in a store and forward environment.

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

16. Credit Check (P42050)

Use this processing option to identify the version of Credit Check (P42050) that the system uses when you access the Credit Check program from the Form menu in Sales Header Revisions. You can review information about a customer's account and credit status. You can compare the customer's total accounts receivable and open orders to the customer's current credit limit assigned in the Customer Master table to determine if the credit limit has been exceeded.

If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

17. Work with Shipments (P4915)

Use this processing option to specify the version of the Work with Shipments program (P4915). If you leave this option blank, the system uses ZJDE0001.

18. Customer Master (P03013)

Use this processing option to specify the version that the system uses for Customer Master Information (P03013) when you chooses Receivables from the Form menu.

If you leave this option blank, the system uses ZJDE0001.

19. Ship and Debit (R45100)

Use this processing option to specify the version of subsystem or batch processing (R45100) that the system uses to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements.

Preferences Tab

These processing options determine whether preference profile processing is activated for this version of Sales Order Entry. A preference is a piece of information that you define for a customer, an item, or any combination of customer (sold to, ship to, or parent addresses), customer group, item, and item group. The system uses preferences to override normal customer and item setup information when you enter orders.

To work with preferences, you must set two separate processing options in Sales Order Entry (P4210). Under the Preferences tab, activate the Preference Profile Processing option. Under the Versions tab, specify the version of the Preference Profiles program (P42520) that you have set up to select the preferences that you want to run.

1. Preference Profile Processing

Use this processing option to specify that you want to use preference profile processing. If you use preference profile processing, you must use preference profile processing in all of the versions of order entry programs. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not use preference profile processing.

1 The system uses preference profile processing.

After you activate the Preference Profile Processing processing option, specify the version of Preferences Selection (R40400) in Sales Order Entry (P4210), Versions tab, Preferences processing option. In that version of Preferences Selection (R40400), select the preferences in the processing options that you want to run.

Preference Selection (R40400) does not include Inventory Commitment or Print Message preferences.

2. Inventory Commitment Preference

To use the inventory commitment preference, you must specify that you want the inventory commitment preference independent of other preference processing. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not use the inventory commitment preference.

1 Use inventory commitment preference processing.

Use the Inventory Commitment preference to:

- Specify that each order line be filled from one or more branch/plants based on customer/customer group or item/item group.
- Specify the branch/plants from where you want products shipped.
- Determine the percentage of the order that must exist at a branch/plant before the quantity is filled at that branch/plant.
- Specify the mode of transport and carrier information in the sales detail line.

Transfers Tab

These processing options determine whether transfer order processing is activated for this version of Sales Order Entry. You enter a transfer order to ship inventory between branch/plants within your company and to maintain an accurate on-hand inventory amount. When you create a transfer order, the system does the following:

- Creates a purchase order for the shipping location that represents the supplier
- Creates a sales order for the receiving location that represents the customer

1. Activate Transfer Order Entry

Use this processing option to indicate transfer order entry. When you enter transfer orders, you must enter a From Branch/Plant and a To Branch/Plant, as well as information for the related purchase order. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not process transfer order information.

- 1 The system displays a transfer order entry form on which you enter the origination and destination branch/plants, as well as purchase order information, such as a purchase order number, landed cost rule, and exchange rates for the sales and purchase orders. The system automatically creates a purchase order based on the version that you specify in Sales Order Entry (P4210), Versions, Purchase Order Entry processing option.

2. Sales and Purchase Order Taxable

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system applies taxes to sales and purchase orders. Valid values are:

Blank The system retrieves tax explanation codes and rate areas from the Customer Master Information. For direct ship, transfer orders, or sales orders with alternate Sold To and Ship To addresses, the system retrieves

the tax explanation code from the Sold To address and the tax rate/area from the Ship To address, but this rate can be overridden.

- 1 The system does not reference the sales taxable or purchase taxable flags that you set up in the Item Branch Plant Information.

3. Mandatory Landed Cost

Use this processing option to indicate whether a landed cost for a related purchase order is required. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not require you to enter a landed cost.

- 1 You must enter a landed cost before entering the order. If you do not enter a landed cost, the system issues an error.

Order Inquiry Tab

These processing options specify how you want the system to search for orders on the Customer Service Inquiry form.

1. Beginning Status

Use this processing option to indicate the current point in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of the beginning status and next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

During order inquiry, the system does not display orders that are not within the beginning and next status range.

2. Next Status

Use this processing option to indicate the next step in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of the beginning status and next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

During order inquiry, the system does not display orders that are not within the beginning and next status range.

3. Search on Last or Next Status

During order inquiry, the system does not display orders that are not within the beginning and next status range. Use this processing option to specify whether the search is based on either the beginning status or the next status.

4. Date Range

Use this processing option to indicate the date value with which the system searches on orders. Valid values are:

- 1 The system retrieves orders based on the order entry date.
- 2 The system retrieves orders based on the promised ship date that is populated during order entry.
- 3 The system retrieves orders based on the original promised date that is populated during order entry.
- 4 The system retrieves orders based on the date that the order was confirmed for shipment. The system retrieves only those orders that have been processed through the Shipment Confirmation (P4205) program.
- 5 The system retrieves orders based on the date that the invoice was printed for the customer. The system retrieves only those orders that have been processed through the Print Invoice (R42565) program.
- 6 The system retrieves orders based on the date that you enter in the memo-only, cancel field during order entry.
- 7 The system retrieves orders based on the G/L date. The system retrieves only those orders that have been processed through the Sales Update (R42800) program.
- 8 The system retrieves orders based on the date that is entered as the promised deliver date during order entry.

5. Display Text Lines

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system displays text lines. Text lines are order detail lines with a line type T, characterized by the code in the Order Line Type Revisions that contains memo-only information. When you inquire on an order, it might or might not be necessary to view text line information. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not display text lines. If you created text lines during order entry, the text lines remain in the Sales Order Detail (F4211) table.
- 1 The system display text lines.

6. Display Backordered/Canceled Lines

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system displays backordered or canceled lines when you inquire on an order. Valid values are:

- 1 The system displays backordered lines.
- 2 The system displays canceled lines.
- 3 The system displays both backordered and canceled lines.
- 4 The system does not display either backordered or canceled lines.

7. Customer Cross Reference Type

Use this processing option to indicate the code with which the system searches cross-reference information using a customer item number. Cross-references associate your internal item numbers with the customer's item numbers. You set up items in Item Master Information (F4101) and create the cross-reference information in Item Cross Reference Revisions program (P4104).

You must enter a value that has been set up in UDC 41/DT.

Warehouse Tab

The following processing options are used in conjunction with the Warehouse Management system. If you use Warehouse Management, you can specify the mode for pick request processing, and the version of the Print Pick Request program (P46171).

1. Request Processing Mode

Use this processing option to create a pick request in the Warehouse Management system. If you use Warehouse Management, the system can generate a pick request, then process the request through the subsystem. A pick request is used to process a suggestion to pick the inventory for an order from a particular location. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not generate pick requests.

- 1 The system generates requests only.
- 2 The system generates requests and creates the pick request through the subsystem.

2. Subsystem Print Pick Request

Use this processing option if you generate warehouse management pick requests through the subsystem. You must specify the version, Print Pick Request (P46171), that is set up for subsystem processing.

3. Override Next Status

Use this processing option to indicate an alternative step in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of the beginning status and the override status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

Store & Fwd Tab

Use the following processing option to identify the mode in which you enter orders. You can choose one of the following four modes to process orders:

Sales order entry mode	The system performs inventory commitments, preferences, and verifies order information against the master tables.
Partial edit store and forward mode	The system does not perform preference processing or inventory commitments, and only performs necessary processing
Full edit store and forward mode	The system does not perform preference processing or inventory commitments, but performs order processing.
Price only store and forward mode	The system only processes information that is necessary for pricing.

1. Mode

Use this processing option to indicate whether you are entering orders in a store and forward environment. Valid values are:

Blank Sales order entry mode.

- 1 Partial edit store and forward mode.
- 2 Full edit store and forward mode.

WorkFlow Tab

Future use.

1. E-mail Work Order Planner

Future use.

2. E-mail Buyer

Future use.

Multiples Tab

Future Use.

1. Multiple Schedule

Future use.

2. Schedule Line (FUTURE)

Future use.

Interbranch Tab

These processing options identify the order types for interbranch orders. You can use an interbranch order to fill an order for a customer from a branch/plant other than the selling branch/plant. This is helpful if your company sells from one location but fills and ships orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse. An intercompany order is an order that tracks the transactions between the supplying and selling branch/plant.

1. Intercompany Invoice

An intercompany order is an order that keeps track of the transactions between the supplying and selling branch/plant. While the interbranch order is the sales order to your customer, the intercompany order is the sales order to the supplying branch/plant to fill the customer's sales order. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not create intercompany invoice.

1 The system creates intercompany invoice.

2. Interbranch Order Types

Use this processing option to identify the order types for interbranch orders. Use an interbranch order to fill a sales order from a branch/plant other than the selling branch/plant. This is helpful if your company sells from one location but fills and ships orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse.

You must enter a user defined code (00/DT) that identifies the type of document. Enter multiple codes without punctuation or spaces. To accurately update all interbranch orders, you should also enter all order types for interbranch orders in Sales Update (R42800), Interbranch tab, Order Type for Interbranch Orders processing options.

Interop Tab

These processing options control whether the system captures transaction information prior to changes to a transaction and whether the system performs export processing.

1. Transaction Type

Use this processing option to enter a transaction type for the export transaction.

If you leave this field blank, the system does not perform export processing.

2. Before/After Image Processing

Use this processing option to specify whether the system captures a record of a transaction before the transaction was changed or whether the system captures records of a transaction before and after a transaction was changed.

1 Capture two records; one record of the transaction before it was changed and one record after it was changed.

Blank Capture a record of a transaction after the transaction was changed.

Prepayment Tab

These processing options control whether you can record payment information for orders.

Prepayment of an order takes place when a seller receives a form of payment from the customer at the time of order entry. There are many types of prepayments that a customer can use, such as cash, check, and credit card. When you make any type of prepayment, the system records transaction information for each order detail line, and indicates the payment on the invoice.

During order entry, you can validate credit information when you accept a credit card as a means of payment. By way of your middleware solution, the system retrieves authorization and updates the prepayment transaction in OneWorld. If the authorization is unsuccessful, then the order is put on authorization hold and the system does not allow further order processing.

When a settlement is performed, your middleware solution release funds from a customer's account to the merchant account. If the settlement transactions contain errors, the order is put on settlement hold and the system does not allow further order processing.

In order for either hold to be removed, the authorization or settlement process must be successfully run in batch mode of the appropriate prepayment transaction version.

1. Prepayment Processing

Use this processing option to determine whether to activate Prepayment Processing.

Valid values are:

Blank The system does not update Prepayment Processing files and you can not access the Prepayment window from the row exit.

- 1 The system does update the Prepayment Processing files and you can access the Prepayment window.

2. Process Authorization

Use this processing option to identify the method of processing. Valid values are:

- 1 The system processes the authorization interactively.
- 2 The system processes the authorization in batch or subsystem mode, based on the version.

Blank The system does not process the authorization.

3. Process Settlement

Use this processing option to identify the settlement processing method. Valid values are:

- 1 The system processes the settlement interactively.
- 2 The system processes the settlement in batch or subsystem mode, based on the version.

Blank The system does not process the settlement.

4. Authorize Prepayment Transaction Version

Use this processing option to identify the version of Authorize Prepayment Transaction.

5. Settle Prepayment Transaction Version

Use this processing option to identify the version of Settle Prepayment Transaction.

6. Override Next Status

Authorized Lines

Use this processing option to identify the override Next Status Code for order lines that have been successfully authorized during the credit card process.

Settled lines

Use this processing option to identify the override Next Status Code for order lines that have been successfully settled in the credit card process.

Generating a Proposal

Sales proposals contain information such as sales configurations, quotations, company financial highlights, product information, pricing and discount information and product availability. You can use an automatic document generation system to pull the various pieces of information from different departments, such as Sales, Accounting, Marketing, Inventory. You can quickly and accurately put together a formal sales proposal, which you can then modify, and regenerate easily and efficiently.

Generating proposals includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up proposal components
- ☐ Defining documents for sales proposal generation
- ☐ Generating a proposal during order entry

The automatic document generation system runs in OneWorld only and is not supported in WorldSoftware. You must have Microsoft Word 97 in order to work with the automatic document generation system. The automatic document generation system runs on a client Windows 95 or Windows NT environment.

Setting Up Proposal Components

You set up proposal components to provide common information and to promote a consistent style and format which allows salespeople to gather information efficiently and put together an accurate, formal sales proposal.

Setting up proposal components includes the following tasks:

- Setting up proposal templates
- Setting up boilerplate text
- Setting up sales quotes for proposals
- Setting up text substitution tags

Setting Up Proposal Templates

When you put together a sales proposal, you can develop consistent pieces of information that can be used for all your sales proposals. These can be used as templates to provide common information that promote consistency in the style and format. You can create multiple templates for different proposal types.

You must create the proposal template as a Microsoft Word document (.doc). When you create the proposal template document, you insert “bookmarks” to identify places in the document where specific boilerplate text is inserted. Microsoft Word supports multimedia objects, such as media clips, and embedded objects, such as image documents, and Excel spreadsheets.

After you create a proposal template, the system uses the template name you specified in the processing options for Generated Document Revisions (P00391). When you choose to generate proposals, the system only uses the template name that is assigned in the processing options, and retrieves boilerplate text based on the branch/plant, customer information, and item information in the order. Header information in automatic document generation also originates from the specified template.

Before You Begin

- ☐ You must set up the proposal template name in user defined code table (00/GD)
- ☐ You must save the proposal template as a Microsoft Word document (.doc)

Review the appropriate Microsoft documentation for more information about creating documents, bookmarks, embedded objects and other topics related to Microsoft products

- ☐ Set the processing options and run the GT0039 Media Object Conversion program to convert data structures of your media objects to the Address Book or Item Master, for example.
- ☐ Setup category codes for your media objects to further define your bookmarks. See *Enabling OneWorld to Use Media Objects* in the *OneWorld System Administration guide* for more information.

Setting Up Boilerplate Text

Boilerplate text consists of information pieces that are retrieved from different systems and merged into the final document. For example, you can retrieve pricing and discount information specific to the customer and product, along with specific product information, shipping information, or customer payment terms.

You must create the boilerplate text as a Microsoft Word document (.doc) or a Rich Text Format (.rtf) file. After you create the boilerplate text, you can attach boilerplate text to the bookmarks in the Generated Document Revisions program (P00391).

Based on information in the Sales Order Header (F4201) and Sales Order Detail (F4211) tables, the system retrieves boilerplates that have been attached as OLE Word documents to any media object attachments for the following:

- Item
- Customer
- Company
- Branch/Plant

Before You Begin

- ☐ You must save the boilerplate text as a Microsoft Word document (.doc) or Rich Text Format (*.rtf) document

Review the appropriate Microsoft documentation for more information about creating documents, bookmarks, embedded objects and other topics related to Microsoft Word

- ☐ You must have attached the boilerplate text as OLE

Setting up Sales Quotes for Proposals

A sales quote is a specific type of boilerplate text that you can merge into a proposal. A sales quote contains product availability and pricing information that is integral to successful contract negotiations. As with other boilerplate text, use Microsoft Word bookmarks to identify the locations where you want to insert the sales quote in the proposal.

In OneWorld, you can enter the sales quote in the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) that is set up for quote orders. The system stores the quote order information in the Sales Order Header (F4201) and Sales Order Detail (F4211) tables.

Depending upon how you have set your processing options, the system can assign quantities in quote orders to one of the buckets, Other Quantity 1 or 2. Depending upon your item availability definition, the system might not commit quantities in the commitment buckets until you create a sales order from the quote order.

To create a sales order from a quote order that is used during contract negotiations, use Quote Order Release program (P420111).

See Also

- *Working with Quote Orders* for more information about entering quote orders and creating sales orders from quotes
- *Enabling OneWorld to Use Media Objects in the OneWorld System Administration* guide for more information about using event rules to process media objects.

Setting Up Text Substitution Tags

You can retrieve data directly from OneWorld tables and insert the information directly into the proposal by using text substitution tags. Text substitution tags identify OneWorld fields in user defined locations in the Microsoft Word boilerplate document and replace the fields with values from the quote order.

You can substitute information for any fields in a proposal from the following tables:

- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Sales Order Detail (F4211)
- Customer Address (F0016)
- Order Address Overrides (F006)

You set up text substitution tags by placing the name of the OneWorld field between three character delimiters. The delimiters are user defined and can be no more than three characters. The text substitution tags can be placed in any location within a boilerplate document. When the system generates a proposal, the system searches for the tags and substitutes the field name with the appropriate value from the quote order. For example, to retrieve the unit price into a proposal, identify the data name for the field < <SDUPRC> >. Based on the information in the quote, the system retrieves the amount in the field and inserts the value in place of the tag.

Text substitution tags in the boilerplate document are user defined. If you specify a field, such as a user defined code, that has a value and an associated description, the text substitution function substitutes the user defined value with the associated description.

Defining Documents for Sales Proposal Generation

From the Sales Proposal Generation menu (G42412), choose Generated Document Revisions.

To attach boilerplate text to bookmarks and to review the various components that make up a generated document, use the Generated Document Revisions program (P00391). With the graphical tree structure, you can see which bookmarks are attached to your template. Then you can inquire on each bookmark and edit, add, or delete boilerplates. For example, if the bookmark “Product” identifies the media object structure, Item Master, you can identify the specific items to which you can attach boilerplate text.

Defining documents includes the following tasks:

- Reviewing the template
- Attaching boilerplate text to bookmarks
- Reviewing attached boilerplate files
- Creating a table of contents

When you enter a sales order and generate the proposal, the system searches bookmarks that are attached to the named template. Based on the order information, the system inserts the boilerplate text at the bookmark.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set up the proposal template name in user defined code table (00/GD)
- ☐ Save the proposal template as a Microsoft Word document (.doc)

Review the appropriate Microsoft documentation for more information about creating documents, bookmarks, embedded objects, and other topics related to Microsoft Word.

- ☐ Characterize your template by category code. You can define up to 30 category codes for your media objects.
- ☐ Save the boilerplate text as a Microsoft Word document (.doc) or Rich Text Format (*.rtf) file.

► To review the template

1. On the Generate Document Revisions – Headerless Detail form, complete the following fields and click Find:

- Generated Document
- Generated Document Type

The system displays the template and bookmark hierarchy.

2. To review the template text, click the View Template button.

The system displays the Media object window for the template.

3. From the Form menu, choose Template.

Like any media object text, you can edit or delete text or embedded images and objects. If you make any changes, choose Save and Exit from the Form menu.

4. Choose Close Template to close the template and return to the Headerless Detail form.

► To attach boilerplates to bookmarks

Generate Document Revisions – Headerless Detail

1. On the Headerless Detail form, complete the following fields and click Find:
 - Generated Document
 - Generated Document Type

The system displays the template and bookmark hierarchy.

2. Complete the following fields to choose your bookmarks:
 - Bookmark

Use the visual assist button to choose your bookmarks.

- Sequence No.
- Media Object Data Structure
- Generated Document Author
- Repeat Detail
- Use Lang
- Text Substitution

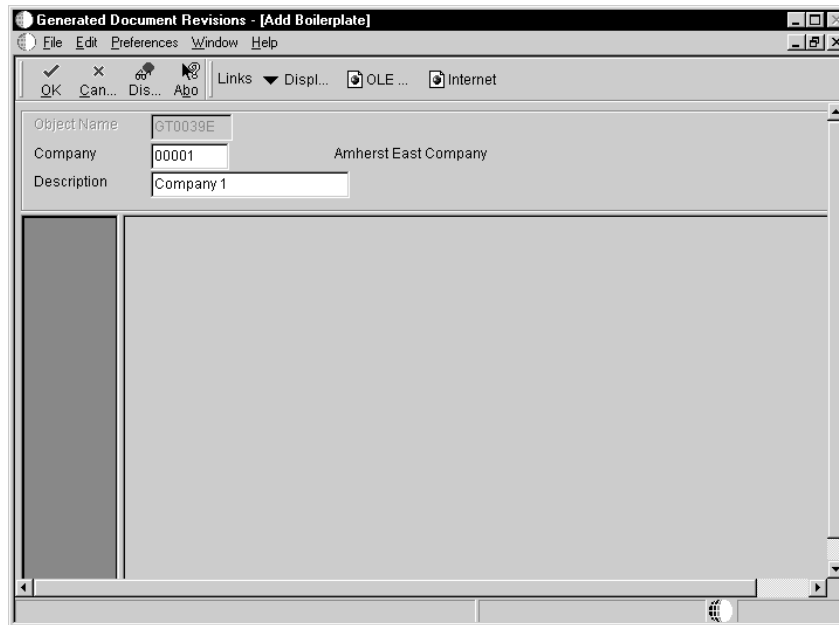
After you define the bookmarks for your template, you must attach boilerplates to each bookmark.

Bookmark	Sequence No.	Media Data St
COMPOV		05

3. For each bookmark, select the row and choose Boilerplate from the Row menu.

The system displays the Work with Boilerplates form based on the Media Object Data Structure for each bookmark. That is, if your Media Object Data Structure is Item Master, when you enter Work with Boilerplates, the system prompts you for item information.

4. On Work with Boilerplates, click Add.



5. On Add Boilerplate, complete the specific item, branch/plant, or customer information, as appropriate, and click OK.

The system displays the Media Object form.

The boilerplate type the system displays on the Media Object form depends on the media object structure that you specified on the Generate Document Revisions - Headerless Detail form.

6. From the File menu, click Add, then OLE.

The system displays the form, Insert Object.

7. On Insert Object, click the Create from File button and define the file path for the boilerplate.

The file path must be a Microsoft Word document (.doc) or Rich Text Format (.rtf) document.

8. Click OK.

On Media Objects, the system displays the boilerplate text.

9. From the File menu, choose Save and Exit.

► **To review attached boilerplates**

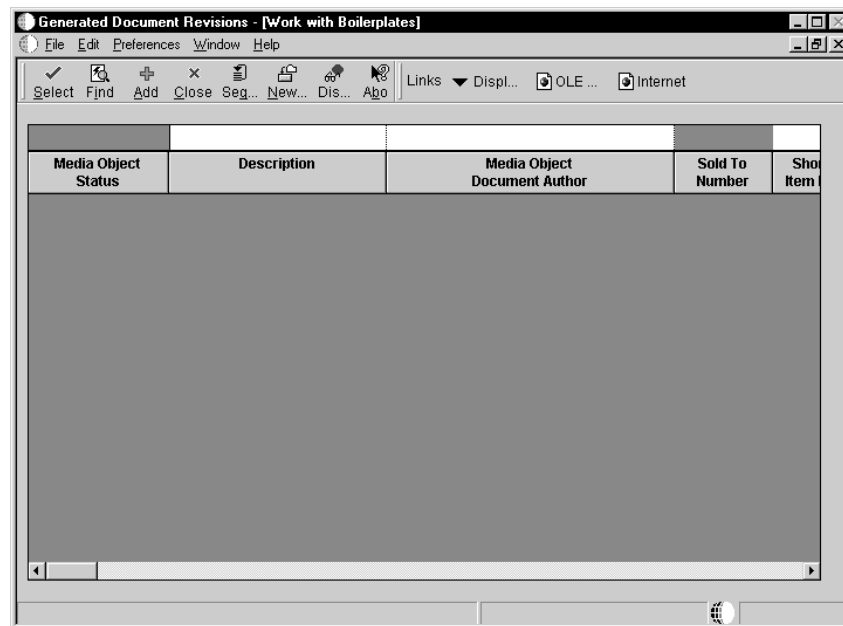
On Generate Document Revisions – Headerless Detail

1. On the Headerless Detail form, complete the following fields and click Find:
 - Generated Document
 - Generated Document Type

The system displays the template and bookmark hierarchy.

2. For each bookmark, select the row and choose Boilerplate from the Row menu.

The system displays the Work with Boilerplates form based on the Media Object Data Structure for each bookmark. That is, if your Media Object Data Structure is Item Master, when you enter Work with Boilerplates, the system prompts you for item information.



3. On Work with Boilerplates, click Find to review existing data structures (items, customers, branch/plants) with attached boilerplates.
4. To review the boilerplates that are attached, select the row and choose Edit from the View menu.

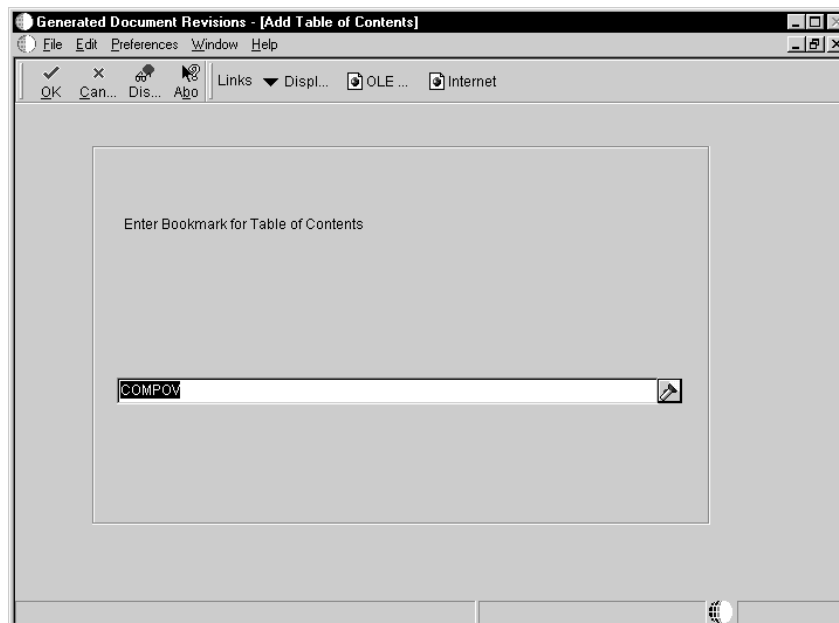
The system displays the attached boilerplate in the Media Object window.

5. Click Close to return to the Headerless Detail form.

► To create a table of contents

You can automatically create a table of contents after the system generates the document. To create a table of contents, you must insert a bookmark for the table of contents within your proposal template and specify the bookmark in the template and bookmark hierarchy.

1. On the Headerless Detail form, to identify the bookmark for a table of contents, click the Table of Contents button.



2. On Add Table of Contents, complete the field:
 - Enter Bookmark for Table of Contents

Field	Explanation
Generated Document	This is a document that is automatically generated upon entry into a word processor based on a template document, boilerplates and text substitution.
Generated Document Type	This is the type of document that is automatically generated upon entry into a word processor. This field controls the values associated with the Category Code (GN01) and Media Object Data Structure (MODS).

Field	Explanation
Bookmark	This is a bookmark associated with a document.
Sequence No.	For OneWorld, the sequence by which users can set up the order in which their valid environments are displayed. For World, a sequence or sort number that the system uses to process records in a user defined order.
Media Object Data Structure	This field identifies which media object data structures are available for a generated document type.
Generated Document Author	This is the author of the media object document or attachment.
Repeat Detail	This field identifies if the document associated with a bookmark should be replicated for each detail line.
Use Lang	This field determines if the language preference should be used as part of the criteria for the identifying the associated media object.
Text Substitution	This field identifies if a document associated to a media object data structure contains text substitution values.

Processing Options for Generated Document Revisions

Default

- | | | |
|-----|------------------------------|-------|
| 1. | Generated Document | _____ |
| 2. | Generated Document Type | _____ |
| 3. | Beginning Text Substitution | _____ |
| Tag | | |
| 4. | Ending Text Substitution Tag | _____ |

Directory

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------|-------|
| 1. | Temporary Document Path | _____ |
|----|-------------------------|-------|

Generating a Proposal during Order Entry

After you set up proposal components, you can put together a formal sales proposal. Since a proposal is used heavily during contract negotiation, you can modify an existing proposal in a very short period of time.

After you create a proposal template, the system uses the template name you specified in the processing options for Generated Document Revisions (P00391). When you choose to generate proposals, the system only uses the template name that is assigned in the processing options, and retrieves boilerplate text based on the branch/plant, customer information, and item information in the order. Header information in automatic document generation also originates from the specified template.

The automatic generation of the sales proposal is based on information in existing sales orders, information from Sales Order Header (F4201) and Sales Order Detail (F4211) tables. You can not generate sales proposals from the Sales Order Header History (F42109) and Sales Order Detail History (F42119) tables.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set the processing option in the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) to generate a proposal.
- ☐ Set up the proposal template name in user defined code table (00/GD).
- ☐ Save the proposal template as a Microsoft Word document (.doc).

Review the appropriate Microsoft documentation for more information about creating documents, bookmarks, embedded objects, and other topics related to Microsoft Word

- ☐ Save the boilerplate text as a Microsoft Word document (.doc) or Rich Text Format (*.rtf) file.
- ☐ Attach the boilerplate text as an OLE media object.

► To generate a proposal during order entry

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.

Quantity Ordered	UoM	Item Number	Ln Ty	Unit Price	Extended Price	Branch/Plant
			S	0.0000		

2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields and click OK:
 - Ship To
 - Quantity Ordered
 - Item Number
 - UoM
 - Unit Price
 - Ln Ty
3. From the Form menu, choose Generate Proposal.

The system displays the generated document in Microsoft Word as a Word document (*.doc). For more information about Microsoft Word documents, review the appropriate Microsoft documentation.

Entering Sales Orders with Templates

You can use templates to speed order processing by displaying your customer's most frequently ordered items. A template is a system-generated prediction about what your customer will order. Using templates also reduces errors and redundant data entry.

You can set up a default template, a template that is specific for your customer, or choose from any available template that is set up on your system. In the processing options for Sales Order Entry (P4210), you can set up order template processing as follows:

- You can enter a specific template name that appears when you enter an order for any customer
- You can specify whether the system retrieves the template from the Customer Billing Instructions for either the sold to or the ship to address

You can complete order information using templates in the following ways:

- Copy all items and quantities on the template
- Change item and quantity information on a line-by-line basis
- Leave quantity information blank for those items that you do not want to add to your sales order

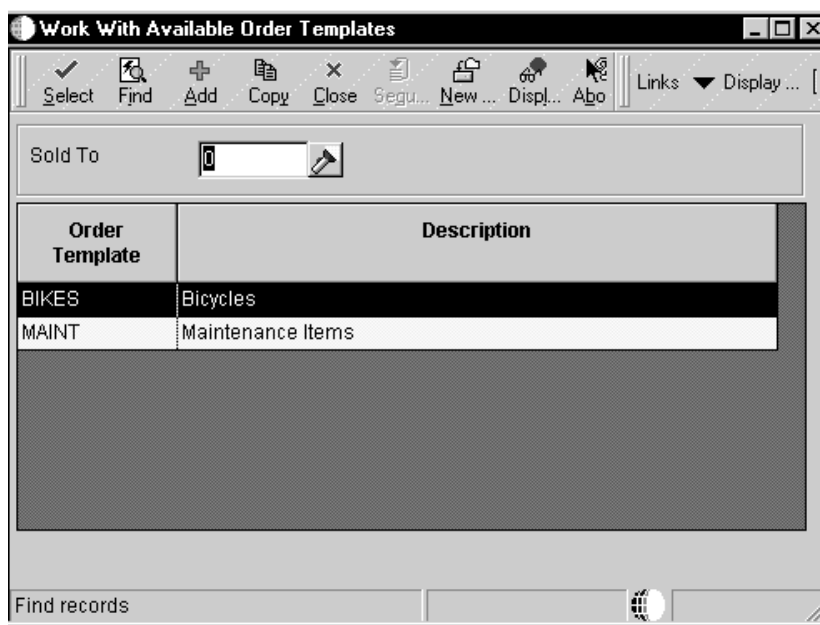
Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program are set to permit order template processing.
- ☐ Verify that standard and customer templates are set up for your system.

► To enter sales orders with templates

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Work with Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Branch/ Plant
 - Sold To
 - Ship To
 - Order Date



The system retrieves the template based on your selection in the processing option in Sales Order Entry (P4210). The system can display templates according to the Sold To address, Ship To address, or a specified template.

3. On Work With Available Order Templates, complete one of the following:

To retrieve templates that are associated to the Ship To or the Sold To address book number, click Find.

Remove the address book number from the Template Selection Window and click Find to review all available templates.

4. Select the row.

Quantity Ordered	UM	Item Number	Usual Quantity	UM	Item Description
		210	10		Mountain Bike, Red
		220	5		Touring Bike, Red
		221	5		Touring Bike, Blue
		222	5		Touring Bike, Green

5. On Order Templates, review the following fields:
 - Item Number
 - Usual Quantity
6. To order the usual quantity, choose Preload With Usual from the Form menu. The system enters the Usual Quantity in the Quantity Ordered field.
7. To order quantities that are different from the usual quantity, enter a quantity amount in the order detail line.
8. Click OK to incorporate the template order into the sales order.

The system selects only those lines that have corresponding quantities in the Quantity Ordered field.

See Also

- *Setting Up Order Templates*

Entering Recurring Sales Orders

You can streamline order entry by creating recurring orders. By creating recurring orders, you avoid manually re-entering orders that are always the same. You can have the system automatically re-enter an order on a weekly, monthly, or yearly basis.

Entering recurring sales orders includes the following tasks:

- Working with recurring orders
- Processing recurring orders

The following graphic illustrates order frequency:

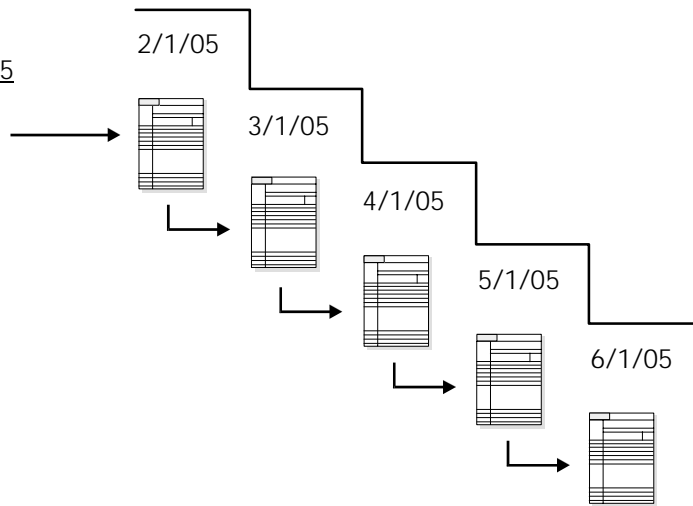
**Order Frequency =
M (monthly)**

1401 SC 1/1/05

10 M001

20 M002

30 M003



Working With Recurring Orders

After you enter a recurring sales order, you must process the order through the Recurring Edit and Creation (R40211Z) program. The system edits the information that you entered and creates orders on the designated date.

You can define the frequency that the system uses to process orders as follows:

- If you specify a daily frequency (D), you can indicate which day of the week the system should process the order.

- If you specify a weekly (W) or monthly (M) frequency, the system calculates the future dates to process orders based on the next order date that you enter.

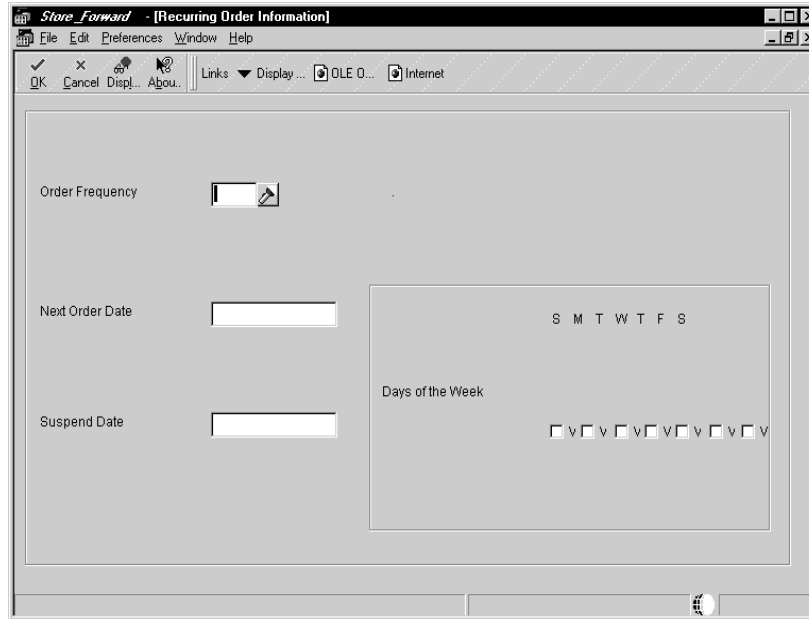
► To enter recurring sales orders

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Recurring Order Entry.

1. On Work With Store and Forward Order, click Add.

Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Sold To Number	Sold To Name	Ship To Number	Quantity Ordered	UM
2400	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System		20	EA
2400	SO	00001	2.000	4242	Capital System		15	EA
2400	SO	00001	3.000	4242	Capital System		10	EA

2. On Store and Forward Order Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Ln Ty
 - Unit Price
 - Item Number
 - Ship To Number
 - Quantity Ordered
3. From the Form menu, choose Recurring Order.



4. On Recurring Order Information, complete the following fields:

- Order Frequency
- Next Order Date
- Suspend Date

Field	Explanation
Next Order Date	The next date that a recurring order is to be processed.
Suspend Date	The date when a recurring order is no longer to be processed.
Order Frequency	Indicates how often a recurring order is automatically generated.

Processing Options for Batch Order Entry

Defaults

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------|
| 1. Order Type | _____ |
| 2. Line Type | _____ |
| 3. Beginning Status | _____ |
| 4. Override Next Status | _____ |
| 5. Line Number Increment | _____ |

Versions

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. Sales Order Entry Master
Business Function (P4210) | _____ |
| 2. Batch Transaction Editor
(R40211Z) | _____ |

Process

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. Enter '1' to automatically submit the batch order to the Batch Transaction Editor in subsystem mode. Enter '2' to call the Batch Transaction Editor in online mode. | _____ |
| 2. Enter '1' to process in full edit mode or leave blank for partial editing. | _____ |

Processing Recurring Orders

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Recurring Orders Edit and Creation (R40211Z).

To process recurring sales orders, you must run the Batch Edit and Creation (R40211Z) program. The system edits the information that you entered and creates the orders for the specified date. To ensure the integrity of the data, the system creates sales orders for recurring orders only after the editing process is complete.

Any of the orders that contain errors remain in the batch receiver tables as unprocessed. You must correct this information and then run the Batch Edit and Creation program again.

On Work With Versions, select an existing version or create a new version to process recurring orders.

Processing Options for Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor

Process

1. Enter '1' to Perform Availability Check and Kit Balancing
2. Enter '1' to override prices, if ' ' use the Unit Price in F4106

Versions

1. Enter the Version ID of the Sales Order Entry

Configurator

Configured Item Inventory Split.

Enter '1' to support a single split, or '2' to support multiple splits. Blank disables splitting.

See Also

- *Sales Order Processing* for more information about submitting sales orders for processing and verifying sales order information

Working with Kits and Configured Items

You can enter sales orders for kits and configured items. A kit is a collection of inventory items, called components, which are associated with a description name, called a “parent” item. For example, you might store several computer components, such as the monitor, hard drive, keyboard, and mouse. When you sell the items, you might sell them collectively as a computer system.

In a manufacturing environment, a manufacturer assembles a large variety of end products from relatively few components. A configured item is comprised of different features that are requested by a customer. For example, if you manufacture and sell automobiles, you might offer the same automobile type with a variety of features and options, such as engine size or transmission type. When you set up a configured item, you define segments (the features and options) to represent characteristics of a configured item, such as an optional paint color or power type. You can also set up a configured subassembly within a configured item. For example, the configured item, automobile, contains a configured subassembly of the transmission.

Working with kits and configured items includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Entering kit orders
- ☐ Understanding configured item orders

Kit Components

A kit is typically made up of several types of inventory items.

Parent item

A parent item represents the assembled item. Generally, the system does not carry inventory for a parent item. You must set up a parent item in the Item Master and designate it with a stocking type of K (for kit). The Item Master determines how the system calculates the price.

Components

Components are the actual inventory items that are contained in the kit. You set up components in the Item Master as regular stock items.

Features and options

Features and options are additional items for the kit. Feature items have a stocking type of F (for feature). The system recognizes feature items as second-level parent items, because the system does not carry inventory for the feature items. You set up the actual inventory items in the bill of material.

Assume that a kit consists of a stereo, which is the parent item, and the following components and options:

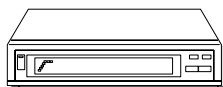
- Stereo (first level parent item)
 - Wiring jacks (component)
 - Receiver (component)
 - Speakers (component)
 - Cassette deck (option)
- CD player (second-level parent item)
 - 5-platter CD player (option)
 - Single CD player (option)

Example: Feature

Assume that a compact disk (CD) player is a feature in the kit. With a feature, you can choose one of the following options:

- 5-platter CD player
- Single CD player

5-Platter
Compact
Disk Player
(Option)



Single
Compact
Disk Player
(Option)



Entering Kit Orders

When you enter an item number for a kit, you can review the preselected items and quantities that make up the kit. You can also select any optional items that you want to include on the sales order. You can only process fully configured kits. The system backorders the entire kit if any components are backordered.

You cannot enter kit information on a direct ship or transfer order. To enter an order for kits, use the regular sales order entry programs to process kits.

You can change quantity and price information for parent and component items on kit orders. The system recalculates the price. Any price changes affect only the current order. You make permanent price changes in the base price records. Change the quantity of the parent item and click OK.

When you cancel a parent item, the system cancels all component lines that are associated with that kit item.

Kit Restrictions

The following preferences do not function with kit items:

- Print Message
- Product Allocation
- Inventory Commitment

You cannot set up automatic freight calculations for the parent item. You must set up automatic freight calculations for each component for the system to calculate the appropriate charge.

You cannot perform item cross-reference checking for kit parent items or the associated components.

Work Orders for Kits

If you create a work order for a kit during sales order entry, the parent item can be built and stocked in inventory after you process and complete the work order. When you process and complete the work order, the system subtracts the components from the on-hand quantity, then adds the parent item into on-hand quantity in inventory. This is the only time that a parent item is stocked in inventory.

You must specify a “T” line type for all components in the processing options of the Work Order Processing program. This line type must be set up as a text line type to avoid writing journal entries for costs of goods sold and Inventory for the components at the time of sales update. This also ensures that the system does not subtract components again during shipment confirmation or sales update.

See *Reviewing Work Order Information* in the *Shop Floor Control Discrete Manufacturing Guide*.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set or cleared the processing option that suppresses kit component lines in the Sales Order Entry program.
- ☐ Verify that kit items have been set up. See *Entering Kit Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide*.

► To enter kit orders

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the steps to enter item information.

When you enter an item number for a kit, the system displays the Kit Selection window automatically.

Sel	O	+/-	Description	Qty Per	Qty Avail	U/M	L T	Request Date	Last Stat
	F	+	Helmet Feature Parent Item		0	EA	S	6/1/05	
*	S		Water Bottle w/ Cage	1	481	EA	S	6/1/05	520
	O		Gloves - Cloth	1	623	EA	S	6/1/05	520
*	S		Tire Repair Kit	1	446	EA	S	6/1/05	520

2. On Kit Selection, review the following component information:
 - O
 - Quantity
 - Request Date
3. To review features, double-click on the row.
4. To accept options, double-click on the row to display an asterisk in the following field:
 - Sel
5. Click OK.

Field	Explanation
O	<p>A code that indicates whether a component is standard or optional within a bill of material or for kit processing. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S Standard. The item is always included in any transaction involving the bill of material. O Optional. In order entry, you can specify whether the item will be included in a particular sale. F Feature. The item has features that you must specify at order entry. <p>The default value is S.</p>
Quantity	The quantity of units affected by this transaction.
Qty Avail	The number of on-hand units minus the number of units committed to prior orders.
Request Date	The date that the customer requests to receive the order. You can enter a single date for the entire order or several dates for individual detail lines.
Sel	An option that identifies a processing flag for an event.

Understanding Configured Item Orders

You can manage your manufacturing and production process in conjunction with your sales to ensure that customer demand is being met. For example, if you manufacture and sell automobiles, you might offer the same automobile type with a variety of features and options.

You can use the Sales Configurator system in conjunction with the Sales Order Management system to sell items that:

- Are complex

- Require routings that change based on features or options
- Include features that are not compatible with other features
- Require multiple work orders to define an assembly

When you enter a sales order for a configured item, the Sales Configurator system automatically prompts you to enter values for the segments of that configured item. A segment is a feature of a configured item, such as color, size, fabric, or power type. The system verifies each segment value against user defined information, such as rules and user defined code tables of choices. If the configuration is valid, the system processes the order.

After you have entered a sales order and generated work orders for a configured item, use the following programs in the Sales Order Management system to complete the sales order processing cycle:

- Print Pick Slips
- Shipment Confirmation
- Print Invoices
- Print Invoice Journal
- Print G/L Sales Recap
- Update Accounts Receivable (A/R) and General Ledger (G/L)

See Also

- *Working with Configured Item Sales Orders* in the *Sales Configurator Guide*

Working with Store and Forward Orders

Store and forward (batch) order processing provides an efficient way to enter and manage a high-volume of sales orders before they are processed in the Sales Order Management system. For example, if you are at a remote site and do not have dedicated access to the server, it might be more productive and cost effective to create sales orders locally on your PC during normal business hours. Afterward, you can upload them to the server for processing during off-peak hours.

You can enter batch sales orders to provide the following features for a fast-paced, high-volume environment:

Quick entry of large quantities of items

You only need to enter limited information because the system uses most of the default information from the Customer Master Information and Customer Billing Instructions to create the orders.

Optimal information processing

You can generate sales orders during the day and process them later.

Caution: You must set up the next number functionality before you set up and use store and forward order processing.

Working with store and forward orders includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Downloading master tables to the workstation
- ☐ Creating orders that you store and forward
- ☐ Uploading orders to the server
- ☐ Processing batch sales orders
- ☐ Correcting batch sales orders
- ☐ Understanding batch of one

The system transfers the header information that you enter to the Batch Header Receiver table (F4201Z) and detail information to the Batch Detail Receiver table (F4211Z). The information remains in those tables until you are ready to process the orders.

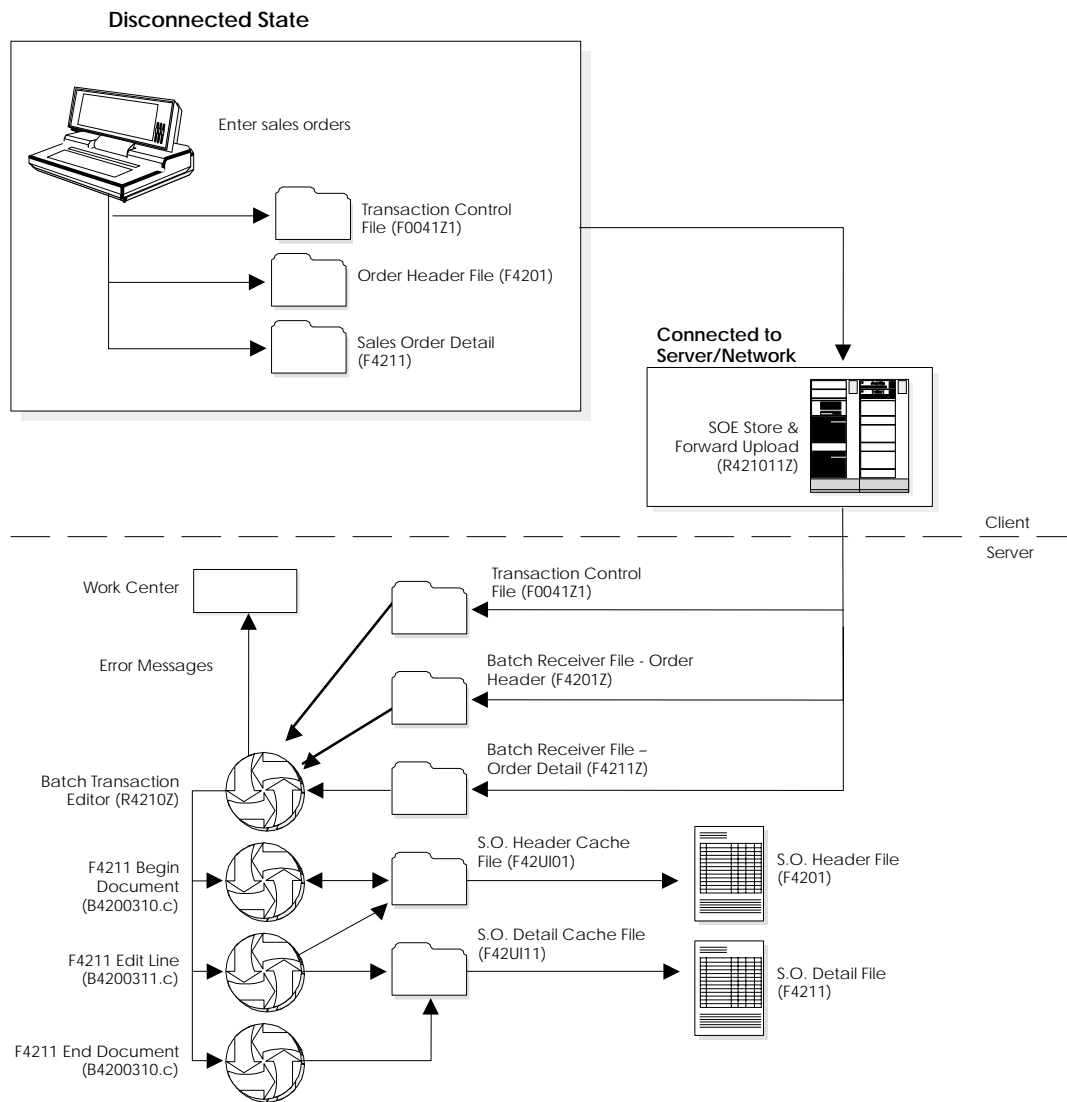
When you are ready to process multiple orders, you must run the Batch Edit and Creation program. The system edits the order information and transfers it to the Sales Order Header (F4201) and the Sales Order Detail (F4211) tables.

You must run the Batch Edit and Creation program to generate the sales orders. After the system creates orders, you can also change any detail information on these orders on a line-by-line basis.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the system administrator downloads the necessary technical master tables before you complete the steps to store and forward sales orders.

The following graphic illustrates the store and forward process:



Downloading Master Tables to the Workstation

Before creating sales orders on your workstation, you must download tables from the server using Download Store and Forward tables (P00140). These tables are necessary to create and validate transactions. For example, you must download the Address Book Master (F0101), Item Master Information (F4101) and Customer Master Information (F03012) tables in order to have the supplier information that you need to create sales orders.

You must ensure that data is present in all technical and business data tables, except Sales Order Header (F4201). If you download master tables to the workstation and data is not present, you can use Environment Database Creation (R98403) to download each master table separately. J.D. Edwards recommends that you test the completeness of the download before disconnecting from the network, such as creating a sales order on your workstation.

The following is a list of the business data tables that must reside on the workstation that are used for store and forward processing. In addition to the business data tables, you must also download the technical data tables.

Sales Order Entry (P4210)

Table	Description
F0004	User Defined Code Types
F0005	User Defined Codes
F0006	Cost Center Master
F0006D	Business Unit Alternate Description Master
F0008	Date Fiscal Patterns
F0008B	Date Fiscal Patterns – 52 Period Accounting
F0009	General Constants
F0010	Company Constants
F0012	Automatic Accounting Instruction Master
F0013	Currency Codes
F0014	Payment Terms
F0022	Tax Rules
F0041Z1	Transaction Control File
F0101	Address Book Master
F0111	Address Book - Who's Who
F0116	Address By Date
F0150	Address Organization Structure Master File – OSTP, PA8, AN8
F0301	Customer Master
F0401	Supplier Master
F0901	Account Master
F0907	Chart of Accounts Format
F4001Z	Order Headings
F40073	Preferences Hierarchy File
F4008	Tax Areas
F4009	M&D Constants

F40095	Default Locations
F4013	Order Processing Cross Reference File
F4211Z	Order Details
F40205	Line Type Constants
F4070	Price Adjustment Schedule (only if Advanced Pricing)
F4071	Price Adjustment Type (only if Advanced Pricing)
F4072	Price Adjustment Detail (only if Advanced Pricing)
F4075	Price Variable Table (only if Advanced Pricing)
F4092	Group Code Key Definition Table
F4094	Item/Customer Key ID Master File
F41001	Branch Constants
F41002	Item Units of Measure Conversion Factors
F41003	Unit of Measure standard conversion
F4101	Item Master
F4102	Item Branch File
F4106	Base Price
F4201	Sales Order Header File
F4207	Inventory Pricing Rules
F4208	Customer Pricing Rules
F4801	Work Order Master File

You might have to download additional business tables for transactions that affect other J.D. Edwards systems, such as Sales Configurator.

F3294Z	Configurator Batch Segments
F32943	Configured String History
F3296	Configurator Level/Sequence
F3296T	Configurator Level/Sequence Tag File
F32961	Configurator Cost/Price Adjustment
F329611	Configurator Detail Cost/Price Adjustment



To download master tables to the PC

To download the master tables for your PC, you must be connected to the server and signed on to your normal production environment.

Choose the appropriate environment on Select User Environment when you log on to the system. Click Detail to access the name of the environment.

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Download Store and Forward Tables.

On Work With Batch Versions

1. Choose a version of the Master Tables Download.
2. From the Row menu, choose Run Version.

3. On Version Prompting, do one of the following:
 - Choose the Data Selection option to limit the information that the system downloads and click Submit. On Criterion Design, make your data selections and click OK.
 - Click Submit.
4. On Report Output Destination, choose the option to print or preview online and click OK.
5. On Environment Overrides, enter the name of the source environment and target environment and then click OK.

Technical Information

Viewing the version detail

You can view a complete description of the table that you want to download. To do so, choose the appropriate version on the Work With Versions form, and then choose Version Detail from the Form menu.

Creating Orders That You Store and Forward

After you download the master tables to your PC, you can create standard J.D. Edwards sales orders using the store and forward environment. You store the sales orders on your PC until you are ready to upload, or forward, them to the server for processing.

When you create sales orders that you store and forward, the system:

- Edits and validates each sales order based on the information that you downloaded from the tables
- Creates a transaction control record for each sales order, assigns it a status of 1 (ready to process), and stores it in the Transaction Control table (F0041Z1)
- Creates a version of sales order entry and sets processing options

When you run the Sales Order Entry Store and Forward Upload (R421011Z) program, the system checks the history fields for duplicate sales order numbers. If the batch order number is a duplicate, the system assigns a new number to the sales order and references the duplicate order number in the original order number field in the Sales Order Header (F4201) and Sales Order Detail (F4211) table.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set the processing options for the appropriate edit mode for Sales Order Entry (P4210) and Batch Transaction Editor (R4210Z).

► To create orders that you store and forward

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Batch Order Entry.

1. On Store and Forward Order Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the steps to enter detail information.

See *Entering Detail Information* for more information.

3. From the Form menu, choose Trans Control to access transaction control.

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Store_Foward - [Transaction Control Revisions]". It features a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Cancel", "Displ...", "Abou...", "Links", "Display...", "OLE O...", and "Internet". The main content area is divided into two sections. The top section contains four text input fields: "Computer ID", "User ID", "Transaction Control No.", and "Transaction Key". To the right of these are two more input fields: "Tran. Type" and "Application". The bottom section contains three controls: "Status Code" with a dropdown arrow, "Approval Code" with a text input field, and "Client Notification" with a checkbox. A scrollbar is visible on the right side of the dialog.

4. On Transaction Control Revisions, revise the following fields, as necessary:
 - Status Code
 - Approval Code
 - Client Notification
5. Click OK.
6. Do one of the following:
 - Submit the order for processing, if the processing options are not set to automatically submit the order.
 - Process the sales orders later by running the Batch Edit and Creation program.

After you enter an order, the status code is 1. The system uploads orders from the workstation to the server only at this status.

Regardless of when you process the orders, the Batch Edit and Creation program edits the information and creates the sales orders. If there are no errors, the system adds information to the Sales Order Header table (F4201) and the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

Field	Explanation
Status Code	In the Store and Forward model, this determines if the client or server has control of processing the transactions.
Approval Code	In the Store and Forward model, this identifies if the batch is eligible to be transmitted from the client to the server, to edit the transactions.
Client Notification	In the Store and Forward model, this acknowledges the client that the server is done processing the transactions. As a result, the client is able to download the error messages, and update the client transaction status code.

Uploading Orders to the Server

After creating sales orders on your PC, you must upload them to the server for processing. To do this, you must be connected to the server, signed on to your normal production environment, and submit your job locally.

When you upload sales orders, the system:

- Creates records in the Batch Order Header (F4201Z) and Batch Order Detail (F4211Z) tables.
- Deletes files on the workstation after records are successfully uploaded to the server. If a sales order on the PC has a status of 1 (ready to process) or 2 (errors), you can make changes to it on the PC.
- Creates a transaction control record for each sales order on the server and assigns it a status of 1 (ready to process).

The system creates a transmission upload report for all of the sales orders that you upload. Use this report to verify that the orders have been uploaded correctly.

Note: To maximize system performance, upload the sales orders during off-peak hours.

To upload sales orders to the server

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Upload Store and Forward Transaction.

1. On Work With Batch Versions, choose the Store and Forward Upload version.
2. From the Form menu, choose Run.
3. To limit the information that the system uploads, choose the Data Selection option on Version Prompting.
4. Click the Print or Preview option.
5. On Environment Overrides, enter the exact name of the target environment and click OK.

Processing Batch Sales Orders

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Batch Order Edit and Creation (R4210Z).

To process sales orders at a later time, you must run the Batch Edit and Creation program. The system edits the information that you entered and creates all orders at one time. To ensure the integrity of the data, the system creates sales orders for batch orders only after the editing process is complete.

Any orders that contain errors remain in the batch receiver tables as unprocessed. You must correct the errors and then run the Batch Edit and Creation program again.

On Work With Versions, select an existing version or create a new version to process batch sales orders.

When processing the sales orders that you uploaded, use the same program that you use to process batch input sales orders.

You can review batch status codes to identify where orders are in the process. The system uses the following codes to identify the status of an order:

- 1 – The transaction is available for processing.
- 2 – The transaction contains errors.
- 3 – The system is processing the transactions.
- 4 – Upload transmission is active.
- 5 – Unavailable. The system is waiting for server response.

- 6 – Complete. The transactions are updated to the sales order header and detail tables on the server.

See Also

- *Processing Sales Orders* for more information about submitting sales orders for processing and verifying sales order information

Correcting Batch Sales Orders

After you run the Batch Edit and Creation program you must correct both header and detail information for any orders that contain errors. After you correct the information, you can run the program again to process the orders.

To correct batch sales orders

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Batch Order Entry.

1. On Store and Forward Order Inquiry, locate the sales order that you need to correct.
2. From the Row menu, choose any of the following forms and revise the information, as necessary:
 - Store and Forward Header Revisions (SF Header)
 - Store and Forward Detail Revisions (SF Detail)
 - Transaction Control Revisions (Trans Control)
3. Run the Batch Edit and Creation program to process the order.

Processing Options for R4210Z Sales Order Batch Trans. Editor

Process

1. Enter '1' to perform
Availability Check and Kit
Balancing
2. Enter '1' to override prices.
Blank = use the Unit Price in
F4106.

Versions

1. Enter the Version ID of the
Sales Order Entry

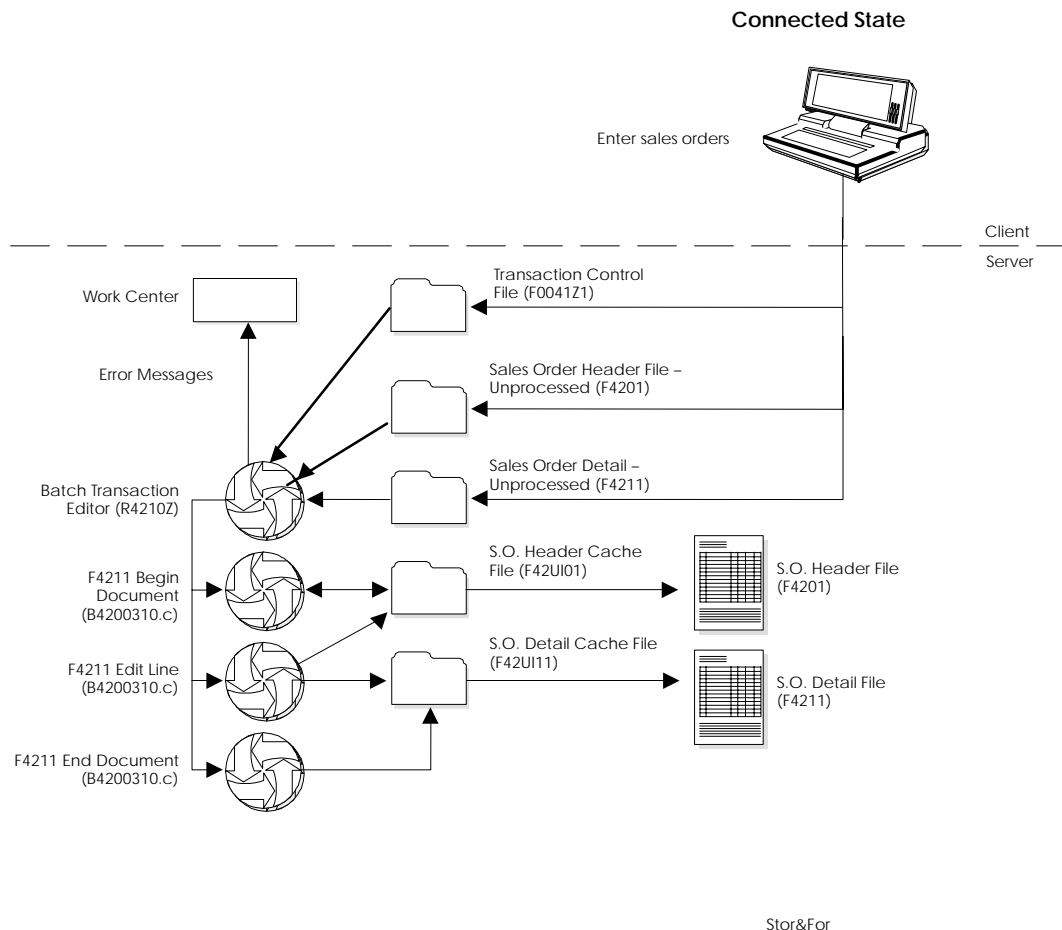
Configurator

Configured Item Inventory Split.

- Future use.
Enter '1' to recreate configurator
order, or blank to accept
configurator order as is.

Understanding Batch of One

Batch of one processing combines the performance benefits of the store and forward model with the real-time updates of transaction data found in the direct connect model. Batch of one uses the store and forward application, but the system maps the work table to the server instead of locally. The following graphic illustrates the batch of one process:



You can use batch of one processing interactively or in conjunction with subsystem processing. When you use batch of one with subsystem processing, the system writes a record to the data queue for each completed transaction, which triggers the subsystem to process the order. The user can continue on to the next transaction while the system is processing the first order on the server. The system sends all errors to the Work Center. Users can either set an option to be prompted when a new message is sent, or they can wait and view all messages.

When you use interactive processing, you can set a processing option in Batch Order Entry (P4210), which prompts you to accept the order before the system processes the order.



Customer Self-Service

Internet Commerce, the exchange of goods and services on the Internet, specifically the World Wide Web (WWW), is becoming an essential medium for conducting business with other businesses or with consumers. Internet technology is cheap, increasingly secure, platform independent, and built on standards which make communicating with suppliers, partners, or customers a simple task. Businesses can use the Internet for time-critical transactions, such as purchasing, invoicing, electronic funds transfer, cargo tracking, and sales force automation.

To remain competitive, you can create an Internet site in which your customers and suppliers can access the most updated information at any time.

The advantages of Internet Commerce include:

- Global market expansion
- Product distribution
- World-wide, 24-hour access to customers
- Cost reduction, including reduction of your physical inventory, fewer distribution intermediaries, and reduction of costs on catalog production and distribution
- Increased revenue

With improved security technology, your customers are increasingly turning to the Internet when purchasing products and services. With J.D. Edwards software, your customers can enter their own orders, inquire on the status of orders, and review service and billing information whenever they wish, without additional costs to you.

Customer Self-Service includes the following tasks:

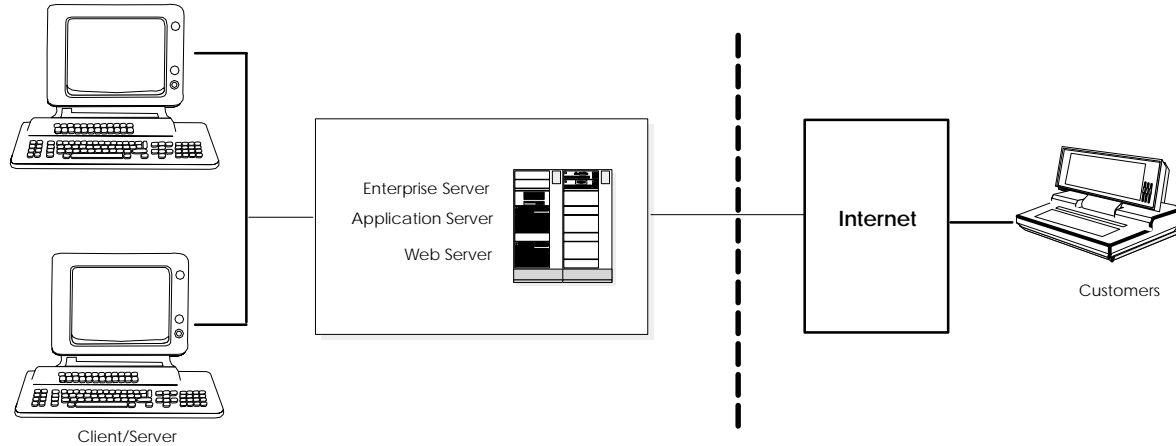
- ☐ Setting up Customer Self-Service
- ☐ Creating sales orders with Customer Self-Service
- ☐ Reviewing sales orders for Customer Self-Service

Note: The above tasks are based on J.D. Edwards forms and data provided for self-service in a Windows environment. The navigations, forms, steps, and data shown in these tasks might not correspond to your customized self-service internet site.



By using the OneWorld applications for web-based transactions and developing a customizable interface that is specific to your environment and business needs in OneWorld Tools, you can create a website in which your customers can enter their own orders and inquire upon the status of those orders whenever they want, without security risks, additional costs, or alternate technology.

The following graphic illustrates the architecture for web-based transactions. The enterprise server, application server, and web server can be on separate machines or they may reside on the same machine.



Setting up Customer Self-Service

Before your customers can access information, you must create ways in which they can access item information, review account information, and inquire on existing orders and shipments. During standard order entry, you can access master tables, such as Address Book, Customer Master, and Item Master, and manage the information according to your customer's needs. Customers are not able to add or modify address book or customer master information.

Setting up Customer Self-Service includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Understanding security issues
- ☐ Setting up product hierarchies

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up Address Book and Customer Master records for your customers.
- ☐ Assign a branch/plant to your customer, and set up default location information by the customer's user ID. When your customers inquire on products, pricing and availability, the system retrieves the information based on the branch/plant you assign to the user ID. See *Setting Up Default Location Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for more information.
- ☐ To enable your customers to enter orders and inquire on order statuses, and their account information, activate the Customer Self-Service processing options for the following programs:
 - Sales Order Entry (P4210)
 - Customer Ledger Inquiry (P03B2002)
 - Summary Availability (P41202)

The system displays only those fields that are useful to your customers in the order entry, customer information, order inquiry, and item information programs.

- ☐ If you use the Transportation Management system, activate the Customer Self-Service processing options for the following programs:

- Work with Shipment Status (P4947)
- Work with Shipments (P4915)
- Work with Loads (P4960)

The system displays only those fields that are useful to your customers in the shipping, shipping status, and load programs.

- ☐ If you are using the Transportation Management system, set up routing entries to include self-service routing options. See *Setting Up Routing Entries* in the *Transportation Management Guide* for more information.

Understanding Security Issues

After you set up address book and customer records, you must set up a user profile that limits your customer's access to the OneWorld system. Your customer will not be able to log in without a profile.

In the user profile, you indicate your customer's user ID, password, and customer preferences, such as language and localization information. With the user profile, you must specify the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314) so that your customers can access only the programs that have been modified for Web-based transactions.

The system generates an order based on the customer information that is identified during login and the products that you choose to add to an order. Additionally, you can review product information, such as price and availability, without generating an order.

When using Customer Self-Service on the Web, you can move freely between the menu applications. The system stores product selections and customer information in a memory cache. In this way, your customers also move between applications, and the system maintains the current contents of the customer's order in the cache file.

See Also

- *User Profiles* in the *System Administration Guide* for more information about security and setting up user profiles
- *Entering Basic Address Book Information* in the *Address Book Guide*
- *Customer Information* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide*

Setting Up Product Hierarchies

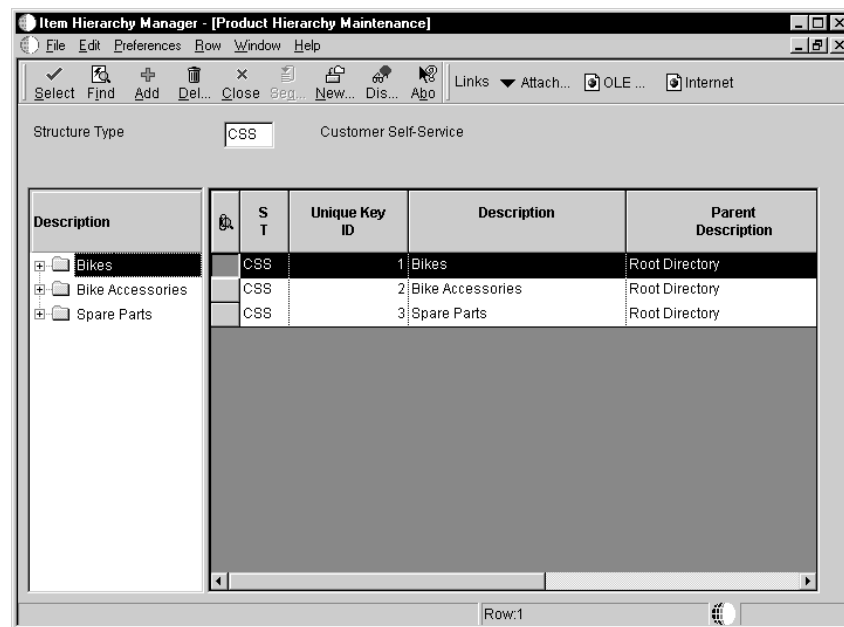
You can allow your customers to view products by group and hierarchy. By assigning items to product groups and hierarchies, you relieve your customer from having to scroll through a complete list of your inventory.

You define a product group by selecting a category code from either the Item Master table (F4101) or the Item Branch table (F4102). Items with the same assigned category code belong to a group. The system assigns hierarchies based on the sequence number and the parent directory specified. The resulting tree-like structure can have any number of levels.

If you have item restrictions defined for a customer in Customer Billing Instructions, that customer is not able to view the restricted items, although the items remain part of the product groups and hierarchies that you assign.

► To set up product hierarchies

On the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Item Hierarchy Manager



1. On Product Hierarchy Maintenance, click Add to set up a new product hierarchy group.

Item Hierarchy Manager - [Product Hierarchy Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Cancel Dismiss Abort Links Parent... OLE... Internet

Structure Type Customer Self-Service

Description

Sequence Number

Category Code

Sub Section

Parent Directory

2. On Product Hierarchy Revisions, complete the following fields:

- Description
- Sequence Number

Use the sequence number to identify the sequential order within a group.

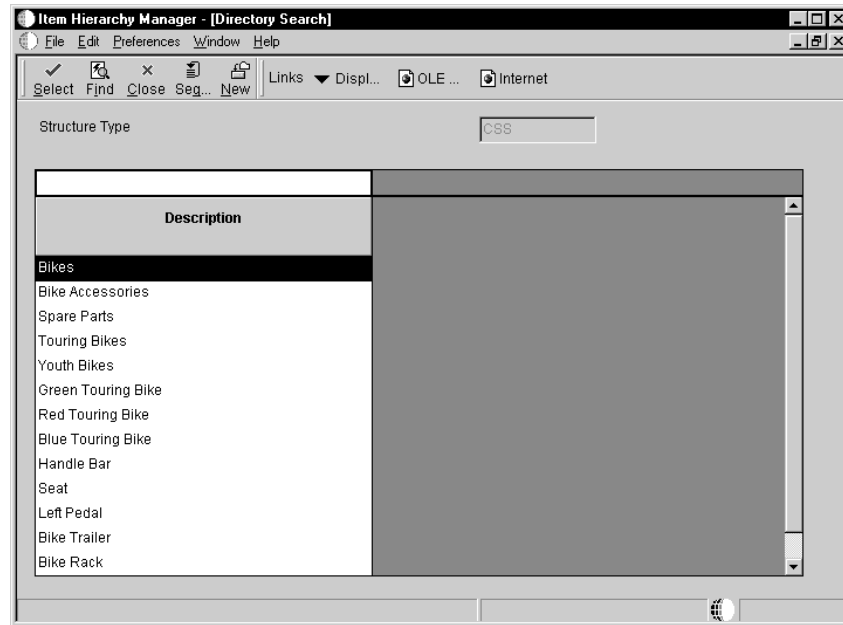
3. For the lowest level, which is the product listing that contains the actual items, choose a field in either the Item Master table (F4101) or the Item Branch Plant table (F4102) from which the system retrieves values and create groups:

- Category Code

Based on your processing options, the system retrieves valid values for the category code from either the Item Master table (F4101) or the Item Branch Plant table (F4102). When you enter a field in the Category Code field, the system prompts you for a valid value.

- User Defined Code

4. To assign a parent directory, choose Parent Directory from the Form menu.



5. On Directory Search, select the parent directory for your items.
6. On Product Hierarchy Revisions, review the following field and click OK:
 - Parent Directory

Processing Options for Item Hierarchy (Web)

Defaults

Structure Type _____
 SO Entry Version (P4210) _____

Process

1. Item Restrictions (1/0) _____
 2. Check Availability (1/0) _____
 3. Item File _____
 Blank = Use Item Master
 1 = Use Item/Branch

Creating Sales Orders with Customer Self-Service

To place an order in a standard operating environment, your customers are usually assisted by personnel who are familiar with the system as well as with the process requirements. When you create a sales environment on the web, you must enable your customers to choose items from your inventory and create sales orders based on their selection.

Creating sales orders with Customer Self-Service includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Using Keyword Search
- ☐ Using Product Catalog
- ☐ Working with Your Favorites

When your customers enter sales orders on the web, they can move freely between the menu applications. The system generates an order based on the customer information that is identified during login and the products that you choose to add to an order.

As your customers add items to their sales orders, they can review and total the order and apply the appropriate taxes. Additionally, your customers can specify an alternate carrier or edit order information by accessing the appropriate options on the Row and Form Exit menus. Your customers can choose to cancel the order or place the order. The system does not create the order until they accept the order.

The system uses the primary unit of measure from the Item Master. The system displays the unit price in the currency that is identified for the customer in Address Book Master. The system retrieves item information, such as line type, from the Item Branch/Plant (F4102) or Item Master (F4101) table.

Each application provides an option to add items to a user's order. If they do not know the item number, your customers can click on the visual assist to access the Item Search by Keyword form to find it.

Since order entry, inquiry, and acceptance are part of Sales Order Entry (P4210) program, set the following processing options for creating Customer Self-Service sales orders:

- You must activate Customer Self-Service
- You can activate the option, “Display before Accept” so that your customers can review order totals, including taxes before the system creates records in the Sales Order Header (F4201) and Sales Order Detail (F4211) file.
- For inventory commitments, activate the Store and Forward processing option for either Full or Partial Edit. The system does not perform inventory commitments until you run the Batch Edit and Creation (R4210) program.

Caution: Do not use online commitments in the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) used for Customer Self-Service. Activate the Store and Forward processing option for either Full or Partial Edit.

See Also

- *Working with Detail Information* for more information about processing options and exits from Sales Order Entry to other programs in the Sales Order Management system

Note: The following tasks are based on J.D. Edwards forms and data provided for self-service in a Microsoft Windows environment. The navigations, forms, steps, and data shown in these tasks might not correspond to your customized self-service Internet site.

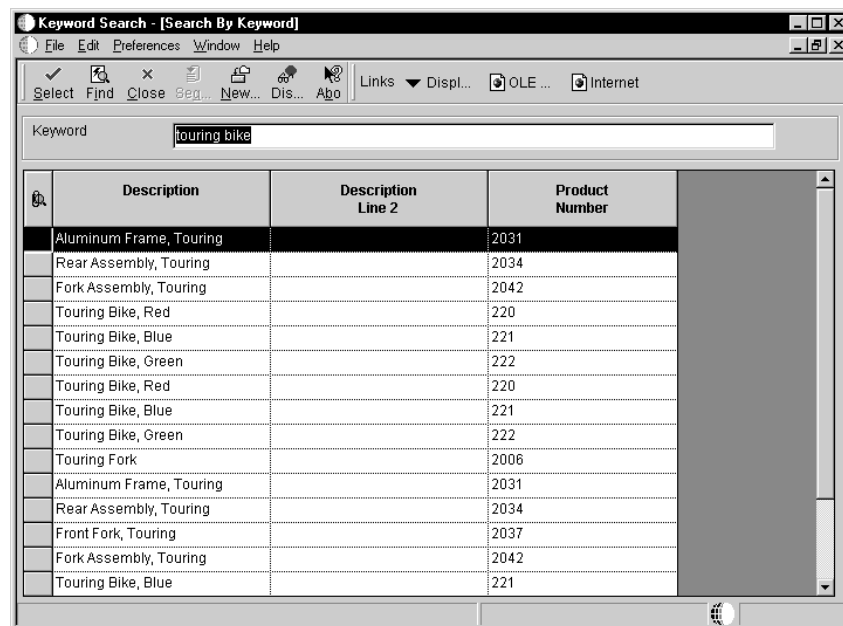
Using Keyword Search

When your customers review your inventory for products, you must give them an opportunity to locate items based on descriptive text. Your customers can use Keyword Search to locate items based on the descriptions that you defined in the Item Master Revisions form.

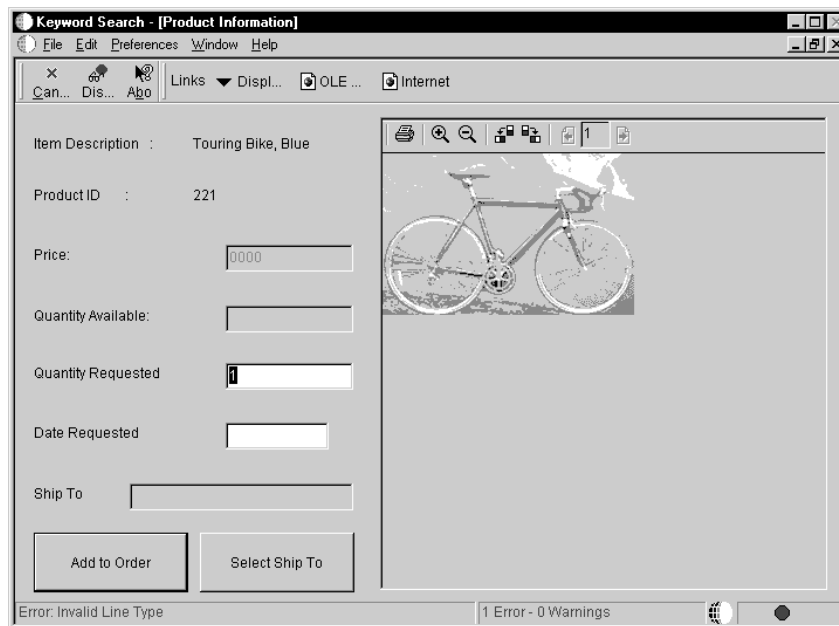
► To use Keyword Search

From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Keyword Search.

1. On Search by Keyword, enter descriptive text and click Find.



2. When you double-click on the item, the system displays the product information, including availability and price.



3. To order the item, complete the following fields and click Add to Order:

- Quantity Requested
- Date Requested

Using Product Catalog

When your customers access your website, they can view products by group and hierarchy. Instead of having your customers scroll through a list of your inventory, you can assign items to groups and hierarchies in the Product Hierarchy Manager. During order entry, your customers can use the Product Catalog feature to review the groups and make increasingly specific selections based on your hierarchies that you defined in the Item Hierarchy Manager.

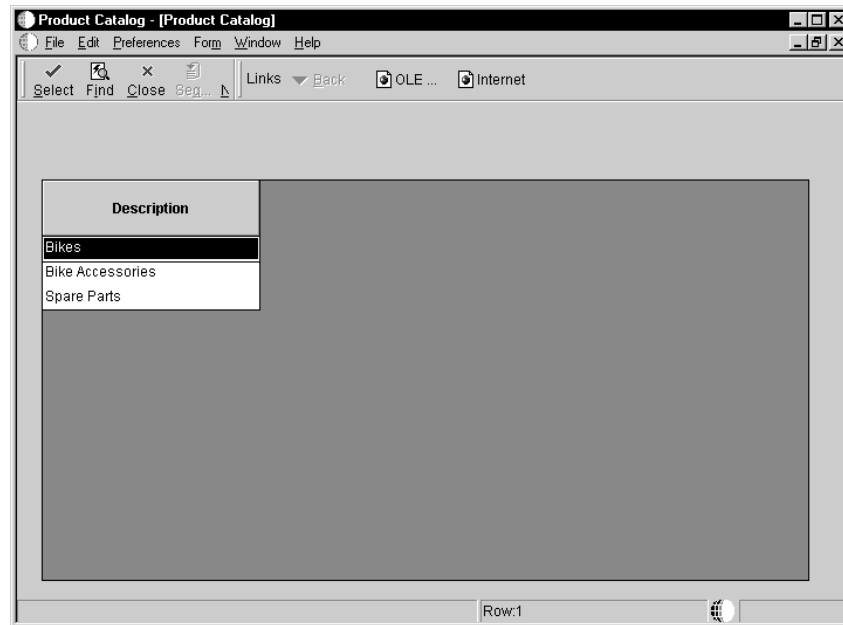
See Also

- *Setting Up Product Hierarchies*

► To use Product Catalog

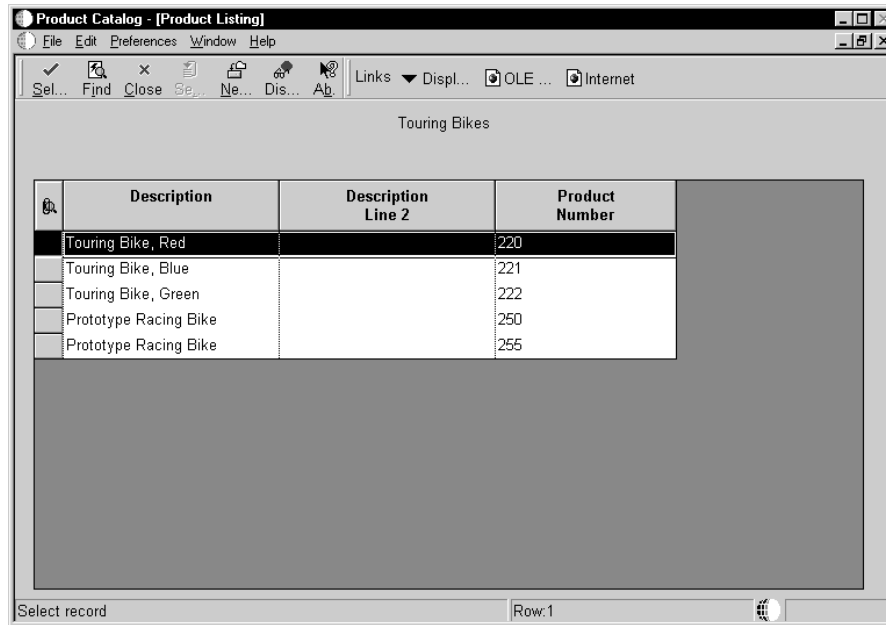
From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Product Catalog.

1. On Product Catalog, click Find.

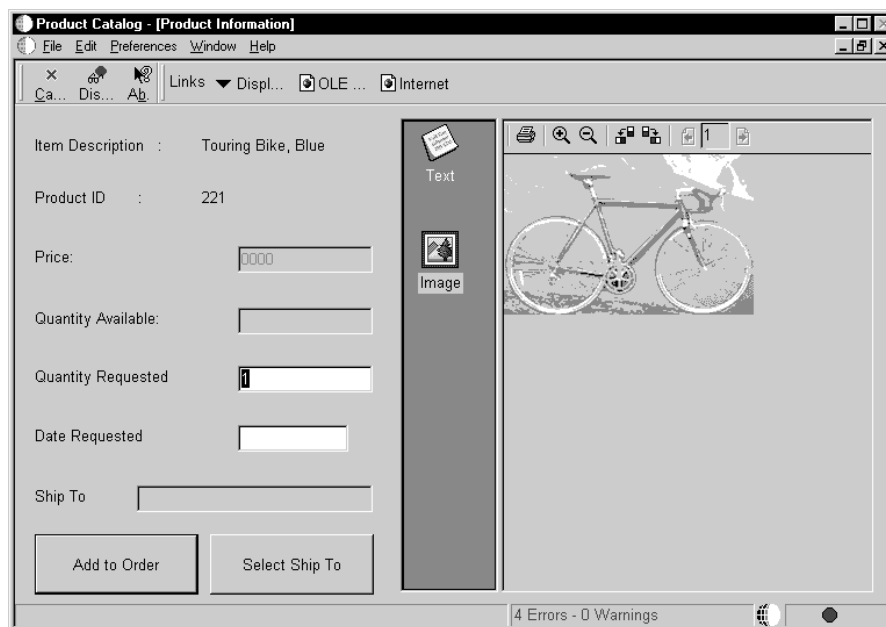


2. Choose a product group and click Select.

Based on the hierarchies defined in the Item Hierarchy Manager, you can make multiple product group selections.



3. On Product Listing, click Select to review the product information for a specific product.



4. On Product Information, complete the following fields and click Add to Order to order the item:
 - Quantity Requested
 - Date Requested

5. Click Cancel to return to the product listing and subsequent product groups.
6. On Product Catalog, click Close.

Working with Your Favorites

Your customers can access their preferred selections with templates through Your Favorites. Your Favorites is a method to group items for your customers and speed the order entry process. Customers can create their own product groups that contain lists of their most commonly ordered items. Additionally, your customers can create a template from order history. The system retrieves the order information from the Sales Order Detail History table (F42119).

At order entry time, customers can select the Your Favorites group they wish to use. From the list of items that appear, they enter a quantity to order or they accept commonly ordered amounts.

Working with Your Favorites includes the following tasks:

- Setting up Your Favorites
- Generating an order from Your Favorites

See Also

- *Setting Up Order Templates* for more information about creating templates from sales history



To set up Your Favorites

From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Your Favorites.

On Your Favorites

1. On Your Favorites, click Add for a new template or click Find to access existing templates.

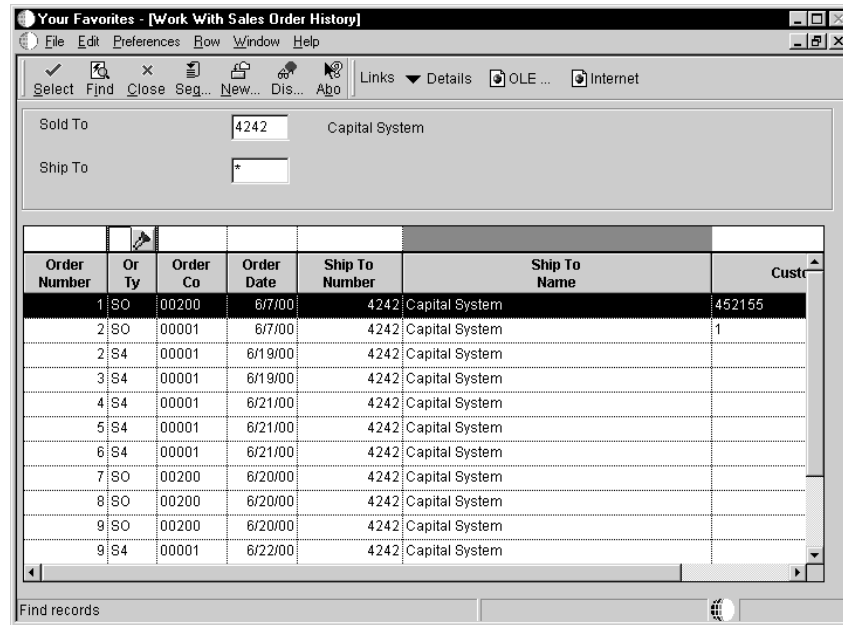
Item Number	Usual Quantity	UM	Seq No.	Effective From	Effective Thru	Item Description
			5			

2. On Product Group Revisions, complete the following fields:

- Item Number
- Usual Quantity
- UM
- Effective From
- Effective Thru

You can use visual assist to access the Keyword Search feature to retrieve items for Your Favorites.

3. To create a new Your Favorite group from a previous order, use details from a previous order as a template, and choose Order History from the Form menu.



4. On Work with Sales Order History, the system displays previous orders with which you can create a template.
5. To review the sales order, choose Details from the Row menu.
6. Click OK.

► To generate an order from Your Favorites

During order entry on the web, your customers can add new groups or access existing product groups by selecting Your Favorites from the Customer Self-Service menu. Based on the login, the system displays available groups.

1. On Your Favorites, select the product group from which you want to order.
2. If you are working with an existing product group, do either of the following:
 - Enter a quantity for item your customer would like to add to the order.
 - Click “Select All Items” to add the usual quantity for all items to the order.
3. Click OK to incorporate the product group items and quantity into the sales order.

Reviewing Sales Orders for Customer Self-Service

When your customers enter orders using Customer Self-Service, the system generates orders based on the customer information that is identified during login and the products that your customers choose to add to an order. At any time, your customers can choose to cancel the order or place the order. The system does not create the order until the order is accepted. If Customer Self-Service is unexpectedly disconnected, the system holds the customer's order until the customer accesses self-service again. The system prompts the customer to review and continue processing the interrupted order, or delete it.

Using Customer Self-Service involves activating some or all of the processing options within the programs on the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314). Once you have activated the processing options, and have set up your business functions to enable self-service, your customers can perform any or all of the following tasks:

- ☐ Inquiring on orders
- ☐ Revising orders
- ☐ Reviewing product availability
- ☐ Reviewing customer information
- ☐ Tracking shipments

Note: The above tasks are based on J.D. Edwards forms and data provided for self-service in a Microsoft Windows environment. The navigations, forms, steps, and data shown in these tasks might not correspond to your customized self-service Internet site.

Since order entry, inquiry, and acceptance are part of Sales Order Entry (P4210) program, set the following processing options for creating orders on the web:

- You must activate Customer Self-Service
- You can activate the option, "Display before Accept" so that your customers can review order totals, including taxes before the system creates records in the Sales Order Header (F4201) and Sales Order Detail (F4211) file.

- For inventory commitments, activate the Store and Forward processing option for either Full or Partial Edit. The system does not perform inventory commitments until you run the Batch Edit and Creation (R4210) program. Do not use online commitments in the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) used for Customer Self-Service.

The system uses the primary unit of measure from the Item Master. The system displays the unit price in the currency that is identified for the customer in Address Book Master.

See Also

- *Working with Detail Information* for more information about processing options and exits from Sales Order Entry to other programs in the Sales Order Management system.

Inquiring on Orders

If you are using this version of Sales Order Entry in a web environment, you must set the processing options in order for your customers to review product selections, modify the order, continue to select items, and then total the order based on the modified information. Additionally, your customers use the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) that you set up for Customer Self-Service to inquire on the status of orders.

► To inquire on an order

From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Order Status.

In the web environment, the system displays the current order.

1. On Order Status, enter any of the following information and click Find:
 - Order Number
 - Customer PO
 - Item Number

Revising Orders

When you create a self-service sale environment, you must enable your customers to choose items from your inventory and create orders based on their selections.

As your customers add items to their orders, they can review and total the order and apply the appropriate taxes. Additionally, your customers can specify an alternate carrier or edit order information by accessing the appropriate option on the Row and Form menus. Your customers can choose to cancel the order or place the order. The system does not create the order until the customer has accepted the order. When your customers access Customer Self-Service, they can also copy and revise existing orders.

Many customers frequently order similar quantities and selections of items. With Customer Self-Service, your customers can copy an existing order and revise it to their current needs.

Sometimes, a customer will need to change information on existing orders. In a standard sales environment, your customers are assisted by your employees in making additions or deletions to previously placed orders. When you enable your customers to use Customer Self-Service, they can access their existing orders and revise them.

Your customers can also cancel orders and individual order detail lines on sales orders during the revision process.

Reviewing Product Availability

You can set up a version of the Summary Availability program to review updated quantity information at each branch/plant. When you set up a version of Summary Availability (41202), you must set the processing options for Customer Self-Service functionality. When you activate this processing option, the system only displays summary information for On-Hand quantities. For example, in a web environment, the system does not display quantities that are In Transit, On Receipt, Committed to Other 1 or Committed to Other 2.

Your customers can locate all of the items in a particular location within a branch/plant and review product information for each item.

See Also

- ❑ *Locating Quantity Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for more information about processing options for the Summary Availability program (P41202)

► **To review product availability**

From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Product Availability

1. On Work With Item Availability, enter the item number and click Find.

Product Availability - [Work With Item Availability]

File Edit Preferences Form Row Window Help

Select Find Close Seg... New... Dis... Abo Links Item ... OLE ... Internet

Item Availability

Branch/Plant: U/M EA Each

Supplier: 5767905

Item Number: 220 Touring Bike, Red

Display Options:

- ☒ Summary Only
- ☒ Omit Zero Quantities

Location	Branch/Plant	On Hand	Committed	Available
TOTAL:	10	1000		1
TOTAL:	30	585	1597	2
TOTAL:	40			

Error: File can not be accessed. 2 Errors - 0 Warnings

Work With Item Availability

- Click the visual assist to locate the item. Enter search text and click Find.

Reviewing Customer Information

Your customers can access order and invoice information to review the status of the account. They can review and revise information about their company, their company's forecast, or their orders. They can also review invoices or compare the total accounts receivable and open orders to their current credit limit, which is assigned in the Customer Master table, to determine if the credit limit has been exceeded.

Reviewing customer information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Changing name, address, and telephone information
- ☐ Personalizing customer information
- ☐ Reviewing customer forecasts
- ☐ Reviewing credit status
- ☐ Reviewing account information

Changing Name, Address, and Telephone Information

After you create your database of information about a customer, you maintain the database to ensure that the information is current. Company information such as name, address, and phone numbers can change. Also, information about employees and other individuals associated with the company can change. To support your efforts to keep your address book information current, you can activate self-service for Address Book.

When you activate self-service for Address Book, you allow your customers to review and change specific address book information about themselves such as name, address, phone number, effective date and who's who address book information.

Personalizing Customer Information

You can allow your customers to further personalize their company information through Customer Self-Service. Depending upon their business practices, your customers can further customize Customer Self-Service by selecting different ship-to addresses or entering their purchase order numbers in the sales order header.

Your customer's company might order items for multiple locations in one sales order. Customer Self-Service sales order functionality allows them to select a different ship-to address for different order lines within each sales order they create.

The ship-to addresses for your customer can be organized into structures that correlate to their company, or your customers can choose from all addresses related to their company within the Address Book program. You specify the method your customers select ship-to addresses by enabling the Customer Self-Service Ship To Structure Type processing option on the defaults tab in the Sales Order Entry program (P4210).

Your customers can specify a purchase order number on their Customer Self-Service sales order header. This allows them to better track their purchases and can help them fulfill their accounts payable processes.

Reviewing Customer Forecasts

Forecasting is the process of projecting past sales demand into the future. Implementing a forecasting system allows you to quickly assess current market trends and sales so that you can make informed decisions about your operations. With Customer Self-Service, your customers can access the forecasts you have created for them. They can review and revise the forecasts for their company.

The system displays the forecast values and actual quantities or sales order extended price for the customer over a specified period of time. When your customers revise a forecast, they can change information in their forecast manually, and enter descriptive text for the forecast. Your customers can only access their own forecast.

The system retrieves customer information, such as the customer number and currency code information, based on the login, which is attached to an address book number in User Profiles. If your customers do not enter a branch/plant in the processing options for Sales Order Entry (P4210), the system retrieves the default branch/plant based on the Ship-To address for the order.

Reviewing Credit Status

Your customers can use the Check Credit program to review information about their account and credit status. Your customers can compare the total accounts receivable and open orders to their current credit limit, which is assigned in the Customer Master table, to determine if the credit limit has been exceeded.

Your customers can access the following types of information:

- Accounts receivable (for example, any balances that are currently due)
- Open sales orders (for example, order dates and amounts)

Before You Begin

- ☐ You must activate OneWorld A/R – Line of Business processing in the Enhanced A/R Constants. See *Setting Up A/R Constants* for more information.

► **To review credit status**

From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Credit Status.

1. On Credit Status, review the credit information as of today's date.
2. To retrieve credit information from a particular date, complete the As Of date field and click the Retrieve A/R button.
3. To review open orders, choose Open Orders from the Form menu.

Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Order Date	Sched Pick	Order Amount	Hd CD	Address Number	Ship To Number	Parent Number	Py Ter
2437	SO	00200	11/19/97	11/19/97	700.00		4242	4242	4242	
2441	SO	00200	11/19/97	11/19/97	80,700.00		4242	4242	4242	
2445	SO	00001	11/20/97	11/20/97	500.00		4242	4242	4242	
2451	S4	00001	12/4/97	12/4/97	2,000.00	C1	4242	4245		
2568	S4	00001	3/8/99	3/8/99	1,596.00		4242	4242	4242	
2574	SO	00200	3/12/99	3/12/99	16,000.00		4242	4242		
250	CO	00200	11/1/99	11/1/99	50,000.00		4242	4242	4242	
1100	SD	00001	12/21/99	12/21/99	18.00		4242	4242		
2580	SO	00200	1/6/00	1/6/00	20,000.00		4242	4242		
23185	SO	00200	6/1/05	6/1/05	71,820.00		4242	4242	4242	
121	SO	00001	6/1/05	6/1/05	28,930.00		4242	4242	4242	

4. On Open Order Inquiry, choose an order detail line and click Select to review the order status.

Reviewing Account Information

To quickly review invoices and receipts or audit a customer's transaction history, use Account Status. With the version of Customer Ledger Inquiry set up for Customer Self-Service, your customers can access numerous types of information about their transaction history. Your customers can use these various forms from the Form and Row exits on Work with Customer Ledger Inquiry to review accounts receivable information.

Account information is retrieved from the following tables:

- A/R Ledger (F03B11)
- Invoice Revision Audit Trail (F03B112)
- Receipt Application Detail (F03B14)

See Also

- *Working with Customer Ledger Information* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide* for complete information on the various forms that are available from the Customer Ledger Inquiry form.

► To review account information

From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Account Information.

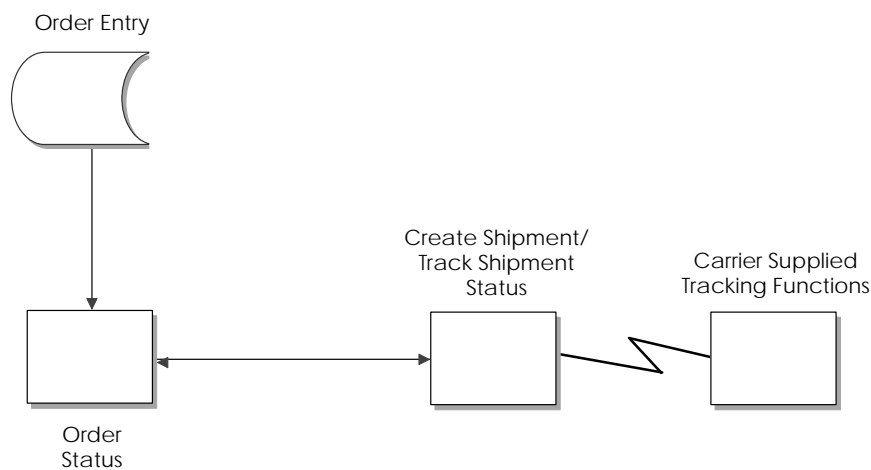
Document Number	Doc Type	Doc Co	Pay Item	Invoice Date	Gross Amount	Open Amount	Discount Available	D
3035	RI	00050	001	4/30/05	7,895.80	7,895.80		
3035	RI	00050	002	4/30/05	301.88	301.88		
3035	RI	00050	003	4/30/05	1,000.00	1,000.00		
3038	RI	00050	001	4/30/05	1,914.94	1,914.94		
44744	RI	00050	001	7/6/05	1,931.40	1,931.40		

1. On Work with Customer Ledger Inquiry, enter customer and invoice criteria and click Find.
2. To review information for a specific invoice, choose the detail line and click Select.
3. On Standard Invoice Entry, review the order and invoice information.
4. Click Close.

Tracking Shipments

If you use the Transportation Management module, your customers can log on to Customer Self-Service to check on the status of a shipment. The status is indicated by shipping status codes. Your customers can check to see whether their shipment is pending, on hold, confirmed, or delivered, as well as whether there are additional requirements for processing the shipment.

Once you enable Customer Self-Service through the Shipment Tracking processing options, your customers can check the statuses on any of their shipments that have been created throughout the system.



► **To review shipment status**

From the Customer Self-Service menu (G42314), choose Shipment Tracking.

Shipment Tracking - [Shipment Tracking]

File Edit Preferences Form Row Window Help

Select Find Close Seg... New... Dis... Abo Links Work ... OLE ... Internet

Branch/Plant Eastern Distribution Center

Ship To *

Sold To 5767905 PZ5767905

Shipment Status 05 Thru 99 Order Number Order Type

Shipment Number	Ship To	Ship To Name	Branch Plant	Sold To	Shipment Status	Actual Date
-----------------	---------	--------------	--------------	---------	-----------------	-------------

Find records

1. On Shipment Tracking, enter the order number and click Find to locate your customer's shipment.

If the order contains multiple lines, your customers might have multiple shipments.

2. To track the shipment of an order line, select the row and choose Shipment Tracking from the Row Exit menu.

The system displays tracking information for the selected order line.



Additional Order Entry and Release

The Sales Order Management system provides different order types to accommodate specific ordering situations. Although you enter these additional orders in the same way that you enter a basic sales order, the system processes each order type differently.

Additional order entry and release includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Working with order releases
- ☐ Entering credit orders
- ☐ Entering transfer orders
- ☐ Working with direct ship orders
- ☐ Working with blanket orders
- ☐ Working with quote orders
- ☐ Working with intercompany orders

You use order releases to return the order to the processing cycle or to initiate the sales order process. For example, you could place a customer's order on hold for credit reasons and then release the order when the customer's credit status changes. Or, you can create sales orders from blanket orders or quote orders by releasing the blanket order or the quote order.

When the system places an order on hold, the order is taken out of the processing cycle. When you release an order, you return it to the order processing cycle.

You use credit orders when a customer returns goods that you want to return to inventory. You can also use credit orders when a customer returns damaged goods that you cannot return to inventory. In both cases, you must issue the necessary credits and make adjustments for the returned merchandise.

You use direct ship orders to record the sale of an item that you purchased from another supplier. The supplier sends the item directly to your customer. Because the supplier ships the item directly to your customer, the system does not process the order quantities through your inventory.



You use blanket orders when you have an agreement with a customer to release an item multiple times over a specified period. For example, you can place an order for 100 items that will be delivered over a period of four months in increments of 25 items per month. At the agreed-upon time, the quantity that you enter in an actual sales order is subtracted from the blanket order.

You use quote orders to record price quotes. You can:

- Access quote orders through the same review, maintenance, and inquiry form that you use to work with sales orders
- Convert an entire or partial quote order to a sales order
- Use quote orders to ensure effective controls over price guarantees
- Use quote orders to avoid committing inventory until the customer authorizes the order

You can use intercompany orders to fill a sales order from a branch/plant other than the selling branch/plant. This is helpful if your company places an order from one location but fills and ships the order from another location, such as a central supply warehouse.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up status codes and order activity rules for additional types of orders. See *Setting Up Order Activity Rules*.
- ☐ Verify that you have set up the line types related to credit orders and direct ship orders. See *Setting Up Order Line Types*.
- ☐ Verify that you have set up the document types for additional types of orders.

Working with Order Releases

You might have orders on hold for several reasons. For example, you might place orders on hold that do not meet margin requirements as well as orders that exceed a customer's credit limit. When an order is on hold, it must be released back into the processing cycle for any additional processing to take place.

The system can withhold an order or order line from the processing cycle if you do not have the quantity to fill the order or order line. This type of hold is a backorder. When an order or order line is placed on backorder, you must release backorders back into the processing cycle when inventory becomes available.

Working with order releases includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Releasing orders on hold
- ☐ Releasing backorders online
- ☐ Releasing backorders in a batch

If you have activated the JDESOENTRY workflow process, the system processes the order through order hold checking. After you click OK to accept the order, the system checks the processing options for hold codes and compares the order against the order hold information.

If the system puts the order on hold, an e-mail message is sent to the address book number defined in the hold code as the Person Responsible. This message indicates that the order is on hold. The person responsible for releasing the orders can use the work center to review messages sent during the workflow process and to access the orders to release. When the order is released, an e-mail message is sent to the salesperson, defined in the commission fields, as well as the sold to number, indicating that the order is being processed.

See Also

- *Setting Up Order Hold Information*

Releasing Orders on Hold

You release orders to return an order to the processing cycle. For example, you might enter an order for a customer who has exceeded their credit limit. The system places the order on hold. When the customer makes a payment, their credit status changes and their orders can be filled. However, the system does not process this customer's orders until you release them. You must have appropriate security access to release an order.

You can place a variety of holds on an order, including:

- Customer holds, such as credit holds
- Item holds, such as detail lines that do not meet the margin requirements
- Order holds, such as orders that do not meet minimum amounts or that exceed maximum limits

You can release items and orders for customers as many times as necessary. You can print the Held Sales Order report to review all sales orders that are on hold.

► To release orders on hold

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Release Holds.

1. On Work With Held Orders, complete the following optional field to display all held orders for your branch/plant:
 - Branch/Plant

2. Click Find.
3. Locate the order that you want to release by completing any combination of the following fields:
 - Hold Code
 - Person Responsible
 - Supplier/ Customer
 - Order Number
4. Choose the order that you want to release.
5. From the Row menu, choose Release.
6. On Password Confirmation, complete the following field and click OK:
 - Password
7. Choose the release option to release additional orders.

Field	Explanation
Hold Code	A user defined code (42/HC) that identifies why an order was placed on hold (for example, credit, budget, or margin standards were exceeded).
Person Responsible	The address book number of the person who is responsible for reviewing and releasing orders placed on hold.
Supplier/ Customer	A second, 30-character description, remark, or explanation.
Order Number	A number that identifies an original document. This can be a voucher, an order number, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on.

Processing Options for Held Order Release

Defaults

1. Order Type _____
2. Release Code _____

Display

1. Enter a '1' to display SO's, else display PO's _____
2. Enter 'Y' to display previously released orders _____

Versions

Enter the version for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.

1. Sales Order Entry (P4210) _____
2. Purchase Order Entry (P4310) _____
3. Print Pick Slip (R42520) _____
4. Ship and Debit (R45100) _____

Process

Enter '1' for

1. Automatic printing of Pick Slip. _____
 2. Enter the release status code of the work order _____
 3. Ship and Debit Processing _____
- Blank = Do not call R45100
1 = Subsystem Mode
2 = Batch Mode

Warehouse

1. Enter the request processing mode _____

' ' = No pick request. '1' = Generate requests only. '2' = Generate requests and process using the subsystem.

2. If processing pick requests using the subsystem, enter the version. _____
3. Override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated. _____

Prepayment

1. Release Authorization Hold and Advance Prepayment Status. _____
2. Release Settlement Hold and Advance Prepayment Status. _____

Releasing Backorders Online

The system can withhold an order or order line from the processing cycle if you do not have the quantity to fill the order or order line. This type of hold is a backorder. You release backorders when inventory becomes available.

You can enter a quantity that is greater than the backordered amount. The system updates the following tables with the amount:

- Order Total (F4201)
- Order Quantity (F4211)
- Customer Open Order Amount (F0301)
- Item Balance File (F41021)

If the payment instrument type for the sales order is cash, the system does not update the the Customer Open Order Amount.

You can locate backorder information for a specific customer, item, or order before you release a backorder.

Note: If you customize the grid sequence in either of the backorder release forms and you set the display processing options to show only those backorders that can be completely filled, you should set up the other grid sequence to be consistent.



To release backorders online

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Release Backorders - Online.

Promised Ship	Pr Cd	Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	2nd Item Number	Quantity Backordered	UoM	Sold To Number	Sh Nu
6/5/05 0		23200 SO		00001	1.000	2011	15	EA	4247	
6/21/05 0		2402 SO		00001	1.000	2011	15	EA	4242	
6/2/05 1		23198 SO		00001	1.000	2011	24	EA	4243	

1. On Work With Backorders, complete the following fields and click Find:
 - Business Unit
 - Item Number
 - Sold To
 - Ship To
 - Order Number
 - Customer PO
2. Do one of the following:
 - To release all orders that appear on the form, choose Release Shown Rows from the Form menu.
 - Choose a specific order that you want to release and click Select.

3. On Release Backorders, complete the following field:

- Quantity To Ship

4. Click OK.

Field	Explanation
Business Unit	<p>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, branch, or plant.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, employee, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p>Note: The system uses the job number for journal entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</p>
Item Number	The number assigned to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format.
Sold To	A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, a location, and any other address book members.

Field	Explanation
Ship To	The address number of the location to which you want to ship this order. The address book provides default values for customer address, including street, city, state, zip code, and country.
Order Number	A number that identifies an original document. This can be a voucher, an order number, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on.
Customer PO	An alphanumeric value used as a cross-reference or secondary reference number. Typically, this is the customer number, supplier number, or job number.

Processing Options for Backorder Release

Defaults Tab

These processing options determine default values, such as the document type, that the Backorder Release program (P42117) uses when other values are not entered for the transaction.

Next Status for Released Orders

Use this processing option to indicate the line status to be used as the next status on released orders. You must use a status that has been set up in user defined code table (40/AT) of the order activity rules based on the order type and the line type combination.

Note: If you do not enter a status or enter an invalid status, the system does not update the order status.

Display Tab

These processing options control the status at which the system displays backorders.

Next Status to Select

Use this processing option to indicate the line status range the system used to select backorders for release. You must use a status code that has been set up in user defined codes table (40/AT) of the order activity rules based on the order type and the line type combination.

Display 2

These processing options control whether the system displays certain types of order information, such as held orders, closed lines, and kits.

1. Total Fill Only

Use this processing option to indicate whether to display all lines or only the lines that can be totally filled. Valid values are:

Blank Show all lines.

1 Show only lines that can be totally filled.

2. Kit Components

Use this processing option to specify whether you want kit components to appear in backorder release.

Note: If kit components are displayed, kit balancing is turned off and you can release components separate from the total kit. Valid values are:

1 Display kit components.

Blank Do not display kit components.

3. Held Orders

Use this processing option to specify whether you want held orders to appear in the Backorder Release Revisions form and to allow the release of the held orders. Valid values are:

1 Display held orders and allow release.

Blank Do not display held orders.

Process Tab

These processing options control whether the Sales Order Entry program performs as follows:

- Allows you to include backordered quantity as available quantity
- Activates commitment processing
- Allows you to release an order when the quantity to ship exceeds the backordered quantity
- Allows you to release an order when the on-hand quantity is zero
- Allows you to update costs with the most current cost

1. Backorder Quantity as Available Quantity

Use this processing option to specify whether you want the backorder quantity added to the quantity available. This option will give you more quantity available to fill orders. Valid values are:

Blank Do not add backorder quantity to quantity available.

1 Add backorder quantity to quantity available.

2. Commitments

Use this processing option to specify whether you call the Commitment program to hard commit released orders to inventory locations. If you do not call the commit program, the system only soft commits orders that are released. Valid values are:

1 Call the Commitment program.

Blank Do not call the Commitment program and only soft commit released orders.

Note: If you release amounts over the quantity available, the order may be backordered again.

3. Release when Quantity to Ship exceeds Backordered Quantity

Use this processing option to specify whether you want to release an amount that is greater than the original backordered quantity. Valid values are:

1 Allow release of amounts that are greater than the original backordered quantity.

Blank Do not allow the release of amounts that are greater than the original quantity.

4. Zero On-hand Quantity

Use this processing option to specify whether you want to allow the release of orders when the quantity on hand is zero. Valid values are:

1 Allow release when the on-hand quantity is zero.

Blank Do not allow the release when the on-hand quantity is zero.

Note: This option can drive inventory levels to negative quantities, which affects average costing.

5. Cost Update

Use this processing option to specify whether you want to update released orders with the current costs. This option will allow you to update costs for

items that might have changed costs during the interval between the placement of the order and release of the backordered amounts. Valid values are:

- 1 Update Costs.
- Blank Do not update costs.

Note: The system does not change sale price.

Order Holds Tab

These processing options activate order hold processing. You must specify the hold code in any of the following processing options to activate order hold processing. You set up hold parameters in Order Hold Information (P42090). Multiple hold codes might result in multiple holds for a single order. You must release the sales order from all holds before the system processes the order.

1. Credit Check Hold Code

Use this processing option to identify the credit hold code that the system uses to automatically compare the credit limit that you set up for your customer in Customer Master Information against the order and any outstanding balances in accounts receivable.

You define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold in Order Hold Information (P42090) and attach those conditions to a hold code. You must specify the hold code in this processing option to activate order hold processing.

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (42/HC).

2. Partial Order Hold Code

Use this processing option to identify the code that the system uses to hold an entire order if quantity is not available to fill an order detail line. You must enter the partial order hold code for backorder release to release the hold when the order is completely filled. The system can then release and remove the hold according to information in Customer Billing Instructions, Item Master Information, Item Branch/Plant Information and Branch/Plant Constants form. If you do not enter a correct partial hold code, the backorder release does not release the held order.

Enter a value that has been set up in user defined code (42/HC).

Print Tab

This processing option indicates whether the system prints invoices or pick slips automatically after a backorder is filled.

1. Automatic Print

Use this processing option to specify whether to automatically print invoices or pick slips. Valid values are:

- 1 Automatically print pick slips.
- 2 Automatically print invoices.
- Blank Do not print pick slips or invoices.

Note: Use the processing option on tabs “Versions” to indicate a specific version of Print Pick Slips (R42520) or Print Invoices (R42565).

Versions Tab

These processing options determine the version that the system uses when you choose the associated row or form exit on Backorder Release forms or to print invoices and pickslips through the subsystem. If you leave a processing option blank, the system uses the ZJDE0001 version.

1. Sales Order Entry (P4210)

Use this processing option to specify the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) to review orders when you choose Sales Detail from the row menu.

2. Customer Service Inquiry (P4210)

Use this processing option to specify the version of Customer Service Inquiry (P4210) to review orders when you choose Customer Service Inquiry from the form menu.

3. Item Availability (P41202)

Use this processing option to specify the version of Item Availability (P41202) to review item information when you choose Item Availability from the form menu.

4. Subsystem Print Invoice (R42565)

Use this processing option if you generate invoices through the subsystem. You must specify the version, Invoice Print (R42565), that is set up for subsystem processing.

Note: To use this option, you must enter the option to automatically print invoices on the Print tab of the Backorder Release program.

5. Subsystem Print Pick Slip (R42520)

Use this processing option if you generate invoices through the subsystem. You must specify the version, Print Pick Slip (R42520), that is set up for subsystem processing.

Note: To use this option, you must enter the option to automatically print pick slips on the Print tab of the Backorder Release program.

Warehouse Tab

The following processing options are used in conjunction with the Warehouse Management system. If you use Warehouse Management, you can specify the mode for pick request processing, the version of Print Pick Request (P46171).

1. Request Processing Mode

Use this processing option to create a pick request in the Warehouse Management system. If you use Warehouse Management, the system can generate a pick request, then process the request through the subsystem. A pick request is used to process a suggestion to pick the inventory for an order from a particular location. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not generate pick requests.

- 1 The system generates requests only.
- 2 The system generates requests and creates the pick request through the subsystem.

2. Subsystem Print Pick Request

Use this processing option if you generate warehouse management pick requests through the subsystem. You must specify the version, Print Pick Request (P46171), that is set up for subsystem processing.

3. Override Next Status

Use this processing option to define an alternative status in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type combination. The combination of the beginning status and the override status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

Releasing Backorders in a Batch

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Release Backorders – Batch.

You can release multiple backorders at one time using the Release Backorders - Batch program. When inventory becomes available, the system releases backorders until the available inventory is completely committed.

The system automatically establishes the order in which backorders are filled. By default, the system fills the quantity for the order with the earliest date first. To fill an order based on the priority code that you set up in customer billing instructions, you can create an alternative version of the Release Backorders - Batch program and edit the data sequence values. This version fills any orders with priority codes first, then any orders with a specified request date.

Processing Options for Backorder Release and Report

Defaults Tab

These processing options determine default values, such as the document type, that the Batch Backorder Release program (P42118) uses when other values are not entered for the transaction.

Next Status for Released Orders

Use this processing option to indicate the line status to be used as the next status on released orders. You must use a status that has been set up in user defined code table (40/AT) of the order activity rules based on the order type and the line type combination.

Note: If you do not enter a status or enter an invalid status, the system does not update the order status.

Process Tab

These processing options control whether the Sales Order Entry program performs as follows:

- Allows you to include backordered quantity as available quantity
- Activates commitment processing
- Allows you to release an order when the quantity to ship exceeds the backordered quantity
- Allows you to release an order when the on-hand quantity is zero
- Allows you to update costs with the most current cost

1. Backorder Quantity as Available Quantity

Use this processing option to specify if you want to run the backorder release report in proof or final mode. In proof mode no changes will be made to any sales order lines and no backorders will be filled. The proof mode will only show you what sales order lines you have enough inventory to fill. In final mode the program will update and fill backordered lines.

Valid Values Are:

- 1 Final Mode.
- Blank Proof Mode.

2. Commitments

Use this processing option to specify whether you want the backorder quantity added to the quantity available. This option will give you more quantity available to fill orders. Valid values are:

Blank Do not add backorder quantity to quantity available.

- 1 Add backorder quantity to quantity available.

3. Release when Quantity to Ship exceeds Backordered Quantity

Use this processing option to specify whether you call the Commitment program to hard commit released orders to inventory locations. If you do not call the commit program, the system only soft commits orders that are released. Valid values are:

- 1 Call the Commitment program.
- Blank Do not call the Commitment program and only soft commit released orders.

Note: If you release amounts over the quantity available, the order may be backordered again.

4. Zero On-hand Quantity

Use this processing option to specify whether you want to allow the release of orders when the quantity on hand is zero. Valid values are:

- 1 Allow release when the on-hand quantity is zero.
- Blank Do not allow the release when on-hand quantity is zero.

Note: This option can drive inventory levels to negative quantities, which affects average costing.

5. Cost Update

Use this processing option to specify whether you want to update released orders with the current costs. This option will allow you to update costs for items that might have changed costs during the interval between the placement of the order and release of the backordered amounts. Valid values are:

- 1 Update Costs.
- Blank Do not update costs.

Note: The system does not change sale price.

Order Holds Tab

These processing options activate order hold processing. You must specify the hold code in any of the following processing options to activate order hold processing. You set up hold parameters in Order Hold Information (P42090). Multiple hold codes might result in multiple holds for a single order. You must release the sales order from all holds before the system processes the order.

1. Credit Check Hold Code

Use this processing option to identify the credit hold code that the system uses to automatically compare the credit limit that you set up for your customer in Customer Master Information against the order and any outstanding balances in accounts receivable.

You define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold in Order Hold Information (P42090) and attach those conditions to a hold code. You must specify the hold code in this processing option to activate order hold processing.

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (42/HC).

2. Partial Order Hold Code

Use this processing option to identify the code that the system uses to hold an entire order if quantity is not available to fill an order detail line. You must enter the partial order hold code for backorder release to release the hold when the order is completely filled. The system can then release and remove the hold according to information in Customer Billing Instructions, Item Master Information, Item Branch/Plant Information and Branch/Plant Constants form. If you do not enter a correct partial hold code, the backorder release does not release the held order.

Enter a value that has been set up in user defined code (42/HC).

Print Tab

This processing option indicates whether the system prints order information for those orders that can be completely filled, orders that are on hold, or components of kits.

1. Total Fill Orders

Use this processing option to indicate whether to print all lines or only the lines that can be totally filled. Valid values are:

Blank Print all lines.

1 Print only lines that can be totally filled.

2. Print Held Orders

Use this processing option to specify whether you want held orders to print and to allow the release of the held orders. Valid values are:

1 Print held orders and allow release.

Blank Do not print held orders.

3. Print Kit Component Lines

Use this processing option to specify whether you want kit components to print in backorder release.

Note: If kit components are displayed, kit balancing is turned off and you can release components separate from the total kit. Valid values are:

1 Print kit components.

Blank Do not print kit components.

Versions Tab

These processing options determine the version that the system during backorder release processing. If you leave a processing option blank, the system uses the ZJDE0001 version.

4. Subsystem Print Invoice (R42565)

Use this processing option if you generate invoices through the subsystem. You must specify the version, Invoice Print (R42565), that is set up for subsystem processing.

5. Subsystem Print Pick Slip (R42520)

Use this processing option if you generate pick slips through the subsystem. You must specify the version, Print Pick Slip (R42520), that is set up for subsystem processing.

Warehouse Tab

The following processing options are used in conjunction with the Warehouse Management system. If you use Warehouse Management, you can specify the mode for pick request processing, the version of Print Pick Request (P46171).

1. Request Processing Mode

Use this processing option to create a pick request in the Warehouse Management system. If you use Warehouse Management, the system can generate a pick request, then process the request through the subsystem. A pick request is used to process a suggestion to pick the inventory for an order from a particular location. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not generate pick requests.

- 1 The system generates requests only.
- 2 The system generates requests and creates the pick request through the subsystem.

2. Subsystem Print Pick Request

Use this processing option if you generate warehouse management pick requests through the subsystem. You must specify the version, Print Pick Request (P46171), that is set up for subsystem processing.

3. Override Next Status

Use this processing option to indicate an alternative step in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type combination. The combination of the beginning status and the override status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

Entering Credit Orders

You use credit orders when a customer returns goods that you might return to inventory, or when you receive back damaged goods that you cannot return to inventory. In both cases, you need to issue the necessary credits and make adjustments for the returned merchandise.

Entering credit orders consists of:

- ☐ Entering credit orders manually
- ☐ Entering system-generated credit orders

When you enter credit orders manually, the system applies the current unit price for the credited item. If necessary, you can also enter a different unit price to override the default information.

When the system creates a credit order, it retrieves the credit information from the Sales Order Detail Ledger table (F42199). The credit order amount is based on the unit price that the customer actually paid instead of the current price.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up a line type for credit orders. See *Setting Up Order Line Types*.

Entering Credit Orders Manually

You enter a credit order manually to record a returned item and credit the current price to the customer. You can override the default pricing information. You enter credit orders in the same way that you enter sales orders.

For credit orders, you might want to define not only the price that you refund the customer for the return, but the process with which you receive goods into your inventory.

You can set up a specific document type for credit orders to track credits in specific general ledger accounts and to record a separate credit history. You can set up automatic accounting instructions to direct entries to special accounts that are based on the credit order document type. This allows the system to track returns and create general ledger entries for credits when you run the Update Customer Sales program.

To set up a credit order line type, you must activate the reverse sign option in line type definitions. When you enter a sales order, the system subtracts the quantity from available inventory. When you enter a credit order, the system does not subtract the quantity from available inventory.

You can set up a document type that identifies credit orders, and then set up status codes for the credit order document type and line type combination. Status codes define the steps in which the system must process an order.

If you use price adjustments, you must set up negative quantity breaks to account for items in credit orders.

To enter credit orders manually

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the steps to enter order information.
3. If restock charges or nonstock items are included on the return, complete the following fields:
 - Quantity Ordered
 - Item Number
 - Ln Ty
4. Click OK.

When you accept the order, the total amount of the credit appears above the first line item.

Entering System-Generated Credit Orders

When you create a credit order from history, you retrieve the original order information and issue the customer credit for the amount based on the unit price that the customer actually paid. This might be different from the current price. The system retrieves the order information from the Sales Order Detail Ledger table (F42199).

► To enter system-generated credit orders

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Credit Orders from History.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.

2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, choose Credit Memo from the Form menu.

Order Number	Order Type	Order Co	Line Number	Sold To	Alpha Name	Quantity Ordered	Quantity Shipped
1	SO	00098	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
1	SO	00099	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
1	SO	00099	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
1	SO	00249	1.000	4242	Capital System	5	5
2	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	100	100
2	SO	00098	1.000	4242	Capital System	2	2
2	SO	00099	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
2	SO	00099	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
2	SO	00099	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
3	SO	00249	1.000	4242	Capital System	10	10
3	SO	00249	1.000	4242	Capital System	10	10
4	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	10	10

3. On Work With Sales Ledger Inquiry, click Find to review all order detail lines from the history information.
4. To add order information to a credit order, do either of the following:
 - To add an order detail line to the credit memo, choose Select Line from the Row menu. The system retrieves the history information regardless of the status codes that you have defined in the processing options for Sales Ledger Inquiry.
 - To add all detail lines from an order, choose Select Order from the Row menu. The system retrieves the history information for all detail lines in the order within the status code range that you have defined in the processing options for Sales Ledger Inquiry or the status code range that you define in the Additional Selections tab.
5. Optionally, to review order history information, highlight the order detail line and click Select. Review the order on Sales Ledger Detail. Click Cancel to return to Work with Sales Ledger Inquiry.
6. On Work with Sales Ledger Inquiry, click Close.
7. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, review the credit information.

If you have incorrectly selected a line or order to create a credit memo, but you haven't created a credit order, you can clear the credit information.

8. On Sales Ledger Inquiry, choose Clear Credit Memo from the Form menu.
9. Click OK.

The system creates the credit order.

To delete the credit information after you have created a credit memo, you cancel the detail lines on Sales Order Detail Revisions.

10. To create another credit order or review the credit orders that exist, do one of the following:
 - To create another credit order from history, choose Credit Memo from the Form menu.
 - To review credit orders, click Cancel to return to Work with Sales Order Headers and then click Find.

Processing Options for Sales Ledger Inquiry

Defaults

Order Type	_____
Status Code - From	_____
Status Code - Thru	_____

Credit Memo

Note: The following options are only in use if this application is called from Sales Order Entry (P4210) and the "Select Order" row exit is used to select all the order lines for processing..

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. Enter the status code to select when retrieving credit orders. | _____ |
| 2. Enter '1' if the status code is based on the Last Status. If left blank, the status code is based on the Next Status. | _____ |

Versions

Note: The following options are in use only when this application is NOT called from sales order entry (P4210).

Credit Order Entry Version	_____
Sales Order Entry Version	_____

Entering Transfer Orders

You enter a transfer order to ship inventory between branch/plants within your company and to maintain an accurate on-hand inventory amount. When you create a transfer order, the system does the following:

- Creates a purchase order for the supplier, which is the branch/plant that ships the items
- Creates a sales order for the supplying branch/plant to the customer, which is the receiving branch/plant
- Processes the inventory amounts on the transfer order as a formal purchase and sale of goods
- Creates documents, such as pick slips or invoices, that are necessary to complete the transfer

Understanding Inventory Transfers and Transfer Orders

You can record a transfer transaction using either the Transfers program in the Inventory Management system or the Transfer Order program in either the Procurement or the Sales Order Management system.

When you create an inventory transfer in the Inventory Management system, the system moves inventory from one location to another and the records the transaction immediately. The system does not create sales or purchase order documents; therefore, you do not have a paper trail for tracking inventory. At the most, you might require management approval

When you create a transfer order in either the Procurement or the Sales Order Management system, you can ship and receive goods. In this way, you can account for markups, freight costs, and transport time. The system creates the paper trail by generating a sales order and a related purchase order. The system processes each order based on the order activity rules that you set up for the document type/line type combination.

When you create a transfer order, the Transfer Order program creates records in the following tables:

- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Sales Order Detail (F4211)
- Purchase Order Header (F4301)
- Purchase Order Detail (F4311)

You cannot enter configured items or kit information on a transfer order. To enter an order for kits, use the regular sales or purchase order entry programs.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set the processing options for the version of the Sales Order Entry program that you use for transfer orders.

See Also

- *Entering Purchase Order Detail Information* in the *Procurement Guide*

▶ To enter transfer orders

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Transfers.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.

The screenshot shows the 'Transfers - [Sales Order Detail Revisions]' window. The form includes fields for 'From Branch/Plant' (27), 'To Branch/Plant' (40), 'Landed Cost Rule', 'Order Date' (9/25/98), 'S/O Number' (2), 'P/O Number' (3), 'S/O Exch Rate', and 'P/O Exch Rate'. Below the form is a table with columns: Quantity Ordered, UoM, Item Number, Ln Ty, Unit Price, Extended Price, Branch/Plant, and Location. The table contains 10 rows of data.

Quantity Ordered	UoM	Item Number	Ln Ty	Unit Price	Extended Price	Branch/Plant	Location
1	EA	2465	S	120.0000	120.00	27	..
1	PL	4251	S	2.0000	120.00	27	..
1	PL	4200	S	8.3000	1,245.00	27	..
1	PL	4250	S	1.0000	60.00	27	..
1	PL	9060	S	6.6400	1,328.00	27	..
1	CA	9070	S	6.0000	360.00	27	..
1	PL	9052	S	380.0000	228,000.00	27	..
1	PL	4220	S	137.0000	82,200.00	27	..
1	CA	9071	S	5.0000	120.00	27	..
1	PL	5004	S	.7800	468.00	27	..
1	PL	5005	S	.4800	8.64	27	..

2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Branch/Plant
 - To Branch/Plant
 - Landed Cost Rule
3. For multicurrency orders, complete the following fields:
 - P/O Exch Rate
 - S/O Exch Rate

4. Complete the steps to enter item information.

See *Entering Item Information*.

5. Click OK to accept the order.

Working with Direct Ship Orders

A direct ship order is the sale of an item that you purchase from a supplier, who then sends the item directly to your customer. The quantity and item information of a direct ship order does not affect your inventory.

Working with direct ship orders includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Maintaining integrity between related sales and purchase orders
- ☐ Entering direct ship orders

When you enter a direct ship order, the system simultaneously creates a sales order for the customer and a purchase order for the supplier. The purchase order specifies that you want the supplier to ship the item directly to your customer.

When you set up line types for direct ship orders, you must define the inventory interface for direct ship orders as D and activate the option, Edit Item Master for Non-Stock Item. During direct ship order entry, the system verifies the item number in the Item Branch table (F4102) and the cost and price information in the Item Cost Ledger (F4105) and Base Price (F4106) tables. However, the system does not create inventory commitments or perform availability checks.

The program creates records in the following tables:

- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Sales Order Detail (F4211)
- Purchase Order Header (F4301)
- Purchase Order Detail (F4311)

When you change information on either the sales or the purchase order, the system updates the corresponding order with the following information:

- Promise date
- Quantity ordered
- Primary unit of measure (changes purchasing unit of measure)
- Weight and volume (when a change is made to quantity)
- Unit price

Maintaining Integrity between Related Sales and Purchase Orders

When you enter a sales order, and use the direct ship line type (D), the system creates a corresponding purchase order. If the system puts the order on hold, both the sales and purchase order are withheld from the sales order and purchase order process. If you cancel the order or the order detail line on a sales order, the system cancels the corresponding purchase order detail line or purchase order.

Changing information on the sales order might affect purchase order processing. Likewise, changing the purchase order might affect sales order information. The system automatically updates the corresponding order if you make changes to information in the following fields:

Status

When you close or cancel either a purchase or a sales order, the system updates the status of the corresponding order.

The system updates the sales order status when the supplier ships goods to the customer and the goods have been formally received.

If a line is partially received, the system updates only the sales order status for the portion of the items that are received. The remaining quantity remains at the current status level.

Cost

The system maintains the original cost in the purchase order. The system does not update the cost on the purchase order when the cost on the receipt is different. However, any changes to the cost during receipts are updated to the sales order detail line, unless you use standard costing.

Lot/Serial Number

When the supplier enters a receipt and specifies a lot or serial number, the system updates the sales order detail line with the lot/serial number information. For multiple items, the system splits the sales and purchase order for each lot/serial number. If you reverse a lot/serial number, the system issues a warning message indicating the reversal in the sales order.

Dates

When the supplier ships the goods to the customer, the supplier enters the receipt date to indicate that the customer has received the item. The system updates the actual ship date in the sales order detail line.

Receipts

When the supplier ships goods to the customer, the supplier can enter a receipt to indicate that the customer has received the item. During receipts, any changes in the cost are updated to the corresponding sales order detail line, unless the standard costing method is used.

For partial receipts, the system splits the sales order detail lines to reflect the quantity that remains to be received. For receipt of lots and serialized information, the system splits the sales order detail line to correspond with lot and serial information on the purchase order.

When you reverse the receipt of an order detail line, the system updates the status of the sales order detail line.

Voucher Match

When the supplier enters a voucher for the invoice, the system updates the cost on the sales order detail line with the new cost, if the order detail line in the sales order is not closed or purged.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set the processing options for the version the Sales Order Entry program (P4210) that you use for direct ship orders.
- ☐ Verify that you have set up a line type for direct ship orders. See *Setting Up Order Line Types*.

Entering Direct Ship Orders

You enter a direct ship order to record the sale of an item that your supplier sends directly to your customer. The quantity and item information does not impact your inventory when you enter a direct ship order.

You can create a direct ship quote or blanket order. If you activate the commitment processing option in the Sales Order Entry program (P4210) to commit to Other Quantity 1 or Other Quantity 2, the system does not create a purchase order, even if you use the non-stock line type that you have set up for direct ship orders. When you release a sales order against the direct ship quote or blanket order, the system creates a purchase order.

To enter direct ship orders

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Direct Ships.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Ship To
 - Quantity Ordered
 - Item Number
 - UoM
 - Unit Price
 - Ln Ty
3. Click OK.

See Also

- *Entering Purchase Order Detail Information* in the *Procurement Guide*

Working with Blanket Orders

Use a blanket order when a customer agrees to purchase a quantity of an item over a specified period of time. Then, at agreed-upon times, you create sales orders for partial quantities of the blanket order.

You can either enter a sales order directly to deduct the partial quantity from the blanket order, or you can release the blanket order. You can view the original quantity ordered on the blanket order, the associated released orders, and the remaining quantities.

Working with blanket orders includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Entering a blanket order
- ☐ Creating a sales order from a blanket order
- ☐ Releasing a blanket order
- ☐ Releasing multiple blanket orders

You can set the commitment control processing option in sales order entry so that the system does not commit inventory when you create blanket orders. If you set this processing option, the system ignores the Inventory Commitment Preference.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set the processing option in the Sales Order Entry program to process blanket orders and releases.
- ☐ Set up a user defined code for blanket orders in user defined code table 40/BT.

See Also

- *Locating On-Hand Quantity Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for information about committing inventory

Entering a Blanket Order

You can enter the blanket order as one line with a requested date that reflects the last day of the agreement. At agreed-upon times, you create sales orders for partial quantities of the blanket order.

You can create a blanket order in the same way that you enter a sales order, except that the quantity that you enter represents the *entire* quantity to release during the blanket order period. In the same way, the requested date that you enter represents the *last* date on which the blanket order is effective.

To enter a blanket order

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Blankets.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Branch/Plant
 - Ship To
 - Quantity Ordered
 - UoM
 - Item Number
 - Ln Ty
3. Click OK.

See Also

- *Working with Detail Information*
- *Releasing a Blanket Order*

Creating a Sales Order from a Blanket Order

When you create a sales order, the system deducts the quantity of the order from an existing blanket order. The system maintains any remaining balance on the blanket order for future orders.

If there are multiple blanket orders for a customer, the system indicates additional processing. If there is a single blanket order, the system automatically processes the sales order that you enter against the outstanding blanket order.

To create a sales order from a blanket order, you must use the unit of measure from the original blanket order. If the units of measure in the sales order do not match the units of measure in the blanket order, the system does not initiate blanket order release.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have created a blanket order for the customer and the item
- ☐ Verify that you have create a user defined code for blanket orders in table 40/BT

► To create a sales order from a blanket order

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Blankets.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, complete the steps to enter a sales order.

After you enter a detail line, the system indicates additional information processing. For blanket orders, the system displays a check mark in the row header and column.

The screenshot shows the 'Sales Order Detail - [Sales Order Detail Revisions]' window. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Row, Window, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with buttons for OK, Cancel, New, Display, and Abort, along with icons for Links, Line Description, OLE Database, and Internet.

The main form contains the following fields:

- Order Number: 2472
- SO: 00001
- Branch/Plant: 30
- Sold To: 4244
- Creekside Warehouse
- Order Date: 6/15/05
- Ship To: 4244
- Creekside Warehouse
- Order Total: 798.00
- Currency: USD
- Exchange Rate:
- Base: USD
- Foreign: ☐

Below the form is a table with the following columns:

GA	G/L Cat	Agreement Exists	Blankets Exists	Association Exists	Substitution Exists	Agreement Number	Agreement Supplement
✓	IN30		✓				

The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Row:2'.

2. Choose the row then choose Blanket Orders From the Row menu.

Quantity Ordered	UM	Quantity Open	Unit Price	Branch Plant	Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Next Status
1	EA	3	798.0000	30	255	SB	00001	1.000	560

3. On Blanket Release, complete the quantity information and click OK.

If the order matches multiple blanket orders, you can choose the appropriate order from which to release.

4. Select the appropriate blanket order, complete the quantity information, and click OK.
5. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, add additional items or click OK to create the sales order.

Releasing a Blanket Order

You can create sales orders for your customers with blanket orders. You use the Release Blanket Orders program to manually deduct item quantity from a blanket order. The system creates a sales order for the quantity that you specify.

The system consolidates order lines based on Sold To, Branch/Plant, and currency code information. The order numbers that a user enters can be consolidated in the same way as the system-generated sales orders. For example, if you select multiple records to release and enter a new order number for the first record only, the system consolidates the orders.

► To release a blanket order

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Release Blankets.

1. On Work With Order Blanket Release, locate the order that has the items that you want to release by completing the following fields:
 - Order Number
 - Or Ty
 - Order Co

If you have more than one blanket order for the same customer and item, all blanket orders appear on the Blanket Release form. The Quantity fields do not contain values. You must enter the quantity for the appropriate blanket order.

2. Choose all order lines to release and click Select.

The screenshot shows the 'Release Blankets' window with the following data entered:

Order Number	210	SB	90001
Line Number	1,000		
Branch/Plant	30		
Sold To	4242	Capital System	
Ship To	4242	Capital System	
Item Number	210	Mountain Bike, Red	
Unit of Measure	EA		
Unit Price	798.0000		
New Order Number	SO		
Release Quantity	100		
Request Date			

3. On Blanket Order Revisions, complete the following fields to release a different quantity than the quantity that is listed:
 - Request Date
 - Release Quantity
 - New Order Number

When you release a blanket order, you can specify the sales order number when you verify the release date and quantity. The system checks the order number and line type combinations for duplicates. If duplicates are found, the system stops processing the order and displays an error message that the document number already exists. You must assign a unique number to the order before the system processes the sales order.

If you do not enter an order number, the system generates the sales order number.

4. Click OK.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 until you have released all the items that you have selected.
6. On Work With Order Blanket Release, choose SO Generation from the Forms menu to create the sales order.

The system displays the sales order number in the Added Order field.

See Also

- *Entering a Blanket Order*

Processing Options for Sales Blanket Order Release

Default

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. Order Type to select
(Required) | _____ |
| 2. Outgoing Document Type
(Required) | _____ |
| 3. Line Number Increment
(Optional) | _____ |

Version

Enter the version for each application.
If left Blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| 1. Sales Order Entry | _____ |
| 2. Customer Service Inquiry | _____ |

Releasing Multiple Blanket Orders

You can release multiple blanket orders at one time. You use the Release Full Quantity option in the Release Blanket Orders program to release the full item quantity in each blanket order without verifying the release quantity and date or specifying a sales order number. The system generates a sales order for the full quantity and assigns a sales order number through the Next Numbers program.

► **To release multiple blanket orders**

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Release Blankets.

1. On Work With Order Blanket Release, locate the orders that you want to release by completing the following fields:
 - Document (Order No, Invoice, etc.)
 - Or Ty
 - Order Company (Order Number)
2. Choose all order lines to release.
3. From the Row menu, choose Release Full Qty only if you want to release the full quantity for each line that is selected.
4. Click OK.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 until you have released all the items that you have selected.
6. On Work With Order Blanket Release, choose SO Generation from the Form menu to create the sales order.

The system displays the new sales order number in the Added Order field.

Working with Quote Orders

You use quote order entry when a customer requests pricing information but is not ready to commit to a sales order. You enter quote orders to:

- Provide prices and availability on a large number of items
- Record the quantity and price quotes for future reference
- Hold the quote until the customer authorizes the order
- Collect information about the price and availability of items
- Honor an obligation for a quoted price for a period of time

When the customer confirms the order, you convert the quote order into an actual sales order.

Note: You can generate a sales proposal based on a quote order. Based on your processing option selection and proposal template setup, you can enter an order as a quote, generate a customized proposal, refine the quote as contract negotiations continue, and create a sales order to fulfill the contract. See *Generating a Proposal* for more information on automatic document generation.

Working with quote orders includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Entering a quote order
- ☐ Creating a sales order from a quote order
- ☐ Releasing a quote order
- ☐ Releasing multiple quote orders

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have specified how quote orders affect inventory availability in the processing options for quote orders.
- ☐ Verify that you have set up the order type for quote orders in the user defined code table 40/BT.
- ☐ Verify that you have set the processing option in the Sales Order Entry program to process quote orders and releases.

Entering a Quote Order

You enter a quote order when your customer requires a formal price quote prior to actually placing an order. You enter a quote order in the same way that you enter a sales order. You do not convert the quote order into a sales order until the customer confirms the order.

You can set up a version of the Print Invoice program to print an invoice for a quote order. Also, you can set a processing option that will print a message on the invoice to inform your customer that the invoice is a quote.

To enter a quote order

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Quotes.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Branch/Plant
 - Sold To
 - Quantity Ordered
 - Item Number
 - Unit Price

Creating a Sales Order from a Quote Order

If you have created a quote order and your customer authorizes the purchase of the quoted items, you can use the quote to create a sales order. You use this method to create a sales order that reflects all or most of the quantities and items on a quote order.

To create a sales order from a quote order, you must use the unit of measure in the original quote order. If the unit of measure in the sales order do not match the unit of measure in the quote order, the system does not initiate quote order release.

► **To create a sales order from a quote order**

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, complete the steps to enter detail information.

After you enter a detail line, the system indicates additional information processing. For quote orders, the system displays a check mark in the row header and Blanket Exists column.

The screenshot shows the 'Sales Order Detail - [Sales Order Detail Revisions]' window. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Row, Window, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for OK, Cancel, New, Display, and Abort, along with a 'Links' dropdown and buttons for 'Line De...', 'OLE O...', and 'Internet'. The main form contains several input fields: Order Number (2482), SO (SO), 00001, Branch/Plant (30), Sold To (4244), Creekside Warehouse, Order Date (6/1/05), Ship To (4244), Creekside Warehouse, Order Total (5586.00), Currency (USD), Exchange Rate, Base (USD), and a checkbox for Foreign. Below the form is a table with the following columns: G/L Cat, Agreement Exists, Blankets Exists, Association Exists, Substitution Exists, Agreement Number, and Agreement Supplement. The first row of the table has a checkmark in the G/L Cat column, 'IN30' in the Agreement Exists column, and a checkmark in the Blankets Exists column. The rest of the table is empty. At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar that says 'Row:1'.

G/L Cat	Agreement Exists	Blankets Exists	Association Exists	Substitution Exists	Agreement Number	Agreement Supplement
✓ IN30		✓				

2. Choose the row then choose Blanket Orders From the Row menu.

Quantity Ordered	UM	Quantity Open	Unit Price	Branch Plant	Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Next Status
	EA	2	798.0000	30	255	SB	00001	1.000	560
	EA	10	798.0000	30	150	SQ	00001	1.000	580
	EA	15	600.0000	30	151	SQ	00001	1.000	580

3. On Blanket Release, complete the quantity information and click OK.

If the order matches multiple quote orders, you can choose the appropriate order from which to release.

4. Select the appropriate quote order, complete the quantity information, and click OK.
5. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, add order detail lines or click OK to create the sales order.

Releasing a Quote Order

You use the Release Quote Orders program to release any of the items on a quote order to create a sales order. If you release only part of the quantity or some of the items on the quote order, the system maintains the balance remaining on the original quote order. The next time that you display the quote order, you see the adjusted quantity.

The system consolidates order lines based on sold to, branch/plant, and currency code information. The order numbers that a user enters can be consolidated in the same way as the system-generated sales orders. For example, if you select multiple records to release and enter a new order number for the first record only, the system consolidates the orders.

► To release a quote order

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Release Quotes.

Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Hd Cd	Sold To	2nd Item Number	Request Date	Open Quantity	Qty Ind	UM
121	SQ	00001	1,000		4242	210	6/1/05	10		EA
121	SQ	00001	2,000		4242	220	6/1/05	10		EA
121	SQ	00001	3,000		4242	221	6/1/05	10		EA
121	SQ	00001	4,000		4242	222	6/1/05	10		EA
121	SQ	00001	5,000		4242	230	6/1/05	10		EA

1. On Work With Order Blanket Release, to locate the quote order, complete the following fields:
 - Order Number
 - Or Ty
 - Order Co
 - Request Date

If you have more than one order for the same customer and item, all blanket orders appear on the Blanket Release form. The Quantity fields do not contain values. You must enter the quantity for the appropriate order.

2. Choose the quote order and click Select to access Blanket Order Revisions.

3. On Blanket Order Revisions, complete the following fields to release a different quantity than the quantity that is listed:
 - Release Quantity
 - Request Date
 - New Order Number

When you release a blanket order, you can specify the sales order number when you verify the release date and quantity. The system edits the order number and line type combinations for duplicates. If duplicates are found, the system stops processing the order and displays an error message that the document number already exists. You must assign a unique number to the order before the system processes the sales order.

If you do not enter an order number, the system generates the sales order number.

4. Click OK.
5. From the Form menu, choose SO Generation to create the sales order.

The system displays the sales order number in the Added Order field.

Field	Explanation
Request Date	The date that the customer requests to receive the order. You can enter a single date for the entire order or several dates for individual detail lines.

Field	Explanation
Open Quantity	The Opening Quantity of inventory as calculated according to the Stock Valuation method.
Order Number	A number that identifies an original document. This can be a voucher, an order number, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on.

Processing Options for Sales Order Quote Release

Default

1. Order Type to select (Required) _____
2. Outgoing Document Type (Required) _____
3. Line Number Increment (Optional) _____

Version

Enter the version for each application.
If left Blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.

1. Sales Order Entry _____
2. Customer Service Inquiry _____

Releasing Multiple Quote Orders

You can release multiple quote orders at one time. You use the Release Full Quantity option in the Release Quote Orders program to release the full item quantity in each quote order. The system creates multiple sales orders.



To release multiple quote orders

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Release Quotes.

1. On Work With Order Blanket Release, locate the orders that you want to release by completing the following fields:
 - Order Number
 - Or Ty
 - Order Co
2. Choose all order lines to release.
3. From the Row menu, choose Release Full Qty only if you want to release the full quantity for each line that is selected.
4. Click OK.

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 until you have released all the items that you have selected.
6. From the Form menu, choose SO Generation to create the sales order.

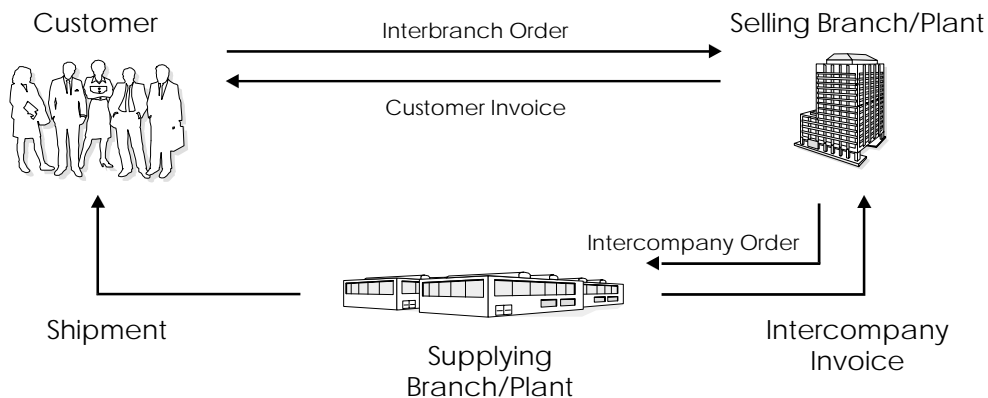
The system displays the new sales order number in the Added Order field.

Working with Intercompany Orders

You can use an interbranch order to fill an order for a customer from a branch/plant other than the selling branch/plant. Interbranch orders are helpful if your company sells from one location but fills and ships orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse.

An intercompany order is an order that tracks the transactions between the supplying and selling branch/plant. While the interbranch order is the sales order to your customer, the intercompany order is the purchase order to the supplying branch/plant. The difference between a direct ship order and an intercompany order is the supplier is the supplying warehouse, the sold to address is the selling branch/plant, and the ship to address is the customer number. Additionally, the intercompany order is not created until shipment confirmation.

The following graphic illustrates the difference between an interbranch order and an intercompany order:



Working with intercompany orders includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Understanding default information in interbranch orders
- ☐ Entering interbranch orders
- ☐ Creating intercompany orders during shipment confirmation
- ☐ Printing intercompany invoices
- ☐ Updating interbranch and intercompany transactions

The system processes interbranch orders based on the document type and line type combination that you set up for interbranch orders. For intercompany orders that are created during shipment confirmation, the system enters the last status as 914 (Added in Shipment Confirmation). You can edit order activity rules to continue order processing for interbranch and intercompany orders.

You can set up a line type for interbranch orders as a noninventory item with the “Edit Item Master for Non-Stock” flag activated. With these line type features, you can verify the item number in the Item Branch table (F4102) and the cost and price information in the Item Cost Ledger (F4105) and Base Price (F4106) tables and write transactions to a G/L Offset account for a line type that is unique to intercompany orders. As with a direct ship order, the system does not create commitments or perform availability checks at the selling branch/plant.

Understanding Default Information in Interbranch Orders

For interbranch and intercompany orders, the system retrieves price information based on the price method that you specify in the processing options in Sales Order Entry (P4210). Whether you choose the base price or the cost plus markup, the system retrieves the price as follows:

- For the interbranch order, the system retrieves price information from the Base Price Revisions table (F4106) for the Supplying branch/plant based on the base price preference hierarchy. The base price preference hierarchy can be defined to search for prices based on the ship to or the sold to address book number.
- The system retrieves cost information from the Item Cost Ledger table (F4105) based on the detail branch/plant (supplier).
- When you create an intercompany order during shipment confirmation, the unit cost of the interbranch order is the unit price of the intercompany order.

You can override the currency information for the customer, which is helpful if you process international orders in different currencies. For multicurrency, the following processing occurs:

- For the intercompany invoice, the system retrieves exchange rate information from the currency code that is set up in the Customer Master table for the supplying branch/plant to the selling branch/plant.
- For the interbranch (customer) invoice, the system retrieves exchange rate information from the currency code that is set up in the Customer Master table for the selling branch/plant to the customer.

You can override order information, including price and cost, during order entry or you can set up preferences to override other default information.

Intercompany Orders in a Coexistent Environment

If you use WorldSoftware with OneWorld, you can create interbranch and intercompany orders in either environment. You must set the interbranch processing options for intercompany processing in Sales Order Entry (P4210) to identify the intercompany document type and create an intercompany invoice, which generates a sales order detail record in the Sales Order Detail Tag table (F49211).

In a coexistent environment, you can process the interbranch order in either WorldSoftware and OneWorld until the point of shipment confirmation. Once you confirm an interbranch order, and thus, create an intercompany order, you must complete order processing in the system from which you confirmed the order. For example, if you confirm the shipment of an interbranch order in OneWorld, you must process intercompany invoices through Sales Update in OneWorld.

After you process the intercompany order through Invoice Print (R42565), the system updates the Sales Order Detail Tag table (F49211) with the intercompany invoice number.

Entering Interbranch Orders

Verify that you have set the processing options in Sales Order Entry to use the appropriate pricing method, intercompany order types, and that you have specified whether to create intercompany invoices in addition to customer invoices. Your processing option combinations can indicate one of the following options:

- Use the cost markup price, but do not generate an intercompany invoice.
- Use the cost markup price and generate intercompany invoice.
- Use the interbranch price, but do not generate an intercompany invoice.
- Use the interbranch price, and generate an intercompany invoice.

You can set up base prices in the Base Price Revisions table (F4106) for interbranch orders based on ship to or sold to information at the supplying branch/plant. The cost markup is a specific price that you set up in the Branch Sales Markup table between the selling and supplying branch/plant. This markup is applied to the inventory cost.

Note: If you generate an intercompany invoice, you must specify the same intercompany document types in Sales Order Entry (P4210), Print Invoice (R42565), and Sales Update (R42800).

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set markup costs in the Branch Sales Markup table, if necessary. See *Setting Up Branch Sales Markups*.
- ☐ Verify that you have set the processing options in Sales Order Entry to use the appropriate pricing method, intercompany order types, and whether to create intercompany invoices.
- ☐ To relieve on-hand inventory during shipment confirmation, verify that an order type is set up for interbranch sales orders in the user defined code table (40/IU).

See Also

- *Understanding Default Information in Interbranch Orders* for more information about default customer information for the customer and selling branch/plant.

► To enter interbranch orders

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Order Detail.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, complete the following fields for the selling branch/plant:
 - Or Ty
 - Branch/Plant
 - Ship To
 - Sold To
 - Order Date
3. For each detail line, complete the following fields for the supplying branch/plant:
 - Quantity Ordered
 - UoM
 - Item Number
 - Branch/Plant
4. Review the following fields and make any necessary changes:
 - Unit Price
 - Unit Cost

Creating Intercompany Orders during Shipment Confirmation

An intercompany order is an order that tracks the transactions between the supplying and selling branch/plant. While the interbranch order is the sales order to your customer, the intercompany order is the purchase order to the supplying branch/plant. The difference between a direct ship order and an intercompany order is that the supplier is the supplying warehouse, the Sold To address is the selling branch/plant, and the Ship To address is the customer number. Additionally, the intercompany order is not created until shipment confirmation.

When you confirm an interbranch sales order, the system verifies the processing options in Ship Confirm (R4205) to determine whether the system creates an intercompany order and the version. The amount in the cost field of the interbranch order is passed in as the price of the intercompany order. The system creates an intercompany order from the version of Create Intercompany Orders (R4210IC).

After the intercompany order is created, any changes to the interbranch or intercompany order in Sales Order Entry triggers a warning message indicating that you must make changes to the corresponding order to maintain integrity.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have created order types, line types, and order activity rules for the corresponding purchase order of the intercompany order. The intercompany purchase order must be created using a line type to create the appropriate accounting entries during Voucher Match.

See Also

- *Working with Shipments* for more information about the shipment confirmation features and processing options

Printing Intercompany Invoices

The system processes interbranch sales orders in the same way as other sales orders with the following exception: during invoice processing, the system prints an invoice for the customer. You have the option to print an intercompany invoice for the selling branch/plant.

You must set the interbranch processing options for intercompany orders in Sales Order Entry (P4210) to identify the intercompany document type, which creates a sales order detail record in the Sales Order Detail Tag table (F49211). After you process the intercompany order through Invoice Print (R42565), the system updates the Sales Order Detail Tag table (F49211) with the intercompany invoice number.

You can print intercompany invoice through the normal invoice process in Invoice Print (R42565) or Cycle Billing programs, however, you can not print intercompany invoice with customer invoices. You can print consolidated invoices for intercompany invoices however, you must specify this feature in the customer billing instructions for the selling branch/plant.

If you generate an intercompany invoice, you must specify the same intercompany document types in Sales Order Entry (P4210), Ship Confirm (R4205), Print Invoice (R42565), and Sales Update (R42800).

See Also

- *Printing Standard Invoices* for more information about additional features and processing options.

Updating Interbranch and Intercompany Transactions

If you generate an intercompany invoice, you must specify the same intercompany document types in Sales Order Entry (P4210), Print Invoice (R42565), and Sales Update (R42800).

During sales update, you can choose to have the system perform one of the following:

- Create accounts payable and accounts receivable journal entries for the selling branch/plant and accounts receivable entries for the supplying branch/plant
- Create accounts receivable entries only for the selling branch/plant

During the sales update process, you can run the Update Customer Sales program to create the journal entries for interbranch sales.

Example: Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable Entries

If you set the interbranch processing option in the Sales Update program to create accounts receivable and accounts payable entries for both the selling and the supplying branch/plants, the system creates the following types of batches:

Batch type IB

Debits the COGS account, and credits the receivables accounts and inventory for the supplying branch/plant and selling branch/plant.

Batch type V

Credits the payables accounts and debits the inventory for the selling branch/plant.

IB BATCH

Selling Branch:

<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>	<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>
AR TRADE	REVENUE	COGS	INVENTORY
100	<100>	80	<80>

Supplying Branch:

<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>	<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>
AR TRADE	I/B REVENUE	COGS	INVENTORY
80	<80>	75	<75>

V BATCH

Selling Branch:

<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>
INVENTORY	AP TRADE
80	<80>

Example: Accounts Receivable Entries

If the appropriate processing option is set to create only the accounts receivable entries, the system creates the following types of batches:

Batch type IB

Credits the revenue accounts and inventory, and debits the COGS account of the selling branch/plant.

Batch type ST

Credits the revenue account and inventory for the selling branch/plant, and debits the COGS accounts and inventory for the supplying branch/plant.

IB BATCH

Selling Branch:

<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>	<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>
AR TRADE	REVENUE	COGS	INVENTORY
100	<100>	80	<80>

ST BATCH

Supplying Branch:

<u>DEBIT +</u>	<u>CREDIT +</u>
COGS	INVENTORY
75	<75>

Interbranch Journal Entries:

<u>DEBIT + SELLING BRANCH</u>	<u>CREDIT + SUPPLYING BRANCH</u>
INVENTORY	INTERBRANCH REVENUE
80	<80>



Sales Order Information

You review and analyze sales order information to track the status of sales orders and invoices and accurately plan for future needs. For example, you can monitor quantity information to identify how many items on a sales order are backordered. You can also review the present status of any order, such as orders that are on hold.

Complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Working with item information
- ☐ Working with customer and sales information
- ☐ Working with billing information

When entering or reviewing a sales order, you can quickly access item information, such as item number, availability, quantity cost-breaks, and so on. This is helpful when you are working directly with the customer.

You can access information about customer accounts and open and closed sales orders. For example, you can use the Check Credit program to compare a customer's total accounts receivable and open orders with their credit limit. You can also access and review sales history information.

You can review billing information that doesn't print on the invoice that the customer receives, such as the status of any related orders. This is helpful when you need to provide information to a customer during order entry.



Working with Item Information

When entering or reviewing a sales order, you can quickly access item information, such as item number, availability, quantity cost-breaks, and so on. This is helpful when you are working directly with the customer.

You can also access additional item information that helps you accurately plan for future needs, such as summary availability, and supply and demand for an item. For example, you can locate information about how many items are on demand, available in supply, and available to be promised.

Working with item information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Duplicating sales order information
- ☐ Reviewing price and availability information
- ☐ Locating quantity information
- ☐ Reviewing supply and demand information

See Also

- *Locating Item Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide*
- *Locating Quantity Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for more information about inventory quantities

Duplicating Sales Order Information

You can streamline sales order entry by copying both header and detail information and adding it to a new sales order. Or, to send the same order to another ship to address or invoice another sold to address, you can copy only the detail information and change the ship to or sold to information.

Depending on how the processing options are set, the following information might differ between the original and the duplicate sales order:

- Document type
- Beginning status code

The order number for the duplicate sales order is always different from the original order.

You can copy item information to sales orders from any sales order entry program (P4210). For example, you can set up the duplication processing options for the Blanket Order version of Sales Order Entry so that when you copy order and line information from a blanket order, the system creates a new sales order.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have activated the duplication processing options for Sales Order Entry (P4210) for new document types or statuses.

To duplicate sales order information

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Customer Service.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, locate the order from which you want to copy item information.
2. Click Copy.

Depending on your duplication processing options, the system creates a new sales order.

3. On Sales Order Detail Revisions, review and change any of the information in the fields, as necessary.
4. Click OK.

Reviewing Price and Availability Information

If you have set up a prices for item and customer combinations, use the Check Price and Availability program to locate information about the pricing and availability of specific inventory items that are sold to specific customers or are part of customer group and item group combinations. This program displays information from the Item Location table and the Price by Customer table.

Use the Standard Check Price and Availability (P41261) program to review standard price adjustment information, such as inventory pricing rules. If you use Advanced Pricing, you can access advanced price adjustment information, such as adjustment schedules, from the Advanced Check Price and Availability program (P4074).

You can quickly access the Check Price and Availability form from a sales order detail line to obtain quantity cost-break information. On Sales Order Detail Revision, select the order detail line and choose the options from the Row menu.

► To review price and availability

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Standard Check Price & Availability.

1. On Work With Price and Availability, complete the following fields:
 - Branch/Plant
 - Item Number
 - Customer Number
 - Customer Price Group
 - Price Effective Date
2. To search for contract prices, click the Contract Pricing option.
3. Click Find.
4. Review the following fields:
 - Lvl
 - Effective From
 - Effective Thru
 - Up to Qty

- Override Unit Price
- Factor
- Type
- Contract Flag
- Desc

Field	Explanation
Lvl	An alphanumeric code that determines the sequence in which the system displays the rules within the pricing group. You define levels when you set up the pricing groups.
Up to Qty	The volume or quantity breaks commonly used in pricing tables. If the quantity shown on the first level of a rule is 5, then the pricing logic shown on this level applies only to sales of five or fewer items. If the quantity shown in the next level is 10, then the pricing logic applies to sales of 6 through 10 items. 99,999,999 indicates all quantities.
Override Unit Price	Any price you enter here overrides all other rules or prices.
Factor	The discount that the system uses when it calculates the price of an item attached to this inventory pricing rule. Discounts can be expressed as multipliers, additional amounts, or deductible amounts. For example, a 10% discount would be expressed as .90. You can use the same factor for markups over cost. For example, a 10% markup would be expressed as 1.10.
Type	A code that indicates whether the factor value is a multiplier (%) or an additional/deductible cash amount (\$) when applied to an order's price.
Contract Flag	<p>A code that indicates a special pricing relationship between the item and one or more of your customers. The inventory pricing rule code for a contract is the item number. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Blank No contract C Indicates contract price</p> <p>If you indicate that a pricing type is a contract, you must enter the quantity that may be sold at this contract price and the contract number, if there is one.</p> <p>You must also attach the contract pricing rule to the customer or customer group for the rule to become effective.</p>

Processing Options for Check Price and Availability

Preference

Enter the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210). This will control the preference profile. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.

Version

Locating Quantity Information

You use the Summary Availability program to review quantity information and determine your current and future inventory needs. The system calculates item availability and quantity information based on the options you select for the branch/plant. You can view the information on the number of items in any of the following categories:

- On-hand
- Hard- and soft-committed
- Available
- On purchase and work orders
- On backorders

You can locate all of the items in a particular location within a branch/plant and review detailed information for each item.

See Also

- *Locating Quantity Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for more information about inventory quantities

► To locate quantity information

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Summary Availability.

	Location	On Hand	Committed	Available	On Receipt	Branch/ Plant
P		645	2	643	200	30
	TOTAL:	645	2	643	200	30
P						M30
	TOTAL:					M30
	GRAND TOTAL:	645	2	643	200	

- On Work With Item Availability, complete the following fields:
 - Branch/ Plant
 - Item Number
 - U/M
 - Grade Range
 - Potency Range
- To edit the display, click the following options:
 - Summary Only
 - Omit Zero Quantities
- Click Find.
- To review how availability is calculated for each branch/plant, choose Detail Availability from the Row menu.

The system retrieves quantity information based on the item availability definition for the branch/plant.

Field	Explanation
Grade Range	<p>A user defined code (40/LG) that indicates the minimum grade that is acceptable for an item.</p> <p>The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items with grades that do not meet the minimum grade acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items with grades that do not meet the minimum acceptable level.</p>
Potency Range	<p>A number that indicates the minimum potency or percentage of active ingredients acceptable for an item.</p> <p>The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items that do not meet the minimum acceptable potency. The system does not allow you to sell items that do not meet the minimum acceptable potency.</p>
Omit Zero Quantities	<p>This option determines whether the system displays information with zero on hand quantities.</p> <p>If you leave this option blank, the system displays information with zero on-hand quantities.</p> <p>If you check this option, the system does not display information with zero on-hand quantities.</p>

Field	Explanation
Summary Only	<p>A code that indicates whether the inquiry is displayed in detail or summary mode.</p> <p>If you leave this option blank, the system displays individual receipt records.</p> <p>If you check this option, the system displays information that is summarized by item, company, currency code, and cost rule.</p>

Processing Options for Item Availability

Versions

Enter the version for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.

1. Item Master
2. Item Notes
3. Item Search
4. Purchase Order Inquiry
5. Customer Service Inquiry
6. Open Work Orders
7. Supply and Demand
8. Bill of Material
9. Lot Availability
10. Item Ledger
11. Branch/Plant Item Information
12. Location Master
13. Item Location Information

Display

1. Grade Information

Blank = No information is displayed
1 = Display grade information
2. Potency Information

Blank = No information is displayed
1 = Display potency information
3. Quality Management

Blank = No information is displayed
1 = Use Quality Management.
4. Quantity - Primary Units of Measure

Blank = No information is displayed
1 = Also display primary units
5. Truncate/Round

Blank = Default to round up
1 = Truncate information in the
grid
2 = Round up
6. Customer Self-Service

Blank = Bypass Customer
Self-Service functionality
1 = Activate Shopping Cart mode

Reviewing Supply and Demand Information

You use the Supply/Demand Inquiry program to monitor information about how many items are on demand, available in supply, and available to be promised. Information about the supply and demand for an item helps you accurately plan for future needs. For example, this information can help you plan warehouse resources around receipts and order picking.

The system calculates available-to-promise to indicate a company's uncommitted available inventory. The highlighted available-to-promise lines indicate your company's uncommitted available inventory. Available-to-promise inventory is available for sale or distribution within a specified period. Depending on how you set the processing options, the system can use one of the following methods to determine available-to-promise:

- Standard – The system accounts for customer demand (such as sales orders) for all periods until the next replenishment supply (such as purchase orders) arrives. Standard Available-to-Promise assumes that the entire quantity will be sold or distributed within that period and that there will be no carryover into the next period.
- Cumulative – The system calculates a running total of the standard Available-to-Promise and does not determine that customers will not consume the quantity within the period.

The Supply/Demand Inquiry program displays information from the Item Location (F41021), Sales Order Detail (F4211), and Purchase Order Detail (F4311) tables. You can set the processing options in Sales Order Entry (P4210) to automatically display the Supply/Demand Inquiry form when the quantity for an item is not available. This allows you to give customers an expected order ship date.

If you are using the Enterprise Requirements Planning and Execution (ERPx) system in conjunction with the Inventory Management system, you should set up the supply and demand inclusion rules.

► To review supply and demand information

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Supply/Demand.

The screenshot shows the 'Supply/Demand Inquiry' window. The 'Item Number' field is set to 2400, and the 'Branch/Plant' is 30. The 'Thru Date' is blank, and the 'UOM' is EA. The 'Leadtime Level' is Fixed. Below the input fields is a table with the following data:

Requested Date	Demand	Supply	Qty Available	Order No	Type	Branch/Plant	Customer/Supplier Name
5/20/97		645				30	On Hand Balance
6/1/05	1		644	2418	SO	30	Capital System
6/1/05	1		643	2420	SO	30	Capital System
6/1/05	1		642	2423	SO	30	Capital System
6/1/05	1		641	2425	SO	30	Capital System
6/10/05		200	841	4509	OP	30	Universal Incorporated

On Work with Supply and Demand, complete the following fields and click Find:

- Branch/Plant
- Item Number
- Thru Date
- UOM

Processing Options for Supply and Demand Inquiry

Display 1

1. Deduct Safety Stock

Blank = Do not decrease
1 = Decrease

2. Receipt Routing Quantities

Quantity in Transit

Blank = Do not include
1 = Include

Quantity in Inspection

Blank = Do not include
User Defined Quantity 1

1	= Include	
Blank	= Do not include	
1	= Include	
User Defined Quantity 2		_____
Blank	= Do not include	
1	= Include	
3. Summarize Receipt Routing Steps		_____
Blank	= Do not summarize	
1	= Summarize	
Display 2		
4. Summarize Item Location Data		_____
Blank	= Do not summarize	
1	= Summarize	
5. Display Data in Window Mode		_____
Blank	= Do not display	
1	= Display	
6. Include Planned Orders		_____
Blank	= Do not include	
1	= Include	
7. Exclude Bulk Items		_____
Blank	= Do not exclude	
1	= Exclude	
Display 3		
8. Convert Qty to Standard Potency		_____
Blank	= Do not convert	
1	= convert	
9. Reduce Expired Lot Quantities		_____
Blank	= Do not reduce	
1	= Reduce	
Process 1		
1. ATP Line Flag		_____
Blank	= No ATP Line	
1	= Display ATP Line	
2	= Display Cum. ATP	
Line		
2. Supply/Demand Inclusion Rule		_____
3. Rate Based Schedule Type		_____
Process 2		
4. Forecast Types (Upto Five)		_____
5. Days from today to include		_____
Forecasts		
Versions 1		
Program versions to be used.		
1. Purchase Order Entry (P4310)		_____

- 2. Purchase Order Inquiry (P4310)
- 3. Sales Order Entry (P4210)
- 4. Sales Order Inquiry (P4210)
- 5. Scheduling Work Bench (P31225)
- 6. MPS/MRP/DRP Pegging Inquiry (P3412)

Versions 2

- 7. MPS/MRP/DRP Time Series (P3413)
- 8. MPS/MRP/DRP Msg Detail (P3411)
- 9. Bill of Material Inquiry (P30200)
- 10. Item Branch (P41026B)
- 11. Mfg WO Processing (P48013)
- 12. Enter/Change Rate Schedule (P3109)
- 13. Item Availability (P41202)

Working with Customer and Sales Information

You can access information about customer accounts, and open and closed sales orders. For example, you can use the Check Credit program to compare a customer's total accounts receivable and open orders with their credit limit.

You can generate reports to review information about the status of sales orders. You can also access and review sales history information.

Working with customer and sales information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Reviewing customer account information
- ☐ Reviewing customer ledger information
- ☐ Reviewing sales orders
- ☐ Generating order status reports
- ☐ Reviewing sales ledger information
- ☐ Reviewing delivery notes
- ☐ Generating sales history reports

Reviewing Customer Account Information

You can use the Check Credit program to review information about a customer's account and credit status. You can compare the customer's total accounts receivable and open orders to the customer's current credit limit assigned in the Customer Master table to determine if the credit limit has been exceeded.

You can access the following types of information:

- Accounts receivable (for example, any balances that are currently due)
- Account history (for example, customer ABC ranking, invoice, and payment information)
- Open sales orders (for example, order dates and amounts)

Additionally, you can check credit at the following levels:

- Customer (C)
- Parent (P)
- Line of Business (L)

If you do business with a company that operates in multiple lines of business, you can differentiate your customers based on product, division, or geography. When you perform credit checking at the Line of Business (LOB) level, you can define different default processing instructions for the same customer for different lines of business.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Activate OneWorld A/R – Line of Business processing in the Enhanced A/R Constants. See *Setting Up A/R Constants* for more information.



To review customer account information

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Check Credit.

Address Number	Alpha Name	Credit Limit	Last Crd Rev Date	C M	T C
4242	Capital System	50,000.00			

1. On Work with Customer Master, complete the following fields and click Find:
 - Address Number
 - Alpha Name

- Credit Limit
 - Last Crd Rev Date
2. Choose the customer and click Select.

3. On Credit Check, review the credit information:

- As of Date
- Company
- Amount – Credit Limit
- Open Order Amount
- Total Exposure
- Amount – Credit Limit
- Over Credit Limit

Field	Explanation
Amount Due	The balance or amount due on an open invoice or voucher. In the Address Book Master file (F0101) this is a memo amount field used to determine if a particular order exceeds a credit limit. See the documentation for the Order Processing system.

Field	Explanation
Open Order Amount	The total amount of open orders for a supplier or customer. The system uses the list price from the Item Location (F41021) table adjusted by the discount tables or any override price. You cannot override this amount.
Total Exposure	The total balance due on invoices from accounts receivable plus open sales orders for a particular customer.
Amount – Credit Limit	<p>The credit limit for a customer. This value is used throughout the credit management programs. The system maintains this credit limit by customer and is not rolled to the parent company. The system sends credit messages for each child that is over their credit limit.</p> <p>When you change the credit limit, the system sends a workflow message to the credit manager. The message specifies that the change is pending approval. This credit limit change will not be reflected on the Customer Master Revisions form until the change has been approved.</p>
Over Credit Limit	The portion of a customer's total amount due that exceeds his available credit limit.

See Also

- *Converting Customer Limit Amounts* for information about converting minimum and maximum order amounts to another currency

Reviewing Customer Ledger Information

To quickly review invoices and receipts or audit a customer's transaction history, use Customer Ledger Inquiry. On Work with Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can access numerous types of information about the transaction history of a customer. You can access various forms from the Form and Row exits on Work with Customer Ledger Inquiry to review receipts, recurring invoices, status and so on.

Customer ledger information is stored in the following tables:

- A/R Ledger (F03B11)
- Invoice Revision Audit Trail (F03B112)
- Receipt Application Detail (F03B14)

See Also

- *Working with Customer Ledger Information* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide* for complete information on the various forms that are available from the Customer Ledger Inquiry form.

► **To review customer ledger information**

From the Customer & Invoice Entry menu (G03B11), choose Customer Ledger Inquiry.

The screenshot shows the 'Customer Ledger Inquiry' window with the following fields and data:

Customer: *
Parent: *
Batch Number: *

Invoice No From: * Thru: *
☒ All ☐ Paid ☐ Open

Date From: * Thru: *
☒ Invoice Date ☐ Due Date
☐ G/L Date ☐ Statement Date

As Of Date: * ☐ Recurring Invoice ☐ Summarize As If Curr Code: *

Document Number	Doc Type	Pay Item	Invoice Date	As If Amount	Gross Amount	As If Open Amount	Open Amount
104	RI	001	6/4/05	1,000.00	1,000.00		
105	RI	001	6/5/05				
107	RI	001	6/5/05	1,000.00	1,000.00	1,000.00	1,000.00
3055	RI	001	6/5/05				
3056	RI	001	6/5/05	3,000.00	3,000.00	3,000.00	3,000.00

Row: 1

1. On Work With Customer Ledger Inquiry, enter customer and invoice criteria and click Find.
2. To review information for a specific invoice, choose the detail line and click Select.
3. On Standard Invoice Inquiry, review the order and invoice information.

Reviewing Sales Orders

You use the Customer Service program to review sales order, customer, and item information in the Sales Order Detail (F4211) or Sales Order Detail History (F42119) tables. You can review the following information:

- Open sales order information
- Closed sales order information
- Information at the sales order, customer, and item levels

Use * as a wildcard character in some fields, such as invoice number and item number, to have the system search on all values for the field. You can enter the first few letters or numbers of the item number followed by * to locate all items that start with the values that you enter. For example, if you enter 10*, the system displays all numbers that begin with 10.

Regardless of whether you enter an order in a domestic or foreign currency, you can review the order as if it were entered in another currency. For example, you can review amounts in the French franc as if they were entered in the euro. Likewise, you can review amounts in the Japanese yen as if they were entered in the U.S. dollar, and so on.

To review sales orders in a domestic, foreign, and “as if” currency, complete the following tasks:

- Review sales orders
- Review sales orders in an “as if” currency



To review sales orders

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Customer Service.

The screenshot shows the 'Customer Service - [Customer Service Inquiry]' window. The 'Customer Service Inquiry' tab is active. The search criteria section includes fields for Order Number (with a dropdown set to 'SO'), Customer PO, Item Number, Branch/Plant (set to 'M30'), Sold To (set to '4242'), and Ship To. There are also checkboxes for 'As If Currency', 'Extend Back Order Quantity', and 'Customer Item'. Below the search criteria is a table with the following data:

Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Hd Cd	Sold To	Sold To Name	Description 1
2401	SO	00200	1.000		4242	Capital System	Touring Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	2.000		4242	Capital System	Mountain Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	3.000		4242	Capital System	Touring Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	4.000		4242	Capital System	Mountain Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	5.000		4242	Capital System	Touring Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	6.000		4242	Capital System	Mountain Bike, Red

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, complete the following field and click Find:
 - Order Number
2. To locate orders based on associated orders, complete the following optional fields:
 - Order Number
 - Or Ty
 - Customer PO
3. To locate orders based on customer addresses, complete the following optional fields:
 - Sold To
 - Ship To
4. To locate orders based on status, complete the following optional fields:
 - Last Status
 - Next Status
5. To locate orders based on dates, complete the following optional fields:
 - Order Date
 - Request Date
 - Actual Ship
 - Invoice Date
6. Click the Additional Selections tab to specify additional search criteria.

Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Hd Cd	Sold To	Sold To Name	Description 1
2401	SO	00200	1.000		4242	Capital System	Touring Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	2.000		4242	Capital System	Mountain Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	3.000		4242	Capital System	Touring Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	4.000		4242	Capital System	Mountain Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	5.000		4242	Capital System	Touring Bike, Red
2401	SO	00200	6.000		4242	Capital System	Mountain Bike, Red

7. On the Additional Selections tab, complete the following fields and click Find:

- Last Status
- Order Number
- Date Ranges

From either the Form or Row menus, you can choose several options to locate additional types of information that relate to sales orders, such as:

- Order holds
- Online invoices
- Customer information
- Item availability
- Supply and demand information
- Item cross-reference
- Order header revision information
- Order detail revision information
- Shipment information
- Pricing history
- Rebate history

► To review sales orders in an “as if” currency

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Customer Service.

To review amounts in an “as if” currency, you must enter a currency code and effective date in the processing options. This activates the As If Currency field on the Customer Service Inquiry form and retrieves the corresponding exchange rate that is needed to calculate the “as if” currency amount.

The “as if” currency amounts that you review are not written to a table but are, instead, stored in temporary memory. This has no impact on disk space.

On Customer Service Inquiry, follow the steps for reviewing sales orders.

The screenshot shows the 'Customer Service Inquiry' window. The 'Additional Selections' tab is active. The form contains the following fields:

- Order Number: 2514
- Customer PO: *
- Item Number: *
- Sold To: *
- Ship To: *
- Branch/Plant: *
- As If Currency: EUR
- Extend Back Order Quantity: ☐
- Customer Item: ☐

Below the form is a table with the following data:

Order Number	Sold To	Sold To Name	Description 1	UOM	Unit Price	Cur Cod	EUR Unit Price
2514	4246	Central Distributors	Helmet	EA	240.0000	FRF	36.1851
2514	4246	Central Distributors	Touring Bike, Red	PL	3,176.2290	FRF	478.8836

At the bottom, there is a 'Find records' field and a 'Row:3' indicator.

Generating Order Status Reports

You generate order status reports to review information about open orders, held orders, and backorders.

Complete the following tasks to review the status of sales orders:

- ☐ Generate the Open Orders by Item report
- ☐ Generate the Open Orders by Customer report
- ☐ Generate the Held Orders report

Generating the Open Orders by Item Report

You generate the Open Orders by Item report to review the number of open orders for an item and determine how to fill them using availability information.

This report prints the detail line items within each of your sales orders and sorts the information by item number. It prints the on-hand quantities for each item within a warehouse location.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that all necessary backorders have been released for processing.

See Also

- *Working with Order Releases*

Generating the Open Orders by Customer Report

You generate the Open Orders by Customer report to review the following:

- Orders that have been picked but not shipped
- Orders that have been picked but not billed
- Open orders that exceed the customer's requested ship date

You can generate different versions of this report to review:

- Open orders and their total amount
- Open orders beyond a specific date
- Open orders for a specific document type or line type

This report includes backordered items if you have set a processing option in sales order entry to create a backorder when inventory is not available. You must release backorders into the order process before generating this report to reflect accurate backorder and open order information.

See Also

- *Working with Order Releases*

Processing Options for Open SO Print

CURRENCY PROC

Enter a '1' to print amounts in Foreign
Currency. Enter a '2' to print
amounts in both Foreign and Domestic
Currency. If left blank, only
Domestic Currency amounts will
print

Currency Print Option

Generating the Held Orders Report

You generate the Held Orders report to review a list of all sales orders that are on hold for the following reasons:

- Credit
- Profit margin
- Partial order hold
- Price review

Reviewing Sales Ledger Information

You can review sales ledger information for any orders that have been processed through the sales order process. Use sales ledger information to track sales orders and determine when an order was entered or printed. You can also use this information for internal audit purposes.

The system writes information to the Sales Ledger table based on the order activity rules. You can determine at which point the system writes order information to the table through status codes. For example, you might want to record information to the table during sales order entry, invoicing, and sales update.

When you create a credit order from history, you retrieve the original order from the Sales Ledger. You must specify a version of the Sales Ledger Inquiry in the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) that has been set up for credit orders.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the correct status codes are set up to record an entry in the Sales Ledger table. See *Setting Up Order Activity Rules*.

► To review sales ledger information

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Sales Ledger History Inquiry.

The screenshot shows the 'Sales Ledger History Inquiry - [Work With Sales Ledger Inquiry]' window. It has a menu bar (File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Row, Window, Help) and a toolbar with icons for Select, Find, Close, Seg..., New..., Dis..., and Abo. Below the toolbar are input fields for Order Number, Customer PO, Item Number, and Branch/Plant. A table displays sales ledger items with columns: Order Number, Order Type, Order Co, Line Number, Sold To, Alpha Name, Quantity Ordered, and Quantity Shipped. The table contains 10 rows of data for 'Capital System' items. At the bottom, there is a 'Find records' button.

Order Number	Order Type	Order Co	Line Number	Sold To	Alpha Name	Quantity Ordered	Quantity Shipped
1040	SD	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
1100	SD	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	1	1
2401	SO	00200	1.000	4242	Capital System	134	134
2401	SO	00200	1.000	4242	Capital System	134	134
2401	SO	00200	2.000	4242	Capital System	50	50
2401	SO	00200	2.000	4242	Capital System	50	50
2401	SO	00200	3.000	4242	Capital System	80	80
2401	SO	00200	3.000	4242	Capital System	80	80
2401	SO	00200	4.000	4242	Capital System	230	230
2401	SO	00200	4.000	4242	Capital System	230	230

1. On Work with Sales Ledger Inquiry, complete one or more of the following fields and click Find:
 - Order Number
 - Order Type
 - Customer PO
 - Item Number
 - Ship To Number
2. To review detail information for individual ledger items, choose Sales Ledger Detail from the Row menu.

Sales Ledger History Inquiry - [Sales Ledger Detail]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

Links ▼ Address... ◀ Previo... ▶ Next OLE ... Internet

Order Number 1040 SD 00001 Line No 1.000 B/P 30

Item Number 210

Description Mountain Bike, Red

Cust PO

Currency USD Exchange Rate Base USD ☐ Foreign

	Quantities	UOM	Unit Price	UOM	Amounts
Ordered	1	PL	7,500.0000	PL	7,500.00
Shipped	1				7,500.00

Last/Next Sts 520 580

Invoice

Original Order

Rel. PO/SO/WO 1.000

User ID DEMO

Program ID EP4210

Work Station ID TN06DN12

Date Updated 4/18/97

Time of Day 151757

Processing Options for Sales Ledger Inquiry

Defaults

Order Type _____
 Status Code - From _____
 Status Code - Thru _____

Credit Memo

Note: The following options are only in use if this application is called from Sales Order Entry (P4210) and the "Select Order" row exit is used to select all the order lines for processing..

1. Enter the status code to select when retrieving credit orders. _____
2. Enter '1' if the status code is based on the Last Status. If left blank, the status code is based on the Next Status. _____

Versions

Note: The following options are in use only when this application is NOT called from sales order entry (P4210).

Credit Order Entry Version _____
 Sales Order Entry Version _____

Reviewing Delivery Notes

Delivery personnel can use delivery notes to compare what they deliver to what they have on the truck. You can use Delivery Notes Inquiry to review information about items that are transported.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the customer billing instructions for the customer are set up to print delivery notes. See *Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions*.
- ☐ Verify that the Print Delivery Notes program has been run.

► To review delivery notes

From the Sales Order Inquiries (G42112), choose Delivery Notes Inquiry.

Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Ship To Number	Ship To Name	Delivery Number	Date Printed	Carrier Number	Car Na
23202	SI	00001	4245	Cloud Nine Inc.	400	4/16/97		
23203	SO	00001	4245	Cloud Nine Inc.	401	4/16/97		
23203	SO	00001	4245	Cloud Nine Inc.	402	4/16/97		
23203	SO	00001	4245	Cloud Nine Inc.	403	4/16/97		

1. On Work With Delivery Notes, to limit the items that appear, complete one or more of the following fields and click Find:
 - Delivery Date From
 - Delivery Date Thru
 - Branch/Plant
 - Ship To Number
 - Or Ty
 - Carrier Number

2. Click Find.
3. To review the order information, choose the detail line.
4. From the Row menu, choose one of the following options:
 - Customer Service Inquiry
 - Sales Ledger

Processing Options for Delivery Notes Inquiry

Versions

1. Customer Service Inquiry
2. Sales Ledger Inquiry

Generating Sales History Reports

You generate sales history reports to analyze sales history and review period-to-date and year-to-date sales amounts. To review sales history, you can:

- ☐ Generate the Sales Ledger Detail report
- ☐ Generate the Sales Analysis Summary report

The most common reasons why information does not print on these sales reports are:

- You did not specify the correct status code in the processing options.
- The order has one or more hold codes.
- The system did not update the Sales Summary History (F4229) table when you ran the Update Customer Sales program.

Generating the Sales Ledger Detail Report

You generate the Sales Ledger Detail report to analyze sales history. Depending on the version of the Sales Ledger Detail report that you choose, you can analyze sales history in the following ways:

- By order (document) type, such as phone orders, blanket orders, COD orders, and credit orders
- By line type, such as stock sales, non-stock sales, freight, and miscellaneous charges
- By order status, such as shipped, backordered, or cancelled
- By customer, salesperson, or order entry person
- By customer payment terms
- By price amounts

In the order activity rules, you can specify the steps in the process where the system records entries to the Sales Order Detail Ledger table.

Because the Sales Ledger table can contain multiple records for a single order detail line, you must specify either a next or last status code in the data selection for the Sales Ledger Detail report. If you do not specify a status code, the report can overstate historical sales information.

Processing Options for Sales Ledger Report

Dates

Enter the report date range:

From Date
Thru Date

Generating the Sales Analysis Summary Report

You generate the Sales Analysis Summary report to review period-to-date and year-to-date sales amounts and sales margin. The Sales Analysis Summary program retrieves information from the Sales Summary History table.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program are set to update records in the Sales Summary History table

See Also

- See *Updating Sales Information*

Processing Options for Sales Analysis Summary

Print

1. This job has various options described below. Enter the desired values and press ENTER to continue.

Enter requested period start date
Enter requested period end date

Working with Billing Information

To provide order information to a customer after order entry, you can review billing information, such as order totals or the status of related orders. You can also review sales orders, including those that have been only partially invoiced, before printing the invoice.

You print order acknowledgements to send to your customer to confirm that you are processing the order.

Working with billing information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Reviewing online invoices
- ☐ Printing order acknowledgements

Reviewing Online Invoices

You use the Online Invoice program to review invoice information about an order that has not been invoiced or that has only been partially invoiced. The program displays the same information that appears on a printed invoice.

You can also use Online Invoice to:

- Review open and closed invoice information
- Display the invoice with or without backordered lines
- Review information about shipping conditions, discounts, payment terms, and taxes
- Review transaction dates of lines within the invoice

You can set the processing options for the Online Invoice program to display backordered items in the following ways:

- Without quantity and extended price information
- With quantity information only
- With quantity and extended price information

You can also display tax summary information based on one of the following:

- Tax group - Total taxable amount
- Tax area - Tax rate area, such as a state
- Tax authority - Tax authority with jurisdiction in the tax area, such as a county or city

If the order has items that are taxed at different rates, the system calculates the taxes, but displays N/A (not applicable) instead of a tax rate.

Note: You cannot inquire on interbranch or intercompany orders until you have printed invoices for the orders.

► To review online invoices

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Online Invoice.

Description	Trans. Date	UM	Quantity	Extended Price	Tax	Ext. Weight
Mountain Bike, Red	6/1/05	EA	20	15,960.00	Y	0.0
Touring Bike, Red	6/1/05	EA	15	9,750.00	Y	0.0
Commuter Bike	6/1/05	EA	10	6,500.00	Y	0.0
Order Total ...				32,210.00		
Taxable Amount				32,210.00		
@ Tax Rate 0 %						
INVOICE TOTAL				32,210.00		

1. On Work With Online Invoice, complete either or both of the following fields and click Find:

- Invoice Number
- Order Number

If more than one invoice is associated with a sales order, the system displays the Invoice Selection form. Select the invoice from a list of invoices that are associated with a sales order.

2. You can select an order line and do any of the following:

- To review dates for the detail line that you select, choose Order Dates from the Row menu.
 - To review the detail information for the order line that you select, choose Order Detail from the Row menu.
 - To review the price history for the item, choose Price History from the Row menu.
 - To attach or edit a media object for the detail line, choose Attachments from the Row menu.
3. To review the information for the order, choose the following options from the Form menu:
- Discount Summary
 - Tax Summary
 - Order Address
 - Attachments, for the order or invoice

Processing Options for Online Invoice Inquiry

Defaults

Enter the default Order Type:

1. Order Type _____

Enter the From Status:

2. Status Code - From _____

Enter the Thru Status:

3. Status Code - Thru _____

Based on Status (1 = Last, default is Next):

4. Based On Status _____

Include/Exclude Backorders:

(1 = Exclude Backorders

2 = Include Backorders, Quantities Only

3 = Include Backorders, Quantities and Prices)

5. Backorders _____

Freight

1. Process Freight Estimate _____

<Blank> = Do not display freight estimate.

1 = Display freight estimate.

Versions

1. Enter version for Print Invoices(FUTURE) _____

Printing Order Acknowledgements

You can print a confirmation of a sales order that you send to your customer. You can include the same information that is on the sales invoice, such as the following:

- Item quantities, including backordered or cancelled items
- Total price, taxes, and discounts
- Delivery date
- Payment terms
- Associated text and print messages

You usually print order acknowledgements for those order lines that are ready to print on a pick slip. You should set up a separate status code for printing order acknowledgements in the order activity rules. You do this to prevent the system from bypassing the status for printing pick slips.

When you print acknowledgements, the system uses a version of the Print Invoice program. You can specify whether the system assigns invoice numbers when you print invoices or order acknowledgements by setting the appropriate processing option for each version. You can run or copy the proof version for other functions, such as invoice reprints.

Caution: When you run a version of Print Invoices in proof mode, the system does not perform updates to status codes or any files. To properly process sales order acknowledgements, you must run version XJDE0005 or run a copy of this version.

Processing Options for Print Sales Order Acknowledgements

Default

1. Status Code - From	_____
2. Status Code - To	_____
3. Based On Status	_____
1 = Select according to last status	
2 = Select according to next status	
4. Override Next Status Code	_____
5. Prevent Next Status Update	_____
Blank = Update next status	
1 = Prevent next status update	
6. Prevent A/R Number Assignment	_____
Blank = Do not prevent	
1 = Prevent	
7. Assign A/R Next Number	_____
8. Invoice Document Type	_____

Print

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. Invoice Date | _____ |
| 2. Print Backordered/Cancelled Lines | _____ |
| 1 = Print backordered lines | |
| 2 = Print cancelled lines | |
| 3 = Print both | |
| 4 = Do not print backordered or cancelled lines | |
| 3. Extend Price on Backordered Lines | _____ |
| Blank = Do not print | |
| 1 = Print | |
| 4. Print Backordered Lines Once Only | _____ |
| Blank = Print multiple times | |
| 1 = Print once only | |
| 5. Print Extended Cost | _____ |
| Blank = Do not print | |
| 1 = Print | |
| 6. Print Available Discount | _____ |
| Blank = Do not print | |
| 1 = Print | |
| 7. Print Kit Component Lines | _____ |
| Blank = Do not print | |
| 1 = Print | |
| 8. Print Future Committed Lines | _____ |
| Blank = Do not print | |
| 1 = Print | |
| 9. Print Item Number | _____ |
| 1 = Print our item numbers | |
| 2 = Print ours and the customers item numbers | |
| 10. Customer Cross Reference | _____ |
| 11. Item Summary | _____ |
| 1 = Summarize by item | |
| 2 = Summarize items split by commitments | |
| 12. Print Serial Numbers | _____ |
| Blank = Do not print | |
| 1 = Print | |
| 13. Print in Foreign Currency | _____ |
| Blank = Do not print | |
| 1 = Print | |
| 14. Print Tax Summary | _____ |
| 1 = Summarize taxes by group | |
| 2 = Summarize taxes by area | |
| 3 = Summarize taxes by authority | |
| Blank = Do not print tax information | |
| 15. Global Print Message | _____ |

16. Print Associated Text _____
 Blank = Do not print
 1 = Print
17. Print Drafts _____
 Blank = Do not print drafts
 1 = Print drafts
18. Draft Origination _____
19. Print Message Preference _____
 Blank = Do not Print
 1 = Print
20. As If Currency Code _____
21. As If Print Tax Summary _____
 Blank = Do not Print
 1 = Print

Prepayment

1. Display Prepayments on Invoice _____
 Blank = Do not display
 1 = Display

Process

1. Hard Commit Inventory (Future) _____
 Blank = Bypass commitment
 1 = Hard commit inventory

EDI

1. EDI Processing Selection _____
 1 = EDI and Invoice Print
 processing
 2 = EDI processing only
 Blank = Invoice Print
 processing only
2. EDI Transaction Type _____
 1 = Invoice
 2 = Purchase Order
 Acknowledgment
 3 = Request for Quotation.
3. EDI Document Type _____
4. EDI Transaction Set Number _____
5. EDI Translation Format _____
6. Trading Partner ID _____
7. Transaction Set Purpose _____



UCC 128 Compliance

To reduce cycle times, limit inventory, and increase profitability, most large retailers require that their suppliers receive electronic purchase orders and send electronic invoices.

The Uniform Code Council (UCC) in the United States, the Electronic Commerce Council of Canada (ECCC), and the International Article Numbering Association (EAN) have established standard identification and information transmission procedures. These standards, known as UCC 128 Compliance, facilitate uniform product identification and the exchange of shipment information between suppliers and customers (retailers).

Meeting UCC 128 Compliance standards includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Understanding UCC 128 Compliance
- ☐ Setting up UCC 128 processing
- ☐ Processing shipments



Understanding UCC 128 Compliance

To reduce cycle times, limit inventory, and increase profitability, most large retailers require that their suppliers conform to UCC 128 Compliance procedures. Standard identification and communications procedures ensure that the distribution process remains efficient for the supplier and the retailer.

Understanding UCC 128 Compliance includes understanding the following concepts:

- UCC identification codes
- Bar code labels
- Shipping labels
- EDI transmissions

To adopt UCC 128 Compliance practices, suppliers and retailers adopt the following standards:

Identification codes	A defined structure for each code.
Bar code labels	Fixed or variable codes that are used to encode information for a single product unit, a consumer pack, or a collection or packages for shipment.
Shipping labels	Labels that follow the specific standard of the UCC Common Label. This standard sets up specific label segments and the information that is contained in each segment.
EDI (Electronic Data Interchange)	The electronic exchange of structured machine-readable information.

For large retailers, the benefits of being UCC 128 compliant are:

Improved sales	By reducing warehouse cycle time, retailers can get their products on the shelf more quickly. A retailer can increase the sell-through revenue by moving the product to the customer faster.
-----------------------	--

Reducing safety stock	By receiving information on shipments prior to arrival, companies can react more quickly to shortages and maintain less safety stock in inventory.
Increased forecasting accuracy	Retailers are able to more accurately measure lead time of shipments. This can reduce safety stock.
Reduced receiving costs	By scanning shipping labels, the retailer can collect bar-coded data faster than by manually entering data. Scanning shipping labels is less labor-intensive and results in fewer errors and omissions of data.
Improved warehouse management	Retailers can gather better shipping statistics, reduce warehouse cycle time, and more efficiently plan floor space and labor schedules.

For suppliers, the benefits of being UCC 128 compliant are:

Improved cash flow	By reducing the payment cycle times with retailers, suppliers can reduce borrowing requirements and improve cash flow.
Improved sales	Retailers penalize suppliers that cannot adopt UCC 128 Compliance procedures. Typically, this penalty is per transaction. If the supplier cannot adopt UCC 128 Compliance practices within a given time frame, the supplier can lose business with the retailer.

Understanding UCC Identification Codes

Each company can assign product identification codes. The Uniform Code Council (UCC), the Electronic Commerce Council of Canada (ECCC), and the EAN (outside of Canada and the United States) assign member companies the company identification. In the company identification codes, the first digit is the region code. For North America, the region code is “0.” Therefore, the company identification can be seven digits if you include the first digit “0.” Because each UCC code contains the company number, all numbers are unique.

The following are the three key UCC identification codes:

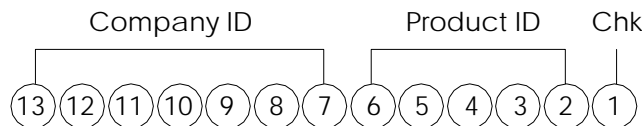
- A product (UPC and EAN-13 codes)
- A container of product (SCC-14 and EAN-14 codes)
- A transaction that contains multiple containers and/or products (SSCC-18)

Universal Product Code (UPC)

Each company can assign the Universal Product Code (identified as UPC in North America and EAN-13 outside of North America) to both a consumer unit or the lowest saleable unit for a specific product. For example, a can of soda would have the UPC identification on the can because it can be sold individually. The UPC code is a fixed code that identifies one unit of a specific product.

The following graphic illustrates the structure of UPC code:

UPC/EAN-13 Code Structure



The UPC code is made up of the following:

- A single-digit check character.
- A 5-digit Product ID assigned by the company.
- A 7-digit company (or manufacturer) ID that is assigned by the UCC/EAN. For North American companies, the company ID is represented by only 6 characters, since the leading 7th digit is always 0 and can be left off the code.

Typically, a company will maintain its own product identification codes for internal use but will cross reference the internal product identification codes to the UPC code.

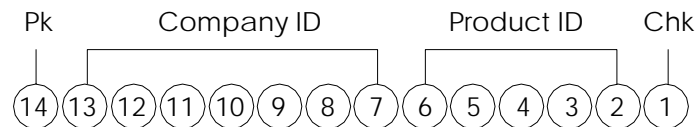
Shipping Container Code (SCC)

Companies assign the Shipping Container Code (identified as the SCC-14 in North America and EAN-14 outside of North America) to an intermediate pack for a specific product. For example, cans of soda are sold in various configurations. One possible configuration is four six-packs in each case. Therefore, the case would have an intermediate pack identifier (SCC-14) on it.

The Shipping Container Code, like the UPC, is a fixed code that identifies the specific number of consumer packs of a specific product. The SCC code on the case of soda represents four consumer packs, each with six sodas or a total of 24 sodas.

The following graphic illustrates the structure of SCC-14 code:

SCC-14/EAN-14 Code Structure



The SCC-14 code is made up of the following:

- A single-digit check character.
- A 5-digit Product ID assigned by the company.
- A 7-digit company (or manufacturer) ID assigned by the UCC/EAN.
- A single-digit Packaging Indicator that identifies the packaging. This identifier is assigned by the company and may vary from product to product. This identifier is fixed and has the following values:
 - 0 indicates that the Product ID on the SCC is not the same as the product identification on the UPC codes contained within the package.
 - 1 – 8 indicates company-defined packaging. For example, for soda, a 1 might mean a case containing six packs and a 2 might mean a case containing 12-pack boxes.
 - 9 indicates that the amount of product inside the package varies from package to package even though there is the same product identification in the UPC codes of the consumer pack contained within the package.

In OneWorld, an SCC code is equivalent to an item code for a specific unit of measure. For any item, there would be one UPC code but several SCC codes.

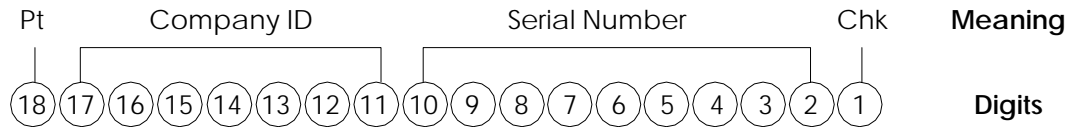
Serial Shipping Container Code (SSCC)

Serial Shipping Container Code (SSCC-18) is a unique serial number that is assigned to cartons or shipping containers, including entire truck loads or shipments.

The SSCC code is a variable code that can be a hierarchical structure of SCCs and UPCs. The code is a key to a database record. For example, an SSCC may be put on a pallet that has 10 cases of soda and 10 cases of juice.

The following graphic illustrates the structure of SSCC-18 code:

SSCC-18 Code Structure



The SSCC-18 code is made up of the following:

- A single-digit check character.
- A 9-digit serial number that identifies the shipping method that is assigned by the company.
- A 7-digit company (or manufacturer) ID that is assigned by UCC/EAN.
- A single-digit packaging type. This identifier is fixed and has the following values:
 - 0 indicates the shipping container is a case or carton
 - 2 indicates that shipping container is a pallet (larger than a case)
 - 3 indicates the shipping container is undefined
 - 4 indicates the shipping container that is used internally for intra-company use
 - 5 – 9 are reserved for future use

Understanding Bar Code Labels

Bar codes are machine-readable symbols that are used to encode information on physical product, intermediate packages, and collections of packages for shipment.

Bar Code Labels for UPC/EAN-13

The UPC symbology has different formats, depending on your business needs.



- UPC-A: A format that displays all 12 or 13 digits.
- UPC-E: A format that compresses the 12 or 13 digit numbers to eight by removing zeroes from the number. Although the UPC-E version displays only eight digits, when the code is scanned and decoded by the bar reader, the transmission includes all digits to the computer.

Bar Code Labels for SCC-14/EAN-14

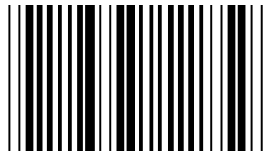
The Shipping Container Code has different formats, depending on where you print the label and the information that you want to include. For example, you can use the Interleaved 2-of-5 (ITF) format if you print the bar codes on corrugated cartons. You might want to use the UPC/EAN-128 if you encode an Application Identifier (AI) prefix. An AI prefix is important when scanning multiple bar codes on a shipping label as they allow the scanner to identify what the encoded number represents.

- Interleaved 2-of-5 (ITF): This format encodes the 14 digits and is often used on corrugated cartons because it can be printed more reliably than UPC/EAN-128.



- UPC/EAN 128: This format encodes the 14 digits of the SCC and an AI prefix.

(01) 3 0012345 67890 6

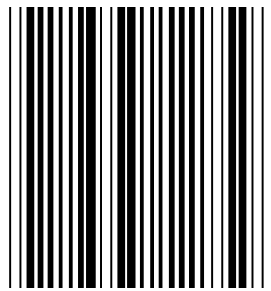


Bar Code Labels for Serial Shipping Container Code (SSCC-18)

The Serial Shipping Container Code is encoded with the UPC/EAN-128 standard. This standard encodes both the 18 digits of SSCC-18 code and an AI prefix. The AI identifies the type of information that is encoded. An AI of 00 identifies the bar code as a SSCC-18.

The SSCC is the label that is affixed to the shipment, the pallet, or a container. It may be applied as the shipment is being assembled or at the dock as the shipment is being loaded for transport to the customer.

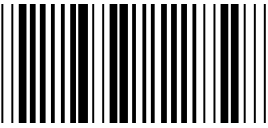
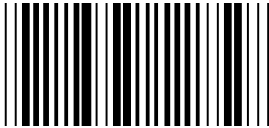
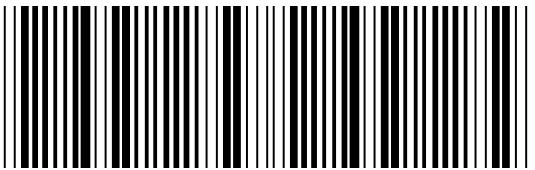
(00) 0 0052177 513895717 2



Understanding Shipping Labels

Although they can vary in size, shape, and content, shipping labels follow a specific standard, the UCC Common Label. This standard specifies label segments and defines the type of information that is contained in each segment.

The following graphic illustrates an example of a shipping label.

FROM: Supplier 1155 Battery Street San Francisco CA 94111		TO: Customer DC 1478 5241 San Antonio Drive NE Albuquerque, NM 87109	
SHIP TO POST (420) 871009 		CARRIER Best Freight PRO: 28957698660 B/L: 853930	
PO: 345-896779-0 DEPT: 092			
FOR: (91) 1528 		Customer Store 1528 1815 N Main Roswell NM 88201	
SSCC-18 (00) 0 0052177 513895717 2 			

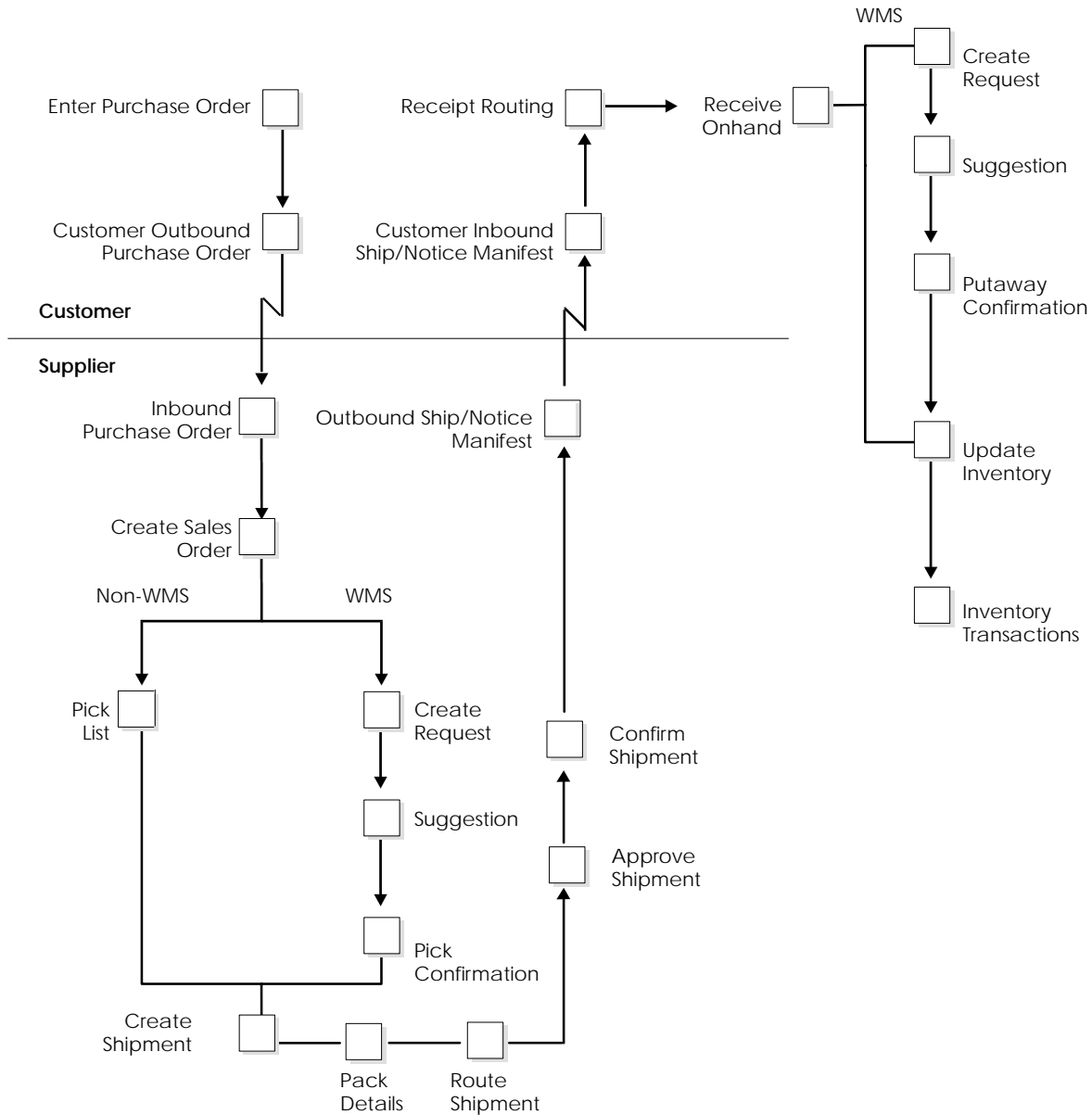
The following table illustrates the segments within the previous graphic, and the information contained in each.

Zone A - Ship From Contents: The Ship From name and address Characteristics: Conditional for full trailer shipments, mandatory for other shipments	Zone B - Ship To Contents: Ship To name and address Characteristics: Conditional for full trailer shipments, mandatory for other shipments
Zone C - Carrier Routing Bar Code Contents: Ship To postal code or PRO Number bar code Characteristics: Conditional	Zone D - Carrier Contents: Carrier Name, SCAC Bill of Lading Number, PRO Number Carrier Assigned Packaged ID, Carrier Assigned Shipper ID Characteristics: Conditional
Zone E - Trading Partner Data Contents: The agreed-upon data for the trading partners. Both bar code and text data can appear in this zone. For example, you can enter purchase order numbers, serial numbers, and product numbers. Characteristics: Optional	
Zone F - Trading Partner Data Contents: This is the agreed-upon data for the trading partners. This data is supplemental to the data that is in Zone E. Characteristics: Optional	
Zone G - Final Destination Code Contents: Can be large human-readable location number or bar code. For example, you can use this zone for the Mark-For number. Characteristics: Conditional	Zone H - Final Destination Code Contents: The Final Destination ID, Mark-For name and address Characteristics: Conditional
Zone I - SSCC-18 Bar Code Contents: The Serial Shipping Container Code Characteristics: Mandatory	

Understanding EDI Transmissions

The J.D. Edwards integrated system depends on accurate data flow from one process to another. You can transmit order and shipment detail information electronically between the supplier and the customer.

The following graphic illustrates the process and identifies EDI transmissions.



See Also

- *About EDI Document Transmission in the Electronic Commerce Guide*

Setting Up UCC 128 Processing

To process orders that comply to UCC 128 specifications, you must set up customer and item information. For example, you can define customer preferences for transmitted information and standard identification codes for your products.

Setting up UCC 128 processing consists of the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up customer information
- ☐ Setting up item information

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set up your UCC-assigned vendor number in user defined codes (41/UC).
- ☐ Verify that you have set up your shipping document types in user defined codes (49/SD).

See Also

- *Working With Shipments* in the *Transportation Management Guide* for more information about setting up your company's shipping information

Setting Up Customer Information

You must set up customer specifications that are maintained for UCC 128 Compliance. These specifications might include the customer-specific format for transmitted information and additional UCC 128 processing information, such as transportation equipment, routing, and reference numbers.

Setting up customer information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up hierarchical configurations
- ☐ Setting up ship/notice manifest requirements

Setting Up Hierarchical Configurations

When you transmit order information, you can establish a format that relays the information about the shipment, the orders within the shipment, and the items within the order. You define hierarchical configurations to transmit information that meets your customers' needs.

You can set up any structure based on your business needs. The following are examples of hierarchical structures:

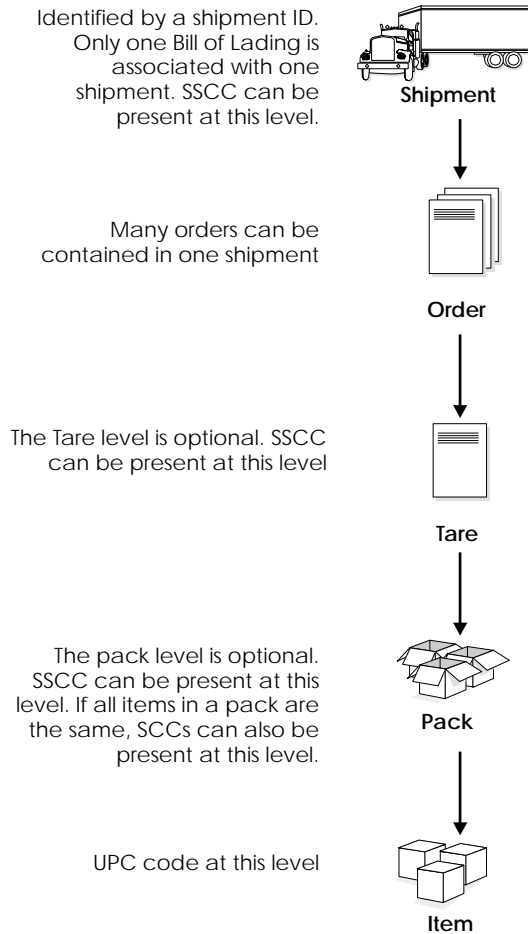
Pick and Pack	This is the most flexible configuration because you can combine products at the tare and pack levels.
Standard Carton Pack	Within this configuration, there can only be one UPC present in subordinate tare and pack levels.

Within the configurations, you can define hierarchies based on the customer preferences. The following are examples of configuration levels:

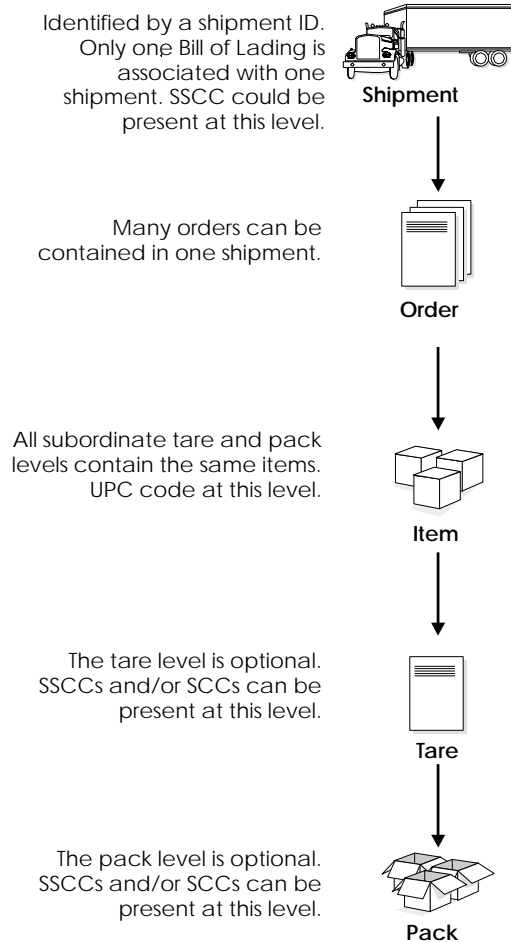
Shipment (S)	There can only be one Shipment level in each transaction set that is transmitted. This contains information such as the bill of lading number, ship to, and sold from information.
Order (O)	The order level contains information related to the supplier's sales order and the customer's purchase order.
Tare (T)	The optional tare level contains information related to pallets and other large product collections.
Pack (P)	The optional pack level contains information related to intermediate packs.
Item (I)	The item level contains information about the product that is shipped, such as UPC number and quantity.

One customer may need shipment, order, item information, in that order, while another may prefer shipment, order, tare, pack, item information, in that order. You define hierarchical configurations to transmit information that meet your customer's needs.

Pick and Pack Structure



Standard Carton Pack Structure



► To set up hierarchical configurations

From the Shipping Notice menu (G47215), choose Hierarchical Configuration Definition.

Address Number	Hierarchical Configuration	Hierarchical Structure
1115	S O T P I	1
4245	S O I	1
75000	S O I	1
75000	S O T P I	1

1. On Work With Hierarchical Configuration Definition, click Add.

Level	Hierarchical Configuration	Field Name	Ascending Descending	Total Level
1.000	S	SDCNID	A	1
2.000	O	SDDOCO	A	2
3.000	T	XDPAK	A	3
4.000	P	XDPLT	A	4
5.000	I	SDITM	A	5

2. On Hierarchical Configuration Definition Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Address Number
 - Hierarchical Configuration
 - Hierarchical Structure Code

3. Complete the following fields for each level:

- Level
- Hierarchical Configuration
- Field Name
- Ascending Decending
- Total Level

Field	Explanation
Address Number	A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, and any other address book members.
Hierarchical Configuration	The EDI 856 transaction set hierarchy configuration codes that specify the levels present in the Ship Notice/Manifest. This field is made up of a combination of 2 character Hierarchical Level Codes (values from the X12 specification for data element 735 – Hierarchical Level Code). There can be up to 9 combinations of HLC's in this field.
Hierarchical Structure Code	A code indicating the hierarchical application structure of an EDI transaction set that utilizes the HL segment to define the structure of the transaction set.
Level	A number used to organize the table into a logical group for online viewing and reporting.
Hierarchical Configuration	The EDI 856 transaction set hierarchy configuration codes that specify the levels present in the Ship Notice/Manifest. This field is made up of a combination of 2 character Hierarchical Level Codes (values from the X12 specification for data element 735 – Hierarchical Level Code). There can be up to 9 combinations of HLC's in this field.
Field Name	The name of the field within the file. This name is constructed using the File Prefix specified in the SVR and the data item name in the data dictionary.

Field	Explanation								
Ascending Decending	<p>A code to designate sorting sequence as ascending or descending. The following codes apply:</p> <table><tr><td>A</td><td>Ascending</td></tr><tr><td>D</td><td>Descending</td></tr></table> <p>Note: For use within OPNQRYF command to designate the UNIQUEKEY parameter. The number of key sequence fields specified with the following codes represent the number assigned to the UNIQUEKEY parameter. This parameter eliminates duplicate records for the specified keys.</p> <table><tr><td>U</td><td>Ascending</td></tr><tr><td>V</td><td>Descending</td></tr></table>	A	Ascending	D	Descending	U	Ascending	V	Descending
A	Ascending								
D	Descending								
U	Ascending								
V	Descending								
Total Level	<p>A level break, not to be confused with Account Master or Business Unit Master level of detail concept (see LDA and LDM respectively). You may specify the level of totaling that you wish to place on this field. Up to 9 levels of totals are permissible. If levels of totals are not specified in an order consistent with the sequence parameters, unpredictable results will occur.</p> <p>For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Level 01 – Department Totals – Sort Sequence 03Level 02 – Branch Totals – Sort Sequence 02Level 03 – Division Totals – Sort Sequence 01Level 10 – Grand Totals <p>If you specify the same totaling level on more than one data field, you must enter a 1 in the 1st position of total level for all secondary fields.</p> <p>For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Level 01 – Business Unit (description comes from here)Level 11 – Object (description ignored)Level 11 – Subsidiary (description ignored)								

Setting Up Ship Notice/Manifest Requirements

You can assign the hierarchical configuration according to your customer's requirements. For example, you can specify additional UCC 128 information, such as transportation equipment, routing, and reference numbers.

To set up shipping information

From the System Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

If you set up shipping information for UCC 128 Compliance, you enter information on the Customer Ship Notice tab.

1. On Work With Customer Master, locate the customer.
2. On Customer Master Revision, click the Customer Ship Notice tab.

Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

Links Who's... Previo... Next OLE ... Internet

Customer Number 4242 Capital System

Long Address Number

Billing Page1 Billing Page2 G/L Distribution Tax Information **Customer Ship Notice** EDI Information

Shipping Label Program Shipping Label Version

Pick_Pack Config Default Configuration

Standard Carton Pack Config None ☒ Pick_Pack ☐ Standard Carton ☐

Required For Ship Notice

Packaging Code	<input type="checkbox"/>	Weight	<input type="checkbox"/>
Transportation Method	<input type="checkbox"/>	Routing	<input type="checkbox"/>
Requires Equipment	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Identification Code 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Default	<input type="checkbox"/>
Identification Code 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Default	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reference Number 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Default	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reference Number 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Default	<input type="checkbox"/>

Work With Customer Master Customer Master Revision

3. Complete the following fields:

- Shipping Label Program
- Shipping Label Version
- Pick & Pack Config
- Pick & Pack
- Default Configuration
- Packaging Code
- Transportation Method
- Requires Equipment
- Identification Code 1
- Identification Code 2
- Weight
- Reference Number 1
- Reference Number 2
- Default

Setting Up Item Information

You must provide the system with information about the items that you stock. When you enter item master information, you provide the system with details such as:

- Item identifiers
- Item descriptions

For UCC 128 processing, your item identifiers can be the UPC or SCC codes that you assign to the product unit and intermediate packs.

See Also

- *Understanding UCC 128 Compliance*

Using Package Indicators

If you are setting up the SCC, you use the following Packaging Indicators to identify the type of packaging:

- 0 indicates that the Product ID on the SCC is not the same as the product identification on the UPC contained within the package. You can use this product identifier for kits.
- 1–8 indicates company-defined packaging. For example, for soda, a 1 might mean a case containing six packs and a 2 might mean a case containing 12-pack boxes.
- 9 indicates that the amount of product inside the package varies from package to package even though there is the same product identification in the UPC of the consumer pack contained within the package. J.D. Edwards does not support variable unit of measures.

Setting Up Aggregate SCCs

You can set up aggregate SCCs to represent kits with noninventory components. A kit is a collection of inventory items, called components, that are associated with a description name, called a parent item. The aggregate SCC represents the parent item. You can access the Item Cross-Reference Revisions form to assign component UPCs to the aggregate SCC for the kit. You only enter cross-reference information for non-inventory items. For example, you do not stock bandages, an item for which you do not record inventory or UPCs. You do sell first aid kits, which include bandages. Depending on your customer requirements, you can enter the aggregate SCC for the first aid kit and item cross-reference information for the components, such as bandages, that make up the first aid kit.

If the components are inventory items, you do not have to enter cross references. When you enter an order for a kit, the system retrieves the kit information, which include the component UPCs, from the Item Master table (F4101).

To set up identification for kits with noninventory items, you can set up an SCC with a product identifier equal to 0, which indicates that the SCC is not the same as the product identification on the UPCs it contains. To assign the UPCs to the aggregate, you can enter information in the Item Cross-Reference field.

On Item Cross-Reference Revisions, you must enter the cross-reference type, UP, to indicate UPCs. The cross-reference item number is the UPC code and the cross-reference description is the unit of measure.

See *Setting Up Item Cross-References* in the *Inventory Management Guide*.



To set up item information

1. On Item Master Information, locate the item and choose Storage/Shipping from the Row menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Item Master - [Storage/Shipping]' window. At the top, there's a menu bar with File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Window, and Help. Below the menu bar are buttons for OK, Cancel, Dismiss, and Abort. There are also buttons for Links, Item..., Previous..., Next..., OLE..., and Internet. The main area contains fields for Item Number (210), Item Number (Short) (50011), and Item Description (Mountain Bike, Red). Below these are tabs for UCC 128 and Shipping. The UCC 128 tab is active, showing fields for UOM, UCC Code, and Item Weight Required Y/N. There are also fields for SCC (P=0) through SCC (P=8) and a Default Aggregate UPC UOM field.

2. On Storage/Shipping, click the UCC 128 tab.
3. Complete the following fields for UPCs:
 - UPC Number
 - Unit of Measure – UPC

You can enter UPCs and SCCs with product identifiers 1–8.

In OneWorld, an SCC is equivalent to an item code at a specific unit of measure. For any item, there would be one UPC but several SCCs.

- Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=8)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=7)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=6)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=5)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=4)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=3)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=2)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=1)
 - Unit of Measure – SCC(PI=0)
4. To set up item information for a kit, complete only the following fields:
 - Unit of Measure – Aggregate UPC
 - Aggregate SCC Code (PI=0)
 5. To assign UPCs for non-inventory components to the aggregate SCC, choose Item Cross Ref from the Form menu.
 6. On Item Cross-Reference Revisions, complete the steps to enter item cross-reference information.

Processing Shipments

After you create the sales order, you can prepare the product for picking and shipment. You can transmit order and shipment detail information according to UCC 128 Compliance standards, which allow you to facilitate uniform product identification and the exchange of shipment information between suppliers and customers.

Processing shipments involves the following tasks:

- ☐ Preparing the shipment
- ☐ Confirming tare and pack information

Preparing the Shipment

When you send an EDI transaction that tells the customer exactly what was shipped as well as how it was shipped, you are transmitting information that you have collected as you prepared the shipment. You must enter shipment information, such as how the product will be transported, routing instructions, and reference numbers.

Preparing the shipment includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Creating shipments for sales orders
- ☐ Entering UCC 128 header and shipment information

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up hierarchical configurations, and UCC 128 information for your customers and items. See *Setting Up UCC 128 Processing*.
- ☐ Verify that you have activated Transportation Management. See *Activating Transportation Management* in the *Transportation Management Guide*.

Creating Shipments for Sales Orders

When you enter a sales order, the system automatically creates a shipment based on the order type and line type combination that you define in the user defined code tables (49/SD). The shipment is a request to transport goods from the branch/plant to the customer. If you do not enter a carrier and mode of transport during order entry, the system retrieves default carrier and transport information from any of the following:

- Item branch/plant information
- Customer master information
- Inventory commitment preference
- Transportation Management preferences

When you review routing options in Transportation Management, you can review and revise the carrier and mode of transport. If you do not specify a carrier in either of the master tables or during order entry, the system populates the carrier and mode of transport based on the transportation preferences.

See *Setting Up Preferences* in the *Transportation Management Guide*.

Entering UCC 128 Header and Shipment Information

When you perform shipment confirmation, the system verifies the shipment information against customer requirements. You can enter your UCC 128 header information when you review the shipment information.

To enter UCC 128 header and shipment information

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Confirm Shipments.

1. On Work with Shipment Confirmation, click Find to locate the shipment.

Confirm Shipments - [Work with Shipment Confirmation]

File Edit Preferences Form Row Window Help

Select Find Close Beg... New... Dis... Abo Links ▼ Confr... OLE ... Internet

Order Number SO Branch/Plant 30

Pick Slip Number

Shipment Number

Customer PO

	Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Sold To Number	Sold To Name	Ship To Number	Pick Number
	234	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	123
	236	SO	00001	1.000	4343	Parts Emporium	4343	789
	239	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	123
	260	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	279267
	261	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	
	7223	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	212
	7383	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	22
	7407	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	23
	7448	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242	25

Find records

2. Choose the row and click Select.

Sales Order Detail - [Shipment Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Can... Dis... Abo Links ▼ Additi... OLE ... Internet

Shipment Depot M30 Shipment Number 10717

Source of Order S Sales Routing Step Number

Status 10 Pending Number of Routing Steps

Origin Address 5074 Eastern Manufacturing Plant

Sold To 4242 Capital System

Ship To 4242 Capital System

City ATLANTA Postal Code 30339

State GA Country

Route Code Zone Number FCI

Promised Date/Time

Ship 6/1/05 0

Delivery 0

Weight and Volume

Shipment Weight LB

Scheduled Volume FC

Number of Pieces 1

Mode of Transport

Carrier Number

Number of Containers

Freight Handling Code F

Bulk/Packed Flag P

3. On Shipment Revisions, review the following fields:

- Origin Depot
- Sold To
- Ship To

4. Revise the following fields:
 - Ship
 - Delivery
 - Shipment Weight
 - Scheduled Volume
 - Number of Pieces
 - Mode of Transport
 - Carrier Number
 - Number of Containers
 - Freight Handling Code
5. Click OK.
6. On Work with Shipments, highlight the row and choose UCC 128 Revisions from the Row menu.
7. On UCC 128 Revisions, click the UCC-128 tab.

Work with Shipments - [UCC-128 Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Window Help

OK Cancel Dismiss Abort Links Display OLE Internet

Shipment UCC-128

Trading Partner ID		Routing	
Hierarchical Configuration		Equipment Description Code	
Packaging Code		Equipment Initial	
Weight Qualifier		Equipment Number	
Identifier Code Qualifier		ASN Acknowledgement Type	
Identifier Code 1		Date ASN Receipt Acknowledged	
Identifier Code Qualifier 2		Time ASN Receipt Acknowledged	
Identifier Code 2			

8. Complete the following fields:
 - Trading Partner ID
 - Routing
 - Hierarchical Configuration
 - Equipment Description Code
 - Packaging Code

- Weight Qualifier
- Identifier Code 1
- Identifier Code Qualifier
- Identifier Code 2
- Identifier Code Qualifier 2
- Equipment Initial
- Equipment Number

Field	Explanation
Origin Depot	This identifies the origin depot for a shipment or a load.
Sold To	A user defined name or number that is unique to the address book number. You can use this field to enter and locate information. You can use it to cross-reference the supplier to a Dun & Bradstreet number, a lease number, or other reference.
Number of Pieces	<p>The number of pieces, pallets, containers, etc. which make up a shipment.</p> <p>For shipments that do not have piece information defined in the Pieces table (F4943), the system calculates the estimated piece count by converting the quantity in the transaction unit of measure to the shipping unit of measure. To obtain the whole piece number, the system rounds the unit of measure down. The weight and volume of the leftover quantities from all detail lines are added and the sum total is divided by the maximum piece weight and/or volume. The system rounds the resulting piece weight or volume up to the next whole number. This number is added to the whole piece number to obtain the piece count.</p>
Ship	<p>The promised shipment date for either a sales order or purchase order. The Supply and Demand program (P4021) uses this date to calculate Available to Promise information. This value can be automatically calculated during sales order entry. This date represents the day the item can be shipped from the warehouse.</p> <p>The promised shipment date for either a sales order or purchase order. The Supply and Demand program (P4021) uses this date to calculate Available to Promise information. This value can be automatically calculated during sales order entry. This date represents the day the item can be shipped from the warehouse.</p>
Delivery	The date that you tell the customer that the order will arrive.

Field	Explanation				
Freight Handling Code	<p>A user defined code (42/FR) designating the method by which supplier shipments are delivered. For example, the supplier could deliver to your dock, or you could pick up the shipment at the supplier's dock.</p> <p>You can also use these codes to indicate who has responsibility for freight charges. For example, you can have a code indicating that the customer legally takes possession of goods as soon as they leave the supplier warehouse and is responsible for transportation charges to the destination.</p>				
Bulk/Packed Flag	<p>A code that indicates if the item is a bulk liquid product. If it is a bulk product, you must perform temperature and density/gravity conversions. To record the movement of bulk products, you must use forms designed specifically for bulk products. If you try to record movement using standard inventory forms, the system prevents the movement. Valid values are:</p> <table><tr><td>P</td><td>Packaged</td></tr><tr><td>B</td><td>Bulk liquid</td></tr></table> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system uses P.</p>	P	Packaged	B	Bulk liquid
P	Packaged				
B	Bulk liquid				

Confirming Tare and Pack Information

After creating the shipment, and picking the items for the shipment, you can record the packing information and confirm the intermediate packs or pallets.

When you perform shipment confirmation, the system verifies tare and pack information. For each shipment, you can enter the information about the way products and orders are packed. When you enter tare information, you are recording information about the pallets and large product collections that you are shipping. When you enter pack information, you are recording the intermediate packs. For example, you can record the information for a pallet contains two different models of microwaves that are packed two to a carton. The system retrieves the UPC for each microwave and the SCC for the pre-packaged carton of microwaves in the Item Master Information. To record tare and pack information, you can enter the type of pallet onto which the microwaves were loaded.

If you enter an aggregate SCC, the system displays two asterisks (**) to indicate the associated UPCs. To review the UPCs, you can access Item Cross-Reference Revisions from the Item Master Information – UCC form.

You must set the Pack Confirmation and the Pack Confirmation Version processing options in the Ship Confirm program (P4205) to indicate whether to enter tare and pack detail information. Setting these processing options will also specify whether the system will confirm the pack when you confirm the order detail line.

Note: To generate SSCC next numbers by company, you must set up a document type in user defined code table (00/DT).

► To confirm the pack

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Confirm Shipments.

1. On Work with Shipment Confirmation, click Find.

2. Locate the order and click Select.
3. On Shipment Confirmation, to select order detail lines for confirmation, complete the following field:
 - Sel = 1

For more information on Shipment Confirmation, see *Working with Shipments*.

4. If you have activated the processing option to activate pack confirmation, the system automatically displays Pack Confirm Detail Revisions.

Tare SSCC	Pack SSCC	SCC	SCC Quantity	SCC UOM	UPC
			0		

5. On Pack Confirm Detail Revisions, complete the following fields:

- UPC UOM

The system verifies that the SCC and the unit of measure for each item correspond to the information in the Item Master and Item Cross-Reference Revisions.

- UPC Quantity

The system verifies that the sum of the Tare/Pack quantities add up to the shipped quantity on the sales order line. If you have entered the SCC unit of measure and quantity, the system converts the SCC information to the UPC quantity. For example, if you confirm a shipment of 12 cases of soda, the system verifies that you are confirming shipment of 288 cans of soda.

6. To have the system automatically assign tare and pack information, do the following:

- Highlight the row and choose Tare SSCC from the Row menu.
- Highlight the row and choose Pack SSCC from the Row menu.

The system verifies that the appropriate SSCCs and SCCs are entered for each record and they correspond with the hierarchical configuration that is specified in Shipment Entry. For example, if you enter an SOTPI configuration in Shipment Entry but you have not entered a pack SSCC or an SCC, the system displays an error message.

After you confirm sales, tare and pack information for each order detail line, complete the steps to confirm the shipment.



Sales Order Processing

After you enter sales orders, they advance through the processing cycle in the following sequence:

1. Print pick slips
2. Confirm shipment
3. Generate invoices
4. Update information to the general ledger (G/L)

Picking documents are documents that warehouse personnel use for picking inventory to fill sales orders. After warehouse personnel pick the appropriate items to fill an order, you can verify that the billing and shipping information on the sales order is correct. You can enter any changes, such as additional charges for freight or taxes, on the sales order before the merchandise leaves your warehouse.

Processing sales orders includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Updating status codes
- ☐ Working with picking documents
- ☐ Processing serial number information
- ☐ Working with shipments

You set up a status code for each of the steps in the sales order process using order activity rules. The system uses these codes to track the status of an order within the sales order process. For example, an order that is confirmed for shipment has a status code of 578.

You can set up as many status codes as your company needs to complete the sales order process. For example, you can set up an additional status code for credit approval between sales order entry and printing pick slips.

You can also skip steps in the processing cycle by manually advancing the status code on order lines. This is helpful if you have customers who come to your warehouse and purchase items directly. After you enter their order, you can bypass the picking and shipment confirmation steps by advancing the status code on the order line to the status code for processing invoices.



Updating Status Codes

You can use the Status Code Update program to manually advance the status codes for order lines that you select. This allows you to manage steps in the order process that are unique to your company. For example, you can bypass credit approval for several order lines by processing them through the Status Code Update program.

You can also manually change a single line's status code to the next status code. However, if an order or order line is on hold, you must first release the order. Advancing the status of a held order does not automatically release the order.

You can only bypass the status codes that are set up in your system's order activity rules.

Note: You cannot use the Update Status Code program to advance order lines to a closed status, such as 999, or to a restricted status that is specified during sales order entry. To assign a closed status to a sales order, you must advance the order through all of the steps in the sales order process. To cancel an order, you must inquire on the order and cancel each order detail line.

Before You Begin

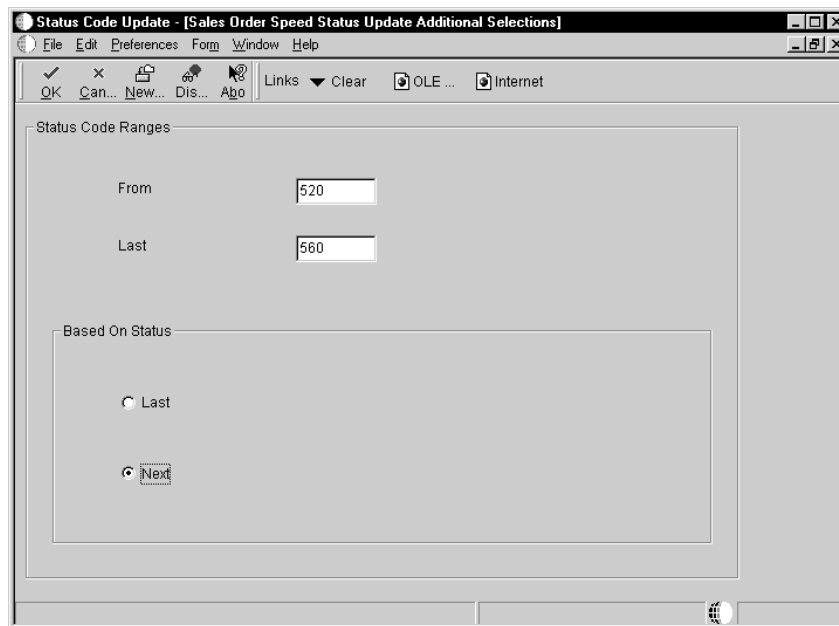
- ☐ Verify that the status codes are set up in order activity rules (40/AT).



To update status codes

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Status Code Update.

1. On Work with Sales Speed Status Update, complete the following fields and click Find:
 - Order Number
 - Document Type
 - Branch/Plant
2. From the Form menu, choose Added Selection to define the criteria based on either the last status or next status and Click OK.



3. On Work with Sales Speed Status Update, select the row or rows to be updated.
4. Complete the following field:
 - Update to Status Code
5. Click Select to Update the status code of each order line.

Field	Explanation
Last Sts	A user defined code (40/AT) that specifies the last step in the processing cycle that this order line successfully completed.
Update to Status Code	User defined code (40/AT) that specifies what the next standard step is in the processing cycle for this order type. You set up the steps for the processing cycle on the Order Activity Rules form.
Next Sts	A user defined code (40/AT) that indicates the next step in the order process.

See Also

- *Setting Up Order Activity Rules*

Working with Picking Documents

Your warehouse personnel can print documents to be used to retrieve inventory from the warehouse to fill a customer's order, shipment, or load. Additionally, you can print lists to pick items for multiple sales orders. A control pick slip, or a pick list, enables warehouse personnel to fill multiple sales orders efficiently.

You can use the Print Pick Slips program (R42520) to print the following documents for your warehouse personnel to use to retrieve inventory:

Pick Slips

A pick slip is a document that contains information about the items to be shipped, such as quantity and location, for a single sales order. Use pick slips in the following ways:

- Review prices for line items and the entire order
- Identify delivery personnel
- Verify that a customer has signed for the items at the time of delivery
- Use as a receipt if the customer returns any items

If you hard-commit inventory when you print pick slips, a pick slip can include several locations from which you can pick items. It lists the primary location of an item first. If the primary location is out of stock, it lists the secondary location.

The system assigns the pick slip number by order number and prints the total number of items for that order.

Control pick list

A control pick list has information about the items to be shipped for multiple sales orders. The control pick list groups the items by item number and sequences them by quantity and location.

Control pick lists enable warehouse personnel to fill multiple sales orders efficiently, reducing the amount of time spent locating necessary quantities.

The system assigns the pick slip number by location and prints the total number of items for that location.

Packaged Pick Slip

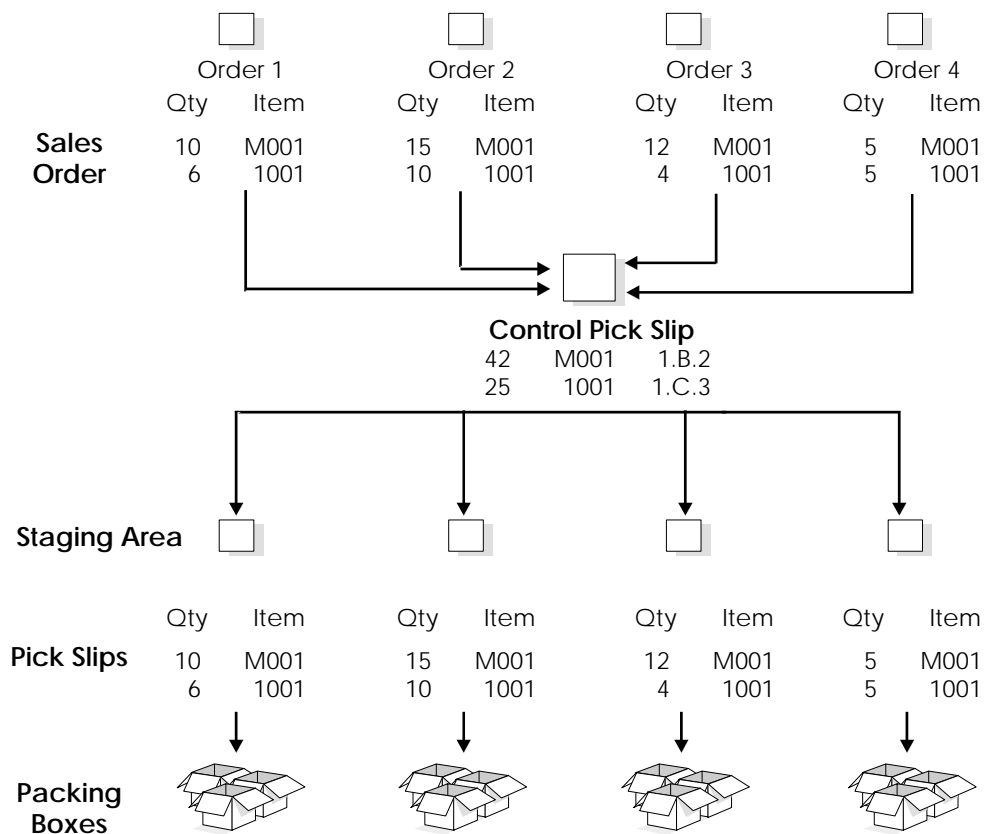
A packaged pick slip enables warehouse personnel to pick inventory to fill a certain shipment or load.

The system assigns the pick slip number by shipment or load number and prints the total number of items for the shipment.

If you print a control pick slip first instead of a pick slip, you can later print a pick slip for each sales order on the control pick list. The warehouse personnel can use these pick slips to determine the items and quantities to pack for each of the sales orders that they are shipping. The pick slips help warehouse personnel work efficiently because they can pack multiple orders from one area. The system assigns a number to each pick slip that you can later use to confirm a shipment.

You can assign a priority code to customers in the customer billing information to have the system fill customer orders and generate pick lists according to the priority of the customer. This helps to ensure that you have sufficient inventory for certain customers.

The following graphic illustrates how the system uses a list, a control pick slip, and pick slips to fill orders.



You can reprint pick slips if the printing process is interrupted or if you need additional copies. To do this, choose Reprint Pick Slips from the Sales Order Processing menu. The system reprints the pick slip without advancing the status codes for that order.

You must set your processing options to identify the type of pick slip to print.

Processing Options for Print Pick Slips (R42520)

Edits Tab

These processing options specify how the system processes status codes when you run the Print Pick Slips program.

1. Next Status From (Required)

Use this processing option to specify the status code range that the system uses to select orders for pick slip processing.

You find status codes in user defined code table 40/AT. Status codes must be set up in the Order Activity Rules for each combination of order type and line type that you use.

2. Next Status Thru (Required)

Use this processing option to specify the highest line status that the system uses to select orders for pick slip processing. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using.

3. Override Next Status

Use this processing option to specify the next status code that the system uses to select orders for pick slip processing. The override status is another allowed step in the process.

You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using.

4. Updating Next Status

Use this processing option to specify whether the system updates the status of the order detail line. Valid values are:

Blank Update the line status.

1 Do not update the line status.

Display Tab

These processing options control whether the system prints certain types of information, such as print messages or associated text, kit components, backordered items and customer cross references.

1. Global Print Message

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints a global print message on all pick slips. You must enter a value that is set up in user defined code table (40/PM).

2. Print Associated Text

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints text lines associated with the sales order. You can specify whether to print text associated with the sales order header, sales order detail, or both. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print associated text.

- 1 Print text associated with header and detail lines.
- 2 Print text associated with the header only.
- 3 Print text associated with detail lines only.

3. Print Kit Components

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints kit components. Valid values are:

- 1 Print kit components.
- 2 Do not print kit components.

4. Future Committed Lines

Use this processing option to specify whether the system processes future committed lines and prints the information on the pick slip. When processing future committed lines during the pick slip process, the system updates order detail line information such as status codes. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print or process future commitments.

- 1 Process future committed lines.
- 2 Process and print future committed lines
- 3 Print future committed lines

5. Backordered Lines

Use this processing option to specify whether the system processes backordered lines and prints the information on the pick slip. When processing backordered lines during the pick slip process, the system updates order detail line information such as status codes. Valid values are:

- Blank Do not print or process backorder information.
- 1 Process backordered lines.
 - 2 Process and print backordered lines
 - 3 Print backordered lines

6. Print Detail Text

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints sales order detail text lines on the pick slip. Text lines are order detail lines that have a text line type in the Line Type field and contain only text. Valid values are:

- 1 Print text lines.
- 2 Do not print text lines.

7. Print Item Number

Use this processing option to specify which item numbers the system prints on the pick slip. Valid values are:

- 1 Print only our item numbers.
- 2 Print both ours and the customer item number.

If you leave this option blank, the system prints only our item numbers.

8. Customer Cross Reference

Use this processing option to specify the cross-reference code that identifies the customer item number, if you choose to print the customer item number on the pick slip. You must enter a value from user defined code table (41/DT).

Process Tab

These processing options control how the system performs certain processes when you run the Print Pick Slip program. For example, you can specify how you want the system to commit inventory. You can also create a workfile or specify how the system will process ship and debit agreements.

1. Hard Commit Inventory

Use this processing option to specify whether the system hard commits order detail lines. Valid values are:

- 1 Hard commit inventory.
- 2 Bypass the commitment process.

When the system commits inventory, some lines may be backordered.

2. Preference Commit

Use this processing option to specify whether the system commits order detail lines using preference processing. The system commits inventory according to how you have set up Customer Group Preferences (P40071) and Item Group Preferences (P40072). Valid values are:

Blank Do not commit inventory using preference processing.

- 1 Commit inventory using preference processing.

3. Create Work File

Use this processing option to specify whether the system creates a workfile with this version of the Print Pick Slips program (R42520). When you create a workfile, the system processes all of the order detail lines through the pick slip process but creates a second report to display the information in a format you may prefer over the standard pick slip format. Valid values are:

Blank Do not create a workfile.

- 1 Create a workfile.

To use this processing option, you must create a report in Report Design Aid and specify the Pick Slip Header table (F42UI520) and Pick Slip Detail table (F42UI521).

4. Ship and Debit Processing

Use this processing option to specify whether the system will use subsystem or batch processing (R45100) to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements when you run the Print Pick Slips program. Valid values are:

Blank Do not use subsystem or batch processing

- 1 Use subsystem processing
- 2 Use batch processing

Currency Tab

This processing option specifies whether the system prints foreign or domestic currency on the pick slip.

1. Domestic or Foreign Currency

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints foreign or domestic currency on the pick slip. Valid values are:

Blank Print domestic currency.

1 Print foreign currency.

2 Print foreign and domestic currency.

Versions Tab

This processing options determine the version that the system uses when performing ship and debit processing.

Versions control how programs display information. Therefore, for the version to meet your needs, you might need to set the processing options for specific versions.

1. Ship and Debit Version

Use this processing option to specify the version of subsystem processing (R45100) that the system uses to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements when you run the Print Pick Slips program.

Processing Serial Number Information

You use serial numbers to uniquely identify a single item and track it through the OneWorld distribution systems. Serial numbers can help track information for a specific part, such as when it arrived in your warehouse, when it was received, when and to whom it was sold, and when it was shipped.

Depending on your serial number requirements, you can add serial numbers to your branch/plant at the time you receive an item. When you sell the item, you must enter the serial number during order entry and verify the serial number during shipment confirmation.

In other instances, you can add serial numbers into the system when you ship your products. For example, you can enter a serial number during shipment confirmation in order to identify a warranty period for an item. To assign serial numbers within the branch/plant, you can access the Serial Number Revisions program (P4220).

Processing serial numbers includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Understanding serial number processing in the distribution system
- ☐ Working with serial numbers in a branch/plant

The functionality for serial number processing is an enhancement to lot processing. The system processes serial numbers as lots with a quantity of one. A lot with the quantity of one is the lowest trackable unit. To trace and track the serial number through the distribution system, you can use the following lot information programs:

- Lot Master Revisions (P4108)
- Item/Lot Information (P41024)
- Speed Lot Update (P41080)
- Lot Status Update (P41082)
- Lot Availability (P41280)
- Item Lot/Ledger (P4111)
- Lot Trace/Track Inquiry (P41203)

The system maintains serial number information in the following tables:

- Item Master Information (F4101)
- Item Branch/Plant Information (F4102)
- Item Location (F41021)
- Lot Master (F4108)
- Item Ledger (F4111)

See Also

- *Lot Processing* in the *Inventory Management Guide*

Understanding Serial Number Processing in the Distribution System

If you sell serialized items, you can set up the item information and track the movement of the item from the time it enters your warehouse to the time you ship the merchandise to your customer. Understanding serial number processing in the distribution system includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Entering serial number requirements during initial item entry
- ☐ Accessing serial numbers during purchase order receipts
- ☐ Entering serial numbers during order entry
- ☐ Entering serial numbers during shipment confirmation

Entering Serial Number Requirements during Initial Item Entry

When you enter item information in the Item Master (F4101), which defaults to the Item Branch Plant Information (F4102), you must identify the requirement for serial number assignment, lot process type, commitment method, and shelf life (in days). If you require a serial number, the lot process type indicates whether that assignment is optional or required, and, if required, the format for system-assigned serial numbers. You must specify the shelf life in order for the system to calculate the expiration date of the item. You can override serial number requirements for each branch/plant. The system verifies serial number processing based on information in the Item Branch Information form.

If you enter the lot process type that indicates the serial number requirement is optional, you are not prompted to enter a serial number until shipment confirmation. You use this feature for using the serial number to identify a warranty for an item that you are extending to your customer.

You must enter a lot process type and the shelf life for all items for which a serial number entry is not optional. The system uses the lot process type and the

shelf life to commit inventory. If you do not specify the shelf life, you must enter an expiration date each time you receive an item.

See Also

- *Entering Item Branch Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide*

Accessing Serial Numbers during Purchase Order Receipts

When you receive items into your warehouse, you can record serial number information. When you enter receipts for purchase orders, you must enter the receipt option based on the lot process type that exists in Item Branch/Plant Information.

If you enter the lot process type that indicates that the system assigns serial numbers based on a next number format or a date format, you must enter the option to “Receive into Multiple Locations.” The system prompts you to enter a quantity of one as quantity received. Based on a next number format or system date format, the system creates new locations in the Item Location table (F41021) and retrieves the expiration date based on the shelf life that you entered in Item Branch Information, or you can enter an expiration date for each serial number.

If you enter the lot process type that indicates that you must manually assign serial numbers, you must enter the option to “Receive into Multiple Locations.” The system prompts you to enter a quantity of one as quantity received, as well as the serial numbers, with which the system can create as lots in the Item Location table (F41021), if necessary. The system retrieves the expiration date based on the shelf life that you entered in Item Branch Information, or you can enter an expiration date for each serial number.

You must set the processing option in Enter Receipts by PO/Enter Receipts by Item(P4312) to record serial number information in order trace and track item information by serial number.

See Also

- *Entering Receipts* in the *Procurement Guide*

Entering Serial Numbers during Order Entry

If you enter an order for an item that has a lot process type that indicates that a serial number is required, you must enter a valid location and serial (lot) number during order entry.

The following rules apply if a serial number is required during sales order entry:

- The transaction unit of measure must be the same as the primary unit of measure for the serialized item.
- The quantity must be equal to 1 when you enter a location/serial number combination.
- You must enter a valid and available location/serial number combination.

You might receive an error because a location/serial number and item combination that you enter is not available or because the quantity on hand is zero. Serial numbers are unavailable if the quantity for the item/location/serial number combination is:

- In Inspection
- In Operation 1
- In Operation 2
- In Transit

If an item is returned for credit or repair, you must enter a valid location and serial number. Alternately, you can use the serial number information to inquire on the existing order.

See Also

- *Entering Detail Information*

Entering Serial Numbers during Shipment Confirmation

If you enter a serial number requirement for an item, you must enter serial number information at shipment confirmation. When you confirm order detail lines during shipment confirmation, you must enter the serial number based on the lot process type that exists for the item in Item Branch/Plant Information.

See Also

- *Working with Shipments*

Working with Serial Numbers in a Branch/Plant

You can set up serial numbers for a branch/plant before you receive items or as you ship the items from your warehouse, according to serial number requirements that are specific to your organization. If you enter the lot process type that indicates that you must manually assign serial numbers, you can pre-define the serial numbers to choose from when you enter a sales order or confirm the item for shipment. If you use serial number processing as an identifier for information, such as warranties, and you have specified the lot process type as optional serial number entry, you can enter the serial number before you confirm the shipment of the item to your customer. Optionally, if you assigned a serial number to an item, you can enter a second serial number to identify a warranty.

Working with serial numbers for a branch/plant includes the following tasks:

- Setting up serial numbers for a branch/plant
- Reviewing serial number information

You can inquire on serial numbers, serial numbers of different items that were sold to a customer, serial numbers within a particular type of order, or all serial numbers that are assigned to an item that have yet to be ordered or shipped.

► To set up serial numbers for a branch/plant

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Serial Number Inquiry.

1. On Work with Serial Numbers, to add new serial numbers, click Add.

Serial Number Inquiry - [Serial Number Revisions]

Item Number: 7101 Phone Switch

Branch/Plant: M30

Serial Number 1	Serial Number 2	Customer Number	Ship To Number	Order Number	Or Ty
20642		4242	4242	2459	SO
20643					
20644					
20645					
20646					
20647					
20648					
20649		4243	4243	2571	SO

Row:1

2. On Serial Number Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Serial Number 1
 - Serial Number 2
3. Click OK.

To review serial number information

From the Sales Order Inquiries menu (G42112), choose Serial Number Inquiry.

1. On Work with Serial Numbers, complete any combination of the following fields and click Find:
 - Item Number
 - Serial Number
 - Order Number
 - Document Type
 - Customer Number

The system displays serial numbers that are not assigned to a item, with a quantity of one. The system has not created lots and locations for these items in the Item Location table (F41021).

2. From the Form menu, choose Sales History to access Customer Service Inquiry and review the order detail information.

Working with Shipments

After warehouse personnel pick the items for an order, you must verify that the item and shipping information is correct before shipping the order. You use the Confirm Shipments program to verify that the inventory has left the warehouse. You can verify the location from which the item was picked, the quantity, all item and shipping information, additional charges, and serial numbers before shipping the order.

Working with shipments includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Additional order processing during Ship Confirm
- ☐ Confirming shipments
- ☐ Confirming shipments in batches
- ☐ Printing shipping documents
- ☐ Shipping partial order quantities

Additional Order Processing during Ship Confirm

Additional order processing during confirmation includes the following tasks:

- Updating on-hand inventory
- Understanding load and delivery confirmation
- Entering serial number information during confirmation
- Confirming test results for shipped items

Updating On-Hand Inventory

You can relieve the on-hand quantity for an item during shipment confirmation or sales update. The method you choose affects when history files are written to the Item Ledger.

- If you subtract the on-hand quantity from inventory during shipment confirmation, the system creates a record in the Item Ledger with the sales order as the document number and the order type as the document type. During sales update, the system overwrites the record with the invoice number and type, G/L date, and batch number.

- If you subtract the on-hand quantity from inventory during sales update, the system writes the invoice number, type, and G/L date to the Item Ledger. No record is written during shipment confirmation.

To relieve the on-hand quantity for an item during shipment confirmation, you must add order types to the UDC table (40/IU). During sales update, the system overwrites the Item Ledger record with the invoice number and type, G/L date, and batch number.

See Also

- *Processing Serial Number Information* for more information about serial number requirements during shipment confirmation
- See *Locating On-Hand Quantity Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for more information about the Item Ledger.

Understanding Load and Delivery Confirmation

Accurate and timely load and delivery confirmation is key to successful transportation. When you confirm a load, the system verifies the products that make up the load. When you confirm a delivery, the system verifies that your load reached its final destination. JDEdwards' Transportation Management system enables the rapid load confirmation of bulk and packaged products.

Loads are made of one or more shipments. You confirm loads to record the actual quantities of products shipped. When you confirm a load, the system retrieves the actual ship date and time for the load date and time. You can update the actual delivery date and time, if needed.

The delivery of a product is the moment when ownership is transferred to your customer. You perform delivery confirmation to verify the quantities of product delivered, according to the specifications of the load. Confirmation can be completed for all types of deliveries, such as for bulk products, packaged products, and unscheduled deliveries. You can confirm the delivery of one trip or one order at a time, or you can confirm multiple deliveries at the same time.

The system improves inventory accuracy by:

- Making the necessary inventory adjustments to account for temperature and density readings taken during the loading process
- Allowing you to record valid test results of a bulk product before you can successfully confirm a load
- Changing the status of an order to be eligible for batch document product or automatically triggering delivery document printing
- Creating historical records of each transaction in the item ledger and preventing load confirmation if predefined requirements, such as quality standards, are not met

- Allowing you to record the disposition of remaining bulk quantities during delivery confirmation
- Making the necessary journal entries to the system

You can also use the Transportation Management system to support the aviation and marine industries. When you confirm load and delivery of products for the aviation and marine industries, the programs allow you to enter additional order information, such as flight or vessel numbers, fueling times, and arrival and departure times.

If you have activated the ECS Control in Sales Order Management system constants, you can track the transport of bulk or packaged goods from the warehouse or depot to the customer site. You can confirm bulk order shipments. You must complete the additional fields that are required before you confirm the shipment. The system stores the shipment confirmation information in the Sales Order Detail Tag table (F49211).

See Also

- *Confirming Deliveries* in the *Transportation Management Guide* for more information about load and delivery confirmations

Entering Serial Number Information during Confirmation

If any type of serial number requirement exists for an item in Item Branch/Plant Information, you must enter serial number information at shipment confirmation. When you confirm order detail lines during shipment confirmation, you must enter the serial number based on the lot process type that exists for the item in Item Branch/Plant Information.

If you enter the lot process type that indicates that the system assigns serial numbers based on a next number format or a date format, you must confirm a quantity of one as the quantity shipped. Based on a next number format or system date format, the system creates new locations in the Item Location table (F41021), if necessary. If you are shipping a quantity greater than one, the system automatically displays the Select Multiple Locations form, creates serial numbers based on the format, and does not confirm a line with a quantity greater than one.

If you enter the lot process type that indicates that you must manually assign serial numbers, you must enter the option to Select Locations. The system prompts you to enter a quantity of one as quantity shipped, as well as the location serial numbers, with which the system can create as lots in the Item Location table (F41021), if necessary. If you are shipping a quantity greater than one, the system automatically displays the Select Multiple Locations form and does not confirm a line with a quantity greater than one.

If the serial number for the item that is being shipped does not match the serial number in the system, you can change the information to accurately reflect your

shipment. You can use the Serial Number Inquiry form to set up a new serial number for the item.

See Also

- *Processing Serial Numbers* for more information about the Serial Number Inquiry program (P4220)

Confirming Test Results for Shipped Items

If you are working with J.D. Edwards Quality Management system and have activated Quality Control in the branch/plant constants for the shipping branch/plant, you can confirm the results of test samples at shipment confirmation. After you enter test results, the system processes them to determine if the results you collected pass the tests that you defined. The system evaluates the results against minimum and maximum values and adjusts the status of the lot for each order detail line to pass or fail. If the lot passes, the system confirms the order detail line for shipping. If the lot fails, you can access Test Results Revisions from the Row menu on the Ship Confirm Revisions form to search and select a lot that meets the quality criteria for the customer and item on the sales order.

Additionally, you can set processing options in the Ship Confirm program (P4205) to automatically print the test results on a Certificate of Analysis. A certificate of analysis (COA) is a document that lists the tests and test results for item lots sold to a customer. The system prints COA documents only for those customers whose billing instructions indicate that the customer should receive this document. Additionally, the system prints test results information on a COA based on the parameters that are defined in the Test Definitions.

You can access Test Results Revisions from Row menu on the Ship Confirm program (P4205).

See Also

- *Setting Up Tests* in the *Quality Management Guide* for more information about setting up tests and defining characteristics, such as the information that prints on a COA
- *Working with Test Results* in the *Quality Management Guide* for more information about selecting tests and entering results

Confirming Shipments

You can verify sales order information, record additional information, such as packing or handling fees, and determine when the inventory leaves the warehouse.

Although you cannot add inventory items to a sales order during shipment confirmation, you can add amounts for non-stock items, such as handling charges and freight, depending on how a processing option is set.

When you confirm an order, the system advances the status code to the next status. For example, an order with a status code of 540 advances to 560 after you confirm shipment.

If the shipment quantity is less than the order quantity, you can adjust the shipment quantity on the sales order. If the system cannot fill a quantity of items, it processes the order depending on how you set the following:

- You must set the update processing options in Confirm Shipments program to backorder, cancel, or ship available items.
- You can define in the customer billing instructions if the customer allows backorders.

You can confirm the shipment of kits in the following ways:

- Manually – Set a processing option to display all kit components. You must manually confirm each component and balance the remaining quantity for each component in the kit.
- Automatically – Set a processing option to prevent the display of kit components. The system confirms the components and balances the remaining quantities for each component in the kit.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that a status code is set up for shipment confirmation.



To confirm shipments

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Confirm Shipments.

1. On Work with Shipment Confirmation, to locate the order, complete the any of following fields and click Find:
 - Order Number
 - Or Ty
 - Branch/Plant

- Pick Slip Number
- Customer PO
- Container I.D.

Confirm Shipments - [Work with Shipment Confirmation]

Order Number: [] SO [] Branch/Plant: []

Pick Slip Number: []

Ship Number: []

Customer PO: []

Order Number	Or Ty	Order Co	Line Number	Sold To Number	Sold To Name	Ship To Number	Pick Number	Customer
2437	SO	00200	1.012	4242	Capital System	4242		
2441	SO	00200	1.012	4242	Capital System	4242		
2445	SO	00001	2.000	4242	Capital System	4242		
23193	SO	00001	1.000	4242	Capital System	4242		
23193	SO	00001	2.000	4242	Capital System	4242		
23193	SO	00001	3.000	4242	Capital System	4242		

Find records

2. Choose the order and click Select.

Confirm Shipments - [Shipment Confirmation]

Order Number: [2445] SO [00001] Branch/Plant: []

Pick Slip Number: []

Ship Number: []

Customer PO: []

Sel = 1	Quantity Shipped	Item Number	Location	Lot/Serial	Branch/Plant	Quantity Backordered	C
1		2.001			30		

3. On Shipment Confirmation, revise the information as necessary:

- Quantity Shipped
- Location
- Lot/Serial
- Quantity Backordered

- Quantity Canceled
 - Carrier Number
 - Actual Ship Date
4. Do either of the following:
 - To confirm all order detail lines that the system displays according to your search criteria, choose Confirm Shown Rows from the Form menu.
 - To confirm an order detail line, choose the row and then choose Confirm Line from the Row menu.
 5. On Shipment Confirmation, to select order detail lines for confirmation, complete the following field:
 - Sel = 1

If you have activated the processing option to automatically select order detail lines, the system automatically selects all detail lines for confirmation.

6. To edit the line default information, choose Line Defaults from the Form menu, complete the shipment information, and then click OK.
7. To select alternative locations or assign serial numbers, highlight the row, choose Select Locations from the Row menu and complete the location and lot information and click OK.
8. Click OK to confirm the selected order detail lines.

Based on the processing option selection, the system might display Additional Line Items.

Quantity Shipped	UoM	Unit Price	Extended Price	Description	Ln Ty	Unit Cost	Ext C
1	EA	0.0000	15.95		F	0.0000	
		0.0000				0.0000	

9. On Additional Line Items, you can enter you can enter additional non-inventory lines and click OK.

Depending on your processing option selection, the system might display the Tare/Pack Detail form. See *Confirming Tare and Pack Information*.

Field	Explanation
Quantity Shipped	<p>The number of units committed for shipment in Sales Order Entry, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p> <p>In the Manufacturing system and Work Order Time Entry, this field can indicate completed or scrapped quantities. The quantity type is determined by the type code entered.</p>
Lot/Serial	<p>A number that identifies a lot or a serial number. A lot is a group of items with similar characteristics.</p>
Quantity Backordered	<p>The number of units backordered in Sales Order Management or in Work Order Processing, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p>
Quantity Canceled	<p>The number of units canceled in Sales Order or Work Order Processing, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p> <p>In manufacturing, this can also be the number of units scrapped to date.</p>

Processing Options: Shipment Confirmation (P4205)

Selection Tab

These processing options indicate the criteria that the system uses to select order details lines for confirmation.

1. Next Status From (Required)

Use this processing option to indicate the current point in the process of the line. You must use a status that has been set up in user defined codes table (40/AT) of the order activity rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of Status From and Status Thru must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rule table.

2. Next Status Thru (Required)

Use this status to indicate the next step or an alternate step in the order process. You must enter a user defined code table (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of the Status From and the Status Thru must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules.

3. Sales Order Type (Required)

Use this processing option to specify the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them).

You must enter a value that has been set up in user defined code table (00/DT).

To relieve the on-hand quantity for an item during shipment confirmation, you must also add order types to the user defined code table (40/IU). If you do not enter the order types to the user defined code table, the system automatically relieves on-hand quantity for an item at sales update.

If you do add order types to the user defined code table (40/IU), the system automatically subtracts the on-hand quantity from inventory during shipment confirmation. The system creates a record in the Item Ledger with the sales order as the document number and the order type as the document type. During sales update, the system adds the invoice number, invoice type, G/L date, and batch number to the existing record.

If you do not add order types to the user defined code table (40/IU), the system subtracts the on-hand quantity from inventory during sales update, the system writes the invoice number, type, and G/L date to the Item Ledger. No record is written during shipment confirmation.

Defaults Tab

These processing options determine default values, such as the document type, that the Ship Confirm program (P4205) uses when other values are not entered for the transaction.

1. Line Type for New Sales Detail Lines

Use this processing option to specify a code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. Line types affect the systems with which the transaction interfaces (General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management). It also specifies the conditions for including a line on reports and in calculations. Valid values are defined in the Line Type Constants Revisions form (P40205) and include:

S	Stock item
D	Direct ship item
J	Job cost
N	Non-stock item
F	Freight
T	Text information
M	Miscellaneous charges and credits
W	Work order

Although you cannot add inventory items to a sales order during shipment confirmation, you can add amounts for non-stock items, such as handling charges and freight.

If you enter a non-inventory line type for new sales detail lines and set the processing option, Allow Additional Line Entry, the system will display the Additional Line Entry window after you confirm sales order detail lines.

2. Enter A Next Status Override Code For:

Confirmed Sales Detail Lines

Use this status to indicate an alternate step in the order process. You must enter a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of status codes specified in the processing options for the Status From and the Override Code for Sales Detail Lines must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules.

Additional Non-inventory Line Items Entered

Use this status to indicate an alternate step in the order process. You must enter a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of status codes specified in the processing options for the Status From and the Override Code for Sales Detail Lines must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules.

You can only use this processing option if you have activated the processing option, Allow Additional Line Entry.

Remaining Backordered Quantities

Use this processing option to indicate an alternate step in the order process for quantities that are unavailable at the time of Shipment Confirmation. On a confirmed order, the original order detail line indicates the quantity that was confirmed for shipment. If the available quantity is less than the ordered quantity, the system adds an order detail line to indicate the quantity that remains unshipped. The current status code for the new detail line is 904 (Backordered at Shipment Confirmation). The next status code can default from the order process or you can indicate an alternate status.

You must enter a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. The combination of status codes specified in the processing options for the Status From and the Override Code for Backordered/Canceled Quantities must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules.

You can only use this processing option if you have activated the processing option, Backorder or Cancel Unshipped Quantity.

Display Tab

These processing options indicate whether the system displays certain types of sales order information or allows you to enter additional lines during confirmation.

1. Allow Additional Line Entry

Use this processing option to indicate whether you can add non-inventory items to a sales order during shipment confirmation. For example, you can add amounts for non-stock items, such as handling charges and freight. Valid values are:

Blank Do not display Additional Line Entry form.

- 1 Display the Additional Line Entry form after sales order detail lines are confirmed.

This processing option works with the processing option for the default line type for new sales detail lines. If you enter a non-inventory line type for new sales detail lines, the system displays the line type in the form.

2. Display Kit Component Lines (FUTURE)

Use this processing option to choose whether to display component lines for kits. When you confirm the shipment of a kit, you can manually confirm the individual components of the kit or have the system confirm the components when you confirm the parent item. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not display kit component lines, but automatically confirms each component and balances the remaining quantity for each item in the kit. If quantity is not available for a component, the system backorders or cancels the entire kit.
- 1 The system displays all kit component lines and you must manually confirm each component. If a quantity is not available for an optional component, the system backorders or cancels the component, but not the parent item.

3. Display Text Lines (FUTURE)

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system displays text lines when you confirm the shipment of an order. Order detail lines with a text line type, typically T, contain memo information.

When you confirm the shipment of an order, it might be necessary to view text line information. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not display text lines.
- 1 The system displays text lines.

4. Item Location Hold Error

Use this processing option to indicate whether you receive an error when an item location is on hold. You can set up lot status codes and assign status codes to locations in the Item Master, Item Branch Plant, Lot Master Revisions. An approved lot or location does not have a status code. If you do not assign a status code to a location or lot, it is an approved lot or location. All other codes indicate a hold. The system might process items out of locations that appear on hold. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not indicate an error when the item location is on hold.
- 1 The system does not confirm the shipment of items from this location until the lot status is approved.

5. Pre-select Detail Lines for Confirmation

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system enters the selection value in the revisions form. You might choose the option to pre-select detail lines if you display kit component lines, or sub-assemblies. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not automatically select the detail lines for confirmation. You must enter the selection value to confirm a detail line.

- 1 The system enters the selection value, a 1, for all order detail lines in the Revisions form. You can then de-select any lines that you do not to confirm for shipment.

Edits Tab

These processing options define whether the system checks availability before confirming the order detail line and whether the quantity can be changed.

1. Check Availability

Use this processing option to specify whether the system notifies you of quantity availability before confirming the order detail line. You might perform availability checking during shipment confirmation if you do not hard commit inventory until shipment confirmation. Valid values are:

Blank The system performs availability checking, but does not issue a warning that the ordered quantity exceeds the available quantity.

- 1 The system performs availability checking and issues a warning that the ordered quantity exceeds the available quantity.

If you set the Ship Confirm (P4205), Process tab, Auto Backorder or Cancel Unshipped Quantity processing option to backorder or cancel unshipped quantities, the system verifies backorder information in Item Master, Item Branch/Plant, Branch/Plant Constants and Customer Billing Instructions, and automatically backorders or cancel any quantity that is unavailable. If you leave that processing option blank, the quantity remains shippable.

2. Ship from Negative On-hand Quantity

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system allows you to ship from a location when the location has a negative on-hand quantity or the order quantity drives the quantity below zero. Valid values are:

Blank The system allows you to confirm the order detail line and ship from location which has negative on hand quantity.

- 1 The system issues an error message to indicate that the location from which you are shipping does not have available quantity and does not allow you to confirm the order detail line from this location. You must choose another location from which to ship.

3. Prevent Over-shipping

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system allows you to increase the quantity of an order detail line during shipment confirmation. Valid values are:

Blank The system allows you to increase the quantity of an order detail line during shipment confirmation.

- 1 The system does not allow you to increase the quantity of an order detail line during shipment confirmation.

Process Tab

These processing options control whether the Ship Confirm allows you to:

- Override order information, such as the line type and ship to address.
- Relieve on-hand quantity

1. Override Line Type

Use this processing option to specify a code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. Line types affect the systems with which the transaction interfaces (General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management). It also specifies the conditions for including a line on reports and in calculations. You must enter a value that is defined in the Line Type Constants Revisions form (P40205). Valid values are:

Blank Order line type information can be changed for this order only. If you enter another line type, it must be a non-inventory line type.

- 1 The line type cannot be changed. The line type is visible on the form, but you will not be able to override the information.

2. Override Ship To Address

Use this processing option to indicate whether the default address information for the Ship To address can be changed. When you set up the Customer Master Information and Customer Billing Instructions, you define the Sold To address as the address to which you send the invoice and the Ship To address as the address to which you send the shipment. Valid values are:

Blank The Ship To address can not be changed.

- 1 The Ship To address can be changed for this order only.

3. Backorder or Cancel Unshipped Quantity

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system backorders or cancels orders for which quantity is not available.

You can allow backorders by item or by customer, and specify whether the backorders are allowed at a specific branch/plant. To backorder an item, you must set the option, Backorders Allowed, in Item Master, Item Branch/Plant, Branch/Plant Constants and Customer Billing Instructions. If you allow backorders, the system holds the order detail line until quantity is available. If you do not allow backorders, the system cancels the order detail line.

Blank The system does not backorder or cancel quantity that is not shipped. All remaining quantity will be shippable when it becomes available.

- 1 The system backorders or cancels quantity that is not shipped based on backorder information in Customer Billing Instructions, Item Master Information, Item Branch/Plant, and Branch/Plant Constants.

4. Relieve On Hand Inventory Override

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system allows you to relieve inventory when you confirm shipment. Valid values are:

Blank The system relieves the on-hand quantity for the item when you confirm the shipment. You must add order types to the user defined code table (40/IU).

- 1 The system does not relieve the on-hand quantity for the item when you confirm the shipment. If you do not relieve on-hand quantities, the system does not perform additional processing, such as basic serial number processing, interoperability, and agreement information.

5. Ship and Debit Processing

Use this processing option to specify whether the system will use subsystem or batch processing (R45100) to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements when you run the Confirm Shipments program. Valid values are:

Blank Do not use subsystem or batch processing

- 1 Use subsystem processing
- 2 Use batch processing

Freight Tab

These processing options indicate whether the system retrieves freight information and whether you can override the freight and carrier information.

1. Freight Program (FUTURE)

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system retrieves freight information. You can standardize your freight and carrier information so that freight rate calculations are accurately calculated for the appropriate route, stop and zone. You can specify a preferred carrier for an item (Item Master and Item Branch/Plant), or a customer Customer Billing Instructions). Valid values are:

Blank The system does not retrieve freight information and you can enter values that affect the current order only.

- 1 The system retrieves freight information and processes orders based on the default information that is set up in the Customer Billing Instructions or the Item Master Information.

2. Override Freight (FUTURE)

Use this processing option to choose whether the system processes orders based on the default information. To avoid overriding freight information for an order, you can disable this information. Valid values are:

Blank The system processes orders based on the default information set up in the Customer Billing Instructions or the Item Master Information.

1 Default values can be changed for this order only.

Print Tab

This processing option indicates whether the system prints invoices through the subsystem.

1. Automatic Invoice Print

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system prints invoices through the subsystem. If you use subsystem processing for printing invoices, you must specify the version of the Print Invoice program (P42565) to activate subsystem processing. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not print invoices automatically.

1 The system prints invoices automatically.

Versions Tab

These processing options determine the version that the system uses when you confirm an order detail line. If you leave a processing option blank, the system uses the ZJDE0001 version.

1. Sales Order Entry (P4210)

Use this processing option to indicate the version of Sales Order Entry (P4210) the system uses to create additional order detail lines during shipment confirmation. If you use this version of sales order entry in other programs, the system overrides the order line type that is set up in the Shipment Confirmation processing options with the order line type from the processing options for this version of Sales Order Entry.

2. Print Invoices (R42565)

Use this processing option to indicate the version of Print Invoices (R42565) the system uses to automatically print invoices through the subsystem. You must activate the processing option, Print Invoices Automatically, to activate subsystem processing.

If you leave this option blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

3. Ship and Debit (R45100)

Use this processing option to specify the version of subsystem processing (R45100) that the system uses to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements when you run the Confirm Shipments program.

Warehouse Tab

These processing options define additional processing for tare and pack confirmation. If you follow UCC 128 requirements, you can confirm tare and pack information after you confirm an order detail line.

1. Pack Confirmation

Use this processing option to indicate whether you are confirming packs for shipment. Valid values are:

Blank Do not use pack confirmation.

1 Use pack confirmation.

The system verifies that the appropriate serial shipping container code (SSCC) and shipping container code (SCC) are entered for each record and they correspond with the hierarchical configuration that is specified in Shipment Entry. For example, if you enter an SOTPI (Shipment, Order, Tare, Pack, Item) configuration in Shipment Entry but you have not entered a pack SSCC or an SCC, the system displays an error message.

The system verifies that the SCC and the unit of measure for each item correspond to the information in the Item Master and Item Cross-Reference Revisions. The sum of the Tare/Pack quantities must equal the shipped quantity on the sales order line. The system converts the SCC unit of measure to the UPC quantity if an SCC has been entered. For example, if you confirm the shipment of 24 cases of soda, the system verifies that you are confirming shipment of 144 cans of soda.

If you follow UCC 128 requirements, you must specify a version of Pack confirmation.

2. Pack Confirmation Version (P4216)

Use this processing option to indicate the version of Pack confirmation the system uses when you are confirming packs for shipment. This processing option is in effect only if you activate the processing option to use pack confirmation. If left blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

Quality Tab

If you use Sales Order Management with the Quality Management system, these processing options define the versions to produce test results and a Certificate of Analysis.

1. Test Results Revisions Version (P3711)

Use this processing option to indicate the version of Test Results Revisions (P3711) the system uses to verify quality specifications when you confirm the shipment of an item. The system uses this version to verify item characteristics to allowed minimum and maximum values, lot status, and acceptable quantities or percentages. If a lot passes quality inspection and meets the specifications, it is available for shipment to the customer.

2. Certificate of Analysis

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system prints a Certificate of Analysis (COA). A COA is a list of all of the tests performed and the results for lots sold to a customer. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not automatically print a Certificate of Analysis.

1 The system automatically prints a Certificate of Analysis.

To generate a COA, you must specify a version in the processing option, Certificate of Analysis Extract Version, to obtain the information.

3. Certificate of Analysis Extract Version (R37900)

Use this processing option to indicate the version of the Certificate of Analysis Extract program (P37900) the system uses to generate a COA. This processing option is in effect only if you have activated the processing option to Print a Certificate of Analysis.

If you leave this option blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

Agreements Tab

If you use Sales Order Management with the Agreement Management system, these processing options define the method that the system uses to select agreements.

1. Agreements Management

If you use Agreement Management in conjunction with the Sales Order Management system, use this processing option to enter a specific delivery destination for an item that is part of an agreement.

OR

If you use the Agreement Management system in conjunction with the Sales Order Management system, use this processing option to specify the delivery destination for an item that is part of an agreement. Valid values are:

- 1 The destination can be any location defined in the agreement.
- 2 The system identifies the default branch/plant as the destination.

If you leave this option blank, you must enter a specific destination in the processing option, Specify Borrow Agreement Destination.

2. Agreement Search Method

Use this processing option to identify the method by which the system selects an agreement. Valid values are:

Blank The system assigns an agreement based on the earliest expiration date.

- 1 The system automatically assigns an agreement if only one is found.
- 2 The system prompts you to assign an agreement.
- 3 The system assigns an agreement based on the earliest expiration date.

Interop Tab

These processing options control whether you perform interoperability processing.

1. Interoperability Transaction Type

Use this processing option to activate interoperability processing. Valid values are:

Blank Bypass outbound interoperability.

- 1 Process outbound interoperability.

2. Run the Outbound Subsystem

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system processes outbound interoperability transactions through the subsystem. Valid values are:

Blank Bypass outbound subsystem processing.

- 1 Perform subsystem processing.

Bulk Tab

These processing options define the method that the system uses to process temperature gain/loss records.

1. Bulk Transaction Volumes

Use this processing option to write temperature gain/loss records for customers billed at ambient temperature when the inventory has been relieved at standard temperature. The gain or loss is calculated in either of the following ways, cost or revenue. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not process temperature gain/loss records.

- 1 For cost, the system computes the difference between the extension of ambient volume multiplied by cost and standard volume multiplied by cost. The calculation uses the primary unit of measure.
- 2 For revenue, the system computes the difference between the extension of ambient volume multiplied by price and standard volume multiplied by price. The calculation uses the pricing unit of measure.

Interbranch Tab

These processing options identify the order types for interbranch orders.

1. InterBranch Order Types

Use this processing option to identify the version of Create Intercompany Sales Orders (R4210IC) system uses to verify the order types for intercompany orders. Use an intercompany order to fill a sales order from a branch/plant other than the selling branch/plant. This is helpful if your company sells from one location but fills and ships orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse.

If you leave this option blank, the system uses ZJDE0001.

2. InterCompany Orders

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system creates intercompany orders when you create new order detail lines. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not create intercompany orders.

- 1 The system creates orders through the Create Intercompany Orders (R4210IC) in batch mode. In batch mode, the system processes the job immediately and you will not be able to you are not able work interactively until the system has processed the order.
- 2 The system create orders through the Create Intercompany Orders (R4210IC) in subsystem mode. In subsystem mode, the system processes the job from a queue. You can continue to work interactively when you process orders in subsystem mode.

Prepayment Tab

These processing options control whether you can record payment information for orders.

Prepayment of an order takes place when a seller receives a form of payment from the customer at the time of order entry. There are many types of prepayments that a customer can use, such as cash, check, and credit card. When you make any type of prepayment, the system records transaction information for each order detail line, and indicates the payment on the invoice.

If an order detail line is overshipped, or an additional order detail line is added to the order, you must receive a new authorization.

1. Prepayment Processing

Enter 1 for Prepayment Transaction to be updated. If left blank, Prepayment Transactions will not be updated.

2. Process Authorization

Enter a value to indicate how the system processes authorizations.

Valid values are:

- 1 The system processes authorizations interactively.
- 2 The system processes authorizations in batch or subsystem mode, depending on the version.

Blank The system does not process authorizations.

3. Process Settlement

Enter a value to indicate how the system processes settlements.

Valid values are:

- 1 The system processes the settlement interactively.
- 2 The system processes the settlement in batch or subsystem mode.

Blank The system does not process the settlement.

4. Authorize Prepayment Transactions

Enter the version of the Authorize Prepayment Transaction UBE to Run. If left blank, authorization will not be run.

5. Settle Prepayment Transaction

Enter the version of the Settle Prepayment Transaction. If you leave this option blank, the system does not run this application.

6. Authorize Hold for Prepayment

Enter the hold code to display on the order if the authorization process fails.

7. Settlement Hold for Prepayment Processing

Enter the hold code to display on the order if the settlement process fails.

Confirming Shipments in Batches

From the Additional Order Processes menu (G4212), choose Ship Confirm Batch Application.

The Ship Confirm Batch Application (R42500) allows you to confirm multiple shipments at one time. This process updates the Customer Order Change Header table (F47131) and the Customer Order Change Detail table (F47132). The Ship Confirm Batch Application calls the Inbound Transaction Processor (R47500), which also uses the Customer Order Change tables.

When you confirm shipments for orders in batch mode, the system retrieves all orders at the status that you specify in the Batch Ship Confirm (R42500) processing options.

The system will not process orders with the following criteria:

- Orders currently on hold
- Orders being processed by the Warehouse Management system
- Orders previously processed for ship confirmation
- Orders with a future committed quantity greater than zero

You can run the batch shipment confirmation in proof or final mode. When you run the batch shipment confirmation in proof mode, the system does not advance the status of the orders or update the database. The system sends any electronic error messages to the Work Center. You can correct errors in the Sales Order Detail Revisions form and resubmit the order for confirmation.

Whenever you run the Ship Confirm Batch Application (R42500), the system automatically runs the Inbound Transaction Processor (R47500) in order to streamline batch processing. When you set up the processing options for the Ship Confirm Batch Application (R42500), you must specify a version of the Ship Confirm (P4205) program.

Consult the following table to troubleshoot unsuccessful batch transactions processed by the Batch Ship Confirm application:

Troubleshooting from the Batch Ship Confirm Application

When you have set the Inbound Transaction Processor (R47500) processing options to:	Consider the following recovery action:
Proof Mode: 1 Purge Records: 1	<p>Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Rerun the Ship Confirm Batch application in proof or final mode, using the same data selection. You can alter data selection in proof mode if you want to reprocess the detail lines of failed orders.</p>
Proof Mode: 1 Purge Records: Blank	<p>Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Rerun the Ship Confirm Batch application in final mode.</p> <p>Set the data selection to process the order detail lines that failed.</p>
Proof Mode: Blank Purge Records: 1	<p>Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Run the Inbound Transaction Processor in proof or final mode.</p> <p>Because the processing option was set to purge processed records, you cannot rerun the Ship Confirm Batch Application.</p> <p>Use the original batch EDI number from the Customer Order Header Change table (F47131) for data selection</p>
Proof Mode: Blank Purge Records: Blank	<p>Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Run the Inbound Transaction Processor in final mode.</p> <p>Because the processing option was set to purge processed records, you cannot rerun the Ship Confirm Batch Application.</p> <p>Use the original EDI batch number from the Customer Order Header Change table (F47131), as well as the order and line numbers of the failed detail lines for data selection.</p>

Consult the following table to troubleshoot unsuccessful batch transactions processed by the Inbound Transaction Processor:

Troubleshooting from the Inbound Transaction Processor

When you have set the Inbound Transaction Processor (R47500) processing options to:	Consider the following recovery action:
Proof Mode: 1 Purge Records: 1	Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Run the Inbound Transaction Processor in proof or final mode using the same data selection. You can alter data selection in proof mode if you want to reprocess the detail lines of failed orders.
Proof Mode: 1 Purge Records: Blank	Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Rerun the Inbound Transaction Processor in proof or final mode, using the same data selection. You can alter data selection in proof mode if you want to reprocess the detail lines of failed orders.
Proof Mode: Blank Purge Records: 1	Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Rerun the Inbound Transaction Processor in proof or final mode, using the same data selection. You can alter data selection in proof mode if you want to reprocess the detail lines of failed orders.
Proof Mode: Blank Purge Records: Blank	Make the necessary corrections to the detail lines that failed during processing. Rerun the Inbound Transaction Processor in final mode, using the same data selection. You can alter data selection in proof mode if you want to reprocess the detail lines of failed orders.

NOTE: J.D. Edwards recommends that if you set up the Ship Confirm Batch Application to call the Inbound Transaction Processor, you should ensure that the Inbound Transaction Processor has no data selection criteria selected. In addition, status codes indicated in the Ship Confirm Batch Application override status codes set in the Inbound Transaction Processor processing options.

Before You Begin

Before you can operate this batch process, complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Create a version of Ship Confirm Batch Application (R42500) and set the processing options according to your business needs.

For example, you might want to create multiple versions for proof and final mode. In this way, you can review the orders that will be confirmed before actually confirming orders and updating the database.

- ☐ Create a version of Ship Confirm (P4205) and set the processing options according to your business needs.

See *Confirming Shipments* for more information about processing options for the Ship Confirm program (P4205).

- ☐ Create a version of Inbound Transaction Processor (R47500) and set the processing options according to your business needs.

- ☐ Ensure that the correct version of the Inbound Transaction Processor (R47500) is indicated in the processing options for the Ship Confirm Batch application (R42500).

- ☐ Ensure that the correct version of Ship Confirm (P4205) is indicated in the processing options for the Inbound Transaction Processor (R47500).

Printing Shipping Documents

You can print shipping documents, such as bills of lading and delivery reports, before you ship the order. Shipping documents accompany the order to its destination. Delivery personnel can use these documents to compare what they are supposed to deliver with what they are transporting.

Printing shipping documents includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Printing bills of lading
- ☐ Printing delivery notes

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the order activity rules include a status for printing shipping documents. See *Setting Up Order Activity Rules*.

Printing Bills of Lading

From the Sales Order Reports menu (G42111), choose Print Shipping Documents.

You run a version of the Print Shipping Document program to print bills of lading. A bill of lading lists the following information about the order:

Item	Includes item description, quantity, weight, and volume.
Billing	Includes customer address and price.
Shipping	Includes shipping instructions, total weight, and total volume.
Delivery	Includes signature lines for the driver and the customer.

You can specify the heading that prints at the top of the document, such as “Bill of Lading”, when you run the program. Because a shipping document has signature lines for the delivery person and the customer, you can also use it as a receipt.

Processing Options for Bill of Lading

Default 1

1. Enter a Status Code Value _____

Defaults 2

1. Enter a Override Next Status _____
 2. 1=Prevent Update the Next
 Status Code from Order Activity
 Rules, blank=Next Status will
 update _____
 3. 1=Not to display future
 committed inventory _____

Process

Enter a Value for Volume or Weight of
 UoM in sales orders total fields.

1. Enter a value for Volume of
 UOM _____
 2. Enter a value for Weight of
 UOM _____

Print

1. 1=To display Prices and Costs _____
 2. 1=Not to print Kit Components _____
 3. 2=To print both Item Number and
 Customer Item Number, or leave a
 blank _____
 4. Enter Type of Cross Reference
 to retrieve Customer Item Number _____
 5. Enter '1' to print serial
 numbers. If left blank, no serial
 numbers will be printed. _____

Currency

1. blank=Print Domestic only,
 1=Print Freign only, 2=Print both
 Domestic and Foreign. _____

Printing Delivery Notes

From the Sales Order Reports menu (G42111), choose Print Delivery Notes.

You run a version of the Print Delivery Notes program to print information that delivery personnel can use during delivery. For example, they can compare the items that they are supposed to deliver with the items that they have on the delivery vehicle. This is helpful if your company uses its own vehicle for deliveries instead of an outside company's vehicle.

You can only provide delivery notes to a customer if the customer's billing instructions are set up to allow delivery notes.

To ensure that the customer's invoice is accurate, you can print delivery notes after shipment confirmation but before you generate a customer invoice for an order.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the customer billing instructions for the customer are set up to allow delivery note printing. See *Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions*.
- ☐ Verify that the order activity rules include a status code for printing delivery notes that is between shipment confirmation and printing invoices. See *Setting Up Order Activity Rules*.

Processing Options for Delivery Notes Print

Defaults

1. Enter an override next status.
2. Enter a '1' to prevent the updating of the next status

Display

1. Enter a '1' to print Kit Component lines
2. Enter a '1' to print extended amount
3. Enter the transport reason

Display 1

1. Enter the global print message to print on each delivery note.
2. Enter "1" to print associated text.

Item Number

1. Enter a '1' to print the customers item number
2. Enter the type of cross reference number to retrieve

Process

1. Enter a '1' to write to the Delivery Note History file

Currency

1. Enter a '1' to print the amounts in foreign currency.

Shipping Partial Order Quantities for Kits and Configured Items

Sales orders for kits and configured items can often have large order quantities, including parts and subassemblies. Typically, as items (and their components) are completed for kit and configured sales orders, they remain in inventory until the entire order is complete. However, by shipping partial quantities of items as they are completed, you can effectively manage inventory and reduce handling costs, and you can periodically bill for the quantity completed instead of waiting for the entire order to be completed.

See Also

- *Understanding Partial Shipments for Configured Items* in the *Sales Configurator Guide* for more information



Prepayment Processing

When you enter orders for your customers, you can send out invoices to your customers for received goods. Occasionally, customers may make a form of payment up front, that is immediately after order entry. With prepayment processing, you can generate an invoice as a customer receipt, with the order total noted as prepaid on the invoice.

Prepayment of an order takes place when a seller receives a form of payment from the customer at the time of order entry. There are many types of prepayments that a customer can use, such as cash, check, and credit card. When you make any type of prepayment, the system records transaction information for each order detail line, and indicates the payment on the invoice.

Prepayment processing consists of the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up prepayment processing
- ☐ Authorizing credit card transactions
- ☐ Updating prepayment transactions
- ☐ Settling prepayment transactions
- ☐ Working with drafts

There are two types of prepayment transactions:

Two-party prepayment Two-party prepayments are typically cash or check transactions, which occur between you and your customer. When an order is prepaid with cash or a check, the system indicates the prepayment form, transaction and total on the invoice.

Three-party prepayment Three-party prepayments are typically credit card transactions, which occur between you, your customer, and the credit card company.

In the system, the transaction is an electronic transmission of transaction information between your bank, the credit card company, and credit card processor.



The prepayment processing system provides an interface between OneWorld applications, such as Sales Order Entry, and a seller's designated credit card processor. With the prepayment processing system, you can integrate credit card authorizations and final settlements with your business processes, such as order entry and invoicing procedures.

For three-party prepayment transactions, J.D. Edwards does not provide middleware or credit card transaction processors. In order to complete credit card prepayment processes, you must select a credit card processor, a third-party vendor or a middleware solution, with which you can transmit information between OneWorld, the credit card company, and your bank.

Setting Up Prepayment Processing

From the Prepayment Processing menu (G42131), choose Prepayment Processing Information.

Before you can process two or three-party transactions, you must identify the points in the process that the system authorizes orders with the credit card company, transaction types, and the status at which you perform the settlements.

Complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up status flow for prepayments
- ☐ Setting up prepayment types
- ☐ Setting up prepayment hold codes

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have performed the appropriate setup for your credit card processor. This information includes Merchant ID, Terminal ID, Authorization and Settlement phone numbers and other information that is necessary for successful electronic transmission.

Setting Up Status Flow for Prepayments

Authorization usually occurs after order entry. Settlement usually occurs after shipment confirmation, but before invoicing. The system follows the order activity rules for the order type and line type combination. You can set up override status codes in the processing options for the following programs:

- Sales Order Entry (P4210)
- Confirm Shipments (P4205)
- Print Invoices (P42565)
- Release Held Orders (P43070)
- Sales Update (R42800)

When you inquire on orders in the Prepayment Processing Information form, you can identify the status of transactions, such as transactions that are ready to be authorized, settled, or declined, based on the prepayment status codes in the user defined code table (00/SP). The following statuses have been predefined:

- Blank, which indicates preauthorization
- 01, Sent for Authorization
- 02, Authorized
- 03, Ready to Settle
- 04, Sent for Settlement
- 05, Settled
- 06 Authorization Declined/Error
- 07, Settlement Declined/Error

Setting Up Prepayment Types

Payment instrument codes (00/PY) indicate various methods of payment, such as draft, check, and electronic funds transfer. You assign a payment instrument code to each invoice or voucher. Set up a code for each type of payment instrument that you use. The system also uses this user defined code table in the OneWorld general business systems for vouchers and invoices. To identify transactions for prepayment processing, you must use payment types with assigned handling codes. Blank is the default.

Hard-Coded Codes

- X – Electronic data interchange (EDI) check
- Y – EDI wire
- Z – EDI
- ? – Credit Card payment

Soft-Coded Codes

- C – Check (8.75 inches)
- D – Draft
- N – Note
- T – Electronic funds transfer (EFT)
- W – Check (8.5 inches)

Special Handling Codes

Prepayment processing is driven by values in the special handling code column for the payment instrument type. That is, if you set up a handling code for a payment type, the system processes the transaction through the authorization and settlement cycle. J.D. Edwards has pre-defined payment types with the following special handling codes:

- 11, for cash
- 12, for credit card payment
- 13, for check

See Also

- *Entering Prepayments* in the *Accounts Payable Guide* for more information about prepaid vouchers

Setting Up Prepayment Hold Codes

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Order Hold Information.

You can set up order hold information that the system uses to place orders on hold. The system applies this information if you set the appropriate processing options for the Sales Order Entry program. J.D. Edwards recommends that you define the following hold codes for prepayment transactions:

- Settlement holds, identified by hold code, CS
- Authorization holds, identified by hold code, CA

Authorization Hold Codes

During order entry, you can validate credit information when you accept a credit card as a means of payment. By way of your middleware solution, the system retrieves authorization and updates the prepayment transaction in OneWorld. If the authorization is unsuccessful, then the order is put on authorization hold and the system does not allow further order processing. In order for this hold to be removed, the authorization process must be successfully run in batch mode.

Settlement Hold Codes

During settlement, you can run the Settle Prepayment Transaction application to perform settlement. By way of your middleware solution, the system retrieves settlement information and updates the prepayment transaction in OneWorld. When a settlement is performed, your middleware solution releases funds from a customer's account to the merchant account. If the settlement transactions contain errors, the order is put on settlement hold and the system does not allow further order processing. In order for this hold to be removed, the settlement process must be successfully run in batch mode.

In Order Hold Information (P42090), you set up the hold code in the user defined code table (42/HC) and define the hold information.

In the processing options for the version of Sales Order Entry that is defined for prepayment processing, you must enter the authorization and settlement hold codes to activate order hold processing.

See Also

- *Defining Order Hold Codes* for the specific steps for setting up authorization and settlement hold codes

Authorizing Credit Card Transactions

From the Prepayment Processing menu (G42131), choose Authorize Prepayment Transactions.

During order entry, you capture the customer's credit card transaction information and transmit the order amount through your middleware solution, a credit card processor. The processor then checks the cardholder's accounts for available funds and places a hold equivalent to the order amount on the customer's credit line. The credit card processor then returns an authorization code to you.

The authorization process varies based on your credit card processor. If the authorization is successful, the system returns an authorization code and the system updates the transaction status in the Prepayment Transaction table.

Processing Options for Authorize Prepayment Transactions

Defaults

Enter the Next Status Override Code
for:

1. Authorized Lines _____

Holds

1. Authorization Hold for
Prepayment Processing _____

Updating Prepayment Transactions

When you make a change to an order that affects a prepayment transaction, the system updates the transaction record and activates re-processing, as necessary. For example, if you cancel an order, the system voids the prepayment transaction. If you increase the quantity, the system initiates the authorization process again.

Updating prepayment transactions includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Changing prepayment transactions during order processing
- ☐ Manually updating transaction status
- ☐ Reviewing transaction status

Changing Prepayment Transactions during Order Processing

You can process two-party and three-party transactions through the standard order processing cycle. When you change order information, such as increasing the quantity or cancelling the order, the system updates the order with the prepayment status in the Prepayment Transaction table in addition to updating order information in the standard Sales Order Management tables, such as Sales Order Header (F4201), Sales Order Detail (F4211) and Sales Ledger (F42199), depending on the order activity rules.

You must activate prepayment processing in the processing options for the following Sales Order Management programs:

- Sales Order Entry (P4210)
- Confirm Shipments (P4205)
- Print Invoices (P42565)
- Release Held Orders (P43070)
- Sales Update (R42800)

If you change prepayment transactions during order processing, review the following topics:

- Working with prepayment information during order entry
- Releasing held orders for authorization and settlement
- Updating transaction status during shipment confirmation
- Printing prepayment information on invoices
- Updating prepayment information at Sales Update

Working with Prepayment Information during Order Entry

You can enter or update prepayment during order entry if the prepayment processing options for Sales Order Entry are defined for prepayment processing. After you enter an order, you can access Prepayment Transaction Revisions to enter check number or credit card information. The system retrieves the order amount, plus the calculated taxes as the prepayment amount. When you enter prepayment information, the system writes a record to the Prepayment Transaction table.

If you inquire on an order and change the information, you might need additional authorization. After you accept changes to the order, the system compares the order total against the authorized amount in the Prepayment Transaction table. If the order amount is greater than the authorized amount, the system updates the status of the transaction to get authorization.

If an order detail line is partially backordered or cancelled, then a new authorization is not necessary unless the other transactions are moved to a settled status. Only one prepayment type for the order is currently allowed.

See Also

- *Working with Detail Information* for more information about the Sales Order Entry program and its related processing options

Releasing Held Orders for Authorization and Settlement

If an order is placed on hold because it did not pass authorization or settlement, you can use the Release Holds program (P43070) to return an order to the processing cycle. However, the system does not process this customer's orders until you release them. You must have appropriate security access to release an order.

You must set the Prepayment processing options in the Release Holds program (P43070) to update the prepayment status to Ready to Authorize or Ready to Settle when an held order is released. You can print the Held Sales Order report to review all sales orders that are on hold.

See Also

- *Working with Order Releases* for more information about the Release Holds program (P43070)
- *Setting Up Prepayment Hold Codes*

Updating Transaction Status during Shipment Confirmation

If an order detail line is overshipped, or an additional order detail line is added to the order, you must receive a new authorization.

See Also

- *Working with Shipments* for more information about the Confirm Shipments program (P4205) and its related processing options

Printing Prepayment Information on Invoices

When you print invoices, you can set the processing options to print prepayment information on the document. When you activate prepayment processing in the Print Invoices program, you cannot summarize invoices.

See Also

- *Printing Standard Invoices* for more information about the Print Invoice program (R42565)

Updating Prepayment Information at Sales Update

In Sales Update, you must activate Prepayment processing options, and if the settlement transaction is valid, and no errors are found in Sales Update, then the system generates a draft, requesting funds from the credit card company's bank.

When you set up a version of Sales Update for Prepayment Transactions, you can set the processing options so that the system assigns an invoice number if you have not processed the orders through Print Invoice, however you cannot summarize invoices.

If the processing option for prepayment processing is on and settlement of a prepayment transaction has occurred, the system writes a draft record for receivables due from the credit card company's bank. During Sales Update, call the version of Preauthorized Drafts to generate draft records. Once drafts are written, they can be closed in the following ways:

- Journal Entries Fee (P0911)
- A/R Draft Collection for Prepayments (R03B680)

See Also

- *Updating Sales Information* for more information about the Sales Update program (R42800)

Manually Updating Transaction Status

You can enter or update prepayment during order entry if the prepayment processing options for Sales Order Entry are defined for prepayment processing. After you enter an order, you can access Prepayment Transaction Revisions to enter check number or credit card information. The system retrieves the order amount, plus the calculated taxes, as the prepayment amount. When you enter prepayment information, the system writes a record to the Prepayment Transaction table.

You can review prepayment status for a particular customer or status. You can modify the prepayment status of a transaction using the Prepayment Processing Information program (P004201).

To manually update transaction status

On Prepayment Processing (G42131), choose Prepayment Processing Information.

1. On Work with Prepayment Transactions, complete the following fields and click Find to locate prepayment transactions:
 - Or Ty
 - Order Number
 - Order Suffix
 - Program ID
2. Select the row and choose Revisions from the Row menu.

3. On Prepayment Transaction Revisions, review the following transaction information:
 - Order Number
 - Order Type
 - Order Company
 - Order Suffix
 - Prepayment Origination Flag
 - Sequence Number
 - Line Number
 - Payment Instrument
 - Prepayment Transaction Status
 - Authorize Transaction Amount
 - Cash Payment Amt
 - Check Payment Amt
 - Tax
 - Settle Transaction Amount
4. To manually update the prepayment status, complete the following field:
 - Prepayment Transaction Status

Field	Explanation																				
Order Number	A number that identifies an original document. This can be a voucher, an order number, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on.																				
Order Type	<p>A user defined code (00/DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)</p> <p>The following document types are defined by J.D. Edwards and should not be changed:</p> <table><tr><td>P</td><td>Accounts Payable documents</td></tr><tr><td>R</td><td>Accounts Receivable documents</td></tr><tr><td>T</td><td>Payroll documents</td></tr><tr><td>I</td><td>Inventory documents</td></tr><tr><td>O</td><td>Purchase Order Processing documents</td></tr><tr><td>J</td><td>General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents</td></tr><tr><td>S</td><td>Sales Order Processing documents</td></tr><tr><td>OS</td><td>Subcontract</td></tr><tr><td>OP</td><td>Purchase Order</td></tr><tr><td>R2</td><td>Contract Billing</td></tr></table>	P	Accounts Payable documents	R	Accounts Receivable documents	T	Payroll documents	I	Inventory documents	O	Purchase Order Processing documents	J	General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents	S	Sales Order Processing documents	OS	Subcontract	OP	Purchase Order	R2	Contract Billing
P	Accounts Payable documents																				
R	Accounts Receivable documents																				
T	Payroll documents																				
I	Inventory documents																				
O	Purchase Order Processing documents																				
J	General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents																				
S	Sales Order Processing documents																				
OS	Subcontract																				
OP	Purchase Order																				
R2	Contract Billing																				
Order Company	<p>A number that, along with order number and order type, uniquely identifies an order document (such as a purchase order, a contract, a sales order, and so on).</p> <p>If you use the Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal Year facility, the Automatic Next Numbers program (X0010) uses the order company to retrieve the correct next number for that company. If two or more order documents have the same order number and order type, the order company lets you locate the desired document.</p> <p>If you use the regular Next Numbers facility, the order company is not used to assign a next number. In this case, you probably would not use the order company to locate the document.</p>																				
Order Suffix	<p>In the A/R and A/P systems, a code that corresponds to the pay item. In the Sales Order and Procurement systems, this code identifies multiple transactions for an original order.</p> <p>For purchase orders, the code is always 000.</p> <p>For sales orders with multiple partial receipts against an order, the first receiver used to record receipt has a suffix of 000, the next has a suffix of 001, the next 002, and so on.</p>																				

Field	Explanation
Prepayment Origination Flag	This user defined code (00/PO) specifies the system from which prepayment originated, such as 01 indicates Sales Orde Entry.
Sequence Number	A number that the system uses to sequence information.
Line Number	A number that identifies multiple occurrences, such as line numbers on a purchase order or other document. Generally, the system assigns this number, but in some cases you can override it.
Payment Instrument	The user defined code (00/PY) that specifies how payments are made by the customer. For example: C Check D Draft T Electronic funds transfer
Prepayment Transaction Status	This field indicates the status of the prepayment transaction.
Authorize Transaction Amount	This amount of the prepayment credit card authorization.
Cash Payment Amt	This field indicates the amount that is prepaid with cash.
Check Payment Amt	This field indicates the amount that is prepaid with check.
Tax	This is the amount assessed and payable to tax authorities. It is the total of the VAT, use, and sales taxes (PST).
Settle Transaction Amount	This amount of the prepayment settlement.

Reviewing Transaction Status

On the Prepayment Processing menu (G42131), choose Prepayment Transaction Report.

You can use the Prepayment Transaction Report to determine which transactions are at which statuses. Based on your data selection, the report can list prepayments that are authorized but not settled or transactions that are in error.

Processing Options for Prepayment Transaction Report

Purge

```

1. Purge Prepayment Transactions
   Blank = Prepayment
   transactions will
       not be purged.
   '1' = Settled
   Prepayment
       Transactions
   will be purged.
```


Settling Prepayment Transactions

From the Prepayment Processing menu (G42131), choose Settle Prepayment Transactions.

Final settlement occurs between you and the credit card company by way of your selected middleware software solution. At this time, you transmit all authorized transactions to the credit card processor requesting funds.

The settlement process varies based on your credit card processor. If the settlement is successful, the system returns an settlement code and updates the transaction status to Settled in the Prepayment Transaction table.

The settlement phase should occur after shipment confirmation, but before invoicing. After you confirm shipment for the goods, you can perform a settlement. This way, when you print invoices, you can indicate that the customer has paid the amount.

Processing Options for Settle Prepayment Transactions

Defaults

Enter a Next Status Override Code for:

1. Settled Lines _____

Holds

1. Settlement Hold for Prepayment Processing _____

Working with Drafts

After the settlement process occurs successfully, you can generate drafts for receivables due from the credit card company's bank. Once you write drafts, you can close the draft by entering manual journal entries or by running the A/R Draft Collection program.

Working with drafts includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Understanding preauthorized drafts for prepayments
- ☐ Understanding draft collection for prepayments

Understanding Preauthorized Drafts for Prepayments

During Sale Update, you can generate a draft record after the prepayment settlement occurs if you have set the processing options for prepayment process and the settlement has occurred successfully. Using a version of the Pre-authorized Drafts program (R03B671), the system selects open invoices to be paid as drafts.

Understanding Draft Collection for Prepayments

Your bank collects the funds for the draft from the credit card company's bank on the due date of the draft. On or after the due date, both you and the credit card company recognize the transfer of cash. You update the status of the draft in your records to show that it has been collected.

Some companies prefer to close the draft on the settlement date, while others wait until the payment appears on their bank statement. Depending on your company policy, use the A/R Draft Collection for Prepayments program (R03B680) to perform one of the following:

- Run Status Update with Journal Entries on the draft due dates to create journal entries.
- Run Status Update without Journal Entries on the draft due dates using a pay status code of something other than P (paid). After you verify that payments have been collected, run Status Update with Journal Entries.

Additionally, the credit card company might assess fees for authorizations. To account for all fees, create a separate journal entry in the Journal Entries Fee program (P0911).

You can run this batch process in either proof or final mode.

Proof mode

In proof mode, the system:

- Chooses drafts with a remitted to bank status. That is, it chooses drafts that have been remitted but not yet collected.
- Prints a report that shows the drafts to be updated. It shows all drafts that have a payment status of G (draft deposited not due) with a due date that you specify in a processing option.

Final mode

In final mode, the system works in the same way as proof mode, with the following exceptions:

- It changes the pay status of drafts to P (paid) or to another value that you choose.
- After you collect drafts, you approve and post journal entries to the general ledger. You must run the program using this option in order to close your drafts. The system creates a journal entry to debit a cash account and credit drafts remitted.
- If the draft was created with a contingent liability, the system clears that account.

This process creates records in the Receipts Application Detail table and updates records in the A/R Ledger, Receipts Register.

Data Selection for Draft Collection with Status Update

You must select drafts for credit card processing on the basis of the payment instrument, ?, which indicates credit card transactions.

See Also

- *Entering Journal Entries with VAT* in the *General Accounting Guide*
- *Working with Draft Collection* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide*



Invoices

After you process a sales order detail line through ship or load confirmation and perform the required billable and payable freight calculations, you can invoice the customer for goods received. You can set up cycles to determine invoice schedules that meet your customers needs. For example, one customer might prefer an invoice at the end of the month for all shipments made during that month, and another customer might want a weekly invoice for specific items.

Use the Cycle Billing program to calculate scheduled invoice dates. You can run the Print Invoices (R42565) program to print either an individual invoice or a batch of invoices at the appropriate time.

An invoice provides the following information about an order:

- Item, quantity, and cost
- Shipping date and payment due date
- Additional charges and applicable discounts

Complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up invoice cycles
- ☐ Running cycle billing
- ☐ Printing standard invoices

You can set up customer-specific information to facilitate the processing of invoices. Through a combination of preferences, cycle calculation rules and schedules, you can print invoices that meet your business needs.

You set up invoice cycles to apply different cycle calculation rules and schedules to different customer and item combinations. To set up invoice cycles, you set up invoice cycle calculation rules and create Invoice Cycle preferences.

After you confirm orders for delivery, you process them through the Cycle Billing program. The Cycle Billing program calculates scheduled invoice dates based on the invoice cycle preference, invoice cycle calculation rules, and scheduled invoice date ranges.



Setting Up Invoice Cycles

You set up invoice cycles to control how the Cycle Billing program calculates scheduled invoice dates. When you set up invoice cycles, you apply different cycle calculation rules and schedules to different customer and item combinations. For example, one customer might prefer an invoice at the end of the month for all shipments made during that month, and another customer might want a weekly invoice for specific items.

Complete the following tasks to set up invoice cycles:

- Creating invoice cycle preferences
- Setting up invoice cycle calculation rules

You set up an invoice cycle calculation rule to define the type of calculation that the system uses to compute an invoice date. After you set up invoice cycles, you can assign them to customer and item combinations with the Invoice Cycle preference. You can later revise scheduled invoice dates, if necessary.

Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules

You set up an invoice cycle calculation rule to define the type of calculation that the system uses to compute an invoice date. For example, you can set up daily, bi-weekly, or based-on-date invoicing. You can then enter test dates to review the calculated invoice dates and ensure that you have set up the calculation correctly.

If the calculation rules are bi-weekly, semi-monthly, or at the end of each month, you must also set up scheduled invoice date ranges.

The following invoice cycle calculation rules are hard-coded and require specific settings:

Daily invoicing

- Based On Date Name and Day of Week must be blank
- Days to Increment is optional

Weekly invoicing

- Requires Based On Date Name and Day of Week
- Days to Increment is optional

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Bi-weekly invoicing | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Requires Based On Date Name• Day of Week must be blank• Days to Increment is optional |
| Semi-monthly invoicing | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Requires Based On Date Name• Day of Week must be blank• Days of Increment is optional |
| End-of-month invoicing | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Requires Based On Date Name• Day of Week must be blank• Days to Increment is optional |
| Based-on-date invoicing | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Requires Based On Date Name• Day of Week must be blank• Days to Increment is optional |

Example: Scheduled Invoice Date Calculation

This example illustrates how the Cycle Billing program calculates the scheduled invoice date and how the calculation affects the generation of invoices. The following values are entered for the invoice cycle calculation rule:

- Based On Date is Order/Transaction Date (9/27/05).
- Days to Increment is 0.
- Calculation Rule is End of Month.
- Scheduled Invoice Date Ranges are:
 - Start Dates = 9/1/05 and 10/1/05
 - End Dates = 9/30/05 and 10/31/05
 - Invoice Dates = 9/30/05 and 10/31/05

If the delivery confirmation occurs on 9/29/05, the following events occur:

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| On 9/29/05 | The Cycle Billing program processes the order line and calculates the scheduled invoice date to be 9/30/98. Because the scheduled invoice date is greater than the system date (9/29/05), the Cycle Billing program creates deferred journal entries. |
| On 9/30/05 | Because the scheduled invoice date is less than or equal to the system date, the Periodic Invoice program generates the invoice and the Update Customer Sales program reverses the deferred entries and completes the required G/L entries. |

AAIs for Invoice Cycles

You must set up the following AAIs when processing invoice cycle information:

- 4221 – deferred COGS
- 4231 – deferred revenue
- 4232 – unbilled accounts receivable

See *Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions*.

User Defined Codes for Invoice Cycles

You must set up the following UDC tables for use with invoice cycle processing:

- Invoice cycle – 40/CY
- Day of week – 42/DW
- Based on date name – 42/DN
- Calculation rule – 42/CR (hard-coded)

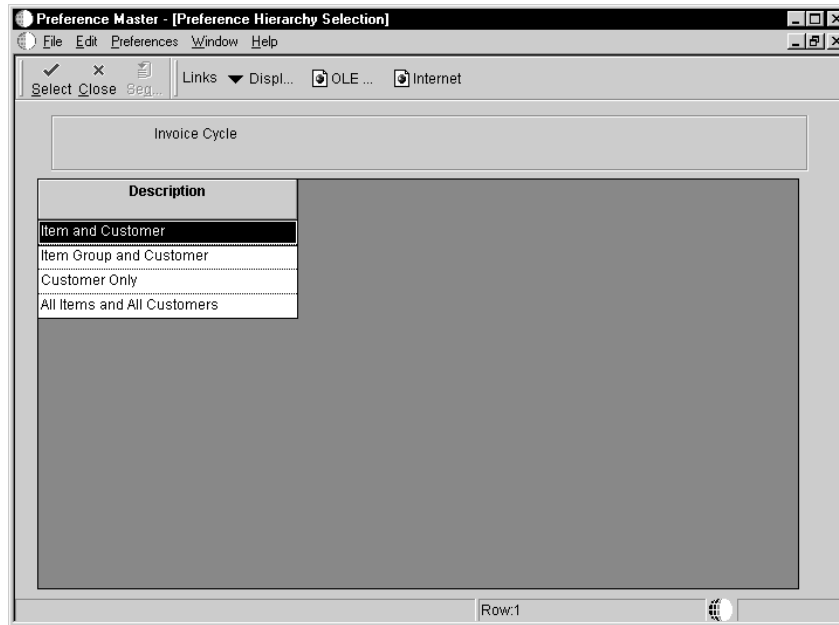


To create invoice cycle preferences

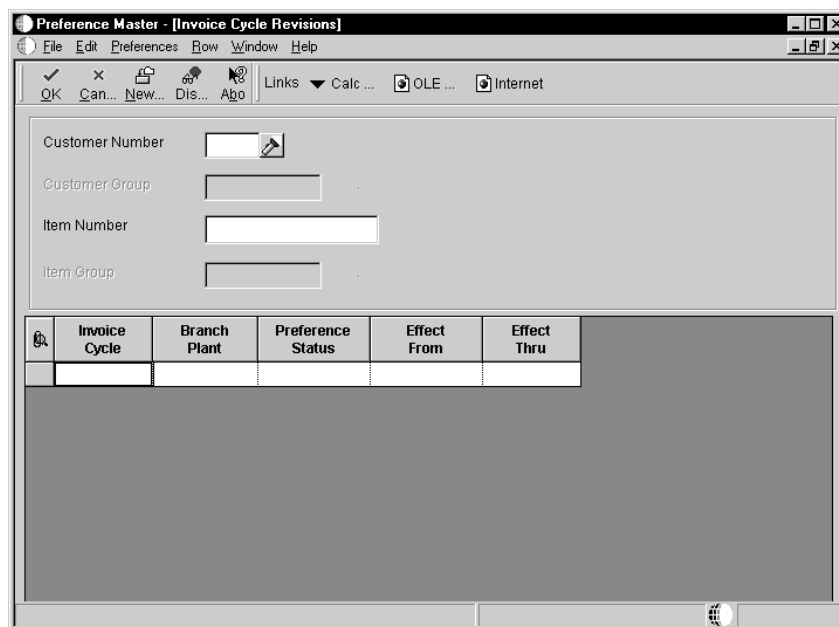
From the Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Preference Master.

You must set up the preference master and hierarchy information before you can enter the invoice cycle preference information.

1. On Work with Preference Master, locate the cycle invoicing preference and click Select.
2. On Work with Invoice Cycle, click Add.



3. On Preference Hierarchy Selection, choose the appropriate combination and click Select.



4. On Invoice Cycle Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Customer Number
 - Customer Group
 - Item Number
 - Item Group

- Invoice Cycle
- Branch Plant
- Preference Status

► **To set up invoice cycle calculation rules**

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Preference Master.

You set up the preference master and hierarchy information before you can enter the Invoice Cycle preference information.

1. On Work with Preference Master, locate the cycle invoicing preference.
2. Choose the cycle invoicing preference and click Select.
3. On Work with Invoice Cycle, click Find to locate existing cycles.
4. Choose the row for the appropriate customer/item combination and from the Row menu, choose Calc Rule.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Preference Master - [Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule]". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Form", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dis...", "App...", "Links", "Sched...", "OLE...", and "Internet". The main area of the window is divided into two sections: "Date Calculation Parameters" and "Date Validation Tests".

Date Calculation Parameters:

- Fiscal Year: []
- Invoice Cycle: [IC3] (dropdown menu)
- Calculation Rule: [8] (dropdown menu)
- Number of Days Increment: [0] (text box)
- Based On Date Name: [6] (dropdown menu)
- Day of Week: [0] (dropdown menu)
- Bi-Weekly: [] (checkbox)
- Actual Ship Date: [] (checkbox)
- Day Function Ignored: [] (checkbox)

Date Validation Tests:

Test Date	Calc Date
[]	[]
[]	[]
[]	[]
[]	[]
[]	[]

5. On Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule, complete the following fields:
 - Invoice Cycle
 - Calculation Rule
 - Number of Days Increment
 - Based on Date Name

6. Complete the following field if you are setting up a calculation rule for a weekly invoice schedule:
 - Day of Week
7. If you enter a bi-weekly, semi-monthly, or end-of-month invoice cycle, access Scheduled Invoice Dates.

Effect From	Effect Thru	Invoice Date

8. On Scheduled Invoice Dates, complete the following fields:
 - Start Date
 - Ending Date
 - Invoice Date
9. Return to the Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule form.
10. Complete the following field to calculate the test scheduled invoice date.:
 - Test Dates

Running Cycle Billing

You use the Cycle Billing program to calculate scheduled invoice dates. Cycle Billing is a batch program that works in conjunction with the Invoice Cycle preference and the invoice cycle calculation rule. If no Invoice Cycle preference is found, the system applies the default invoice cycle identified in the appropriate processing option.

The scheduled invoice date determines whether the system writes deferred journal entries to G/L accounts. If the scheduled invoice date more recent than today's date, this indicates that the invoice is on a billing cycle.

The Cycle Billing program updates deferred G/L accounts for COGS, revenue, and unbilled accounts receivable. You can run the program in proof mode for review purposes or in final mode to perform the updates.

Deferred entries are necessary because, although you have delivered the order to the customer, the system will not include the order in the sales update until the order has been invoiced on the next billing cycle. The system must update the records to indicate that inventory is no longer in transit, and the accounting records must reflect the deferred billing.

If the scheduled invoice date for an order is less than or equal to today's date, this indicates one of the following:

- A daily invoice cycle
- No billing cycle
- The current date as the cycle date

The program does not create deferred entries because the order will be included in the sales update that night.

The system processes orders differently for cycle billing than for non-cycle billing. The following table is an example of how the system updates different G/L accounts for non-cycle and cycle billing. The debit and credit amounts represent sample monetary values for each transaction.

Program	G/L Account	Debit Entry	Credit Entry
Non-Cycle Billing Journal Entries			
Load Confirm	Inventory In-Transit	410	
	Inventory		410
Update Customer Sales	COGS	410	
	Inventory In-Transit		410
	Billed A/R	990	
	Revenue		990
Cycle Billing Journal Entries			
Load Confirm	Inventory In-Transit	410	
	Inventory		410
Cycle Billing	Deferred COGS	410	
	Inventory In-Transit		410
	Unbilled A/R	990	
	Deferred Revenue		990
Update Customer Sales	COGS	410	
	Deferred COGS		410
	Deferred Revenue	990	
	Revenue		990
	Unbilled A/R		990
Invoice Post	A/R	990	

Note the following exceptions:

- If load confirmation and delivery confirmation occur at the same time (that is, the inventory is never considered to be in transit), then the Load Confirm program does not create journal entries. The Cycle Billing program credits inventory instead of crediting Inventory In-Transit entries.
- If the Load Confirm program prints a primary invoice, then the system does not generate deferred journal entries. The system generates non-cycle billing journal entries.

After you process orders through load confirmation and perform billable and payable freight calculations, the orders advance to cycle billing status. Depending on whether you have printed invoices with the delivery documents, the Cycle Billing program processes order lines as follows:

If a sales order line has been invoiced	The Cycle Billing program changes the status of the sales order line to indicate that it is not to be included in periodic invoicing. The system advances the order line to the Update Customer Sales status.
If a sales order line has not been invoiced	The Cycle Billing program checks the Invoice Cycle preference or the processing option, and calculates the scheduled invoice date. When you run Cycle Billing in final mode, the program updates the Sales Order Detail Tag table (F49211) with the invoice cycle and scheduled invoice date. It also changes the status of the order line to indicate that it is to be included in periodic invoicing. The program writes deferred accounting entries for order lines that are to be invoiced on a future date.

If you want to review the G/L entries or determine if there are any errors, you can review the Cycle Billing Transaction report.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set the appropriate processing option to run Cycle Billing in proof or final mode.
- ☐ Verify that the Invoice Cycle Calculation rule has been set up. See *Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules*.
- ☐ Verify that the Invoice Cycle preference has been set up. See *Understanding the Invoice Cycle Preference* and *Creating Invoice Cycle Preferences*.
- ☐ Verify that a user defined code for the default invoice cycle exists. The system applies this code when no preference is found for a customer and item combination.

Reviewing the Cycle Billing Transaction Report

The Cycle Billing program generates the Cycle Billing Transaction report for deferred entries. This report details the G/L entries for a particular order line. The system allows up to four G/L entries for a single order line. When you run the Cycle Billing program in proof mode, this report shows the G/L entries that will occur when you run the program in final mode. When you run the program in final mode, the report shows the updates that have been made.

Printing Standard Invoices

From Sales Order Processing (G4211), choose Print Invoices.

The Print Invoice program updates the following fields in the Sales Order Detail table:

- Invoice number
- Invoice date
- Invoice document type
- Status codes (the program sets the next status code to run the Update Customer Sales program)

You must specify the next status codes that the system will select for processing.

Note: You can process and print a group of invoices in a batch using a proof or final mode. When you run the Print Invoices in proof mode, the system does not perform updates to status codes or any files. You can use the proof version for other functions, such as sales order acknowledgements or invoice reprints. To properly process invoice proofs, you must run version XJDE0005 or a copy of this version.

For specific information about printing invoices, review the following topics:

- Invoice types
- Currencies
- Taxes

Invoice Types

You can specify one of the following types of invoices for your customers:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Unconsolidated invoice | The system prints a separate invoice for each order that the customer places. |
| Consolidated invoice | <p>The system combines multiple sales orders on one invoice. You can set up the option to consolidate invoices in the customer's billing instructions. When you choose to consolidate invoices, the system consolidates the accounts receivable and general ledger entries.</p> <p>If you run consolidated invoices and prevent the system from assigning accounts receivable numbers, you must choose the version in Sales Update that assigns invoice numbers.</p> <p>See <i>Updating Sales Information</i>.</p> |
| Summarized invoice | The system combines multiple line items for the same item if the item number and cost and price of each line item are identical. For example, if you ship the same item to multiple locations, you might want to summarize line items for the invoice that is sent to the Bill-To location. |

NOTE: You can consolidate or summarize invoices, but you cannot do both.

Currencies

You can choose the currencies in which you want to print net, tax, and gross amounts on your invoices. Processing options allow you to print amounts in a domestic or foreign currency, or in the following two currencies:

- Domestic and “as if” currency
- Foreign and “as if” currency

An “as if” currency is a currency other than the domestic or foreign currency of a transaction. The Print Invoice program uses “as if” currency processing to print amounts as if they were entered in another currency. One of the advantages of “as if” processing is that it does not impact disk space. The “as if” currency amounts are stored temporarily in the Invoice Print workfile (F42565) and deleted after the invoices are processed.

To print foreign and “as if” currency amounts, the Print Invoice program:

- Calculates the foreign and “as if” currency amounts based on the domestic amount of the sales order
- Uses the exchange rate on the sales order date, not the invoice date
- Prints foreign amounts only for each detail line

Taxes

You can print tax summary information in a domestic or foreign and “as if” currency based on one of the following:

- Tax group - Total taxable amount
- Tax area - Tax rate area, such as a state
- Tax authority - Tax authority with jurisdiction in the tax area, such as a county or city

If the order has items that are taxed at different rates, the system calculates the taxes, but prints N/A (not applicable) instead of a tax rate. The system calculates tax amounts only for items that you ship. Any backordered items on the invoice do not have tax amount information. If you print invoice amounts in an “as if” currency, you can also set a processing option to print tax summary amounts in the same “as if” currency.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that sales orders have the correct status code for printing invoices

Processing Options: Print Invoices (R42565)

Default Tab

These processing options specify the default settings the system uses when printing invoices. By setting these defaults, you specify how you want the system to process the invoices.

1. Status Code - From

Use this processing option to specify the beginning status code range that the system uses to select orders for printing invoices.

You must use a status that has been set up in user defined code table (40/AT) of the order activity rules. The combination of Status Code - From and Status Code - To must be a valid combination of last status and next status in the Order Activity Rule table for the order type and the line type that you are processing.

2. Status Code - To

Use this processing option to specify the status code range the system uses to select orders for printing invoices.

You must use a status that has been set up in user defined codes table (40/AT) of the order activity rules. The combination of Status Code - From and Status Code - To must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rule table for the order type and the line type that you are processing.

3. Based On Status

Use this processing option to specify whether the system selects the Sales Order Detail table according to the last status or next status. Valid values are:

- 1 Select according to last status
- 2 Select according to next status

4. Override Next Status Code

Use this processing option to indicate the next step in the order process. The user defined code that you specify (40/AT) must have been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using.

The override status is another allowed step in the invoicing process and is optional. The combination of the beginning status and the override next status must be a valid last status/next status combination in the Order Activity Rules table.

5. Prevent Next Status Update

Use this processing option to specify whether to prevent the system from updating the next status from the Order Activity Rules. The user defined code that you specify (40/AT) must have been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. Valid values are:

Blank Update the next status.

- 1 Prevent the next status update.

If you leave this processing option blank, the system will update the next status according to the existing Order Activity Rules.

6. Prevent A/R Number Assignment

Use this processing option to prevent the system from assigning an A/R number to the transaction when running an invoice in proof mode. Valid values are:

Blank Do not prevent A/R number assignment.

1 Prevent A/R number assignment.

When you run this program in proof mode, set this processing option to 1.

7. Assign A/R Next Number

Use this processing option to specify the index number that the system uses when assigning an A/R next number. You can choose from 10 different sequencing buckets for A/R next number assignments. If you leave this option blank, the system will assign 01.

8. Invoice Document Type

Use this processing option to specify the document type that the system assigns to the invoice.

You must use a document type that has been set up in user defined codes table 00/DT. If you leave this option blank, the system uses document type RI.

Print Tab

These processing options specify what the system prints on your invoices.

1. Invoice Date

Use this processing option to specify the date that appears on the invoice. If you leave this processing option blank, the system date will print.

2. Print Backordered/Cancelled Lines

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints backordered lines or cancelled lines or both on the invoice. Valid values are:

- 1 Print backordered lines.
- 2 Print cancelled lines.
- 3 Print both backordered and cancelled lines.
- 4 Do not print backordered or cancelled lines.

3. Extend Price on Backordered Lines

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints the extended price of backordered items. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print the extended price of backordered items.

1 Print the extended price of backordered items.

4. Print Backordered Lines Once Only

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints backordered and canceled lines one time or multiple times. Valid values are:

Blank Print backordered lines multiple times.

1 Print backordered lines one time only.

5. Print Extended Cost

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints the extended cost and profit margin. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print the extended cost and profit margin.

1 Print the extended cost and profit margin.

If you have set this processing option to 1, you must print in landscape format to be able to view the extended cost.

6. Print Available Discount

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints discounts available to a customer. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print available discounts.

1 Print available discounts.

7. Print Kit Component Lines

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints kit component lines. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print kit component lines.

1 Print kit component lines.

If you are using Sales Configurator, set this option to 1.

8. Print Future Committed Lines

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints future committed lines. Valid values are:

- Blank Do not print future committed lines.
- 1 Print future committed lines.

9. Print Item Number

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints your customer's item numbers along with your item numbers. Valid values are:

- 1 Print our item numbers only.
- 2 Print ours and the customer's item numbers.

If you leave this option blank, the system only prints our item numbers.

10. Customer Cross Reference

Use this processing option to specify the cross-reference code that identifies the customer item number, if you choose to print the customer item number on the invoice. You must enter a value from user defined code table (41/DT).

11. Item Summary

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints summaries of multiple line items for the same item if the item number, cost, and price of each line item are identical. For example, if you ship the same item to multiple locations, you might want to summarize line items for the invoice that is sent to the bill to location. Valid values are:

- 1 Print summaries of items only.
- 2 Print summaries of items split by commitments.

If you set this option to 1, the summarization is based on the following fields: 2nd Item Number, Unit Price, Unit of Measure, Line Type, Pricing Unit of Measure, Document Number, Document Type, and Document Company.

If you set this option to 2, the summarization is based on the following fields: Order Number, Order Type, Order Company, Line Number, Unit Price, Unit of Measure, Line Type, and Pricing Unit of Measure.

When working with kits, set this option to 1.

12. Print Serial Numbers

Use this processing option to specify whether the system will print serial numbers on your invoice. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print serial numbers

- 1 Print serial numbers

13. Print in Foreign Currency

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints foreign currency. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print foreign currency.

- 1 Print foreign currency.

14. Print Tax Summary

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints tax summary information on an invoice. The system will summarize the tax information according to how you have set this option. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print tax summary information.

- 1 Print tax summary information by group.
- 2 Print tax summary information by area.
- 3 Print tax summary information by authority.

15. Global Print Message

Use this processing option to specify the global print message that the system prints on each invoice.

You must use a message that has been set up in user defined codes table 40/PM.

16. Print Associated Text

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints sales order associated text on an invoice. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print associated text.

- 1 Print associated text.

If you set this option to 1, the system prints the associated text for both the sales order header and the sales order detail.

17. Print Drafts

Use this processing option to specify whether the system prints drafts. Valid values are:

Blank Do not print drafts.

- 1 Print drafts.

18. Draft Origination

Use this processing option to specify the city name from where the draft originates. If you enter a city name here, it appears on the draft.

Prepayment Tab

This processing option specifies whether prepayment information is included on your invoices.

1. Display Prepayments on Invoice

Use this processing option to specify whether the system displays prepayment information on an invoice. Valid values are:

Blank Do not display prepayment information.

1 Display prepayment information.

Process Tab

This processing option defines how you want the system to commit inventory during the print invoice process.

1. Hard Commit Inventory (Future)

Use this processing option to specify whether the system hard commits order detail lines. Valid values are:

Blank Bypass the commitment process.

1 Hard commit inventory.

When the system commits inventory, some lines may be backordered.

EDI Tab

These processing options specify how the system processes EDI transactions.

1. EDI Processing Selection

Use this processing option to indicate the method of processing that the system uses for EDI transactions. Valid values are:

Blank Use Invoice Print processing only.

1 Use EDI and Invoice Print processing.

2 Use EDI processing only.

2. EDI Transaction Type

Use this processing option to specify the EDI transaction type. Valid values are:

- 1 Invoice
- 2 Purchase order acknowledgement
- 3 Request for quotation

3. EDI Document Type

Use this processing option to specify the document type for EDI transactions. You must use a document type that has been set up in user defined code table 00/DT.

4. EDI Transaction Set Number

Use this processing option to specify the transaction set number in EDI processes. You must use a transaction set number that has been set up in user defined code table 40/ST.

5. EDI Translation Format

Use this processing option to specify the translation format for EDI transactions.

6. Trading Partner ID

Use this processing option to specify the identification number of your EDI trading partner.

7. Transaction Set Purpose

Use this processing option to specify the transaction set purpose for your EDI transactions. You must use a transaction set purpose that has been set up in user defined code table 47/PU.



End of Day Processing

End of day processing is the last step in sales order processing and consists of updating, verifying, and posting daily sales information. This is perhaps the most important step in the sales order processing cycle because the system updates the records in the Sales Order Management system and the records in the other systems with which it interfaces, such as the Accounts Receivable and Inventory Management systems.

You perform end of day processing each day to maintain the most accurate sales information. After you run the program, you can review and post sales information, and print reports.

End of day processing includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Updating sales information
- ☐ Converting customer limit amounts
- ☐ Reposting orders
- ☐ Reviewing and approving journal entries
- ☐ Posting journal entries
- ☐ Purging data

When you perform end of day processing, the system provides the following:

- Accounts receivable transactions
- General ledger entries for inventory, cost of goods sold, revenue, and accounts receivable
- Inventory balances for on-hand quantities
- Daily activity reports
- Interim sales reports



If you do not update your sales records on a daily basis, the following information might be inaccurate:

- Inventory balances for on-hand quantities
- Amounts posted to the sales, inventory, cost of goods sold, tax, and freight accounts
- Amounts posted to the accounts receivable ledger
- Reports for interim sales

Updating Sales Information

To maintain the most accurate sales information, you can update your records daily in the sales order management system. Run a version of the Update Customer Sales program each day to maintain the most accurate sales information. The system updates the records in the Sales Order Management system and the records in the other systems with which it interfaces, such as the Accounts Receivable and Inventory Management systems. After you run the program, you can review and post sales transactions and review sales reports.

Updating sales information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Updating customer sales
- ☐ Using AAI's with sales update
- ☐ Reviewing sales update reports

Note: Because of the number of transactions that occur when you run the Update Customer Sales program, J.D. Edwards recommends that you run the program in proof mode first to detect and correct any errors before you run it in final mode.

During sales update, the system writes warning messages as well as error messages for you to review. You can improve the performance of the system if you set the processing option to write error messages only.

Caution: J.D. Edwards strongly recommends that you run the sales update when no one is on the system. In OneWorld, the system does not lock records. Therefore, if a sales order record is being accessed during a sales update, the record might not process correctly.

Updating Customer Sales

To maintain the most accurate sales information, you can update your records in the sales order management system daily. You run a version of the Update Customer Sales program each day to maintain the most accurate sales information.

Updating customer sales includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Updating tables

- ☐ Selecting versions and modes for sales update
- ☐ Updating on-hand inventory
- ☐ Updating ECS information
- ☐ Using interactive versions in Update Customer Sales Program
- ☐ Reviewing electronic mail for sales update errors

Updating Tables

When you run the Update Customer Sales program, the system generates information about the following:

- Update information about customer sales
- Accounts receivable and G/L entries
- Sales for different categories, such as stock sales and freight, cost of goods sold, and profit percentages
- Errors that result from running the program

Depending on how you set the processing options, the system:

- Updates all status codes according to the order activity rules. For example, the system updates all order detail lines with a status of 600 to a closed status of 999
- Updates the Sales Order Header table (F4201) and the Sales Order Header History table (F42019)
- Updates the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) and the Sales Order Detail History table (F42119)
- Updates on-hand inventory in the Item Location table (F41021), the Item History table (F4115), and the Item Ledger table (F4111) if the quantity is not updated during shipment confirmation
- Updates invoice information, such as the dates of the first and last invoices, and year-to-date totals for invoices
- Updates the General Ledger table (F0911), the Accounts Receivable table (F03B11), and the Sales Ledger table (F42199)
- Creates invoices and assigns invoice numbers to sales orders that you do not process through the Print Invoices program (P42565)
- Updates commission information in the Commissions table (F42005), and summarizes cost of goods sold and sales by item in the Sales Summary table (F4229)
- Updates costs with the current information in the Item Cost table (F4105) and prices in the Sales Price Adjustment table (F4074)

- Updates interbranch sales information
- Updates the Text table (F4314) with current messages
- Updates on-hand inventory for bulk items in the Item Location table and writes a record to the Bulk Product Transaction table (F41511)
- Updates the Adjustment History table (F4575) with ship and debit information.

Selecting Versions and Modes for Sales Update

You must choose the appropriate version of the Sales Update program to update your tables. Choose one of the following versions based on your process:

Sales Update	You can use this version when the sales order has been processed through Invoice Print and contains an invoice number and type in the Sales Order Detail table.
Assign Invoice Numbers	You must use this version when the sales order has not been processed to print invoices in the Print Invoice program. The program assigns an invoice (A/R) number.

Because of the number of transactions that occur when you run the Update Customer Sales program, run the program in proof mode first to detect and correct any errors before you run it in final mode. Choose either of the following:

Proof Mode	When you run the sales update in proof mode, you can: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • View the journal entries and correct any errors. • Review proof copies of Invoice Journal, an online error review and, depending on the processing options, a Sales Journal.
-------------------	---

The system does not perform updates to status codes or any tables. You can use proof mode for either version, Sales Update or Assign Invoice Numbers to detect and correct any errors before running in final.

After you run the program in proof mode, you can review and correct any errors before performing a final Sales Update. See *Reviewing Electronic Mail for Sales Update Errors*.

Final Mode

When you run the the sales update in final mode, you can:

- Review the Invoice Journal, a complete online error review, and depending on the processing options, a Sales Journal.

The system updates status codes and tables, and performs edits, such as checking for duplicate records, against the G/L, A/R, and A/P functional servers.

Updating Interbranch Sales Information

During the sales update process, you can run the Update Customer Sales program to create journal entries for interbranch sales.

If you set the interbranch processing option in the Sales Update program to create accounts receivable and accounts payable entries for both the selling and the supplying branch/plants, the system creates the following types of batches:

Example: Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable Entries

- Batch type I - Debits the COGS account, and credits the receivables accounts and inventory for the supplying branch/plant and selling branch/plant.
- Batch type V - Credits the payables accounts and debits the inventory for the selling branch/plant.

I BATCH

Selling Branch:

DEBIT +
AR TRADE
100

CREDIT +
REVENUE
<100>

DEBIT +
COGS
80

CREDIT +
INVENTORY
<80>

Supplying Branch:

DEBIT +
AR TRADE
80

CREDIT +
I/B REVENUE
<80>

DEBIT +
COGS
75

CREDIT +
INVENTORY
<75>

V BATCH

Selling Branch:

DEBIT +
INVENTORY
80

CREDIT +
AP TRADE
<80>

Example: Accounts Receivable Entries

If the appropriate processing option is set to create only the accounts receivable entries, the system creates the following types of batches:

- Batch type I - Credits the revenue accounts and inventory, and debits the COGS account of the selling branch/plant.
- Batch type ST - Credits the revenue account and inventory for the selling branch/plant, and debits the COGS accounts and inventory for the supplying branch/plant.

I BATCH

Selling Branch:

DEBIT +
AR TRADE
100

CREDIT +
REVENUE
<100>

DEBIT +
COGS
80

CREDIT +
INVENTORY
<80>

ST BATCH

Supplying Branch:

DEBIT +
COGS
75

CREDIT +
INVENTORY
<75>

Interbranch Journal Entries:

DEBIT + SELLING BRANCH
INVENTORY
80

CREDIT + SUPPLYING BRANCH
INTERBRANCH REVENUE
<80>

Updating On-Hand Inventory

You can relieve the on-hand quantity for an item during shipment confirmation or sales update. The method you choose affects the history records that are written to the Item Ledger.

- If you subtract the on-hand quantity from inventory during shipment confirmation, the system creates a record in the Item Ledger with the sales order as the document number and the order type as the document type. During sales update, the system overwrites the record with the invoice number and type, G/L date, and batch number.
- If you subtract the on-hand quantity from inventory during sales update, the system writes the invoice number, type, and G/L date to the Item Ledger. No record is written during shipment confirmation.

To relieve the on-hand quantity for an item during shipment confirmation, you must add order types to the UDC table (40/IU). During sales update, the system overwrites the Item Ledger record with the invoice number and type, G/L date, and batch number.

See Also

- See *Locating On-Hand Quantity Information* in the *Inventory Management Guide* for more information on the Item Ledger.

Updating ECS Information

During the load confirmation process, the system updates the quantity of on-hand inventory for bulk items in the Item Location table.

If you do not process a detail line through Load Confirmation, the Update Customer Sales program updates inventory for bulk items and writes a record to the Bulk Production Transaction table (F41511). If you process a sales order detail line through load confirmation, the system does not update inventory quantity during sales update.

You can update quantities based on the quantity that was invoices, which can be ambient or standard. However, the item ledger is updated at standard. If you update ambient quantities, you might receive unpredictable errors.

Using Interactive Versions in Update Customer Sales Program

When you set up processing options for Update Customer Sales, you can only specify *versions* for Accounts Receivables (A/R) and General Ledger (G/L) processing. To review the processing options that affect A/R and G/L processing, such as ledger types and VAT tax processing for multi-currency orders, you must inquire on the following A/R and G/L interactive batch versions.

From the System Administration Tools menu (GH9011), choose Interactive Versions and inquire on the following interactive applications:

- A/R Master Business Function (P03B0011). You must use version ZJDE0002.

On the Currency tab, this version must be set to allow VAT processing. Set the appropriate value, 1, to allow Value Added Tax Processing with Currency.

- G/L Master Business Function (P0900049).

Reviewing Electronic Mail for Sales Update Errors

After you run the Sales Update program, you can review and correct any errors before performing a final Sales Update. The program sends messages to your electronic mail in the Employee Work Center when there are errors and when the job completes normally. After you run the Sales Update program, you should check your electronic mail to determine the status of the job. If the job did not complete normally, review the error messages. Typically, one message

notifies you that the job had errors, followed by one or more detailed messages defining the errors.

Note: During sales update, the system writes warning messages, as well as error messages, for you to review. You can improve the performance of the system if you set the processing option to write error messages only.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Ensure that no one is using the system.
- ☐ Verify that the appropriate line types are set up and that the processing options are set to correctly interface with the G/L and accounts receivable
- ☐ Verify that the status code for sales journal, sales update and any status codes that follow are set up in the order activity rules
- ☐ Verify that you have ended subsystem processing before running sales update.
- ☐ Verify that the appropriate processing option for creating the necessary types of accounting entries is set
- ☐ Verify that the interbranch sales processing options are set to:
 - Recognize the order type used to identify interbranch orders
 - Create necessary types of accounting entries

Processing Options: Sales Update And Report

Defaults Tab

These processing options determine the default values that the Sales Update program (P42800) uses to create G/L and A/R entries. If you enter a specific date for A/R Invoice Date, you must also enter a date in the Specific Date for G/L date processing option. If you enter a date value as an A/R Invoice Date, you must enter a date value for the G/L date.

1. Specific Date as A/R Invoice Date

Use this processing option as the A/R Invoice Date, or enter a value by which the system enters the date based on order processing information.

If you enter a specific date, you must also enter a date in the Specific Date for G/L date processing option.

2. Select Date Value as A/R Invoice Date

Use this processing option to indicate the value with which the system enters the date based on order processing information. Valid values are:

- 1 The system uses the date the invoice was printed for the customer and retrieves only those orders that have been processed through the Print Invoice (R42565) program.
- 2 The system uses the date the order was confirmed for shipment and retrieves only those orders that have been processed through the Shipment Confirmation (P4205) program.
- 3 The system uses the current system date.

If you enter a value instead of a specific date as the A/R Invoice Date, you must also enter a value in the Select Date for G/L Date.

3. Specific Date as G/L Date

Use this processing option as the G/L Date, or enter a value with which the system enters the date based on order processing information.

If you enter a specific date, you must also enter a date in the Specific Date for A/R Invoice Date processing option.

4. Select Date Value as G/L Date

Use this processing option to indicate the value with which the system enters the date based on order processing information. Valid values are:

- 1 The system uses the date the invoice was printed for the customer and retrieves only those orders that have been processed through the Print Invoice (R42565) program.
- 2 The system uses the date the order was confirmed for shipment and retrieves only those orders that have been processed through the Shipment Confirmation (P4205) program.
- 3 The system uses the current system date.

If you enter a value instead of a specific date as the G/L Date, you must also enter a value in the Select Date for A/R Invoice Date.

5. G/L Account Business Unit

Use this processing option to identify the business unit to which the system assigns G/L entries. The system verifies the business unit associated with the account number in the AAI for that company, document type, and G/L class. If you don't define a business unit in the AAIs, indicate the business unit to which the system assigns G/L entries. Valid values:

Blank AAI Business Unit. If the business unit in the AAI is blank, then the system verifies the G/L business unit that is defined as the project number in the Business Unit Master (F0006). If you do not have a project number defined in the Business Unit Master (F0006), the system uses the detail branch/plant.

- 1 The system uses the business unit from the order detail line.
- 2 The system uses the Sold To address book number as the business unit part of the account number
- 3 The system assigns G/L entries to the project number of the header branch/plant for A/R and revenue entries. For inventory and cost of goods sold entries, the system uses the project number from the detail branch/plant.

6. Override Next Status Code

Use this processing option to indicate the next step in the order process. You must specify a user defined code (40/AT) that has been set up in the Order Activity Rules based on the order type and the line type that you are using. An override status is another allowed step in the process.

If you are running Sales Update (R42800) in final mode, you should update status codes to 999 to ensure that the system does not retrieve orders that have been previously updated and process them through Sales Update again.

7. Billing Remark

Use this processing option to indicate a memo-only field is used for reporting purposes. You can enter a 3-character value that has been set up in the user defined code table (42/BR).

The system uses the billing remark to update the “Alpha Name – Explanation” for the journal entry (F0911). You can review the billing remark in the header portion of the journal entry if you run Sales Journal before Update.

Update Tab

These processing options indicate the mode in which the system runs Sales Update and the tables that are bypassed during the sales update process.

1.Proof or Final Mode

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system runs Sales Update in either the proof or final mode. You must use the version specific to your update process and for any version, you must indicate whether the system uses the proof or final mode. Valid values are:

Blank Run Sales Update in proof mode. The system does not update status codes or tables. You can print and review journal entries, review and

correct errors in the Employee Work Center, and depending on processing options, review the Sales Journal.

- 1 Run Sales Update in final mode. The system updates status codes and tables, and performs edits, such as checking for duplicate records, against the G/L, A/R, and A/P functional servers. You can print and review journal entries, review and correct errors in the Employee Work Center, and depending on processing options, review the Sales Journal.

You must use the proof or final version of Sales Update (XJDE0001, XJDE0002) when the sales order has been processed through Invoice Print and contains an invoice number and type in the Sales Order Detail file.

You must use the proof or final version of Sales Update – Assign Invoice Numbers (XJDE0003, XJDE0004) when the sales order has not been processed to print invoices in the Print Invoice program. The program assigns an invoice (A/R) number.

If you run multiple jobs, such as printing the Sales Journal before Sales Update, the system leaves the processing results, the sales journal and the journal entries, open for review.

2. Bypass Update to Accounts Receivable

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system updates the Accounts Receivable table (F03B11). Valid values are:

Blank The system update the Accounts Receivable table (F03B11).

- 1 The system does not update to Accounts Receivable. Instead, the system creates accounts receivable offset journal entries using the Distribution AAI (A/R Trade) 4245.

3. Bypass Update to Inventory

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system updates inventory in the Item Location (F41021) table and the Item History (F4115) table. Valid values are:

Blank The system updates on-hand inventory in the Item Location table (F41021), the Item History table (F4115), and the Item Ledger table (F4111) if the quantity is not updated during shipment confirmation.

- 1 The system does not update on-hand inventory in the Item Location table (F41021), the Item History table (F4115), and the Item Ledger table (F4111).

4. Bypass Update to Commissions

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system updates the Commissions table (F42005). Valid values are:

Blank The system updates commission information in the Commissions table (F42005).

- 1 The system does not up update commission information in the Commissions table (F42005). If you don't record commission information, you may want to bypass update to the Commissions table to improve performance.

5. Bypass Update to Sales History Summary

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system updates the Sales History Summary table (F4229). Valid values are:

Blank The system updates and summarizes cost of goods sold and sales by item in the Sales Summary table (F4229), which you can use for reporting purposes.

- 1 The system does not update the Sales History Summary table (F4229). If you do not use the Sales History Summary for reporting, you may want to bypass update to the Sales History Summary table to improve performance.

6. Purge to Sales Detail History

You can choose whether the system purges detail information from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). When you update customer sales, the system runs the Detail to History program to move detail lines with a status of 999 from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) to the Sales Order Detail History table (F42119). Valid values are:

Blank The system copies records from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) to the Sales Order Detail History table (F42119) and then deletes the original records. This allows the Sales Order Detail table to remain small and improves performance.

- 1 The system does not copy records from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) to the Sales Order Detail History table (F42119).

7. Purge to Sales Header History

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system moves header information from the Sales Order Header table (F4201) to the Sales Header History table (F42019). If you do not perform this purge, records remain in the Sales Order Header table (F4201).

Records are purged from the Sales Order Header table only if no open detail lines with a matching order type and order number combination exist in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). Valid values are:

Blank The system copies records from the Sales Order Header table (F4201) to the Sales Order Header History table (F42019) and then deletes the

original records. This allows the Sales Order Header table to remain small and improves performance.

- 1 The system does not copy records from the Sales Order Header table (F4201) to the Sales Order Header History table (F42019).

8. Purge Pricing Records

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system purges the Price Adjustment Ledger (F4074). Valid values are:

Blank The system purges price records from the Price Adjustment Ledger (F4074) and does not maintain pricing history in another file.

- 1 The system does not purge pricing records from the Price Adjustment Ledger (F4074) and you can review pricing history.

9. Subledger

Use this processing option to create subledger entries that are specific to your organization. Valid values are:

- 1 The system writes subledger journal entries to the G/L with the order number that is assigned at order entry.
- 2 The system writes subledger journal entries to the G/L with the salesman number that is assigned in the Customer Billing Instructions.
- 3 The system writes subledger journal entries to the G/L with the Sold To number that is entered on the order.
- 4 The system writes subledger journal entries to the G/L with the Ship To number that is entered on the order.
- 5 The system writes subledger journal entries to the G/L with the Short Item number.

10. A/R Next Number Index

Use this processing option to indicate the next number the system uses to assign an invoice (A/R) number.

You must use the version of Sales Update – Assign Invoice Numbers (XJDE0003, XJDE0004) when the sales order has not been processed to print invoices in the Print Invoice program. The program assigns an invoice (A/R) number based on this next number sequence.

11. Document Type for Invoices

Use this processing option to indicate the document type the system uses to assign to an invoice (A/R) number.

You must use the version of Sales Update – Assign Invoice Numbers (XJDE0003, XJDE0004) when the sales order has not been processed to print invoices in the

Print Invoice program. The program assigns a document type and an invoice (A/R) number to this transaction.

12. Purge Associated Text

You can choose whether the system purges associated text from the Media Object Detail table (F00165). Valid values are:

Blank The system does not delete header and detail line attachments from the Media Object Detail table (F00165).

- 1 The system deletes header and order detail line attachments from the Media Object Detail table (F00165).

13. Ship and Debit Processing

Use this processing option to specify whether the system will use subsystem or batch processing (R45100) to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements when you run the Update Customer Sales program. Valid values are:

Blank Do not use subsystem or batch processing

- 1 Use subsystem processing
- 2 Use batch processing

14. Ship and Debit Accrual

Use this processing option to specify whether the system uses Generate Claim and Claim Accrual Entries (R45800) processing when running the Sales Update program. Valid values are:

Blank Do not use R45800 processing

- 1 Use R45800 processing

Versions Tab

These processing options determine the versions that the system uses to create entries in accounts receivable and general ledger tables. If you leave a processing option blank, the system uses the ZJDE0002 version for Accounts Receivable and the ZJDE0001 version for General Ledger.

1. A/R Master Business Function

Use this processing option to indicate the version of A/R Master Business Function (P03B0011). To review the processing options that affect A/R processing, such as ledger types and VAT tax processing for multi-currency orders, you must inquire on the appropriate A/R batch version that is used for sales update. If you leave this option blank, the system uses version ZJDE0002.

If you specify a version of A/R Master Business Function (P03B0011) other than ZJDE0002, set this processing options for this version to allow VAT processing. On the Currency tab in the processing options for the A/R MBF, Set the appropriate value, 1, to allow Value Added Tax Processing with Currency.

2. G/L Master Business Function

Use this processing option to indicate the version of G/L Master Business Function (P0900049) for General Ledger (G/L) processing. To review the processing options that affect G/L processing, you must inquire on the appropriate G/L interactive batch version that you use for sales update.

The system uses G/L Master Business Function (P0900049). If you leave this option blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

3. Ship and Debit (R45100)

Use this processing option to specify the version of subsystem processing (R45100) that the system uses to identify and adjust ship and debit agreements when you run the Update Customer Sales program.

4. Ship and Debit Accrual (R45800)

Use this processing option to specify which version of the Generate Claim and Claim Accrual Entries (R45800) that the system uses when you run the Sales Update program.

Print Tab

These processing options indicate whether the system prints the sales journal before updating journal entries, and if so, which version to use.

1. Print Sales Journal Before Update

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system prints a sales journal before updating journal entries. The sales journal contains only summary information. The report includes total invoice amounts, cost of goods sold, and profit amounts and percentages. This is helpful if you want to review how sales revenues are distributed. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not print a sales journal before update.
1 The system prints a sales Journal before running update.

Make sure that you have set the processing options in the version for Sales Journal Print (P42810) so that system does not update the status codes of the sales orders.

2. Sales Journal Version (R42810)

Use this processing option to indicate the version of Sales Journal (P42810) the system uses to print the sales journal before Sales Update. This processing option is in effect only if you activate the processing option to Print Sales Journal before Update. The sales journal contains only summary information. The report includes total invoice amounts, cost of goods sold, and profit amounts and percentages. This is helpful if you want to review how sales revenues are distributed.

If you leave this option blank, the system uses version ZJDE0001.

Make sure that you have set the processing options in the version for Sales Journal Print so that system does not update the status codes of the sales orders.

Summarization Tab

These processing options indicate whether the system writes A/R, G/L, COGS, and inventory entries in summary or detail.

1. Summarize A/R Entries by Invoice

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system writes Accounts Receivable journal entries in summary or detail. When the system creates A/R entries, it creates batch type IB. In batch type IB, you can choose whether the system creates separate entries for each invoice or for each order detail line. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not summarize A/R entries and creates separate entries in the Accounts Receivable table (F03B11) for each order detail line in an invoice.
- 1 The system summarizes A/R entries and creates entries in the Accounts Receivable table (F03B11) for an invoice.

2. Summarize G/L Entries by Invoice

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system writes General Ledger (G/L) journal entries in summary or detail. When the system creates G/L entries, it creates batch type IB. In batch type IB, you can choose whether the system creates separate entries for each invoice or for each order detail line. Valid values are:

- Blank The system does not summarize G/L entries. The system creates separate entries in the General Ledger table (F0911) for each order detail line in an invoice.
- 1 The system summarizes G/L entries and creates entries in the General Ledger table (F0911) for each invoice.

3. Summarize COGS and Inventory Entries

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system creates a separate batch, type G, for inventory and costs of goods sold (COGS) entries. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not summarize inventory and COGS entries to a separate batch. The system only creates batch type IB for posting to journals.

- 1 In addition to batch type IB, the system creates a separate batch, G, for inventory and COGS entries.

Cost Update Tab

These processing options indicate whether the system updates costs prior to sales update and the version of Sales Price/Cost Update, if applicable.

1. Update Costs

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system updates costs prior to sales update. The system updates all selected sales orders with current costs, exchange rates, and prices before you create A/R and G/L records.

You might run a sales cost update if your purchasing or manufacturing costs change frequently or if order have been in the system for quite some time before being update. This ensures that the system accurately calculates your profit margins.

Blank The system does not update inventory costs for the item.

- 1 The system uses the version of Sales Price/Cost Update that you reference in the processing options to update all selected sales orders with current costs, exchange rates, and prices before creating A/R and G/L records.

2. Sales Price/Cost Update Version

Use this processing option to indicate the version of Sales Price/Cost Update (R42950) the system uses to update costs prior to sales update. The default version is ZJDE0001. The system updates all selected sales orders with current costs, exchange rates, and prices before you create A/R and G/L records.

You might run a sales cost update if your purchasing or manufacturing costs change frequently or if orders have been in the system for quite some time before being updated. This ensures that the system accurately calculates your profit margins.

For interbranch orders, you must set the processing options in the Update Sales Price/Cost program (R42950) to update the price information, as well as the exchange rate for both the supplying and selling branch/plants.

Interbranch Tab

These processing options identify the order types for interbranch orders.

1. Interbranch Order Types

Use this processing option to identify the order types used for interbranch orders. You can list multiple order types without punctuation or spaces. To accurately update all interbranch orders, you should enter all interbranch order types that you entered in Sales Order Entry, Defaults tab, Order Types processing option.

You must enter values that have been set up in user defined code table (00/DT).

2. A/R and A/P Batches

Use this processing option to indicate the types of batches for interbranch orders. The program creates batch type IB for transactions between the selling branch and the customer and batch type ST for transactions between the supplying branch/plant and the selling branch. Valid values are:

Blank The system creates a separate batch for interbranch orders.

- 1 The system creates accounts payable and accounts receivable journal entries for the selling branch/plant and accounts receivable entries for the supplying branch/plant.

3. Voucher Match Version (P4314)

Use this processing option to identify the version of the Voucher Match Master Business Function that the system uses to create Accounts Payable transaction records. For intercompany invoicing, the system creates an accounts payable entry from the selling company to the supplying company.

To review the processing options that affect A/P processing, you must inquire on the appropriate A/P batch version that is used for sales update.

Flex Acctg

This processing option indicates whether you are working with flexible sales accounting.

1. Sales Flexible Accounting

Use this processing option to indicate whether you are working with flexible sales accounting. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not use the Flex Sales Accounting program (P42096) to create general ledger entries.

- 1 The system creates entries with cost object information according to the account number definition that you have set up in Flex Sales Accounting (P42096).

Bulk Product

This processing option indicates the method by which the system calculates temperature gain/loss records.

1. Temperature Gain/Loss

Use this processing option to write temperature gain/loss records for customers billed at ambient tempature when the inventory has been relieved at standard temperature. The gain or loss is calculated in either of the following ways, cost or revenue. Valid values are:

Blank The system does not process temperature gain/loss records.

- 1 For cost, the system computes the difference between the extension of ambient volume multiplied by cost and standard volume multiplied by cost. The calculation uses the primary unit of measure.
- 2 For revenue, the system computes the difference between the extension of ambient volume multiplied by price and standard volume multiplied by price. The calculation uses the pricing unit of measure.

Agreements Tab

If you use Sales Order Management with the Agreement Management system, these processing options define the method by which the system selects agreements.

1. Specific Destination Business Unit for Borrow Agreement Search

Use this processing option to specify where an item on the agreement is delivered. If you leave this option blank, you must enter a value in which the system selects the destination business unit.

OR

Use this processing option to specify a value where an item on the agreement is delivered. Valid values are:

- 1 The destination can be any location defined in the agreement.
- 2 The system identifies the default branch/plant as the destination.

If you leave this option blank, you must enter a specific destination business unit.

2. Selection Criterion

Use this processing option to identify the method with which the system uses to select an agreement. Valid values are:

Blank The system assigns an agreement based on the earliest expiration date.

- 1 The system automatically assigns an agreement if only one is found.
- 2 The system assigns an agreement based on the earliest expiration date.

Performance

This processing option indicates whether the system writes warning messages, as well as error messages, to the Employee Work Center during Sales Update.

Performance Improvement Options

Use this processing option to indicate whether the system writes warning messages to the Employee Work Center during Sales Update. Valid values are:

Blank The system writes warning messages to the Employee Work Center.

- 1 The system does not write warning messages to the Employee Work Center. You can improve the performance of the system when you choose this option.

Prepayment Tab

Use this processing option for prepayment processing. When you set up a version of Sales Update for Prepayment Transactions, and you have not processed the orders through Print Invoice, set the processing options so that the system assigns an invoice number.

If the processing option for prepayment processing is on and settlement of a prepayment transaction has occurred, the system writes a draft record for receivables due from the credit card company's bank. During Sales Update, call the version of Preauthorized Drafts to generate draft records.

1. Update Settled Prepayment Transactions

Use this processing option to indicate whether credit card prepaid transactions, which have an open invoice, will be paid as drafts. Once an invoice is selected, the open amount is paid, and draft documents are created. The Drafts are created at the acceptance status as the funds have not yet been collected at the bank.

Valid values are:

- 1 Settled Prepayment Records will be updated and drafts will be written for credit card transactions.

Blank Settled Prepayment Records will not be updated.

Using AAI's with Sales Update

Automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) are the links between your day-to-day functions, chart of accounts, and financial reports. The system uses AAI's to determine how to distribute G/L entries that the system generates. For example, in the Sales Order Management system, the following AAI's indicate how to record the transaction when you sell a stock item to a customer:

Cost of Goods (COGS) Sold (4220)	Provides the expense/cost amount to the cost of goods sold account.
Revenue (4230)	Provides the actual sales price of inventory in the sales revenue account.
Inventory (4240)	Credits the cost amount to an inventory account.
A/R Trade (4245)	Debits the sales amount to an accounts receivable account. The system writes the accounts receivable offset entries to the general ledger only if the accounts receivable update option is turned off.
Tax Liability (4250)	Provides journal entries to tax liability accounts that were created during a sales update.
Price Adjustments (4270)	Provides the journal entries for individual price adjustments that were created during a sales update.
Rebates Payable (4280)	Provides the offset entries of accrued accounts.

You can direct transactions to various accounts by inserting information in the following fields:

Company Number	The system compares the company number that you specify in the sales order detail form to the appropriate AAI table. For example, if the company number is 100 and there is not a valid line in the AAI table for that company, then the system compares the number in the sales order detail form to the valid line for company 000.
Document Type	The system uses the document type of the order, such as SO for sales orders.

G/L Class

According to your order line types, if the Inventory Interface option is Y, then the system refers to the G/L class from the Item Location table (F41021). If the Inventory Interface option is N, then the system use the G/L class that is in the fold of the line type definition.

For Accounts Receivable AAI, the system uses the G/L class from the customer record in the Customer Master form. However, a G/L class is not required for the Accounts Receivable AAI. Blank is a valid value.

The system verifies the business unit associated with the account number in the AAI for that company, document type, and G/L class. If you don't define a business unit in the AAI, you can use the default value processing options in Sales Update to specify the priority that the system uses to select the business unit to track G/L entries for an order.

Based on your Update Customer Sales processing option selection, one of the following occurs:

Subsequent cost center (business unit) using only the order detail line

If the business unit in the AAI line is blank, then it looks at the the project number that you have defined in the Business Unit Master (F0006) for the detail branch/plant.

If both the business unit in the AAI and the project number are blank, then the system uses the business unit from the order detail line.

Sold To Address Book number

The system uses the sold-to address book number as the business unit part of the account number.

Subsequent cost center using both the order header and detail lines

If the business unit in the AAI line is blank, then the system assigns G/L entries to project numbers that you have defined in the Business Unit Master (F0006) for the header and detail branch/plants. The system assigns G/L entries to the project number of the header branch/plant for A/R and revenue entries. The system uses the project number from the detail branch/plant for inventory and cost of goods sold entries.

If both the business unit in the AAI and the project numbers for the header and detail branch/plant are blank, then the system uses the business unit from the header of the order for the sales cost of goods sold and A/R entries and revenue and the business unit from the detail of the order for the inventory entry.

If you bypass invoice processing, and process entries through sales update you must set up an entry in the 4245 for an offset entry. The G/L class code is not associated with an inventory item, its being associated with the A/R offset in the Customer Master Information. In other words, the system matches the AAI 4245 the A/R offset in the Customer Master to record an entry. System only looks at the header level for the information to the 4245, not the order detail line.

If you want the information to go to a specific account, you must edit the Customer Master Information and set up a corresponding AAI in 4245 as well as RC (Accounts Receivable, system 03) AAI. However, the system only records entires as invoice totals related to the customer, individual order detail lines are not recorded. You can use all asterisks, the system doesn't look to match the G/L offset and A/R offset

See Also

- ☐ *Working with Business Units* in the *General Accounting Guide* for more information about assigning project numbers in the Business Unit Master table (F0006)

Reviewing Sales Update Reports

When you run the Update Customer Sales program, the system generates the following reports:

Invoice Journal	Details all accounts receivable and general ledger entries.
Sales Journal	Analyze amounts by category, such as stock sales and freight with summary or detail entries. Also, review costs of goods sold and profit percentages.

Reviewing journals includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Reviewing the Invoice Journal
- ☐ Reviewing the Sales Journal

Reviewing the Invoice Journal

The system generates the Invoice Journal whenever you run the Update Customer Sales program. This report lists summary or detail G/L entries, depending on how you set a processing option.

The Invoice Journal lists the G/L transactions by:

- Customer account number
- Total amounts by invoice
- Total amounts for all orders

Reviewing the Sales Journal

You can select the sales journal from the Reports menu and run it separately. This is helpful if you want to review how sales revenues are distributed.

Unlike the Invoice Journal, the Sales Journal contains only summary information. The report includes total invoice amounts, cost of goods sold, and profit amounts and percentages.

Caution: If you set the Print processing option in Sales Update (P42800) to print a sales journal before Sales Update and do not reference a version of Sales Journal (P42810), then Sales Journal uses the same data selection as specified for Sales Update.

Processing Options for Sales Journal Print

Default 1

Enter a '1' into each of the following options to activate, or leave a blank.

1. 1=To update the Status codes of Sales Order, blank=Not to Update

Default 2

Enter the override Status code for the sales order. If left blank the next status code from the OrderActivityRule(F40203) will be used. This option will only be in effect if processing option one is set to '1'

2. Enter an Override Status Code, or leave a 'blank'

Print

Enter a value for the currency printing mode of the following report.

1. blank=Print in Domestic, 1=Print in Foreign, 2=Print both Domestic and Foreign.

Converting Customer Limit Amounts

From the System Administration Tools menu (GH9011), choose Batch Versions. On Batch Versions, do one of the following:

- For OneWorld B73.3 clients who use the new A/R application, enter R8903012E in the Batch Application field to access Euro Address Book Conversion – F03012, F0301.
- For OneWorld B73.3 clients who use the old A/R application, enter R890301E in the Batch Application field to access Euro Address Book Conversion – F0301.

To convert limit amounts for multiple customers from one currency to another, you can run the Euro Address Book Conversion. This conversion program was originally designed for Economic and Monetary Union (EMU) companies to use during the euro transition period, however, it can be used by companies outside of the EMU as well. For example, companies can use the conversion program to convert the currency code and address book amounts for multiple customers from French francs to the euro, as well as from U.S. dollars to Canadian dollars.

The Euro Address Book Conversion program converts customer currency codes and address book amounts. In the Sales Order Management system, the address book amounts are the customer limit amounts for minimum and maximum order values. This document describes how the conversion program converts and rounds limit amounts for minimum and maximum order values. For additional information about the Euro Address Book Conversion program, see *Converting Customer Currency Codes and Amounts* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide*.

When you enter minimum and maximum order values for a customer, you typically enter them as rounded numbers, which are stored without decimals in the Customer Master table. When you convert minimum and maximum order values to a different currency, you must specify a rounding factor amount in the processing options. For example, to round converted minimum and maximum order amounts to the nearest 50, you specify a rounding factor of 50. To round converted amounts to the nearest 100, you specify a rounding factor of 100, and so on.

Example: How Converted Limit Amounts Are Rounded

The following example shows how the Euro Address Book Conversion program rounds converted limit amounts when converting from Canadian dollars (CAD) to U.S. dollars (USD). For this example, the exchange rate of 1 CAD = .67092 USD and the rounding factor in the processing option is 50.

The conversion program rounds converted limit amounts up or down, as described in the following examples.

Round Up

The conversion program converts 12,000 CAD to 17,886 USD. It rounds up 17,886 to 17,900, based on the following calculation:

Converted Amount / Divisor = Q with a remainder of R. If R is greater than or equal to one-half of the rounding factor, then subtract R from the divisor and add that amount to the converted amount.

In the example, $17,886 \text{ USD} / 50 = 357$ with a remainder of 36. 36 is greater than one-half of 50 (25). Subtract 36 from 50 ($50 - 36 = 14$) and add 14 to 17,886 to get a rounded value of 17,900.

Round Down

The conversion program converts 8,000 CAD to 11,924 USD. It rounds down 11,924 USD, based on the following calculation:

Converted Amount / Divisor = Q with a remainder of R. If R is less than one-half of the rounding factor, then subtract R from the converted amount.

In the example, $11,924 \text{ USD} / 50 = 238$ with a remainder 24. 24 is less than one-half of 50 (25). Subtract 24 from 11,924 to get a rounded value of 11,900.

Reposting Orders

You can set up a version of the Repost Active Sales Orders program to recommit future sales orders and repost active sales orders. Each function performs a separate set of activities.

Reposting orders includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Recommiting future sales orders
- ☐ Restoring active orders

The program does not restore or recalculate information for the following:

- Non-inventory items
- Orders that contain kit components
- Cancelled detail lines
- Orders that are missing header information

Caution: J.D. Edwards strongly recommends that you run the Repost Active Sales Orders program when no one is on the system. In OneWorld, the system does not lock records. Therefore, if a sales order record is being accessed during an update, the record might not process correctly.

Recommiting Future Sales Orders

When you recommit future orders, you can specify that the system do the following:

- Check customer credit limits on future sales orders
- Hard-commit items on future sales orders
- Put future sales orders on hold for review

When you recommit future sales orders, the system compares the item promised date against the sales order entry date, plus the number specified as commitment days in the Branch/Plant Constants. For example, if you enter a sales order for a bike on 06/05/05, and specify the promised date as 06/12/05, with five commitment days in the branch/plant constants, the system performs the following calculation:

$$06/12/05 > (06/05/05 + 5 \text{ days}) = \text{future commit}$$

Because the item promised date (06/12/05) is greater than the sales order entry date (06/05/05), plus the number of commitment days specified in the Branch/Plant Constants (that is, 5), the system future commits the order. When the promised date of the item is equal to the sales order entry date plus the number of commitment days, the system relieves the future committed order.

When the recommit procedure is complete, you can print a report that lists each detail line that has future-committed items. This is helpful if you want updated information about future commitments.

Restoring Active Orders

You run a repost in the event of an unusual circumstance, such as a system failure. Reposting all active orders clears all commitments from locations and restores the commitments based on quantities from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). This provides a clean-up of all active orders (even those on hold) and resolves any discrepancies in the availability calculation resulting from changes to commitments at print pick slip, ship confirm, and invoicing.

You can have the system clear and then recalculate the following quantity information for items, depending on how you set the following processing options:

- Update item quantities in the Item Location table with information from the Sales Order Detail table
- Update order totals in the Sales Order Header table with information from the Sales Order Detail table
- Update the open order total in the customer billing instructions from the Sales Order Detail table

The system always includes items on hold during this procedure.

Processing Options: Repost Active Sales Orders (R42995)

Recommit Tab

These processing options help you determine what functions the system performs when you recommit active and future sales orders. When you recommit future orders, you can specify that the system check customer credit limits, hard-commit items or put orders on hold for review.

1. Hard Commit Future Orders

Use this processing option to specify whether the system hard commits items on future sales orders. Valid values are:

Blank Do not hard commit items on future sales orders.

1 Hard commit items on future sales orders.

When you recommit future sales orders, the system compares the promised date of the items against the sales order entry date plus the number of commitment days that you specify in Branch/Plant Constants.

2. Credit Check Hold Code

Use this processing option to specify the hold code that the system uses to check customer credit limits on future sales orders. You must use a hold orders code that is set up in user defined code table 42/HC.

3. Future Orders Hold Code

Use this processing option to specify the hold code that the system uses on all future sales orders.

You must use a hold code that has been set up in user defined code table 42/HC.

4. Sales Order Entry (P4210) Version

Use this processing option to specify the version of the Sales Order Entry program (P4210) the system uses to update the sales order. If you need to check availability, use a version that has the Check Availability processing option activated.

Repost Tab

These processing options help you determine the functions the system performs when you repost active and future sales orders. Use these processing options to specify whether the system will perform functions such as updating commitments, order header totals, and open order amounts.

1. Bypass Recommitting Future Orders

Use this processing option to specify whether the system will bypass the recommitment of future orders when sales orders are reposted. Valid values are:

Blank The system recommits future orders.

1 The system bypasses the recommitment of future orders.

If you set this option to 1, this program will function as a repost only and will not recommit future orders regardless of how you have set other processing options.

2. Bypass Item Commitment Update

Use this processing option to specify whether the system bypasses the update of the commitment fields from the Item Location table (F41021) upon reposting active sales orders. Valid values are:

Blank The system updates the commitment fields.

1 The system bypasses the update of the commitment fields.

If you have left this option blank, the system updates the commitment fields with the quantities from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) and resets the availability calculation if changes to commitments were made at print pick slip, ship confirm and invoicing.

The system always processes cancelled lines and includes items on hold in the update.

3. Bypass Order Header Update

Use this processing option to specify whether the system bypasses the update of the order header total from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) when you repost active sales orders. Valid values are:

Blank The system updates the order header total.

1 The system bypasses the update of the order header total.

If you leave this option blank, the system updates the order header table with the accumulated total from the Sales Order Detail table.

The system always includes items on hold in the update.

4. Bypass Customer Open Order Amount

Use this processing option to specify whether the system bypasses the update of the customer open order amount from the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) when you repost active sales orders. Valid values are:

Blank The system updates the customer open order amount.

1 The system bypasses the update of the customer open order amount.

If you leave this option blank, the system updates the open order amount with the accumulated total from the Sales Order Detail table and also updates the Customer Master table (F0301).

The system always includes items on hold in the update.

Reviewing and Approving Journal Entries

You can ensure the accuracy of your sales transaction records by reviewing the G/L entries that the Update Customer Sales program creates before you post them to the General Ledger.

The Update Customer Sales program groups transactions into different types of batches for posting to journals:

Customer sales (batch type IB)

Posts the sales, cost of goods sold, and inventory entries to the Customer Sales Journal.

The system creates batch type IB when the summarization processing options in Update Customer Sales program (R42800) is set to write G/L entries in summary or detail.

Inventory/COGS (batch type G)

Posts to the Inventory/COGS Journal.

The system creates batch type G for inventory and COGS entries when the summarization processing options in Update Customer Sales (R42800) are set to summarize your COGS and inventory entries to a separate batch.

You can review the information in each batch at three different levels:

General batch review

Displays batches by user ID, batch status, batch number, and entry date range.

Detailed batch review

Displays journal entry header information, such as invoice number, document type, and gross amount for a single batch.

Individual journal entries review

Displays journal entry detail information, such as the amount charged to a cost of goods sold, inventory, or revenue account.

You use this information to do the following:

- Review information that is specific to each batch, such as status and date range
- Add and make changes to transactions within a batch
- Change the status of a batch

Technical Considerations

Limitations for changing transactions

You cannot change the following information for transactions:

- Document type
- Document number
- Document company
- G/L date
- Currency code
- Ledger type

See Also

- *Reviewing Journal Entries* and *Posting Journal Entries* in the *General Accounting Guide*



To review and approve journal entries

From the End of Day Processing menu (G4213), choose a journal review form.

1. On Work with Batches, to locate entries, choose the following search criteria and click Find:
 - Batch Number / Type
 - All Batches
 - Posted Batches
 - Unposted Batches
2. Review the following fields:
 - Batch Type
 - Batch Number
 - Batch Date
 - Batch Status
3. To approve entries, choose Batch Approval from the Row menu.

4. Choose either of the following options:
- Approved – Batch is ready to post
 - Pending – Batch is not ready to post

Field	Explanation
Batch Status	<p>A user defined code (system 98/type IC) that indicates the posting status of a batch.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> blank Unposted batches that are pending approval or have a status of approved. A Approved for posting. The batch has no errors, is in balance, but has not yet been posted. D Posted. The batch posted successfully. E Error. The batch is in error. You must correct the batch before it can post. P Posting. The system is posting the batch to the general ledger. The batch is unavailable until the posting process is complete. If errors occur during the post, the batch status is changed to E (error). U In use. The batch is temporarily unavailable because someone is working with it. <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Click one of the following options to show records by batch status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unposted Batches • Posted Batches • All Batches

Field	Explanation
All Batches	<p>A user defined code (system 98/type IC) that indicates the posting status of a batch.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">blank Unposted batches that are pending approval or have a status of approved.A Approved for posting. The batch has no errors, is in balance, but has not yet been posted.D Posted. The batch posted successfully.E Error. The batch is in error. You must correct the batch before it can post.P Posting. The system is posting the batch to the general ledger. The batch is unavailable until the posting process is complete. If errors occur during the post, the batch status is changed to E (error).U In use. The batch is temporarily unavailable because someone is working with it. <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Click one of the following options to show records by batch status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Unposted Batches• Posted Batches• All Batches
Posted Batches	<p>A user defined code (system 98/type IC) that indicates the posting status of a batch.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">blank Unposted batches that are pending approval or have a status of approved.A Approved for posting. The batch has no errors, is in balance, but has not yet been posted.D Posted. The batch posted successfully.E Error. The batch is in error. You must correct the batch before it can post.P Posting. The system is posting the batch to the general ledger. The batch is unavailable until the posting process is complete. If errors occur during the post, the batch status is changed to E (error).U In use. The batch is temporarily unavailable because someone is working with it. <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Click one of the following options to show records by batch status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Unposted Batches• Posted Batches• All Batches

Field	Explanation
Unposted Batches	<p>A user defined code (system 98/type IC) that indicates the posting status of a batch.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> blank Unposted batches that are pending approval or have a status of approved. A Approved for posting. The batch has no errors, is in balance, but has not yet been posted. D Posted. The batch posted successfully. E Error. The batch is in error. You must correct the batch before it can post. P Posting. The system is posting the batch to the general ledger. The batch is unavailable until the posting process is complete. If errors occur during the post, the batch status is changed to E (error). U In use. The batch is temporarily unavailable because someone is working with it. <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Click one of the following options to show records by batch status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unposted Batches • Posted Batches • All Batches
Batch Type	<p>A code that indicates the system and type of entries for a batch. This is a user defined code (98,IT).</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>To limit your search to specific transactions, such as G for general accounting entries or V for accounts payable vouchers, enter the transaction batch type in this field. If you want to see a specific batch, you must enter both the batch number and type.</p>
Batch Number / Type	<p>A number that identifies a group of transactions that the system processes and balances as a unit. When you enter a batch, you can either assign a batch number or let the system assign it through Next Numbers. When you change, locate, or delete a batch, you must specify the batch number.</p>
Batch Date	<p>The date of the batch. If you leave this field blank, the system date is used.</p>
Approved – Batch is ready to post	<p>A code that indicates whether a batch is ready for posting. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A Approved, ready for posting. P Pending approval. The batch will not post. <p>If the system constants do not specify manager approval, the system automatically approves batches that are not in error.</p>

Processing Options for General Journal by Account

Account Mode

1 = Account Number 2 = Short Account
ID

3 = Unstructured Account 4 =
Number entered

Units

Enter '1' to print units.

Posting Journal Entries

After you enter, review, and approve journal entries, post them to the general ledger. Posting journal entries consists of:

- ☐ Posting batches of journal entries
- ☐ Verifying the post of journal entries

Posting Batches of Journal Entries

After you review and approve a batch of journal entries, you can use the Post General Ledger (Pre-Post) program to edit and post each type of transaction.

This program also edits transaction batches for the Account Ledger table (F0911) and updates the batch status to allow the system to post transactions to the Account Balances table (F0902). If any errors occur during editing, the system assigns an error status to the batch and does not post it.

Optionally, you can update tax information for the Tax Work File (F0018). If the system does not update the tax file or if the tax file does not get updated correctly, you can not repost this information.

After you post your journal entries, verify that your batches of journal entries posted successfully. The program creates a variety of messages and reports to help you verify the posting information.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the batch has an approved status.
- ☐ Ensure that the job queue allows only one job to process at a time.



To post batches of journal entries

From the End of Day Processing menu (G4213), choose a post option.

1. On Work with Batch Versions, select the appropriate version.
2. If necessary, set up the processing options.

After you initially set up the processing options, changes are typically not needed.

3. On Version Prompting, choose the Data Selection option and click the Submit button.
4. On Criterion Selection, choose the Batch Status, then choose <Literal>.
5. On the Literal form, enter the approval code (A) and click OK. Then click the Update button.
6. To change the batch type, follow the same procedure for the batch status, but choose the Batch Type field on Criterion Design.
7. On Processing Options, click OK.
8. When the post is complete, the program displays the report on the screen or send the report to a print, depending on your destination.

Additional Considerations

Posting interbranch sales

When the system posts interbranch sales transactions for different companies, the system creates intercompany settlement entries through the post program to balance accounts in the two companies.

Making changes during the post process

While the post is running, do not change accounts, AAIs for the Sales Order Management system or processing options for the post program.

Customizing the post program

This program performs a number of complex tasks. J.D. Edwards strongly recommends that you do not customize the programming for it.

Processing Options for General Ledger Post Report

Print

- 1) Enter which Account Number to print on the report. '1' = Structured Account; '2' = Short Account ID; '3' = Unstructured Account; ' ' = Default Account Format.

Account Format

Versions

- 1) Enter a version of the Detailed Currency Restatement (R11411) to execute. If left blank, Detailed Currency Restatement entries will not be created. (i.e. ZJDE0001)

Detailed Currency Restatement
Version

- 2) Enter a version of the Fixed Asset Post (R12800) to execute. If left blank, Fixed Asset Post will not be executed. (i.e. ZJDE0001)

Fixed Asset Post Version

- 3) Enter a version of the 52 Period Post (R098011) to execute. If left blank, 52 Period Post will not be executed. (i.e. ZJDE0001)

52 Period Post Version

Edits

- 1) Enter a '1' if you wish to update Account ID, Company, Fiscal Year, Period Number, Century, and Fiscal Quarter in records being posted, prior to editing and posting the records.

Update Transaction

Taxes

- 1) Enter when to update the Tax File (F0018). '1' = V.A.T. or Use Tax only; '2' = for all Tax Amounts; '3' = for all Tax Explanation Codes; ' ' = no update to Tax File (Default).

Update Tax File

- 2) Adjust V.A.T. Account for Discount Taken. The Tax Rules file must be set to Calculate Tax on Gross Amount, including Discount and Calculate Discount on Gross Amount, including Tax. Tax explanation must be a 'V'.

'1' = Update VAT only; '2' =
Update VAT, Ext. Price and
Taxable

- 3) Adjust V.A.T Account for Receipt Adjustments and Write Offs. Tax explanation must be a 'V'.

'1' = Update VAT only; '2' =
Update VAT, Ext. Price and
Taxable

Process

Enter a '1' if you wish to explode
parent item time down to the
assembly component level. Component

billing rates will be used. (This applies to batch type 'T' only.)

Explode parent item time.

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Posting tax information You can specify the information that the system updates in the Tax Work table (F0018). You can choose the option the tax work file for all tax explanation codes for complete reporting.

If you update the tax work file with VAT (GST) and self-assessed PST (use tax), the system only updates tax information for explanation codes V, U, C, and B.

If you update the tax work file with non-zero tax amounts, the system will not include tax exempt information, zero-rated items, and any items with a zero tax amount for tax explanation codes V, B, C, U, or S.

For more information on taxes, see *Setting Up Sales Tax Information*.

Adjusting VAT amounts for discounts If you have set up your tax rules to Calculate Tax based on the Gross Amount, including Discount and Calculate Discount on the Gross Amount, including Tax, the system adjusts VAT in the G/L and the tax work file when a discount is taken on the invoice where tax was originally calculated on the gross amount.

This adjustment only applies to tax explanation code V.

For more information on taxes, see *Setting Up Sales Tax Information*.

Adjusting VAT amounts for receipt adjustments and write-offs You can specify if the system updates only the VAT amount or the VAT amount, the extended cost, and the taxable amount.

This adjustment only applies to tax explanation code V.

For more information on taxes, see *Setting Up Sales Tax Information*.

Verifying the Post of Journal Entries

After posting your journal entries, verify that your batches of journal entries posted successfully. If any batches did not post, you must correct all errors and set the batch to approved status before the program will post the batch. The program creates a variety of messages and reports to help you verify the posting information.

Complete the following tasks:

- Review your electronic mail for error messages
- Review the General Ledger Post report

See Also

- *Reviewing Journal Entries* in the *General Accounting Guide* for more information about working with batches

Reviewing Your Electronic Mail for Messages

The program sends messages to your electronic mail in the Employee Work Center when there are errors and when the job completes normally. After you run the post program, you should check your electronic mail to determine the status of the job. If the job did not complete normally, review the error messages. Typically, one message notifies you that the job had errors, followed by one or more detailed messages defining the errors.

From error messages, you can access the Work With Batches form, which allows you to locate problems and make changes interactively.

Reviewing the General Ledger Post Report

To verify the transactions that were posted to the Account Balances and the Account Ledger tables, review the General Ledger Post report.

The General Ledger Post report lists batches that posted successfully. At the end of the report, if one or more batches contained errors, the report also includes a text box to alert you that the program found errors. You should review your electronic mail for messages that provide more detail. From there, you can access the Work With Batches and Journal Entry forms, where you can correct errors.

Purging Data

When data becomes obsolete or you need more disk space, you can use purge programs to remove data from tables.

OneWorld provides purges for removing data from tables where the selection criteria needs to be more specific. Purges are programs that have predefined criteria that the system checks before removing any data so that you avoid removing associated data that is located in other tables.

Purging data consists of:

- Specifying the information to delete
- Running the purge program
- Running the table reorganization program to rebuild the table structure

Purging data involves the following tasks:

- ☐ Running the Sales Order Header purge
- ☐ Running the Extended Text purge
- ☐ Running the Batch Receiver purge
- ☐ Running Detail to History

Before You Begin

- ☐ Back up the tables that will be affected.
- ☐ Determine the data that you want to purge.
- ☐ Verify that no users are working with the data that you want to purge and reorganize.

Running the Sales Order Header Purge

Use the Sales Order Header purge to purge sales order header records from the Sales Order Header file. Records are purged from the Sales Order Header table only if no open detail lines with a matching order type and order number combination exist in the Sales Order Detail file. In addition to purging records, you can optionally move information to the Sales Order Header History file. You specify in the processing options whether you want to move information.

Running the Extended Text Purge

You use the Extended Text Purge to delete specific information from the Text Line table (F4314).

This purge checks the Sales Order Detail and the Purchase Order Detail tables for open detail lines with matching order type and order number combinations. One of the following occurs:

- If the system does not find matching records, it deletes the extended text from the Text Line table.
- If the system finds matching records, it deletes the Extended Text from the Text Line table only if the matching detail tables have a status of 999.

Technical Considerations

Purging active order lines

The Extended Text Purge removes closed text lines only if all other lines on the order are closed. Order lines whose status is not 999 cannot be purged.

You can use the Sales Order Text Lines program to change the status of text lines to 999 (closed) on orders with no open detail lines. You use this program only if you have not set up the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to purge text lines for closed orders.

Running the Batch Receiver Purge

Delete processed sales orders from the batch receiver tables by using the Batch Order files purge. The system selects only records with Y in the Processed (Y/N) field of the batch receiver tables.

This purge does not remove records from the Destination Quantity table (F4012Z) or the Unmappable Data table (F4014Z). Use the general purge program to remove data from these tables.

Running Detail to History

Run the Detail to History program to purge detail lines with a status of 999 from the Sales Order Detail table and move them to the Sales Order History table.

You can run this program when you update customer sales.

See Also

- *Updating Sales Information*

Periodic



Pricing

For each item that you want to sell, you must define the price at which you want to sell it. You use Sales Order Management pricing to define the base prices that the system retrieves when you enter items on a sales order.

Pricing includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up a base pricing structure
- ☐ Setting up base prices
- ☐ Working with complex price groups
- ☐ Working with standard price adjustments
- ☐ Updating base prices
- ☐ Generating new base prices in a different currency

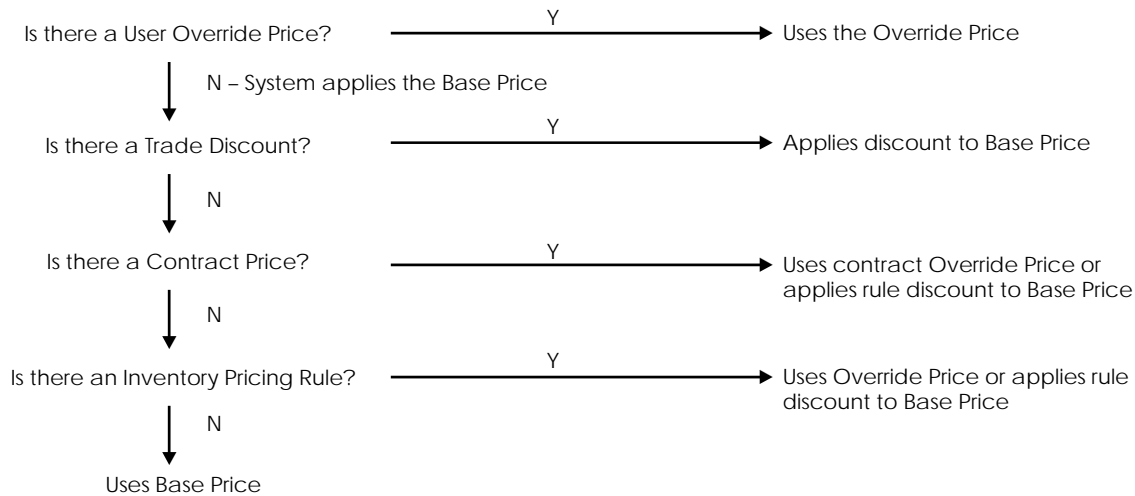
You can set up a pricing structure before you define base prices. The system uses this pricing structure to retrieve base prices. The base price structure must be flexible enough to accommodate the pricing schemes that you set up for various combinations of items and customers. You can set up customer groups and item groups and assign prices to any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups. You define a hierarchy to determine how the system searches for prices.

After you establish a base price, you can set up the following additional types of price calculations:

- Price adjustments for groups of items
- Contract pricing, which applies special pricing for an item to a single customer or customer group
- Trade discount pricing, which is a discount percentage on all items for a specific customer
- Cash discount pricing, which you can apply to individual sales order detail lines



The following graphic illustrates how the system calculates prices:



Pricing can be based on the Parent, Ship To, or Sold To address. You can define base prices with effective dates, so that you can define prices for future use or for limited time promotions and specials. You can also define credit prices that you want the system to use when items are returned.

To allow for greater flexibility in your pricing structure, you can define complex customer and item groups. Within each customer or item group, you can create subgroups based on specific address book records and item category codes.

After you define base prices, you can update them as needed (for example, to change a price or create a price that will be effective on a future date). You can use the Base Price Revisions program to update base prices individually. Or, you can run the Base Price Maintenance - Batch program to update multiple prices at one time.

You use the Update Sales Price/Cost program (P42950) to update prices for a customer. You can also use this process to update the unit and extended costs of items on sales orders with the most current costs. If multicurrency processing is activated in your system, the system also updates the foreign unit and extended costs fields.

Setting Up a Base Pricing Structure

For each item that you sell, you must define the base price at which you want to sell it. The system retrieves this price when you enter an item on a sales order.

You can define the base price for an item or any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups. To simplify the process of defining and maintaining base prices, you set up price groups for customers and items with similar characteristics.

Complete the following tasks to set up a base pricing structure:

- ☐ Set up customer price groups
- ☐ Set up item price groups
- ☐ Define the pricing hierarchy

When the system retrieves prices, it uses the hierarchy for the Base Price Preference (51) to determine the order in which the system searches for base price records. If you create item and customer groups, you can define the search sequence of the Base Price Preference Hierarchy so that the system searches item and customer group combinations as well as item and customer combinations.

Setting Up Customer Price Groups

You set up customer price groups to apply pricing schemes to specific groups of customers. Price groups are an optional way of organizing your pricing schemes. You can set up customer price groups to enter and update price information for multiple customers at once rather than individually.

For example, you can create a customer price group for your preferred customers, named PREFER, who can purchase a bike for \$420 USD, while other customers buy the bike at \$450 USD.

A simple price group is a group of customers that are assigned to the same group name in the customer billing instructions. In Base Pricing, a customer can belong to only one customer price group.

To allow for greater pricing flexibility, you can set up complex customer price groups. Complex price groups are groups of customers that are assigned to a group name, but might be part of a different subgroup. You can define subgroups in a complex price group with values that you assign to category codes such as customer geographic location, line of business, or sales volume.

With complex price groups, customers can belong to the same group but have different prices based on category codes, such as geographic location.

In Advanced Pricing, a customer can belong to a customer group without being attached to that group in Customer Billing Instructions. A customer can belong to numerous groups, depending on the customer's category codes.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up price group names in the user defined codes table (40/PC).

► To set up customer price groups

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, find the customer to assign to a group and click Select.
2. On Customer Master Information, click the Billing Page 1 tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Customer Billing Instructions' window with the 'Billing Page 1' tab selected. The window contains several input fields and a list of options. The 'Customer Number' is 4242, 'Long Address Number' is empty, and 'Company' is 00000. The 'Billing Address Type' is set to 'X'. The 'Bill To and Ship To Address' is 'Parent'. The 'Wholesale/Distributor' and 'Retail Customers' options are both selected. The 'Customer Price Group' is 'RETAIL'. The 'Minimum Order Value' is 1,500. The 'Maximum Order Value' is empty. The 'Print Message' is 'Blank'. The 'Order Template' is 'BIKES'. The 'Credit Check Level' is 'C'. The 'Customer (Sold To)' is empty. The 'Billing Page 1' tab is active, showing a list of options with checkboxes. The options are: Customer PO Required (checked), Exempt from Credit Hold (checked), Delivery Note (checked), Invoice Consolidation (checked), Backorders Allowed (checked), Substitutes Allowed (checked), Partial Shipments Allowed (checked), Partial Order Shipments Allowed (checked), Price Pick List (checked), Apply Freight (checked), and Certificate Of Analysis Print (unchecked).

3. Complete the following field:
 - Customer Price Group
4. Assign category codes for complex price groups.

See *Working with Complex Customer Price Groups* for more information.

Setting Up Item Price Groups

Item price groups are similar to customer price groups. You set up item price groups so that you can define base price information for a group of items rather than for many items on an individual basis.

You can set up item price groups to enter and update price information for multiple items rather than updating items individually. For example, you can group similar bikes of different colors, named BIKES, and define one price for this group.

A simple price group is a group of items that are assigned to the same group name in the Item Master or Item Branch/Plant Information. In Base Pricing, an item can belong to only one item price group.

To allow for greater pricing flexibility, you can set up complex item price groups. Complex price groups are groups of items that are assigned to a group name, but might be part of a different subgroup. You can define subgroups in a complex price group with values that you assign to category codes, such as commodity class or item pool code.

With complex price groups, customers can belong to the same group but have different prices based on category codes, such as geographic location.

In Advanced Pricing, an item can belong to a detail group without being attached to that group in Item Branch/Plant Information. An item can belong to numerous groups, depending on the category codes.

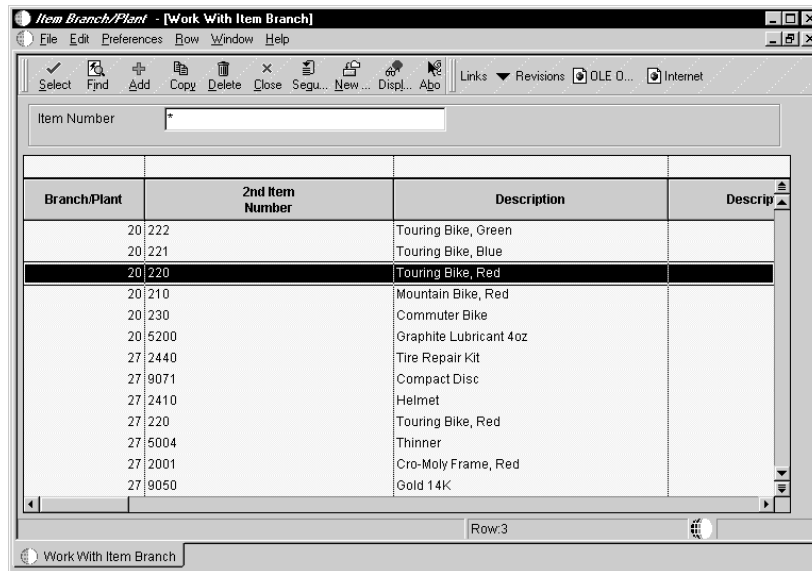
Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up price group names in the user defined codes table (40/PI).

To set up item price groups

From the Inventory Masters/Transactions menu (G4111), choose Item Branch/Plant Information.

1. On Work with Item Branch, find the item to assign to a price group and choose Item/Branch Info from the Row menu.



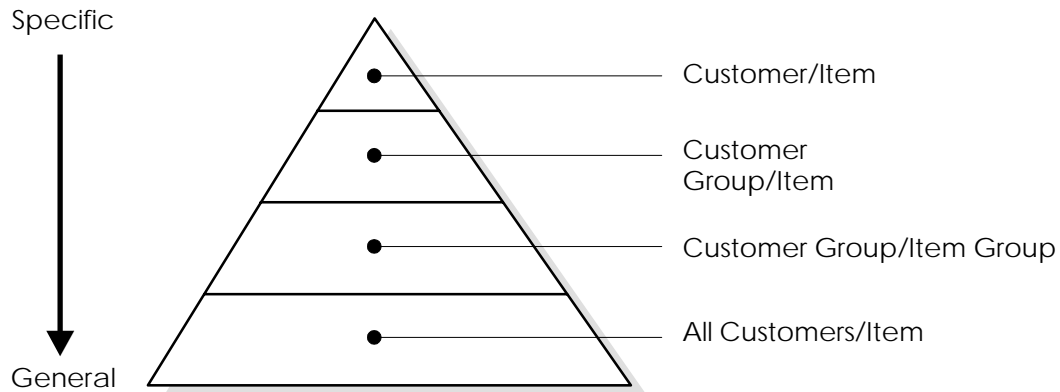
2. On Item Branch Info., click the Additional Info tab.
3. Complete the following field and click OK:
 - Item Price Group
4. Assign category codes for complex price groups.

See *Working with Complex Item Price Groups* for more information.

Defining the Pricing Hierarchy

When the system retrieves the base price, it uses the hierarchy that you set up for the Base Price Preference (51) to determine the sequence that it searches base price records. The base price hierarchy is a matrix comprised of combinations of customers and items and customer and item price groups. You use the intersection of the rows and columns to determine your sequence with which the system retrieves the base price.

J.D. Edwards recommends that you set up your pricing hierarchy from most-specific to most-general. Most specific is usually as shown in the following item/customer illustration.



Caution: It is possible to enter up to 14 numbers in the preference hierarchy. However, you should limit your hierarchy to three or four numbers. Each number represents a search by the system through the Base Price table (F4106). Therefore, each number that you add to the hierarchy increases system processing time.

► To define the pricing hierarchy

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Preference Hierarchy.

1. On Work with Preference Hierarchy, to access the Base Price Preference Hierarchy Revisions, click Find.
2. Select Preference Type 51, Base Price.

Preference Type	Base Price	Item Number	Item Group
Ship To			
Sold To		1	
		2	3
Parent			
All Customers		4	

3. On Preference Hierarchy Revisions, type consecutive numbers at the intersections of rows and columns to define the base pricing hierarchy (51).

Setting Up Base Prices

The system retrieves the base price information when you enter the item on a sales order. You can define base prices for any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups.

Setting up base prices includes the following tasks:

- Defining base prices
- Copying base prices
- Adjusting base prices

When you enter an item in the Item Master table (F4101), you should enter the sales price level. The sales price level determines how you define the base price for an item. You can define prices at the following levels:

Item level	Define one overall price for an item. You cannot include branch/plant, lot, or location information.
Item/Branch level	Define different prices for each item/branch combination. You cannot include location and lot information.
Item/Branch/Location level	If you define pricing by location and lot, you can also define branch/plant information.

When you define any special pricing or discounts for an item or customer, the system bases the calculation of the discounted price on the base price.

You can assign effective dates when you define the base price for an item. If you do not assign effective dates, the system will assign them. You also specify the sales price based-on date in the system constants to determine which date on the sales order to compare to the effective dates. The sales price based-on date can be the promised date, the order date, or the date that you define in the system constants. The system retrieves the price whose effective date range includes this sales price based-on date.

You can also use effective dates to enter a new price while an old price is still in effect. For example, you can overlap the dates for the base price and the dates for a discount price that you are offering for a limited period. When you set up date ranges that overlap, the system retrieves the price that expires first.

For every price, you can also define a credit price to use for negative quantities.

You can use Sales Order Management pricing to add prices for items in your domestic currency and as many other currencies as necessary. For example, you can set up base prices for one item in U.S. dollars and French francs. Currency code and unit of measure are both keys to the Base Price table. If you are using multi-currency, the system searches for a price in the following sequence:

- Customer's currency and the user-specified unit of measure
- Customer's currency and the item's primary unit of measure
- Domestic currency and the user-specified unit of measure
- Domestic currency and the item's primary unit of measure

If the system does not find a match, it moves to the next level in the pricing hierarchy structure and searches in the same sequence.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the pricing hierarchy has been defined. See *Defining the Pricing Hierarchy*.

See Also

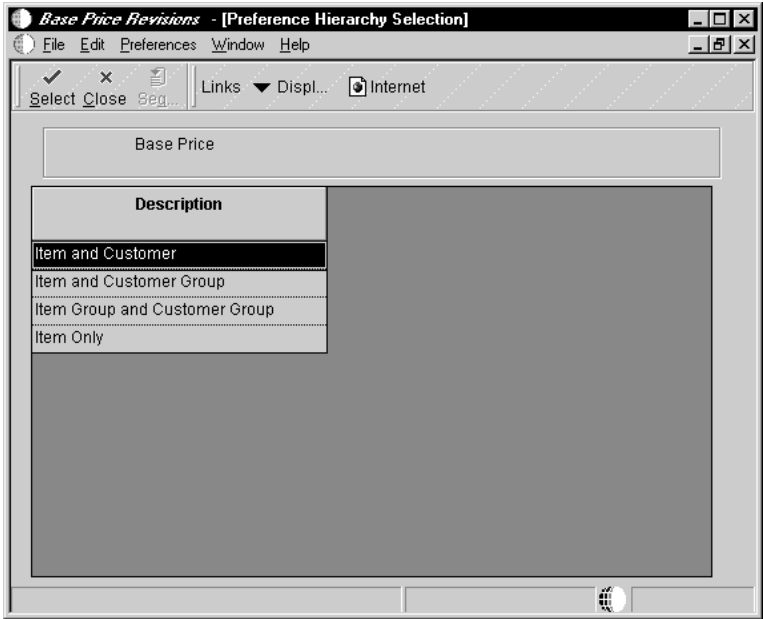
- *Generating New Base Prices in a Different Currency* for information about generating new base price records based on existing records

To define base prices

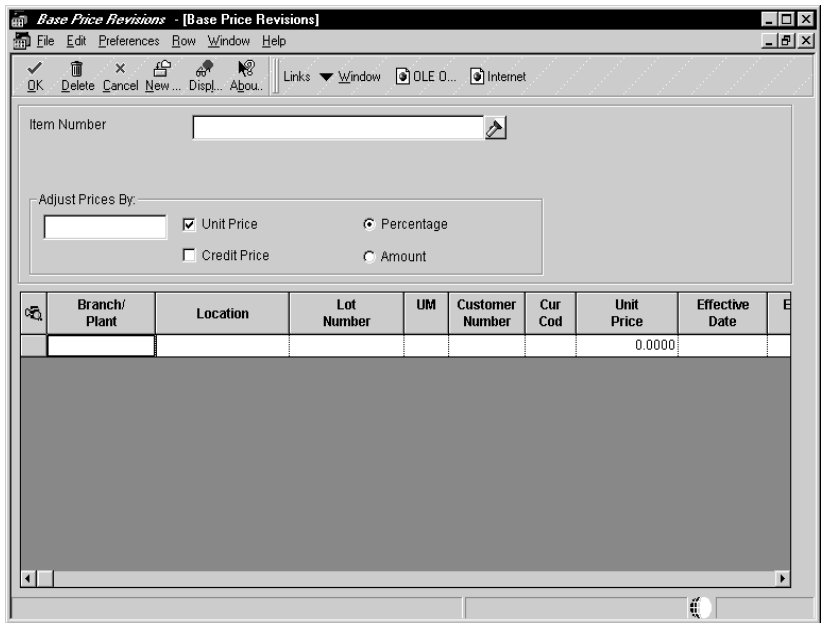
From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Base Price Revisions.

1. On Work with Preference Base Price, click Add.

The choices in the preference hierarchy selection are based on how you set up the base price preference hierarchy.



2. On Preference Hierarchy Selection, choose the hierarchy for which you want to define a price and click Select.



3. On Base Price Revisions, complete the following fields:

- Item Number
- Branch/ Plant
- Customer Number
- Cust. Price Group
- Item Price Group
- Date – Effective
- Date – Expired
- Unit Price

The fields in the Base Price Revisions form are based on your preference hierarchy selection. For example, if you choose to define a price for a customer group and item group, the system prompts you for the group information.

4. To enter credit prices, complete the following field:

- Amount – Credit Price

Field	Explanation
Item Number	The number assigned to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format.
Branch/ Plant	<p>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, branch, or plant.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, employee, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p>Note: The system uses the job number for journal entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</p>
Customer Number	A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, a location, and any other address book members.
Cust. Price Group	A user defined code (40/PC) that identifies a customer group. You can group customers with similar characteristics, such as comparable pricing.

Field	Explanation
Item Price Group	<p>A user defined code (40/PI) that identifies an inventory price group for an item.</p> <p>Inventory price groups have unique pricing structures that direct the system to incorporate discounts or markups on items on sales and purchase orders. The discounts or markups are based on the quantity, dollar amount, or weight of the item ordered. After you assign a price group to an item, the item uses the same pricing structure that was defined for the inventory price group.</p> <p>You must assign an inventory price group to the supplier or customer, as well as to the item, for the system to interactively calculate discounts and markups on sales orders and purchase orders.</p>
Date – Effective	The date when a transaction, text message, contract, obligation, preference, or policy rule becomes effective.
Date – Expired	The date on which a transaction, text message, agreement, obligation, or preference has expired or been completed.
Item Number	The number assigned to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format.
Unit Price	Enter a 1 in this control if you wish to update the unit price columns. A value of or 0 will prevent the unit price from being updated.
Amount – Credit Price	Use this field to enter credit orders in the Sales Order Management system. To enter a credit order, use a line type for which the Reverse Sign Flag (RSGN) is set to Y in the Line Type Master table (F40205). The system stores all credit prices in the Base Price table (F4106).

To copy base prices

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Base Price Revisions.

You can copy base price information for an item that belongs to an item group. The system duplicates pricing information but does not duplicate the item group information.

1. On Work with Preference Base Price, click Find to locate an item, or complete the following fields to narrow your search:
 - Item Number
 - Branch/ Plant
 - Cust. Number
 - Cust. Price Group
 - Item Price Group
2. Choose the row and click Copy.
3. On Base Price Revisions, complete the following field:
 - Item Number
4. To copy line information, choose the row that contains the pricing information that you want to copy.
5. From the Row menu, choose Copy Row(s).

The system adds the new price line to the bottom of the form.

6. Scroll to the bottom of the form and complete the following field:
 - Date – Expired

To adjust base prices

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Base Price Revisions.

1. On Work with Preference Base Price, click Find to locate an item, or complete the following fields to narrow your search:
 - Item Number
 - Branch/ Plant
 - Cust. Number
 - Cust. Price Group
 - Item Price Group
2. Choose the Row and click Select.

3. On Base Price Revisions, complete the following field
4. and choose an adjustment option:
 - Amount
 - Percentage
5. Click either or both of the following options:
 - Amount – Price per Unit
 - Credit Price
6. Highlight the rows to be adjusted.
7. From the Row menu, choose Adjust Price.

Field	Explanation
Percentage	A code that indicates whether the Factor Value is a multiplier (%) or an additional/deductable amount (A) when applied to an order's price.

Working with Complex Price Groups

To allow for greater flexibility in your pricing structure, you can define complex customer and item groups. Within each customer or item group, you can create subgroups based on attached category codes, such as specific item type, customer geographic location, line of business, or sales volume.

Working with price groups includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up complex customer price groups
- ☐ Setting up complex item price groups
- ☐ Generating price group relationships

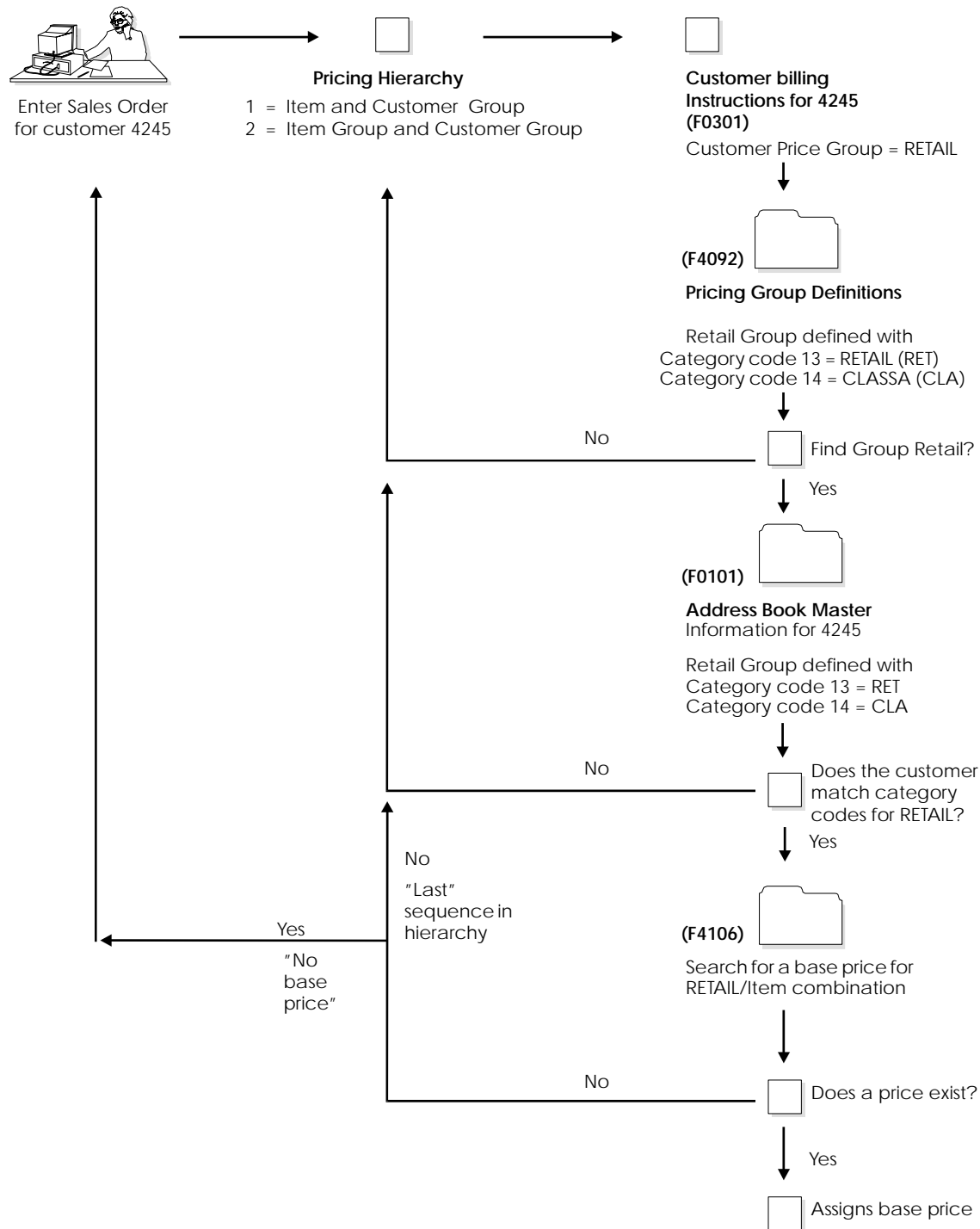
Setting Up Complex Customer Price Groups

You can set up complex customer groups to allow for greater flexibility in your pricing structures. You can use up to four category codes to set up complex customer groups.

The category code sequence you enter determines how the system displays the category code fields on the related forms. The order in which you choose category codes does not affect how the system searches for prices.

You can make changes to the category codes for a price group that has already been assigned to customers. However, if you change the customer price group definition, you must run a price group generation batch application.

Illustration: Using Complex Customer Price Groups in Base Pricing



Before You Begin

- Verify that you have set up price group names in the user defined codes table (40/PC).

► **To set up complex customer price groups**

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Define Customer Price Groups.

1. On Work With Price Group Definition, click Add.

2. On Customer Price Group Definition, complete the following fields and click OK:

- Price Group
- Category Code 30

3. Select up to four category codes in numerical order.

The Category Code fields might be numbered or named, such as Category Code 01 and Line of Business, depending on how your company has set them up.

4. Click OK.
5. To assign a group to a customer, access Customer Billing Instructions from the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241).
6. On Work with Customer Master, select the customer to whom you are assigning the price group.
7. On the Customer Master Information, click Billing Page 1 tab.
8. Complete the following field:
 - Customer Price Group

After you create complex price groups and attach the group name to the customer, you must generate price groups relationships.

Field	Explanation
Price Group	A user defined code (40/PC) that identifies a customer group. You can group customers with similar characteristics, such as comparable pricing.
Category Code 01	One of thirty reporting codes that you can assign to an address in the Address Book system. Use these codes to identify addresses for reports, mailings, and so on. Category codes are user-defined (system 01, types 01 through 30). Examples: Category code 01 – Location or Branch Category code 02 – Salesperson Category code 03 – New tenant Category code 04 – Credit officer

Setting Up Complex Item Price Groups

You can also set up complex item groups to allow for greater flexibility in your pricing structures. You can use up to four category codes to define complex item groups.

For example, if you have two types of pens (marker and ball point) within the group PENS, you can specify a different price for each type of pen. When you enter an order for pens, the system checks the category codes that are assigned to the item to determine if the pen is a marker or a ball point and then retrieves the appropriate price.

The category code sequence that you enter determines how the system displays the category code fields on the related forms. The order in which you choose category codes does not affect how the system searches for prices.

Note: You can only define up to four category codes for each group definition.

To set up complex item price groups

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Define Item Price Groups.

1. On Work With Price Group Definition, click Add.

2. On Item Price Group Definition, complete the following fields and click OK:

- Price Group
- Category Code 30

3. Select up to four category codes in numerical order.

The Category Code fields might be numbered or named, such as Category Code 01 and Line of Business, depending on how your company has set them up.

4. To assign a group to an item, access Item Branch/Plant Information from the Inventory Masters/Transactions menu (G4111) in the Inventory Management menu (G41).
5. On Work with Item Branch, choose the item that you are assigning to the price group.
6. On Item Branch/Plant Revisions, choose Additional Info from the Row menu.
7. Complete the following field:
 - Item Price Group

Generating Price Group Relationships

After you set up price groups and assign the group names to customers and items, you generate customer and item price group relationships. You generate price group relationships to define the possible combinations of customer and item groups that you can use for pricing.

You use two batch programs to generate price group relationships:

- Customer Price Group Generation (R40932)
- Item Price Group Generation (R40931)

These programs generate records in the Item/Customer Groups Relationships table, which contains the allowable combinations for customer or item groups and category codes. You can set the processing options to specify up to five group codes for which you want the system to create detail records. If you do not specify any codes, the system will generate relationships for all groups.

After you generate price group combinations, the system produces a report indicating any errors. A blank report indicates that no errors occurred during the generation process.

Working with Standard Price Adjustments

After you define base prices, you can set up the following additional types of price adjustments:

- Price adjustments for groups of items
- Contract pricing, which applies special pricing for an item to a single customer or customer group

To work with price adjustments, complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up inventory pricing rules
- ☐ Setting up trade discounts
- ☐ Setting up contract pricing

The system prices an order in the following sequence:

- Any item price that you enter in the order overrides the base price that the system retrieves. You can set processing options in Sales Order Entry Detail to protect the sales order detail price fields as well as price related fields.
- A trade discount that you define through customer billing instructions overrides all other pricing or repricing.
- A contract price for a specific customer takes precedence over a contract price for a group of customers. It also overrides other inventory pricing rules. If a contract price for a specific customer does not exist, the system searches for a contract price for a customer group.
- The system retrieves inventory pricing rules for a specific customer, if you have defined them, before it retrieves rules defined for a group of customers.
- If you do not define trade discounts, contract prices, or inventory pricing rules, the system retrieves the base price.

Setting Up Inventory Pricing Rules

You define pricing rules to set up a pricing scheme for an item or a group of items. An inventory pricing rule is a pricing rule that defines a price and quantity for a customer or customer group. For each item or item group, you define levels of pricing. You can determine price breaks by quantity. You can indicate whether the price adjustment is a markup or discount. You can set up contract prices to guarantee a price for a particular customer. You can also enter a price that you want the system to use to override the base price for a specified period.

Setting up inventory pricing rules includes the following tasks:

- Setting up pricing rules
- Assigning pricing rules to customers and customer groups

The system does not adjust prices until you assign a customer or customer group to an inventory pricing rule.

When you define inventory pricing rules, you enter the user defined codes that you previously set up for item price groups. To create new user defined codes for item price groups, you can choose the Inventory Pricing Groups option from the Price Management menu.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that item price groups have been set up. See *Setting Up Item Price Groups*.
- ☐ Verify that customer price groups have been set up. See *Setting Up Customer Price Groups*.
- ☐ Verify that you have set up pricing rules in user defined codes (40/PI).

► To set up pricing rules

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Setup Inventory Pricing Rules or Setup Customer Pricing Rules.

1. On Work with Pricing Rules, click Add.

ID	Level	Up To Quantity	Basis	Factor Value	Type	Override Price	Effective Date	Expiration Date	D
3		99,999,999	P	.8500	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	
2		499	P	.9000	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	
1		99	P	1.0000	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	

2. On Inventory Pricing Rules, complete the following fields:

- Pricing Rule
- Price Method

3. Complete the following fields:

- Level
- Up To Quantity
- Basis
- Factor Value
- Type
- Override Price
- Effective Date
- Expiration Date
- Description
- Reprice Line
- Base UOM

- Contract Quantity
 - Quantity Taken
 - Contract Reference
 - Related Price
4. To set up a pricing rule that includes free goods, complete the following fields:
- Free Goods Item Number
 - Line Type
 - Free Good Item Description
5. To review item information, choose Detail from the Row menu.

Field	Explanation																
Level	An alphanumeric code that determines the sequence in which the system displays the rules within the pricing group. You define levels when you set up the pricing groups.																
Up To Quantity	The volume or quantity breaks commonly used in pricing tables. If the quantity shown on the first level of a rule is 5, then the pricing logic shown on this level applies only to sales of five or fewer items. If the quantity shown in the next level is 10, then the pricing logic applies to sales of 6 through 10 items. 99,999,999 indicates all quantities.																
Basis	<p>A costing method on which the system bases the net price of the order.</p> <p>For pricing and repricing, valid values are:</p> <table><tr><td>1</td><td>Last-In Cost</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>Future Cost</td></tr><tr><td>P</td><td>Unit Price</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Average Cost</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>Lot Cost</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Memo Cost 1</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>Standard Cost</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>Current Cost</td></tr></table> <p>The system uses the method that you enter here to determine the order's net price.</p> <p>In sales order repricing, the system bases all reprice calculations on either the unit cost or price in the sales detail. Specify P if you want the system to use unit price in the sales order as the basis for reprice calculations. Otherwise, specify a value between 1 to 8 to use the unit cost in the sales detail as the base on value for all reprice calculations.</p>	1	Last-In Cost	5	Future Cost	P	Unit Price	2	Average Cost	6	Lot Cost	3	Memo Cost 1	7	Standard Cost	4	Current Cost
1	Last-In Cost																
5	Future Cost																
P	Unit Price																
2	Average Cost																
6	Lot Cost																
3	Memo Cost 1																
7	Standard Cost																
4	Current Cost																

Field	Explanation
Factor Value	The discount that the system uses when it calculates the price of an item attached to this inventory pricing rule. Discounts can be expressed as multipliers, additional amounts, or deductible amounts. For example, a 10% discount would be expressed as .90. You can use the same factor for markups over cost. For example, a 10% markup would be expressed as 1.10.
Type	A code that indicates whether the factor value is a multiplier (%) or an additional/deductible cash amount (\$) when applied to an order's price.
Override Price	Any price you enter here overrides all other rules or prices.
Reprice Line	<p>Code that is applicable only if you are using pricing method R (Basket Repricing). Y (yes) tells the system to apply the pricing rule to the unit and calculate the extended price. N (no) tells the system to write a new order detail line for the amount of the additional discount into the sales order.</p> <p>The Order Repricing Program (P421301) provides an option to reprice orders that had already been repriced. You can alter the results of this process by adjusting this field. If you would like to re-discount the order based on the original unit price, you must have this field set to N or blank PRIOR TO repricing the order. However, if you would like to re-discount based on the discounted unit price, set this field to Y to adjust the individual detail lines. For more detail on this process, please refer to the help instructions of the Order Repricing Program (P421301).</p>

Field	Explanation
Base UOM	<p>A code that indicates that the quantity limit is based on a special unit of measure. The default is 1 (primary unit of measure).</p> <p>For World, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1 Primary unit of measure2 Secondary unit of measure3 Purchasing unit of measure4 Pricing unit of measure5 Shipping unit of measure6 Weight7 Monetary (not quantity) limit <p>For OneWorld, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1 Primary unit of measure2 Secondary unit of measure3 Purchasing unit of measure4 Pricing unit of measure5 Shipping unit of measure# Weight\$ Monetary (not quantity) limit
Contract Quantity	<p>This quantity is established in the inventory pricing rules as the number of items that the customer may purchase from us at this contract price.</p>
Quantity Taken	<p>The number of units which have passed through the Sales Update process. In Workorder Processing, this field identifies the total quantity completed or consumed on a workorder to date basis.</p>
Contract Reference	<p>The number or identifier of the document on which this contract is based. Complete this field only if you are creating a contract price between you and a specific customer.</p>
Related Price	<p>The price of a related item in a pricing or discount policy. For example, with a policy of "Buy one, get one free," the free item is the related item. Enter this price in the unit of measure of the related item quantity.</p>
Free Goods Item Number	<p>The number assigned to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format.</p>

Field	Explanation
Line Type	<p>A code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces, such as General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management. It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. Codes include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S Stock item J Job cost N Nonstock item F Freight T Text information M Miscellaneous charges and credits W Work order
Free Good Item Description	<p>A description can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brief information about an item • A remark • An explanation

► To assign pricing rules to customers and customer groups

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Setup Inventory Pricing Rules or Setup Customer Pricing Rules.

1. On Work with Pricing Rules, click Add.
2. On Inventory Pricing Rules, complete the following fields:
 - Pricing Rule
 - Price Method
3. From the Form menu, choose Customer Rules.

Pricing Rule	Level	Up To Quantity	Basis	Factor Value	\$ %	Override Price	Effective Date	Expiration Date	Base UOM	Contract Quantity
BICYCLE	1	99	P	1.0000	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	1	
BICYCLE	2	499	P	.9000	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	1	
BICYCLE	3	99,999,999	P	.8500	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	1	

4. On Customer Pricing Rules, complete one of the following fields:
 - Customer Price Group
 - Customer Group/Number
5. Select the pricing level.
6. From the Row menu, choose Apply Level.

Setting Up Trade Discounts

A trade discount is the simplest way to offer a discount to a customer. The system applies the discount to all items sold to the customer. The trade discount overrides all other pricing. If a trade discount exists for a customer, the system does not apply any other discounts. You set up trade discount pricing through the customer billing instructions. You enter a flat percentage that the system applies to the order total.

Note: Trade discounts do not function with configured items that are entered on a sales order.

► To set up trade discounts

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, to access Customer Master Information, choose the customer and click Select.
2. On Customer Master Revisions, click the Billing Page 1 tab.

3. Complete the following fields to define invoice and related address information:
 - Billing Address Type
 - Related – Address Number
4. Complete the following fields:
 - Discount – Trade

Setting Up Contract Pricing

You can set up contract prices to guarantee a price for a particular customer. When you enter an order for a contract item, the system checks the remaining quantity to be sold at the contract price.

If the quantity on the order exceeds the remaining quantity allowed, the system writes two lines on the order:

- One line for the quantity at the contract price
- One line for the quantity at the regular price

You set up contract pricing by defining an inventory pricing rule and assigning the rule to a customer.

Note: You must use the item's short ID number in the user defined code table (40/PI) to identify the pricing rule.

► To set up contract pricing

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Inventory Pricing Rules or Customer Pricing Rules.

1. On Work with Pricing Rules, click Add.

Level	Up To Quantity	Basis	Factor Value	Type	Override Price	Effective Date	Expiration Date	D
3	99,999,999	P	.8500	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	
2	499	P	.9000	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	
1	99	P	1.0000	%		4/17/97	12/31/10	

2. On Inventory Pricing Rules, enter the short item number in the following field:
 - Pricing Rule
3. Complete the following fields:
 - Price Method
 - Contract Pricing (C)
4. Complete the following fields:
 - Pricing Category Level
 - Basis – For Cost or Price
 - Override Price
 - Factor Value
 - Base UOM
 - Contract Reference
 - Up To Quantity
 - Contract Quantity

Updating Base Prices

After you define base prices, you can update them as needed, for example, to change a price or create a price that will be effective on a future date. You can update base prices individually, or you can run the Batch Base Price Revisions (R41830) program to update multiple prices at one time. When you update multiple prices in batch mode, the system either overrides the existing price with a new price or calculates an adjustment to the existing price, depending on how you set the Item Sales Price Level Conversion processing options.

You update prices for a customer to recalculate sales orders based on the most current price or price adjustment. You might need to do this for items with volatile prices. You can also use this process to update the unit and extended costs of items on sales orders with the most current costs.

To update base prices, complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Update prices
- ☐ Update prices for a customer
- ☐ Convert price levels

Updating Prices

After you define base prices, you can update them as needed (for example, to change a price or create a price that will be effective on a future date). You can use the Base Price Revisions program to update base prices individually. Or, you can run the Batch Base Price Revisions (R41830) program to update multiple prices at one time.

Updating base prices includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Changing existing prices
- ☐ Creating future prices

The system creates new prices based on the valid price that is selected by the batch program. When you run a version of the Batch Base Price Revisions (R41830) program in proof mode, the system generates a report that displays the updates that the program will make to the selected records when you run it in final mode.

When you set up a version of this program, you choose the specific fields that you want the system to select. For example, you can set up a version to select customer, customer group, item, or item group. Or, you can exclude certain types of prices that you do not want to update.

Any new prices that the system creates are included in the report, as well as their effective dates and the old price that the system used as the basis for the new prices. You can run this program in proof mode as many times as necessary.

Changing Existing Prices

To change multiple prices, you can run the base price revisions version of the Batch Base Price Revisions (R41830) program. Depending on how you set the processing options, the program either overrides the existing price with a new price that you specify or calculates an adjustment to the existing price. The adjustment can be an addition, subtraction, or percentage adjustment.

When you run the base price revisions version in proof mode, the system generates a report that displays the updates that the program will make to the selected records when you run it in final mode. You must set the update processing option for this program to perform updates to the Base Price table (F4106).

Creating Future Prices

To create multiple base prices that you can use on a future date, you can run the future price additions version of the Batch Base Price Revisions (R41830) program. This version of the program writes new price records to the Base Price table that are based on the effective dates in the price additions processing option for this program. You must specify a from date and a through date or the program will end without creating the new prices.

When you run the future price additions version in proof mode, the system generates a report that displays the updates that the program will make to the selected records when you run it in final mode.

The system creates future prices based on the existing price with the most recent expiration date. Depending on how you set the processing options, the program either overrides the existing price with a new price that you specify or calculates an adjustment to the existing price. The adjustment can be an addition, subtraction, or percentage adjustment. If you leave the adjustment type and factor blank, the system copies future prices from the current price and does not apply any adjustments.

See Also

- *Generating New Base Prices in a Different Currency* for information about generating new base price records based on existing records

Processing Options for Base/Price Maintenance – Batch

UPDATE

1. Enter a '1' to perform updates
to the Base Price file. _____

ADJUSTMENTS

2. Enter the base price adjustment
type. _____

Type of Adjustment: 'A' Adjust
price by amount.

'%' Adjust price by percentage.

'*' Adjust price to an override
price.

3. Enter the amount used to add,
multiply, or override the price. _____

DATE

4. Enter the effective date and
expiration date for the creation of
new base price records. If left
blank, the selected price records
will be changed. NOTE : The
effective from date must be less
than expiration date.

- Effective From Date _____
- Expiration Date _____

Updating Prices for a Customer

You update prices for a customer to recalculate sales orders based on the most current price or price adjustment. You might need to do this for items with volatile prices. You can also use this process to update the unit and extended costs of items on sales orders with the most current costs. If multicurrency processing is activated in your system, the system also updates the foreign unit and extended costs fields.

Update Sales Price/Cost (F42950) is a batch program that you can use to:

Update sales order costs The system replaces the unit and extended costs in any open, unshipped orders with current costs from the Item Cost Ledger table (F4105).

Update sales order prices

The system recalculates the unit and extended prices in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) using the most current base price and price adjustments. The system bases this recalculation on the date that you enter in the processing options.

Replace sales order exchange rates

You can use this program to update the currency exchange rate that the system uses to calculate costs and prices on an order. The system replaces the currency exchange rate that was in effect at the time you entered the order with the existing currency exchange rate.

You can set the processing options for the Update Sales Price/Cost program to define which date on the sales order that the system uses to determine if it should recalculate costs or prices. For example, you can base the recalculations on the promised date. The system updates only those order lines with a promised date that is before or equal to today's date. Sales order prices can be updated more than once.

When you run the Update Sales Price/Cost program, the system updates the order detail information for open sales orders. The system can either replace the current price in the order detail line with the new price or the system can add a non-stock line for the difference between the current price and the new price. You must specify a non-stock line type in the processing options for the system to add an additional line. If you do not specify a line type, the system overrides the original price with the new price. The program disregards any special pricing discounts that you have previously defined for the customer or item.

You can specify dates or preferences on which all base price and advanced price adjustment recalculations are based.

If you specify that recalculations are based on preferences, the system calculates the adjustment based on information in the following preference:

- Order Preparation Days
- Delivery Date Preferences

After you run the Update Sales Price/Cost program, you can review the Sales Order Batch Price/Cost Update report, which details the changes to the original unit price and extended price on each sales order.

Note: You can set the Sales Cost Update processing options for the Update Customer Sales program (R42800) or Print Invoice program (R42565) to run the Update Sales Price/Cost program prior to creating G/L records when you print invoices or update sales information. The system updates all selected sales orders with current costs, exchange rates, and prices before it creates G/L records.

Processing Options for Sale Order Batch Price/Cost Update

Cost Options

Enter a '1' to update sales order with most current unit cost. (Any other value will leave cost unchanged.)

Enter a '1' to update the currency exchange rate (only domestic amounts will be recalculated).

Enter a blank to leave unchanged.

Enter '1' to update the inter-company currency exchange rate. Foreign amounts will not be re-calculated. If left blank, will not update the inter-company exchange rate.

Price Options

Enter a '1' to update the unit price of the sales order. Any other entry will leave unit price unchanged.

' - Transaction Date; '1' - Requested Ship Date; '2' - Promised Ship Date; '3' - Original Promise Date; '4' - Actual Ship Date; '5' - System Date; '6' - Invoice Date

Specify the date on which to base all price recalculations.

Enter '1' to recalculate the Transfer Price for inter-branch sales. The pricing method specified when the order was entered will be used.

Adv. Pricing O

Enter the Line Type of the new Sales Detail Line item. This line item will contain the difference between the old sales price and the newly recalculated price. If left blank, will update the new price directly to the item. This must be a non-inventory Line Type.

If you have specified in the last processing option to create a sales detail record to record the price difference, enter the Override Next Status of the detail line. If left blank, will use the original detail line's Next Status.

Enter '1' to base recalculation on the original order quantity. If left blank, the system will recalculate based on the current quantities of the Order.

Versions

Sales Order Entry (P4210)

Converting Price Levels

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Sales Price Level Conversion.

You use the Sales Price Level Conversions program to change the sales price level of an item or a group of items that you have previously entered in the Item Master table.

You can run this program in proof or final mode. J.D. Edwards recommends that you always run the Sales Price Level Conversions program in proof mode first to identify errors. The program generates a report that displays any problems the system encounters during sales price level conversions. You can correct these errors before you run the program in final mode.

The Sales Price Level Conversion program deletes all price records at the previous level and creates new price records at the new level. For example, when converting from the item/branch/plant level to the item level, the program deletes all price records for each item/branch/plant and creates a new price record for the item.

You should not attempt to access the Item Master or Base Price tables when this program is running in final mode.

Processing Options for Item Sales Price Level Conversion

Process

1. Enter the price level to update to.

Price Level to update

2. If updating to price level '1', enter the branch to default the price from. If updating from price level '3', the price will default from the primary location.

Branch to default the price from

3. Enter a '1' to run in final mode and update files.

'1' means update files, otherwise no updates will be done.

4. Enter a '1' to print only exceptions on the edit report.

'1' means to print only exceptions, otherwise all items will be printed.

5. Enter a '1' to delete expired records.

'1' means delete expired records, otherwise no expired records will be deleted.

Generating New Base Prices in a Different Currency

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Generate Base Price/Currency.

You can generate new base prices in a different currency and amount for multiple base price records at one time. The Generate Base Price/Currency program creates new records based on existing records. To create a new price for an individual record, you can manually update the existing record on the Base Price Revisions form. You do not have to run this program.

The price generation program does the following:

- Copies the original currency price record
- Calculates a new price, based on the currency code and exchange rate you specify
- Creates a price record with the new currency amount

When you generate new base prices in a different currency, you control the currency and exchange rate in which to create new prices by specifying the following in the processing options:

- Date as of when you want to create new records
- Currency of the existing price records
- Currency in which you want to create new records
- Exchange rate to use to calculate the new amount
- Method (divide or multiply) to use to perform the exchange rate calculation

The Generate Base Price/Currency program creates only one new price for each unit of measure. It does not create one price for each currency. If a base price already exists for a certain currency, the generation program does not create another price in that currency because both records would have the same key. The exception to this rule is when currency codes associated with an item have different effective through dates. Depending on the dates, the generation program might create more than one new price.

You can run the Generate Base Price/Currency program in the following modes:

- Proof
- Final

Proof

Run the program in proof mode and review the audit report to ensure that the records generated by the program are the records in which you want new base prices. If the audit report is not accurate, change the processing option and data selection values accordingly and rerun the program in proof mode.

Final

When you are satisfied with the audit report, run the program in final mode. Review the newly created base prices on the audit report and the Base Price Revisions form. Notice that the new record is sequenced alphabetically along with the existing records on the form and that amounts are rounded according to the decimal places set up in the data dictionary for Unit Price (UPRC).

If necessary, adjust the new prices manually on the Base Price Revisions form. For example, if the program creates a new price for 50,000 JPY as 675.1155 CAD, you might adjust the new amount to 675 CAD.

Processing Options for Generate Base Price/Currency

Run Modes

Enter a "1" to run this program in "Final" mode. If left blank, the program will run in "Proof" mode. Final mode will update the file and produce and audit report. Proof mode will produce the audit report only.
Enter the date used to determine which price records will be generated. If the expiration date of a price is greater than or equal to the date entered, a new price record will be generated. If left blank the system date will be used.

Currency

Enter the Currency Code to convert To
Enter the Currency Code to convert From
Enter the Currency Conversion Rate
Enter '1' to multiply the current price with the current conversion rate. Leave blank to divide the current price by the currency conversion rate entered.

Data Selection for Generate Base Price/Currency

Typically, companies will generate new base prices for all customers within a specific branch/plant. If your company has multiple branch/plants with different currencies, you can run the generation program multiple times. For base prices that do not have a branch/plant, designate *blanks for branch/plant in the data selection. You can also generate new base prices by item number or any other value in the data selections.



Preferences

You can use preferences to customize the way sales orders are processed. J.D. Edwards provides predefined standard preferences. You can use the predefined preferences or you can create variations of each preference to meet your specific business requirements.

Typically, you create preferences when you have consistent business requirements that differ from the default values for the Sales Order Management system. For example, you can create preferences to suit the needs of:

- Your customer's specific requirements
- Your company's policies
- Regulatory agencies' rules

Before you use preferences, you must perform some setup tasks to customize preferences for your specific business requirements. As your business grows and changes, you perform the same setup tasks to further customize preferences.

Complete the following tasks to apply preferences to sales orders:

- ☐ Work with the preference master and hierarchy
- ☐ Assign customers and items to groups
- ☐ Set up preferences
- ☐ Work with preferences

The setup and use of each preference requires careful planning. For example, consider your business purpose for using preferences in conjunction with the efficient use of the system's processing time.

Do not use preferences for occasional variances. In those instances, manually enter exception information in the applicable fields of the customer or item information.

What Is a Preference?

A preference is a piece of information that you define for a customer, an item, or any combination of customer (sold to, ship to, or parent addresses), customer group, item, and item group. The system uses preferences to override normal customer and item setup information when you enter orders.



How Does the System Use Preferences?

Each preference contains standard header lines. You can use the fields on these lines to define a preference for:

- A customer
- A customer group
- An item
- An item group
- Any combination of customers (or customer groups)
- Any combination of items (or item groups)

You must activate preferences before the system can use them. Programs, such as sales order entry, search for applicable preferences that contain information affecting the customer and item combination for each order line.

For sales order entry, the system uses this information to complete parts of the order. The system uses a hierarchy that you define to find the appropriate customer and item preference.

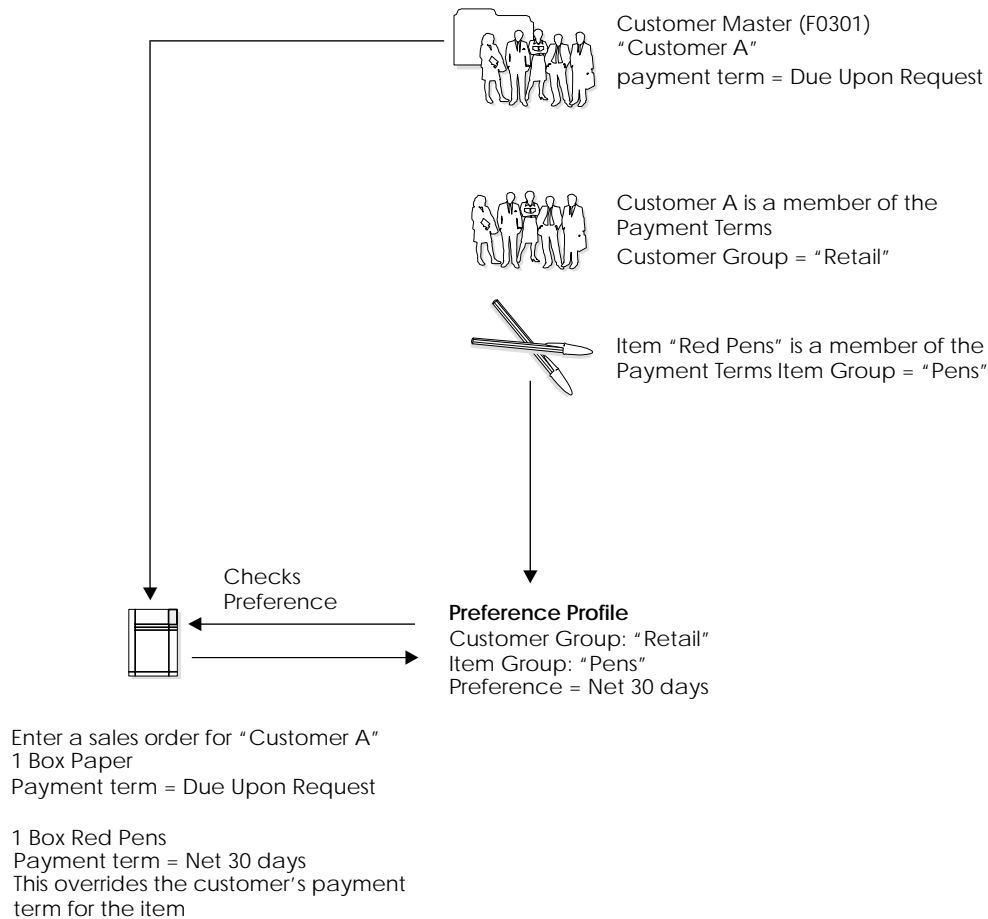
The system runs a set of programs for each preference that you create. When you enter an order and are using preferences, the system uses the hierarchy that you set up to search preference profiles for information that affects the customer and item combination for each order line. It uses this information to complete parts of the sales order.

Some preferences override default information, while others add more information for use during the stages of the sales order processing cycle. As a result, some preference information might not be immediately displayed on the sales order.

Example: Applying a Preference

By default, payment is due upon request when an item is delivered to your customer. For example, you have defined your retail customers in the Payment Terms preference customer group RETAIL. Customer A, a member of RETAIL, orders red pens. The red pen is a member of the Payment Terms preference item group PENS, in which the payment terms for this group is set at Net 30 Days. Based on the hierarchy for this preference, the payment terms for the customer group and item group combination, Net 30 Days, overrides the customer's payment terms that you set up in Customer Master.

When you enter the order for Customer A, the customer's payment terms appear on the order header, which defaults from Customer Master.



What Are the Preference Types?

Preferences fields are generally categorized as:

- Key fields
- Definition fields

Key fields are shared by all preferences. You use these fields to enter standard preference information. Key fields are optional. You can use key fields as search criteria to have the system match preferences to sales orders. These fields are found in the header portion of the Preference Profiles Revisions form.

The key fields Customer and Customer Group are mutually exclusive. Likewise, the key fields Item and Item Group are mutually exclusive. You cannot simultaneously use a preference with a customer and a customer group, or with an item and an item group. The system always uses the Customer (or Customer Group) and/or the Item (or Item Group) fields to match preferences to sales orders.

Preference definition fields are the fields that the system uses to resolve the preferences. Each preference has one or more definition fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each Preference Profiles Revisions form. Definition fields are required, although in some cases a valid value can be a blank. Typically, the system uses the values you input in these fields to override or add information on a sales order.

The system uses preference information in a number of ways:

- Adds it to order detail records during order entry and displays it on the order header or detail forms. For example, inventory commitment information is added to the Sales Order Detail table and displays on the Sales Order Entry form.
- Adds it to order detail records during order entry but does not display it. For example, revenue cost center information is added to the Sales Order Detail table but does not display on the Sales Order Entry form.
- Uses it to override default information, such as priority codes, or to provide additional information, such as line of business.

The following table provides a brief overview of each preference:

- The purpose of the preference
- The information that the preference overrides
- How and when the system applies the preference during the sales order process and where you can view related information

Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Customer Currency	Assign currency for a customer or customer group. Because the system uses the branch/plant as search criteria, you can base the currency on the branch/plant for the order. Only one currency code is allowed per order. Note: You cannot use this preference for items and item groups.	None	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Header table (F4201). View in the Currency Code field in the order header.
Document Distribution	Designate specific delivery documents and how many of each to distribute internally and to your customers.	None	Applied during either Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm or Preprint Delivery Documents.
Document Set	Define the group of delivery documents to print. You can also assign different document sets by depot.	None	Applied during either Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm or Preprint Delivery Documents. View the document set selected on the Document Selection window.
Delivery Date	Calculate the delivery date based on the number of days that your items are in transit.	None	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View the delivery date in the grid of an order detail line.
End Use	Define a product's end use and duty status. Used for regulatory, pricing, and market analysis purposes.	None	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View end use results in the End Use field in the grid of an order detail line. View duty status in the Duty field on the order detail line.
Freight	Select the freight table that determine freight charges billable to customer or payable to contractors. Designate whether the freight is distance based, zone based, fixed fee, or time based. Also designate whether the freight is billable, payable or both.	None	Applied when you run the Customer Freight Calculation and Supplier Freight Calculation batch programs to determine the billable and payable freight charges. Normally, this is part of end of day processing. You can also calculate billable freight prior to printing delivery documents.

Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Grade and Potency	Ensure that packaged products selected for delivery are within the customer's allowable grade or potency range. Designed to work in conjunction with inventory commitments.	Default grade/potency range on Plant Manufacturing Data (included in the item branch/plant information)	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View the grade/potency ranges on the Order Detail Information form.
Inventory Commitment	Specify one or more branch/plants to use as the supply source when a customer orders a product or group of products. You also specify the minimum percentage in any order that must be filled for a branch/plant to be selected.	Default branch/plant in order detail that comes from the order header Branch/Plant field	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View the source branch/plant, mode of transport, carrier, and route code in the sales order detail.
Line of Business	Identify a customer's line of business to use as a basis for price adjustments, sales analysis, or other business needs.	None	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View results in reports.
Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations	Define the shipping and receiving locations to which the system assigns product locations. Activate or deactivate the locations that you specify.	Default location in branch/plant constants	Applied during sales order entry and purchase order entry. View the shipping and receiving locations that the system assigns using programs such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • P4600 (Request Inquiry) • P4617 (Confirmation) • P460501 (Override Shipping Locations) • P4915 (Shipments) • P4960 (Loads)
Next Order Status	Change the next order status when a customer orders a specific product. By changing the order status after order entry, you can omit one or more steps in the standard processing for an order line or add processing steps.	Default Next Status code in the order activity rules	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View the next status code in the Status (Last/Next) field in the grid of an order detail line.
Order Preparation Days	Ensure that you accurately determine the number of days that it takes to deliver a sales order based on the number of days that it takes to pick, pack and ship the items.	None	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Payment Terms	Specify the standard terms of payment for a customer. Payment terms affect invoice due dates and discounts.	Payment terms or instrument that appear on the order header and are set up on Customer Master	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View payment terms in the order detail information.
Price Adjustment Schedule	Use multiple pricing schedules per customer by item or item group.	Default schedule from Customer Billing Instructions	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View in the Schedule field in the grid area of an order detail line.
Pricing Unit of Measure	Set the unit of measure used to price an item. This information is used to determine the correct price when invoices are printed.	Pricing unit of measure on Item Master Information	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View in the Pricing Unit of Measure field that follows the Unit Price on an order detail line.
Product Allocation	Restrict the amount of product that a customer can purchase. Use this preference if demand exceeds supply. You can also use it if a product is produced only for a specific customer or group of customers, and you need to ensure that it is not distributed to others.	None	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). Note: You receive a warning message if you enter a quantity on the order detail line that exceeds the allocation limit for a customer. The order is placed on hold if you do not reduce the quantity to the amount of the remaining allocation. You can bypass the message and accept the excess amount, or accept the balance and cancel the excess.
Revenue Business Unit	Assign the business unit (Accounting Branch/Plant) based on customer, product, or combinations. You might use this preference for a distributed warehouse operation, where revenue is recognized centrally.	Default business unit that comes from the order header Business Unit field	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Sales Commission	Set up sales people and commission rates based on a customer/item combination. You can also vary the information by branch/plant and line of business.	Default Commission Code/Rate data in the Customer Billing Instructions (Page 2)	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View the sales commission data for an order detail line on the Order Detail Information form.
User Defined Price Codes 1,2,3	Define your own codes to use for unique pricing needs. For example, you might define a price code to identify order lines that need to be repriced when commodity prices are published for a specific period.	None	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View the price codes in the Price Codes fields in the grid area of an order detail line.

Working with the Preference Master and Hierarchy

When you determine that you have a consistent business requirement that differs from the system's default values for sales order processing, you can set up preferences to accommodate those requirements.

The system displays all preferences in logical groups on the Preference Profiles form. You use Preference Master to specify where a preference appears on this form and whether effective dates and quantities are a part of the preference.

For each preference, you must define a hierarchy to indicate the order in which you want the system to apply preferences to sales orders.

Working with the preference master and hierarchy includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up preference master information
- ☐ Arranging the preference hierarchy

Before You Begin

- ☐ Analyze your business requirements and the selection criteria for creating a preference.

Setting Up Preference Master Information

The system displays all preferences in logical groups on the Preference Profiles form. You use Preference Master to specify where a preference appears on this form and whether effective dates and quantities are a part of the preference.

If you activate quantities for a preference in the master preference information, no unit of measure conversions take place. Therefore, the system searches only for a preference with exactly the same unit of measure as the unit of measure entered on the order.

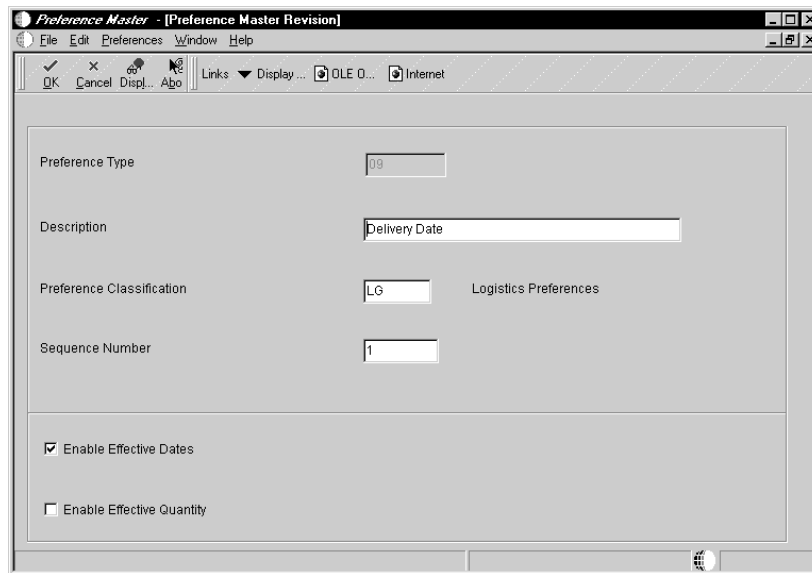
For example, if you set up a preference with the unit of measure as LT (liters) and enter a sales order in gallons, the system does not select the preference because it does not convert the gallons to liters when searching preference records.

If you need the effective quantity fields active for a particular preference, you must create separate preferences for each unit of measure that can be used as the sales order transaction unit of measure.

► To set up preference master information

From the Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Preference Master.

1. On Work with Preference Master, click Add.



Preference Master - [Preference Master Revision]

File Edit Preferences Window Help

OK Cancel Display and icons for Links, Display, DLE, and Internet

Preference Type: 09

Description: Delivery Date

Preference Classification: LG Logistics Preferences

Sequence Number: 1

☒ Enable Effective Dates

☐ Enable Effective Quantity

2. On Preference Master Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Preference Type
 - Description
 - Preference Classification
 - Sequence Number
3. Click the following options:
 - Enable Effective Dates
 - Enable Effective Quantity

Field	Explanation				
Preference Type	<p>A user defined code (40/PR) that identifies a preference type or a price adjustment hierarchy.</p> <p>In the user defined code table 40/PR, a 1 in the Special Handling Code field identifies a preference that J.D. Edwards supports. This field is hard coded for each preference.</p> <p>For Agreement Penalty Schedules, first set up a user defined code of PN (for penalty). Then enter it in this field.</p>				
Description	A user defined name or remark.				
Preference Classification	A classification or title that the system uses to group preferences on the Preference Profile form (P4007).				
Sequence Number	<p>For OneWorld, the sequence by which users can set up the order in which their valid environments are displayed.</p> <p>For World, a sequence or sort number that the system uses to process records in a user defined order.</p>				
Enable Effective Dates	<p>A code that indicates whether the system displays fields for effective date ranges for a preference. You might want the system to display effective date ranges if you enter effective dates and effective quantities for a preference. Valid values are:</p> <table> <tr> <td>Y</td><td>Display effective date fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms for this preference.</td></tr> <tr> <td>N</td><td>Do not display effective date fields for this preference.</td></tr> </table>	Y	Display effective date fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms for this preference.	N	Do not display effective date fields for this preference.
Y	Display effective date fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms for this preference.				
N	Do not display effective date fields for this preference.				
Enable Effective Quantity	<p>A code that indicates if you want to use quantity ranges for this preference. Valid values are:</p> <table> <tr> <td>Y</td><td>Yes, display the Quantity From and Quantity Thru fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms (P40300 and P40300EC) for this preference.</td></tr> <tr> <td>N</td><td>No, do not enable or display the quantity range fields.</td></tr> </table> <p>Effective quantity fields are optional fields that you can disable prior to setting up any preference records, but not after you have created preference records.</p> <p>If you assign effective quantity, you must assign effective dates.</p>	Y	Yes, display the Quantity From and Quantity Thru fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms (P40300 and P40300EC) for this preference.	N	No, do not enable or display the quantity range fields.
Y	Yes, display the Quantity From and Quantity Thru fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms (P40300 and P40300EC) for this preference.				
N	No, do not enable or display the quantity range fields.				

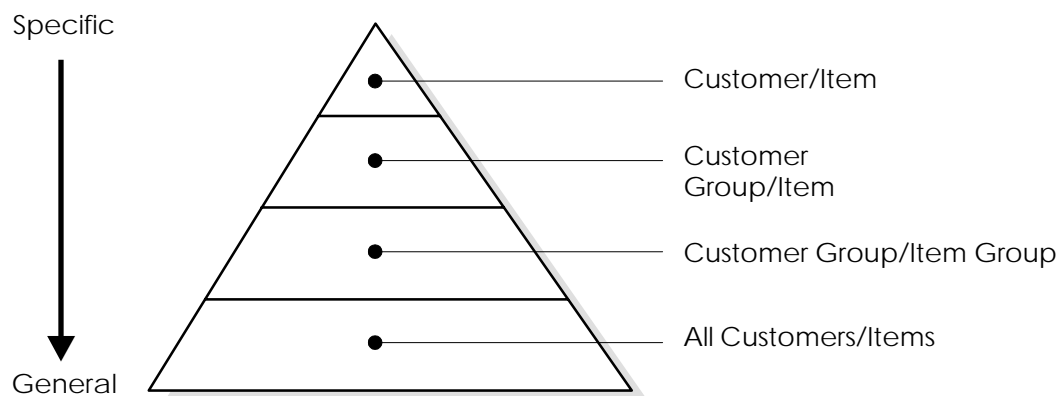
Arranging the Preference Hierarchy

For each preference type, you must define a hierarchy to indicate the order in which you want the system to apply preferences to sales orders.

The Preference Hierarchy form contains rows that identify customers and customer groups and columns that identify items or item groups. You use the intersections of the rows and columns to enter your hierarchy sequence.

When the system searches for preference information, it uses the hierarchy to determine the order in which to search preference information. The system begins with the intersection in which you entered 1 and searches for records that are defined for that customer and item combination. If no preference for that intersection is found, the system identifies the intersection in which you entered 2, and so forth.

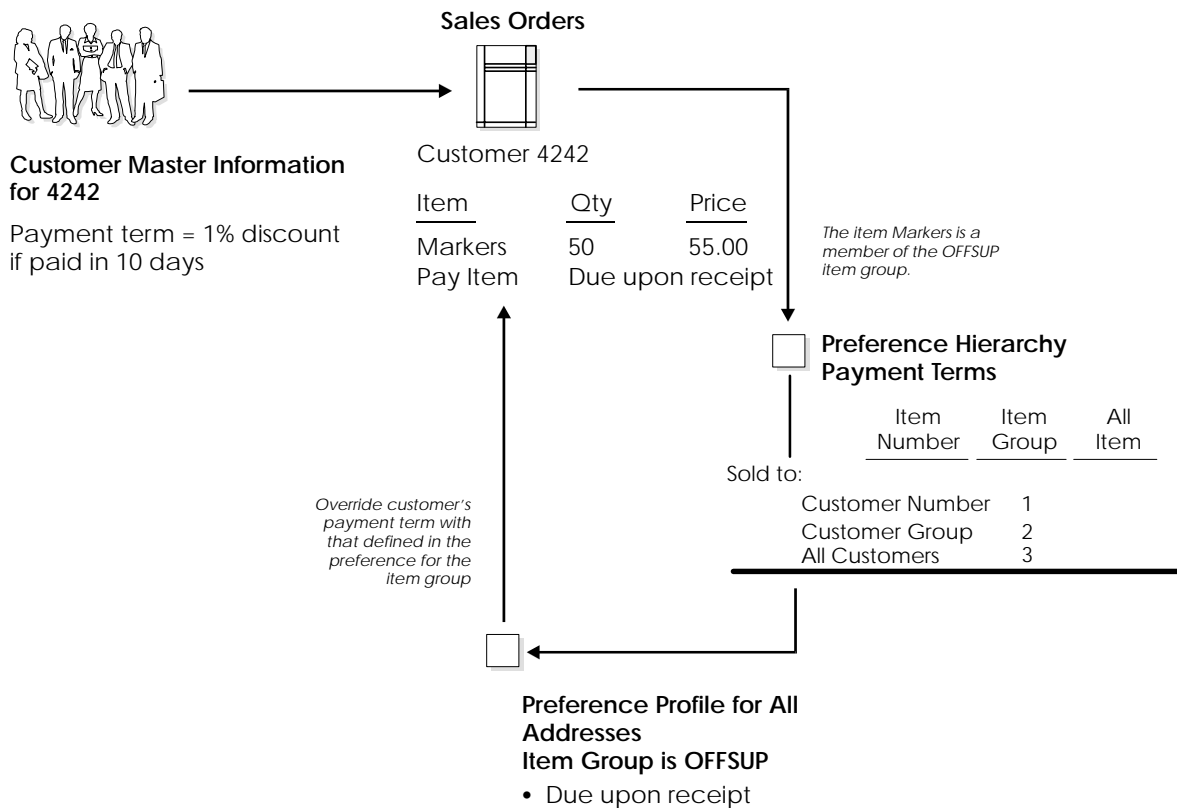
The following graphic illustrates the way the system searches for preference information:



Note: J.D. Edwards suggests that when you define hierarchies, you start with the most general groups (that is, begin with item only and customer only), and then define the more specific groups.

Example: Preference Hierarchy for Payment Terms

When you enter an order, the system determines from the hierarchy for this preference that it should search first for information for a *single* Sold To customer number/item group combination, and then for a *group* of Sold To customer numbers/item group combinations. In this case, the system overrides the normal payment term for orders to that customer for items from the group with a due upon receipt payment term.



► To arrange the preference hierarchy

From the Price Management menu (G4222), choose Preference Hierarchy.

1. On Work with Preference Hierarchy, complete the steps to set up preference master information.

See Setting Up Preference Master Information.

2. Click Find to locate the preference.
3. Choose the preference and click Select.

Preference Type		Item Number	Item Group	All Items
Ship To	Customer Number			
	Customer Group	1		2
Sold To	Customer Number			
	Customer Group	3		4
Parent	Customer Number			
	Customer Group			
All Customers				

4. On Preference Hierarchy Revisions, type consecutive numbers at the intersections of rows and columns to define the hierarchy for the preference.

Assigning Customers and Items to Groups

J.D. Edwards provides predefined preferences. Before you use preferences, you must perform some setup tasks to customize preferences for your specific business requirements. As your business grows and changes, you perform the same tasks to further customize preferences.

To save time while defining preferences, you can assign a customer or an item to a group. You can then define preferences once for a group rather than many times for several customers or items. For example, you can group all customers with the same payment terms. Then, when you create a payment terms preference, you can define one preference for the group.

Assigning customers and items to groups includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Assigning a customer to a preference group
- ☐ Assigning an item to a preference group

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that user defined codes for customer groups and item groups are set up.

Assigning a Customer to a Preference Group

You can assign a customer to a customer group for any preference.

For example, you can identify some customers as seasonal customers and create specific payment terms for them. To do this:

- Set up a SEASON customer group user defined code
- Assign all seasonal customers to this group
- Create one Payment Terms preference for the seasonal customer group

You can assign any new seasonal customers to the seasonal customer group. The system automatically applies the Payment Terms preference to all of the new customers' sales orders.

► To assign a customer to a group

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Preference Master.

1. On Work with Preference Master, choose Customer Groups from the Form menu.
2. On Work with Customer Group Preferences, complete the following field and click Find to select a customer:
 - Customer Number
3. Choose the customer and click Select.

The screenshot shows the 'Preference Master - [Customer Group Revisions]' window. The 'Customer Number' field is filled with '4242'. The 'Payment Terms' field is 'PREF', and the 'Preferred Customers' field is 'Preferred Customers'. The 'Pricing Unit of Measure' field is 'VOLUME', and the 'High Volume Customers' field is 'High Volume Customers'. The 'Revenue Cost Center' field is 'EAST', and the 'East' field is 'East'. The 'End Use' field is empty. The 'Print Messages' field is 'PREFER', and the 'Preferred Customers' field is 'Preferred Customers'. The 'Inventory Commitment' field is 'EAST', and the 'East' field is 'East'. The 'Product Allocations' field is empty. The 'Grade and Potency' field is empty. The 'Delivery Date' field is empty. The 'Line of Business' field is empty. The 'Price Code 1' field is empty. The 'Price Code 2' field is empty. The 'Price Code 3' field is empty. The 'Save record' button is at the bottom left.

4. On Customer Group Revisions, complete any of the following fields and click OK:
 - Payment Terms
 - Pricing Unit of Measure
 - Revenue Cost Center
 - End Use
 - Product Allocations
 - Grade and Potency
 - Delivery Date
 - Line of Business
 - Price Code 1

5. Choose Additional Groups from the Form menu and complete any of the following fields:
 - Document Distribution
 - Document Set
 - Options and Equipment
 - Customer Freight
 - Carrier
 - Mode of Transport
 - Price Adjustment Schedule
 - Invoice Cycle
 - Order Preparation Days
 - Next Order Status
 - Sales Commission
 - Customer Currency
 - Quality Management
6. If you use ECS Applications, choose Additional Customer from the Form menu and complete any of the following fields:
 - Payment Terms (Branch)
 - Product Allocations (Branch)
 - Pricing U/M (Branch)
 - Revenue Business Unit (Branch)
7. Click OK.

Field	Explanation
Customer Number	A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, and any other address book members.
Payment Terms	<p>A user defined code (40/01) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the Payment Terms preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>

Field	Explanation
Pricing Unit of Measure	<p>A user defined code (40/02) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the Pricing Unit of Measure preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. Customer groups allow you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>
Revenue Cost Center	<p>A user defined code (40/03) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the Revenue Cost Center preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>
End Use	<p>A user defined code (40/04) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the End Use preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>
Product Allocations	<p>A user defined code (40/07) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the Product Allocations preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>

Field	Explanation
Grade and Potency	<p>A user defined code (40/08) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the Grade and Potency preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>
Delivery Date	<p>A user defined code (40/09) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the Delivery Date preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>
Line of Business	<p>A user defined code (40/10) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the Line of Business preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>
Price Code 1	<p>A user defined code (40/11) that identifies a group to which you can assign customers for the User Defined Price Code 1 preference. Assign customers to a group when the customers share similar characteristics. A customer group allows you to define preferences quickly and easily.</p> <p>Enter the code that identifies the customer group for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for this group alone or for a combination of customer group and item or item group.</p>

Assigning an Item to a Preference Group

You can assign items to preference groups and define a preference for the entire group with user defined codes.

► To assign an item to a group

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Preference Master.

1. On Work with Preference Master, choose Item Groups from the Form menu.
2. On Work with Item Group Preferences complete the following field or click Find to select an item:
 - 2nd Item Number
3. Choose the item group and click Select.

Preference Master - [Item Group Preference Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Window Help

OK Cancel Display About Links Display OLE Internet

Item Number	221	
Payment Terms		
Pricing Unit of Measure	BIKES	Bicycle Item Group
Revenue Cost Center		
End Use		
Print Messages	BIKES	Bicycles
Inventory Commitment		
Product Allocations		
Grade and Potency		
Delivery Date		
Line of Business		
Price Code 1		
Price Code 2		
Price Code 3		

Save record

4. On Item Group Preferences, complete any of the following fields and click OK:
 - Payment Terms
 - Pricing Unit of Measure
 - Revenue Cost Center
 - End Use
 - Inventory Commitment

- Product Allocations
 - Grade and Potency
 - Delivery Date
 - Line of Business
 - Price Code 1
 - Price Code 2
5. Choose Additional Groups from the Form menu and complete any of the following fields:
- Price Code 3
 - Document Distribution
 - Document Set
 - Options and Equipment
 - Customer Freight
 - Carrier
 - Mode of Transport
 - Price Adjustment Schedule
 - Invoice Cycle
 - Order Preparation Days
 - Next Order Status
 - Sales Commission
 - Quality Management
6. If you use ECS applications, choose Additional Item from the Form menu and complete any of the following fields:
- Payment Terms (Branch)
 - Product Allocations (Branch)
 - Pricing U/M (Branch)
 - Revenue Business Unit (Branch)
7. Click OK.

Setting Up Preferences

All preferences share standard preference information that applies to all of the preference types in a category. You enter this information for each preference in the header portion of the Preference Revisions form.

Certain fields are unique to each preference in which you enter specific preference information. You enter this information for each preference in the detail portion of the Preference Revisions form.

If you set up multiple preferences for a customer and item combination, you can specify a sequence number that the system uses to search the preferences, in order to process the order.

To set up preferences, complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Entering standard preference information
- ☐ Entering custom preference information

Entering Standard Preference Information

All preferences share common fields, called key fields, where you enter standard preference information. You must enter this information for each preference in the header portion of the Preference Profiles Revisions form.

When entering standard preference information, you can also specify a sequence number that the system uses to search for preference records. For example, to set up a preference for a customer and item combination and vary the preference by an additional key field, you need to sequence your preference records. If you set the sequence for a preference with Branch/Plant A at 1, the sequence for Branch/Plant B at 2, and all other branch/plants at 999, you can ensure that the system searches for the preferences for Branch/Plants A and B before using the preference that applies to all other branch/plants.

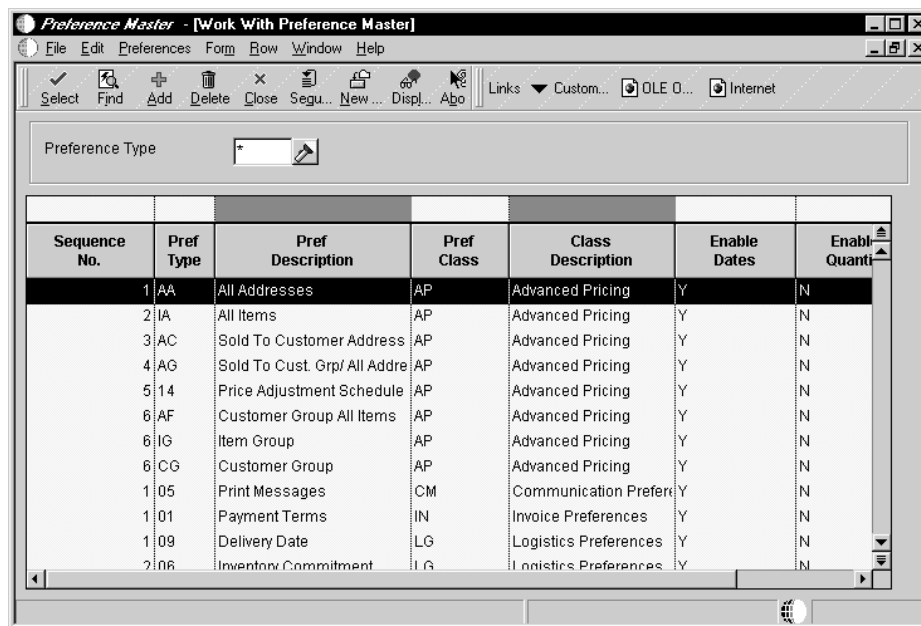
Consequently, you need to use care when sequencing preference records. If the preference that applies to all branch/plants has a sequence number of 1, the system will not find the more specific preferences for Branch/Plants A and B, because the system first finds the preference that applies to all branch/plants. If you set up sequence numbers in increments, you can insert new preferences at a later date.

► To enter standard preference information

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Preference Master.

After you set up the preference master and hierarchy information, you can enter the standard preference information.

1. On Work with Preference Master, click Find to locate available preferences.



2. Choose the preference and click Select.

3. On Work with <Selected Preference> Profile, click Add.

The system displays the form for the preference you selected on the Work with Preference Master form.

4. On Preference Hierarchy Selection, select the appropriate combination.

5. On the <Selected Preference> Profiles Revisions, complete custom preference information.
6. Click OK.
7. From the Preference Hierarchy Selection, choose a hierarchy to add a preference for another combination or click Close.

8. On Work with <Selected Preference Profiles, click Find to review preference information or click Close.

Entering Custom Preference Information

Preference definition fields are the fields that the system uses to resolve the preferences. Each preference has one or more definition fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each preference's Preference Profiles Revisions form. Definition fields are required, although in some cases a valid value can be a blank. Typically, the system uses the values you input in these fields to override or add information on a sales order.

The following describes each preference in greater detail. The descriptions in this chapter are presented in alphabetical order.

- Mode of Transport Preference
- Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations

Customer Currency Preference

Use the Customer Currency preference to assign a currency code to a customer number or to a customer group. Unlike other preferences, this preference does not include the item or item group, because the currency code must be the same for all items on an order.

This preference overrides the default currency code from Customer Master Information in the order header record. You must still include the customer currency in the Customer Master Information. This is because accounts receivable processing does not check preferences. Instead, it uses currency from each order detail line.

The header currency code applies to all detail lines in the order. Therefore, when you rely solely on the Customer Currency preference to set the order's currency code, you can have only one currency code per order.

The Customer Currency preference can be defined for a specific selling branch/plant or for all branch/plants. For example, if your company sells jet fuel to international airlines, the order might be in French francs from a depot in France and British pounds from a depot in the United Kingdom.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Activate foreign currency to process this preference.
- ☐ Set up exchange rates for the foreign currency to the base currency.

Delivery Date Preference

You can use the Delivery Date preference to have the system calculate the delivery date based on the number of days that your items are in transit to your customer.

A sales order has several dates that the system uses to determine a delivery date:

Order date	The date that you enter the order into the system, or the date that you want to appear on the order.
Requested date	The date the customer requests to receive the order. You can enter a single date for the entire order or several dates for individual detail lines.
Pick date	The date that warehouse personnel picks the items from inventory.
Ship date	The date that you promise to ship the order. You can enter dates for individual detail lines.
Delivery date	The date that you tell the customer that the order will arrive.

The system calculates the ship and delivery dates under the following circumstances:

- Preferences are activated.
- One or more of the Branch/Plant, Route Code, Mode of Transport, Priority Code, and Carrier Number fields match the key fields of the preference.

Except for the Mode of Transport field, the fields display in the order detail from the Customer Billing Instructions. If they are blank, no match is necessary for the system to calculate dates.

When you set up this preference, you must define:

- The minimum number of days between order entry and scheduled pick date
- The number of days that goods are in transit between ship and delivery

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the priority code information for the customer is set up in Customer Billing Instructions.

Example: Applying Dates for Products

The following examples are based on the four order preparation days and five leadtime transit days that are specified in the delivery date and order preparation days preferences.

Action	Result
Order taker manually enters a ship date	<p>The program enters the promised date in advance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98• Pick Date Calculated: Sunday 11/8/98• Ship Date Entered: Thursday 11/12/98• Promised Date Calculated: Tuesday 11/17/98 <p>The system calculates the promised date by adding the leadtime transit days to the ship date. The system calculates the pick date by subtracting four days from the ship date.</p>
Order taker manually enters a promised date	<p>The program back schedules the ship date. The system subtracts the leadtime transit days from the promised date to calculate the ship date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98• Promised Date Entered: Monday 11/23/98• Ship Date Calculated: Wednesday 11/18/98• Pick Date Calculated: Saturday 11/14/98 <p>The system calculates the pick date by subtracting four days from the ship date. A warning appears if the pick date is prior to the order entry date.</p>
Order taker does not enter Promised Date and Ship Date	<p>The program calculates the promised date by adding the order preparation days to determine the pick date and adding the leadtime transit days to the pick date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sales Order Entered: Tuesday 11/3/98• Pick Date Entered: Tuesday 11/3/98• Ship Date Calculated: Saturday 11/7/98• Promised Date Calculated: Thursday 11/12/98
System calculates a ship date that is before than the sales order entry date	<p>If the ship and pick dates are prior to the order date, the system will display a soft error indicating the pick date is less than the order date. The order can still be processed.</p>

Document Distribution Preference

Use the Document Distribution preference to define how many extra copies of a delivery document you want printed and who you want to receive the copies. For a customer and item combination, you define:

- The trip depot
- The document code of the document to be printed
- The person who will receive each copy
- The number of copies to print

You use this preference to control printing of delivery tickets, priced delivery tickets, and invoices. You can also use this preference to print custom documents (those not programmed by J.D. Edwards), such as a certificate of analysis (COA).

The system applies Document Distribution preferences either during the Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm process or at Preprint Delivery Documents.

You can specify multiple line entries. You should include the sequence number with the unique preference information in place of the standard information fields.

Example: Document Distribution Preference

The system applies the following preference setup whenever a customer assigned to customer group “ABC” orders a product assigned to item group “123”.

Shipped By	Shipped From	Documents	Number of Copies	To Whom	Where
Truck	Depot A	Document A	2 copies	Address 198281 – Freight Shipping Manager	Printer 123
Rail	Depot B	Document B	1 copy	Address 71004 – Shipping Manager	Printer 321
Rail	Depot B	Document B	1 copy	Address 82425 – Tracking Manager	Printer 333

See Also

- *Working with Deliveries* in the *Transportation Management Guide* for more information on the Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm process and the Preprint Delivery Documents process

Document Set Preference

Use the Document Set preference to identify the set of delivery documents for a particular customer and item combination. The Document Set name is linked to the Document Set Assignment form where the individual document sets are assigned.

If you are using delivery documents, you must define at least one Document Set preference. How you define the preference depends on types of products, such as bulk or lubes, or whether your customer is foreign or domestic. You can also vary the preference by branch/plant.

The system applies Document Set preferences when documents print during the following stages:

- Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm
- Preprint Delivery Documents

At the end of each stage, you can view or change the document set information on the Document Selection form.

Example: Document Set Preference

Generally, companies create separate Document Set preferences for bulk and packaged products. This example summarizes an efficient method to set up two Document Set preferences so that the appropriate document sets are shipped with each product.

1. Create an item group for bulk products.
2. Assign a Document Set preference to the bulk item group.
3. Set up another Document Set preference for all items and all customers by leaving the Customer, Customer Group, Item, and Item Group fields blank.
4. Set up the preference hierarchy for the Document Set (ECS) preference so that:
 - Item Group/All Addresses is first in the hierarchy
 - All Items/All Addresses is second in the hierarchy

When the system processes the Document Set preference during Load Confirm, the preference hierarchy causes the system to first search for an Item Group preference. If the item in the sales order line is a bulk item and you have assigned it to the item group, the system uses the document set for bulk products. Otherwise, the system uses the default values and issues the document set for all items and all customers. In this case, the system uses the document set for packaged products because you have not assigned packaged products to the bulk product item group.

When you set up a Document Set preference, verify that it does not conflict with an Invoice Cycle preference for the customer and item combination. Cycle billing (deferred invoicing) and delivery document invoicing are mutually exclusive.

- To generate the invoice with the delivery documents, choose a document set that includes a primary invoice.
- To generate the invoice on a cyclical basis (such as weekly or monthly), run the Cycle Billing and Periodic Invoice programs.

See Also

- *Creating Document Sets* in the *Transportation Management Guide* for information on creating document set codes

End Use Preference

Use the End Use preference as system criteria for applying price adjustments. You can also use this preference to set up a paid or free status for stock that is commingled for duty.

End use refers to the customer's end use of the product. For example, you might be required to charge different prices for the same item depending on its end use. A product specific to aviation might have a special duty applied in which the amount of duty might depend on end use (in this case, different duty amounts that are based on different airports).

End Use and Duty Status are key fields. You can create different End Use preferences to assign values for various customer and item combinations. You can then assign the applicable End Use and Duty Status field values for each customer and item combination to suit your business needs.

Freight Preference

Use the Freight preference to link the sales order detail line to a freight table. The system uses freight tables to determine freight charges based on distance, zone, or fixed fee. The system also uses freight tables to determine whether the freight is billable, payable, or both. Use the Freight preference to specify a freight table for a customer/customer group and item/dispatch group.

The Freight preference differs from other preferences in that it does not have an Item Group selection. Instead, it uses the same dispatch groups that are used by the Load and Delivery Management system to group products for dispatch.

The Freight preference works in conjunction with freight tables. You define your Freight preferences based on your distance-based, zone-based, or fixed-fee-based freight tables. You can specify one or more freight tables, for example, if you charge a customer a fixed fee and an additional distance-based fee for the same item or dispatch group.

You must also designate whether the freight charge is billable to customers, payable to contractors, or both. Branch/Plant and Mode of Transport are optional search fields.

The system applies the Freight preferences when you run the Customer Freight Calculator and Supplier Freight Calculator batch programs to determine billable and payable freight charges. Normally, this is part of end-of-day processing. However, billable freight charges can also be calculated prior to printing delivery documents.

Grade and Potency Preference

Use the Grade and Potency preference to select inventory for a customer that is based on a specific grade or potency range for an item. You can set up base pricing by an item's grade or potency. You could use this preference if a customer requires a grade/potency range that differs from the standard range that you define for an item through item branch/plant information.

Note: Because bulk products cannot be selected by grade or potency or load confirmed by lot, you should use this preference only for packaged products.

The Grade and Potency preference works in conjunction with the Inventory Commitment preference and the commitment method to determine the availability of products. The preference causes the system to ensure that available quantities are within a customer's specified grade/potency parameters.

In addition, the system uses the value that you enter in the Days Expired Before field of the Grade and Potency preference to determine if the expiration date is within the customer's allowable days. This ensures that the availability of product will be the quantity of the grades or potencies that the customer allows and within an expiration date.

You can only use the Grade and Potency preference if either the Potency Control or the Grade Control is activated for the item. This is done on the Plant Manufacturing Data form that is part of the Item Branch/Plant Information. You typically use this preference only if a customer requires a grade or potency range that differs from the standard ranges that are set up in the Item Branch/Plant Information.

You cannot specify both grade and potency for the same item. However, when you create the Grade and Potency preference, the system displays both the Grade and Potency fields. This display occurs regardless of the status of the Potency Control and Grade Control setting on the Plant Manufacturing Data form.

The system does not check the status of the activation settings in the Plant Manufacturing Data form when you create a Grade and Potency preference. Therefore, you will not be prevented from entering values into the From Grade, Thru Grade, From Potency, or Thru Potency fields. You could also enter data in both fields. In either case, the system will not apply preference information that conflicts with activation settings or data entry rules.

Inventory Commitment Preference

Use the Inventory Commitment preference to:

- Specify that each order line be filled from one or more branch/plants based on customer/customer group or item/item group
- Specify the branch/plants from where you want products shipped
- Determine the percentage of the order to be filled from each branch/plant
- Specify the mode of transport and carrier information in the sales detail line

If you use this preference to specify the branch/plants from where you want products shipped, use the Sequence Number and Branch/Plant fields to control the product's Ship From location. You can then sequence the preferences to establish a priority order.

If you use this preference to determine the percentage of the order to be filled from each branch/plant, use preference sequences to establish an order. If you are unable to fill the order from any branch, the system creates a backorder on the branch/plant with the lowest sequence number. Normally, only packaged products, not bulk products, are backordered.

The system applies this preference during sales order entry or when you hard-commit items. You can view the specified source branch/plant in the Branch/Plant field in the grid of an order detail line.

Example: Inventory Commitment Preference

The Percent To Fill field provides you with the flexibility to fill an order line from one or more branch/plants. The Inventory Commitment preferences work in conjunction with the system's normal checking that is done for quantity available, and adds a check on all branches that are defined in the preference.

As each branch is checked, the order will be shipped from any one branch that can fill the entire order. Depending upon the number in the Percent To Fill field, a portion of the order line can be filled from one or more branch/plants.

Percent-To-Fill Value and Related System Actions

If the percent-to-fill value is zero percent, the system performs normal processing. The system performs no checking for the quantity on hand, and regardless of the quantity on hand, it is shipped to fill the order.

If the percent-to-fill value is between 1 and 99 percent, the system requires that any branch must be able to fill the percentage that is specified. If the branch can fulfill the percentage, the quantity available is shipped and the remainder is transferred to the next branch. The system checks each branch to determine if the quantity can be shipped.

If you specify a percent-to-fill value of 100 percent for each of several branch/plants, an order can only be filled from a single branch/plant that has sufficient quantity to fill the order. If no branch/plant has sufficient quantity to fill 100 percent of the order, the order is put on backorder or partially shipped from the first preference branch/plant that it can satisfy.

If the percent to fill value is 100 percent, the system requires that the branch must be able to ship the entire quantity. This prevents shipping from multiple branches, but allows the system to check all branches to determine if the entire quantity can be shipped. If you specify a percent-to-fill value of 100% for each of several branch/plants, an order can only be filled from a single branch/plant that has sufficient quantity to fill the order. If no branch/plant has sufficient quantity to fill 100 percent of the order, the order is backordered or partially shipped from the first preference.

The following table shows an example of an order that is placed for a quantity of 500.

Branch/Plant: quantity available	Percent-to-fill as set up on preference	Minimum order quantity available	Result
Branch/Plant A: 99	50percent	200	Do not ship from this branch because the available branch/plant quantity is less than the minimum order quantity.
Branch/Plant B: 400	80percent	400	Ship 400 from this branch.
Branch/Plant C: 96	95percent	95	Ship 96 from this branch because the available branch/plant quantity is at least 95% of the order balance of 100.
The system backorders the remaining quantity of 4 to Branch/Plant B.			

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the sales order entry preference options for inventory commitment are blank

Technical Considerations

Activating the Inventory Commitment preference You must activate the Inventory Commitment preference through a separate processing option in the Sales Order Entry program.

Working with kits and configured items The Inventory Commitment preference does not function with kits or configured items.

Line of Business Preference

Use this preference to specify a customer's line of business, such as aviation. Line of business preferences can be set for customer and item combinations.

Your business can derive useful data for sales analysis when you define line of business preferences. You can write your own reports to produce reports by line of business. Price adjustments can be based on line of business.

This preference is applied during sales order entry.

Mode of Transport Preference

The Mode of Transport preference is used to select a specific mode based on destination, in addition to preferences at the customer or item level. For example, if a customer prefers that all shipments to a specific destination always are shipped by a parcel carrier going second day air, you would set that up as a mode of transport preference.

Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations

This Use the Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations preference to define the shipping and receiving locations to which the system assigns products. You also can activate or deactivate the locations that you define. If you activate the locations, the Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations preference overrides the default location that is specified in Branch/Plant Constants.

For example, when you ship large quantities of products, warehouse personnel pick the products and place them at the appropriate docks so that drivers can load the products into trucks. When you receive products, the delivery drivers might need to deliver products to various locations. By defining all shipping and receiving locations that you might use, you can use the Sales Order Management system to help you plan for the shipment and arrival of products.

If you do not agree with the locations to which the system assigns products, you can override the locations using the Warehouse Management system or the Transportation Management system.

If you want to override the location using the Warehouse Management system, you must set the appropriate processing option in the Requests Inquiry program (P4600). For more information, see *Locating Existing Pick Requests* and *Confirming Pick Suggestions* in the *Warehouse Management* guide.

If you want to override the location using the Transportation Management system, you can use the Shipments program (P4915) or the Loads program (P4960). For more information, see *Revising Shipment Information* and *Working with Loads* in the *Transportation Management* guide.

Next Order Status Preference

Use the Next Order Status preference to skip or insert processing steps after sales order entry. The processing flow is determined by the order activity rules. The Next Order Status preference overrides the next step in the order activity rules. You should only use this preference to change the steps after you enter an order.

For example, you might want to send an Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) order acknowledgement for a specific customer and item combination. For another customer, you might want to skip the confirmation steps defined in the order activity rules.

The order activity rules determine which steps you can skip. For example, to skip from Enter Sales Order (Status 520) to another status step, you must choose one of the Other Allowed status codes. You may not be able to skip from Enter Sales Order to Cycle Billing (Status 580) because the alternate steps are not set up in the order activity rules.

Caution: During preference setup, the system does not prohibit you from entering invalid activity/status codes. However, during sales order processing, the system highlights status code fields on the sales order to indicate that the system is retrieving an invalid activity/status code.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Determine the order activity rules and the steps that can be skipped in the process flow.

Options and Equipment Preference

The options and equipment preference specifies the options and/or equipment required for a shipment. This preference is resolved at all possible grid points, so multiple options and equipment requirements are added to a shipment. In addition, each specific preference can contain a list. For example, a shipment of perishable items requires a refrigerated trailer. You set up an option preference for these items on a refrigerated trailer. This option attaches to any shipment that contains perishable items. When the shipment is routed, the system only selects from those carriers that provide refrigerated trailers.

Order Preparation Days Preference

You can set up information about the amount of time that it takes to prepare an order for shipping in the Order Preparations Days preference. This helps you to accurately determine the number of days that it takes to deliver your sales orders from the date that the customer places the order.

Order preparation days are the number of days that it takes to pick and pack the items on the sales order, prior to shipping. The system uses the priority code that you set up for your customer in the Customer Billing Instructions to determine the amount of preparation time. However, you can override the priority code for a single order on Order Detail Information during order entry.

When you enter an order, the system uses information in the Order Preparation Days preference and first attempts to obtain dates by back scheduling. Back scheduling involves calculating the pick, ship, and delivery dates for an order, starting with the delivery date and working backwards.

If the pick date is before the current date, the system forwards schedules starting with the order date to obtain pick, ship, and delivery dates.

Example: Applying Dates for Products

The following examples are based on four order preparation days and five leadtime transit days specified in the preference.

Action	Result
Order taker manually enters a ship date	<p>The program enters the promised date in advance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/05 • Pick Date Calculated: Sunday 11/8/05 • Ship Date Entered: Thursday 11/12/05 • Promised Date Calculated: Tuesday 11/17/05 <p>The system calculates the promised date by adding the leadtime transit days to the load date. The system calculates the pick date by subtracting four days from the ship date.</p>
Order taker manually enters a promised date	<p>The program back schedules the ship date. The system subtracts the leadtime transit days from the promised date to calculate the ship date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/05 • Promised Date Entered: Monday 11/23/05 • Ship Date Calculated: Wednesday 11/18/05 • Pick Date Calculated: Saturday 11/14/05 <p>The system calculates a pick date by subtracting four days from the ship date. A warning appears if the pick date is prior to today.</p>
Order taker leaves Promised Date and Ship Date fields blank	<p>The program calculates the promised date by adding the order preparation days to determine the pick date and adding the leadtime transit days to the pick date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sales Order Entered: Tuesday 11/3/05 • Pick Date Entered: Tuesday 11/3/05 • Ship Date Calculated: Saturday 11/7/05 • Promised Date Calculated: Thursday 11/12/05
System calculates a ship date that is before than the sales order entry date	<p>If the ship and pick dates are prior to the order date, the system will display a soft error indicating the pick date is less than the order date. The order can still be processed.</p>

Payment Terms Preference

Use the Payment Terms preference to identify payment terms and instruments for specific customer and item combinations. The system applies payment terms only at the item detail level. For any items that are not included in this preference, the system applies the payment terms from the customer master information at the order level.

Price Adjustment Schedule Preference

Use the Price Adjustment Schedule preference in conjunction with the Advanced Pricing system. You can use this preference to assign a different price adjustment schedule for items sold to a specific customer. You can also use this preference to create penalty schedules for agreements with business partners.

This preference overrides the default schedule from Customer Billing Instructions. The system applies this preference during sales order entry.

See Also

- *Setting Up Adjustment Definitions* in the *Advanced Pricing Guide*

Pricing Unit of Measure Preference

Use the Pricing Unit of Measure preference for the following:

- To override the Pricing Unit of Measure field (in the default sales detail line)

The system completes the sales detail line based on information in the processing options or the Item Master. You might use this preference when your company has negotiated a price with a customer in a specific unit of measure. You then need to set up pricing for the customer and item in that unit of measure and enter a Pricing Unit of Measure preference to ensure that the system automatically adds the pricing unit of measure to the order. The pricing unit of measure can differ from the transaction unit of measure and can vary by branch/plant.

- To calculate the Price at Ambient/Standard

The system uses this flag at the time of delivery confirmation to re-extend the price using the standard or ambient temperature, depending on which value you choose.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set the sales price retrieval unit of measure in system constants. See *Setting Up System Constants*.
- ☐ Confirm that a base price record exists for the pricing unit of measure to be entered in this preference.

See Also

- *Setting Up Base Prices*

Product Allocation Preference

Use the Product Allocation preference to restrict the amount of an item or item group that a customer or customer group can purchase. For example, use this preference if the demand for a product exceeds the supply or if government regulations restrict limits for certain products.

You can set quantity limits to define the quantity that a customer or customer group is allowed to purchase or the quantity of each item or item group that is allowed to be sold. The system checks for allocation limits before it checks availability. Product allocation indicates how product is distributed among customers. Product availability indicates how much of any product is at any branch/plant location.

Product allocations can be set up as either:

- A fixed number of item units
- A percentage of the available product

If the order quantity exceeds allocated quantity, a warning message appears when you enter a sales order. At that time, you can put the order on hold or reduce order quantity to the allowable or available quantity.

Each time you place an order for an allocated product, the quantity ordered during the effective date range accumulates toward the allocation limit. The system updates the Quantity Sold field each time you enter an order. This field shows the quantity that was ordered at the time the allocation went into effect. When you change or cancel an order, the system subtracts the quantity from the running total. The system applies the product allocation preference before checking availability.

Caution: You should disable the Quantity From and Quantity Thru fields on Preference Master for the Product Allocation preference. This enables the system to automatically perform unit of measure conversions for this preference.

When you enter an order that exceeds the Product Allocation preference information, you can access the Product Allocation Information window to adjust the information.

Before You Begin

- ☐ You must identify the product allocation hold code in the sales order entry processing options if both of the following apply:

- You create Product Allocation preferences
- You want to place orders on hold if a customer's order exceeds their allocation

Technical Considerations

Working with kits and configured items

The Product Allocation preference does not function for kits and configured items.

Quantity sold and balance calculations

The balance column on the Product Allocation inquiry form updates with the quantity available to purchase if one of the following apply:

- Allocation Method 1 is used.
- Allocation Method 2 is used with the amount remaining in the Quantity Pool.

If you place an order on hold because it exceeds the allocated amount, the balance will show as a negative amount for either Allocation Method 1 or 2.

Activating product allocation

You can set quantity limits to define the quantity that a customer or customer group is allowed to purchase or the quantity of each item or item group that is allowed to be sold.

You must use the Product Allocation Hold code in conjunction with the Product Allocation Preference.

See Also

- *Defining Hold Codes*

Quality Management Preference

Use a Quality Management preference to either request or require that a test be run and certain quality standards be met for a particular customer and item combination.

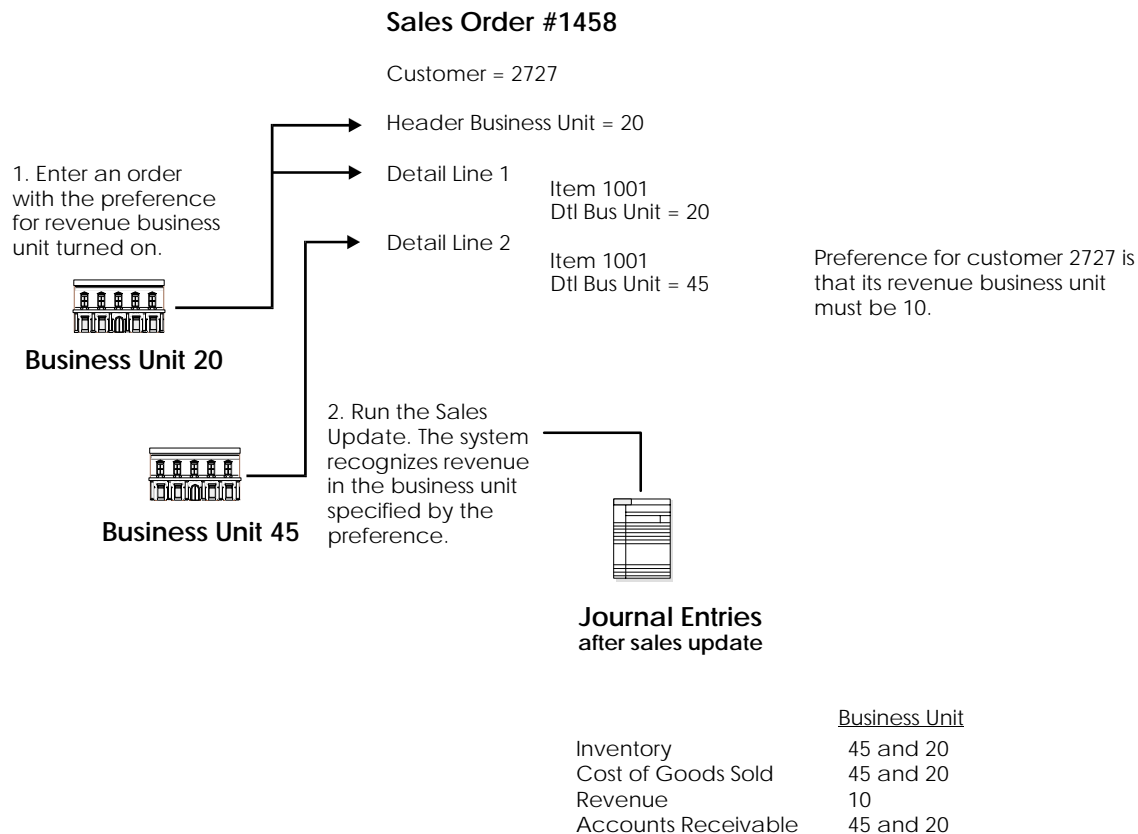
The system applies the preference when confirming a bulk load by trip. If a test is requested or required, you can either exit to On Vehicle Sampling/Quality or return to the menu to enter test results.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set up test specifications, which require the system to run a test or set a quality standard. See *Setting Up a Product Specification Master* in the *Quality Management Guide*.

Revenue Business Unit Preference

Use the Revenue Business Unit preference to recognize revenue for a business unit that is different from the central business unit. This preference allows you to override the default accounting branch/plant cost center from the Branch/Plant or Detail Branch/Plant fields. The Revenue Business Unit preference does not apply to interbranch sales.



Additionally, you can use this preference for a salesperson that might be located at the revenue business unit that is associated with the preference.

Example: Revenue Business Unit Preference

This example summarizes how to set up the Revenue Business Unit preference to ship items from multiple sites while posting revenue to a single site.

1. Create a Southwest customer group for an item.
2. Set up a Revenue Business Unit preference.
3. Set the preference hierarchy for the Revenue Business Unit preference at the intersection of Ship to Customer Group and Item Number.
4. In the Business Unit field on the Revenue Business Unit form, enter a branch/plant.

5. In the Revenue Business Unit field on the Revenue Business Unit form, enter a different branch/plant than you entered in the Business Unit field.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set the Update Customer Sales processing option to specify the revenue business unit.

Sales Commission Preference

Use the Sales Commission preference to set up sales personnel and commission rates based on customer and item combinations. Line of Business and Branch/Plant are additional search fields for this preference. You can assign different commission preferences for various customer and item combinations based on the line of business and branch/plant values.

The system normally provides default values from Customer Billing Instructions for the sales commission fields in the sales order header. If the billing instructions Rate fields are blank for the Commission Royalty Information, the system can provide default values for the commission rate. Normally, the system provides default values for each line on the sales order. The preference overrides the header information at the line level.

Before You Begin

- ☐ You must set up all salespeople in the address book and on the Commission/Royalty Information form before you can enter them on a preference. See *Setting Up Commission Information*.

User Defined Price Code Preference

Use the User Defined Price Code preferences to define your own codes for your unique pricing needs. Price codes are added to the sales order detail line during order entry.

Price codes can be used in Advanced Pricing programs to define price adjustments. They can also be used for your reporting requirements. For example, you might use a price code for temporary pricing. You define a price code to identify order lines that need to be repriced when commodity prices are published for a specific period.

When the price is known, you can run the Update Sales Price/Cost program. You should only select those lines with the price code that is equal to the specified value.

See Also

- *Updating Base Prices* in the *Advanced Pricing Guide*
- *Setting Up Base Prices*

Working with Preferences

You can activate each preference to use during order processing. With interactive processing, you activate each preference within a Preference Processing version. This version contains a list on which you activate or deactivate each preference for processing by the system.

You can use batch processing of preferences as an alternative to interactive processing during sales order entry. You can run preference batch processing after you have entered orders. Batch processing preferences can speed sales order entry because the system does not have to search for and apply each preference as you enter each order.

You can locate a specific preference to view how the preference has been defined. You can also locate preferences to determine if preferences exist for a customer and item combination before creating a new preference.

Working with preferences includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Activating preferences
- ☐ Locating preferences

Note: Values that you enter manually on the sales order line item override preference values.

Activating Preferences

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops menu (G4231), choose Preference Selection.

You must set the processing options for preference profile processing for all of the versions of order entry programs in which you want to apply preferences. You cannot use batch processing for the Inventory Commitment, Product Allocation or Delivery Date preference.

You must activate each preference that you want the system to use during processing. Preferences are activated within a version for the Preference Selection program. The prompts contain a list on which you activate or deactivate each preference for processing by the system.

To determine whether a preference is active, see the Preference Status field on the preference inquiry or revision forms that are specific to the preference you are reviewing.

Preference values override default values that the system uses from the Item Master, Item Branch/Plant Information, Customer Master Information, or data dictionary tables. If you do not activate preferences in the sales order program or in the preference profile program, the system uses normal default values.

Processing Options for Preference Profile Processing Options

Process Ctl

Enter a '1' next to each preference to be processed.

Payment Terms
Pricing Unit of Measure
Revenue Cost Center
End Use
Product Allocation
Grade and Potency

Process Ctl 2

Enter a '1' next to each preference to be processed.

Delivery Date
Line of Business
Price Code 1
Price Code 2
Price Code 3

Process Ctl 3

Enter a '1' next to each preference to be processed.

Order Preparation Days
Price Adjustment Schedule
Next Order Status
Sales Commission
Customer Currency

Locating Preferences

You can locate a specific preference to view how the preference has been defined. You can also locate preferences to determine if preferences exist for a customer and item combination before creating a new preference.

Note: If preferences already exist for the customer and item combination, you should determine the strategy of their use before creating another preference that might conflict with existing preferences.

► **To locate preferences**

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops menu (G4231), choose Profiles by Customer/Items.

1. On Work with Profiles by Customer/Item, complete any of the following fields and click Find:
 - Customer Number
 - Customer Group
 - Item Number
 - Item Group
2. To review preference information, do any of the following:
 - From the Form menu, choose Item Groups to locate preference information for an item or item group.
 - From the Form menu, choose Customer Group to locate preference information for a customer or customer group.
 - Select the row. From the Row menu, choose Hierarchy to review the preference hierarchy.
 - Select the row. From the Row menu, choose Master to review the preference master.



Tax Information

To comply with governmental tax regulations, you must set up tax information. After you set up this information you can:

- Track taxes according to different tax rates and areas
- Assign a default tax rate to a customer
- Apply a tax rate to an entire invoice or an individual pay item
- Enter a tax amount or have the system calculate the amount
- Track tax history in a separate table

Setting up sales tax information consists of:

- ☐ Setting up tax authorities
- ☐ Setting up tax rates and areas
- ☐ Setting up tax rules by company
- ☐ Assigning tax information to customers
- ☐ Setting up AAIs for taxes

What Are the Different Types of Taxes?

You might be required to collect one of the following types of taxes:

Sales tax

This tax is calculated on the gross amount of the sale of goods. Customers who buy goods for their own use pay sales tax at the time of purchase. Customers who buy goods for resale do not pay sales tax.

Value Added Tax (VAT)

This tax is collected at each stage in the product and distribution of goods and services as value is added. As a business adds value to a product, the business pays VAT on the added value.



Canadian goods and Services Tax (GST) and Provincial Sales Tax (PST)

In Canada, the federal government assesses a GST. The provincial government assesses a PST. The tax rates vary from province to province and are calculated using either the value of goods or the value plus GST.

Tax types are not exclusive to a single country. For example, VAT is used worldwide and encompasses a variety of value added taxes, such as:

- IVA in Italy
- TVA in Belgium
- GST in Singapore

Setting Up Tax Authorities

Tax authorities are government agencies that assess and collect taxes. For tracking and reporting purposes, your organization must set up an address book record for each tax authority to which it reports.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Set up a user defined code (01/ST) for search type T (tax).

► To set up tax authorities

From the Tax Reporting and Processing menu (G0021), choose Tax Authorities.

Alternatively, you can access the Address Book menu (G01) and set up tax authorities on Address Book Revisions.

1. On Work With Addresses, click Add to access Address Book Revisions.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Address Book Revisions - [Address Book Revision]". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Form", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dismiss", "Apply", "Links", "A/R", "Previous...", "Next", and "Internet". The main area of the window contains a form with the following fields:

- Address Number: 4242
- Address Book: (selected tab)
- Mailing: (tab)
- Additional: (tab)
- Related Address: (tab)
- Cat Code 1 - 10: (tab)
- Cat Code 11 - 30: (tab)
- Alpha Name: Capital System
- Long Address Number: (empty field)
- Tax ID: 66695263000170
- Search Type: C Customers
- Business Unit: 1

At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar with two buttons: "Work With Addresses" and "Address Book Revision".

2. On Address Book Revisions, complete the following fields and click OK.
 - Name – Alpha
 - Search Type
3. Click the Additional tab.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Address Book Revisions - [Address Book Revision]". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Form", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with buttons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dismiss", and "Apply", along with navigation buttons "Links", "A/R", "Previous...", "Next", and "Internet". The main area contains a form with the following fields and tabs:

- Address Number:** 4242
- Tabs:** Address Book, Mailing, **Additional**, Related Address, Cat Code 1 - 10, Cat Code 11 - 30
- Payables Y/N/M:** N
- Receivables Y/N:** ☒
- Employee Y/N:** ☐
- User Code:** ☐
- AR/AP Netting (Y):** ☐
- Subledger Inactive Code:** ☐
- Person/Corporation Code:**
- Corporate entity:** ☐
- Tax Exempt Certificate:**
- Add'l Ind Tax ID:** 113.306.771.113
- Credit Message:** 2
- Requires P.O.:** ☐
- Miscellaneous Code:**
- Language:** E
- English:** ☒
- Industry Classification:** 5200
- Retail Trade:** ☒

The bottom status bar shows "Work With Addresses" and "Address Book Revision".

4. Click the following option:
 - Receivables Y/N
5. Complete the following fields for additional tax information:
 - Person/Corporation Code
 - Add'l Ind Tax ID
 - Tax Exempt Certificate
6. Click OK.

Field	Explanation
Receivables Y/N	<p>A code in WorldSoftware or an option in OneWorld software that identifies the address as a customer.</p> <p>Valid values for WorldSoftware are:</p> <p>Y Yes, this is a customer. A processing option determines whether the customer master record automatically appears after you add an address.</p> <p>N No, this is not a customer. This code does not prevent you from entering an invoice for the address.</p> <p>Code N is informational only, unless you set a processing option. In this case, a warning message appears if both the Receivables and Payables fields are N.</p> <p>For OneWorld software:</p> <p>On This is a customer.</p> <p>Off This is not a customer.</p>
Person/Corporation Code	<p>A code that designates the type of taxpayer.</p> <p>Valid values for U.S. entities are:</p> <p>C Corporate entity (the 20-digit Tax field prints as 12-3456789)</p> <p>P Individual (the 20-digit Tax field prints as 123-45-6789)</p> <p>N Noncorporate entity (the 20-digit Tax field prints as 12-3456789)</p> <p>Blank Corporate entity</p> <p>Valid values for non-U.S. clients are (used with the 20-digit Company field and Individual field):</p> <p>1 Individual</p> <p>2 Corporate entity</p> <p>3 Both an individual and a corporate entity</p> <p>4 Noncorporate entity</p> <p>5 Customs authority</p> <p>For 1099 reporting, the system selects suppliers with codes of P and N.</p>
Add'l Ind Tax ID	An additional identification number that a tax authority assigns to an individual.
Tax Exempt Certificate	A number that identifies a license or certificate that tax authorities issue to tax-exempt individuals and companies.

Setting Up Tax Rates and Areas

To calculate and track the different taxes you are required to collect from your customers, you must set up:

- Tax areas
- Tax rates

Each tax area is a physical, geographical area, such as a state, province, or county. Different tax authorities assess a variety of taxes for each geographical area. Additionally, each authority within a tax area can have a different tax rate.

You can specify tax information for an item or an item group. To specify tax information for an item, enter the item number and activate the processing option to validate information against the Item Branch table (F4102).

To specify a tax rate for a group, you can only enter one of the valid options in the Sales Taxable Y/N field from the Item Branch/Plant Information form. The options 3 through 8 are for grouping items together based on a tax rate. You set up the tax rate by area for one of the options and then specify the option for like items in the Item Branch Information form.

You must enter a 0 so that the system does not validate this grouping number against information that you have defined in the Item Branch table (F4102).



To set up tax rates and areas

From the Tax Reporting and Processing menu (G0021), choose Tax Rate/Areas.

1. On Work With Tax Rate/Areas, click Add to access Tax Rate/Area Revisions.

Tax Rate/Area - [Tax Rate/Area Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Cancel Displ... About... Links Attach... OLE O... Internet

Tax Rate/Area: 00 Effective Date: 1/1/97

Description: Colorado State & Regional Tax Expiration Date: 12/31/06

Address	Tax Authority	G/L Offset	Tax Rate
4010	Colorado State Treasurer	TxTX	3.800

TOTAL TAX: 3.800

Inventory/Purchasing/Sales Order

Item Number (Short): Maximum Unit Cost:

Save record

2. On Tax Rate/Area Revisions, complete the following fields and click OK:
 - Tax Rate/Area
 - Description
 - Effective From
 - Expiration Date
 - Address
 - G/L Offset
 - Tax Rate
3. Verify the system-supplied information in the following fields:
 - Compound Tax
 - VAT Expense
 - TOTAL TAX
4. To specify tax rate/area information for an inventory item, complete the following fields (used only for Distribution):
 - Item Number – Short
 - Maximum Unit Cost
5. Click OK.

Field	Explanation
Tax Rate/Area	<p>A code that identifies a tax or geographic area that has common tax rates and tax distribution. The tax rate/area must be defined to include the tax authorities (for example, state, county, city, rapid transit district, or province), and their rates. To be valid, a code must be set up in the Tax Rate/Area table (F4008).</p> <p>Typically, U.S. sales and use taxes require multiple tax authorities per tax rate/area, whereas value-added tax (VAT) requires only one simple rate.</p> <p>The system uses this code to properly calculate the tax amount.</p>
Address	<p>The address book number of a tax authority that has jurisdiction in the tax area. This is an authority to whom you pay and report sales, use, or VAT taxes. Examples include states, counties, cities, transportation districts, provinces, and so on.</p> <p>You can have up to five tax authorities for a single tax area.</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For Canada, the GST tax authority must be on the first line. PST tax authorities can be on lines 2 through 5. If a GST input credit is applicable, the authorities on lines 3 through 5 can identify the GST percentage not eligible for input credits.</p>
G/L Offset	<p>A code that indicates how to locate the tax account for general ledger entries. This field points to automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) that, in turn, point to the tax account.</p> <p>Examples are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> PTyyyy — for A/P (VAT only) RTyyyy — for A/R (VAT only) GTyyyy — for G/L (VAT only) 4320 — for Sales Orders 4400 and 4410 — for Purchase Orders <p>When setting up VAT and Canadian GST, PTyyyy, RTyyyy, and GTyyyy are the only valid values. For the A/P system, a second G/L Offset (PT_ _ _) is required when your tax setup involves VAT plus use taxes (tax explanation code B). Use AAI PT_ _ _ _ to designate the use tax portion of the setup.</p> <p>For sales taxes, the Accounts Payable and Accounts Receivable systems ignore the values in this field. However, the Sales Order Management and Procurement systems require values in this field.</p>

Field	Explanation				
Tax Rate	A number that identifies the tax rate for a tax authority that has jurisdiction in the tax area. Tax rates must be expressed as a percentage and not as the decimal equivalent. For example, type 7 percent as 7. The value appears as 7.000.				
Compound Tax	<p>A code in WorldSoftware, or an option in OneWorld software, that indicates whether the tax rate for the tax authority is calculated pre-GST (taxable amount plus any GST for a previous tax authority) or calculated as a tax on a tax.</p> <p>Valid values for WorldSoftware are:</p> <table><tr><td>Y</td><td>Tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated after GST has been added to the product value. The taxable amount plus any GST calculated for a previous tax authority is added to calculate the basis for this authority.</td></tr><tr><td>N</td><td>Not tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated against the value of the product. The taxable amount is the basis for this authority.</td></tr></table> <p>Note: This field is used in Canada. It is valid only with tax explanation codes that begin with the letters B and C.</p> <p>For OneWorld software:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If this option is turned on, it indicates tax on a tax.• If this option is turned off, it indicates no tax on a tax. <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>This code is available only for the second tax authority (line 2 in the list on this form) and must identify a non-GST tax authority.</p>	Y	Tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated after GST has been added to the product value. The taxable amount plus any GST calculated for a previous tax authority is added to calculate the basis for this authority.	N	Not tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated against the value of the product. The taxable amount is the basis for this authority.
Y	Tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated after GST has been added to the product value. The taxable amount plus any GST calculated for a previous tax authority is added to calculate the basis for this authority.				
N	Not tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated against the value of the product. The taxable amount is the basis for this authority.				

Field	Explanation
VAT Expense	<p>A code in WorldSoftware, or an option in OneWorld software, that identifies the percentage of the VAT (GST) amount that is not eligible for input credits.</p> <p>Valid values for WorldSoftware are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> R Not recoverable. The tax is an expense and is not a receivable. Blank Recoverable. The tax is a receivable. This is the default. <p>NOTE: This field is used in Canada. It is valid only with tax explanation codes that begin with the letters C, B, and V.</p> <p>For OneWorld software:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If this option is turned on, tax is not recoverable. • If this option is turned off (default), tax is recoverable. <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>This code is available only for the third, fourth, fifth tax authorities (lines 3 through 5).</p>
TOTAL TAX	<p>A number that identifies the sum of the tax rates for all tax authorities in the tax rate/area.</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>A system-displayed number that indicates the sum of the tax rates for all the tax authorities. If you click the Compound Tax option, the total reflects compound taxes (tax on a tax). If you click the VAT Expense option, the total does not include the input credit amount.</p>
Item Number – Short	<p>An inventory item number. The system provides three separate item numbers plus an extensive cross-reference capability to other item numbers (see data item XRT) to accommodate substitute item numbers, replacements, bar codes, customer numbers, supplier numbers, and so forth. The item numbers are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Item Number (short) – An eight-digit, computer-assigned item number • 2nd Item Number – The 25-digit, free-form, user defined alphanumeric item number • 3rd Item Number – Another 25-digit, free-form, user defined alphanumeric item number <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>This number identifies either a group of items or a single item. Items that are assessed VAT generally use the group code number. Items that are assessed a luxury tax generally use a specific item number.</p> <p>Note: Only sales order and purchase order processing use this field. You can suppress this field with processing options.</p>

Field	Explanation
Maximum Unit Cost	Number that identifies the maximum amount that an item can be taxed. If the unit cost of an item is more than the amount you specify in this field, the maximum unit cost becomes taxable. NOTE: Only sales order and purchase order processing use this field. Tax laws in Tennessee (in the U.S.) have this requirement.

Processing Options for Tax Rates Options

Item#/MaxCost

Enter 1 to show these fields OR 0
to hide them:

Validation

Enter 1 to validate item numbers
OR 0 to not validate:

Setting Up Tax Rules by Company

Set up your tax rules so that the Accounts Receivable system can calculate any applicable taxes when you enter an invoice. You need to set up tax rules for each company. The system uses these rules to:

- Display a warning message (or reject a transaction) whenever someone enters a tax amount that differs from the system-calculated tax
- Calculate discounts on a gross amount that already includes tax
- Calculate tax on a gross amount that includes the discount amount

If you do not set up tax rules for a specific company, the system uses the rules that you have defined for company 0000. If there are no tax rules set up for company 0000, the system uses the following defaults:

- Calculate Tax on Gross field = Y
- Calculate Discount on Gross field = N

Setting up tax rules by company includes the following tasks:

- Setting up tolerance information
- Setting up calculation rules

You can only use tolerances in Accounts Receivable, Accounts Payable and the General Ledger.

You must set the three processing options in the post program, Post Invoices to the G/L (R09801), so that tax amounts are updated in the Sales/Use/VAT Tax table (F0018). If they are not set correctly, the system does not update information in this worktable, and does not generate standard tax reports.

► To set up tolerance information

From the Tax Reporting and Processing menu (G0021), choose Tax Rules.

When you enter a tax amount that differs from the tax amount that the system calculates, you might receive a warning message. By setting up tolerance information, you control the type of message that the system issues for different tolerance ranges. Tolerance ranges apply only to VAT and GST and can be a percentage or monetary amount.

1. On Work With Tax Rules, click Add.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Tax Rules - [Tax Rules Revisions]". It has a menu bar with File, Edit, Preferences, Window, and Help. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with buttons for OK, Cancel, Display..., About..., Links, Display..., OLE D..., and Internet. The main area contains several sections: "Company" with a text field containing "00001" and a label "Financial/Distribution Company"; a row of three radio buttons labeled "A/R", "A/P", and "G/L"; a "Tolerance" section with two columns, "Warning" and "Error", each containing a radio button for "%" and "Amt", and input fields for "2.000" and "10.000" respectively; a "Calculations" section with four checkboxes: "Tax on Gross Including Discount" (selected), "Tax on Gross Excluding Discount", "Discount on Gross Including Tax", and "Sales Order Taxes at Order Level"; an "Edit" section with a checkbox for "Allow Understatement of Tax Amt"; and a "Save record" button at the bottom left.

2. On Tax Rules Revisions, complete the following field:
 - Company
3. Under the Tolerance heading, click one of the following options:
 - Summary Level Tax Calculation Flag
 - Amt
4. Complete the following fields to identify the range for the type of tolerance you selected:
 - Tax Tolerance % – Range 1
 - OneWorld Event Point 01

After you complete these steps, follow the steps to set up the calculation rules.

Field	Explanation
Amt	The radio button indicates the tolerance type. Tolerance can be expressed as a percentage or as an amount.
Tax Tolerance % – Range 1	<p>Percentage used only for A/R, A/P, and G/L processing (sales order and purchase order processing do not use it). When you enter a VAT or GST amount that differs from the system-calculated tax, the system uses this percentage to determine whether to display a warning message.</p> <p>Enter the percentage as a whole number. For example, enter 10% as 10. If you enter 10 in this field and there is a difference between the tax amount you entered and the system-calculated tax amount, the system handles it as follows:</p> <p>Accept difference is 9.99% or less</p> <p>Warning difference is 10% or more</p> <p>The default (blank) causes a warning message to display if you enter a tax that does not exactly match the system-calculated amount tax.</p> <p>Note: This field applies only to VAT and GST.</p>

► To set up calculation rates

From the Tax Processing and Reporting menu (G0021), choose Tax Rules.

You can set up calculation rules to identify which method to use for calculating tax and discount amounts, when both are specified, for invoices. The rules control how the system validates the correct tax amount, based on the total amount of the invoice.

1. On Work With Tax Rules, click Add.
2. On Tax Rules Revisions, under the Calculations heading, click one of the following options:
 - Tax/Discount Calculation Method
 - Tax/Discount Calculation Method
3. Change the setting of the following field, if necessary:
 - Tax/Discount Calculation Method
4. To allow the entry of an amount that is less than the amount that the system calculates, click the following options:
 - Tax Rules–Allow Understatement
5. Click OK.

Examples: Calculation Rules

The system calculates gross and discount amounts using the tax rules that you set up. Each of the following examples uses a different combination of rules to calculate the following:

- Tax on gross with or without discounts
- Discount on gross with or without tax

The following examples use these amounts:

- Taxable: 1,000
- Tax percent: 10 percent
- Tax amount: 100
- Discount: 1 percent

Example: Calculate Tax on Gross with Discount

**Calculate Tax on Gross
(Including Discounts)** Yes

**Calculate Discount on
Gross (Including Tax)** Yes

Discount Formula $(\text{Taxable Amount} + \text{Tax Amount}) \times (\text{Discount Rate Percent}) = \text{Discount Available}$

- $(1,000 \times 100) \times .01 = 11.00$

Gross Formula $\text{Taxable Amount} + \text{Tax} = 1,000 + 100 = 1,100$

Example: Calculate Tax on Gross without Discount

Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discount)	Yes
Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax)	No
Discount Formula	<p>Taxable Amount x Discount Rate Percent = Discount Available</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • $1,000 \times .01 = 10.00$
Gross Formula	$\text{Taxable Amount} + \text{Tax} = 1,000 + 100 = 1,100$

Example: Calculate Discount on Gross with Tax

Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discount)	No
Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax)	Yes
Discount Formula	<p>$[(\text{Taxable Amount} + \text{Tax Amount}) \times (\text{Discount Rate Percent})] / (1 - \text{Discount Rate Percent})$</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • $[(1,000 + 100) \times .01] / (1 - .01) = 11.11$
Gross Formula	$\text{Taxable Amount} + \text{Tax} + \text{Discount} = 1,000 + 100 + 11.11 = 1,111.11$

Example: Calculate Discount on Gross without Tax

Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discount) No

Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax) No

Discount Formula $(\text{Taxable Amount} \times \text{Discount Rate Percent}) / (\text{Discount Rate Percent} \times \text{Tax Rate})$

- $(1,000 \times .01) / (.01 \times .10) = 10.10$

Gross Formula $\text{Taxable Amount} + \text{Tax} + \text{Discount} = 1,000 + 100 + 10.10 = 1,110.10$

Assigning Tax Information to Customers

You might be required to calculate, collect, and track taxes on some of the invoices you send to your customers. When this is necessary, you must enter specific tax information, such as a tax explanation code and a tax rate for the customer's geographic location, in order for the system to calculate the appropriate amount. These codes control how you:

- Collect taxes
- Distribute taxes to specific G/L revenue and expense accounts

During order entry, the system retrieves tax explanation codes and rate areas from the Customer Master Information. For direct ship, transfer orders, or sales orders with alternate Sold-To and Ship-To addresses, the system retrieves the tax explanation code from the Sold-To address and the tax rate/area from the Ship-To address, but this rate can be overridden.

Tax explanation codes are user defined codes (system 00/type EX). Each tax explanation code has corresponding AAI items that identify the debit and credit tax accounts.

What Are the Types of Tax Explanation Codes?

J.D. Edwards provides the following tax explanation codes for invoice processing:

- B – GST + PST, where PST is self-assessed (Canadian)
- BT – Same as B, but taxes only
- C – GST + PST, where PST is seller-assessed (Canadian)
- CT – Same as C, but taxes only
- E – Exempt
- S – Sales tax. Seller-assessed (PST in Canada and sales in U.S.)
- ST – Same as S, but taxes only
- V – VAT (VAT in Europe and GST in Canada)
- VT – Same as V, but taxes only
- V+ – Same as V, but calculated as a tax on tax.

How Does the System Calculate Taxes?

The system can calculate some of the following commonly used taxes:

- Sales Tax (S)
- VAT (V)
- VAT + Sales Tax
- VAT + Use Tax (B)

Example: Sales Tax (S)

The system calculates the tax amount but does not make a separate entry to the general ledger for the tax amount. The tax amount (which is 73 in the following example) appears on the invoice. The system updates the Sales/Use/VAT Tax table (F0018) for tax reporting purposes.

Tax rate	7.3 percent
Taxable amount	1,000
Sales tax calculation	Taxable amount x sales tax rate <ul style="list-style-type: none">• $1,000 \times 0.073 = 73$
Invoice	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Amount: 1,000• Taxable: 73• Gross amount: 1,073
Journal entries	Revenue: 1,073–
Automatic offsets	A/R trade: 1,073

Example: VAT (V)

The system calculates the tax amount and makes a separate entry to the general ledger for the tax amount.

Tax rate	7.3 percent
Taxable amount	1,000
Sales tax calculation	Taxable amount x VAT tax rate <ul style="list-style-type: none">• $1,000 \times .073 = 73$
Invoice	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Amount: 1,000• Tax amount: 73• Gross amount: 1,073
Journal entries	Revenue: 1,000–
Automatic offsets	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• A/R trade: 1,073• VAT payable: 73–

Example: VAT + Sales Tax

The system calculates taxes on a tax amount. The following example shows both VAT plus sales tax and GST plus PST.

Tax rate/area calculation method	Y (tax on tax)
Tax rate	7 percent GST, 8 percent PST
Taxable amount	1,000
GST calculation	Taxable amount x GST rate <ul style="list-style-type: none">• $1,000 \times .07 = 70$
PST calculation	Taxable amount + GST x PST rate <ul style="list-style-type: none">• $1,000 + 70 \times .08 = 85.60$
Tax amount	GST + PST <ul style="list-style-type: none">• $70 + 85.60 = 155.60$

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| Invoice | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amount: 1,000 • Tax amount: 155.60 • Gross amount: 1,155.60 |
|----------------|---|

Journal entries	Revenue: 1,085.60–
------------------------	--------------------

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Automatic offsets | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A/R trade: 1,155.60 • VAT payable: 70– |
|--------------------------|---|

Example: VAT + Use Tax (B)

The system calculates use tax on amounts that include GST (Canadian VAT).

- | | |
|---|--|
| Tax rate/area calculation method | Y (tax on tax) |
| Tax rate | 10 percent VAT (GST), 5 percent Use |
| Taxable amount | 1,000 |
| VAT calculation | Taxable amount x VAT (GST) rate
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1,000 x 10 |
| Use tax calculation | Taxable amount + VAT x Use rate
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1,000 + 100 x .05 = 55 |
| Tax amount | VAT (or GST) + Use
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100 + 55 = 155 |
| Invoice | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amount: 1,000 • Tax amount: 155 • Gross amount: 1,100 |
| Journal entries | Revenue: 1,055– |
| Automatic offsets | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VAT payable: 100– • A/R trade: 1,100 • Taxes recoverable: 55 |

► **To assign tax information to customers**

From Sales Order Management Setup (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions

1. On Work with Customer Master, to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system, click Find.
2. Choose the customer and click Select.

3. On Customer Master Information, click the Tax Information tab.

Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

QK Can... Dis... Ago Links Who's... Previo... Next Internet

Customer Number 4242 Capital System

Long Address Number

Company 00000

Credit Collection Billing Page1 Billing Page2 G / L Distribution Tax Information Customer

Tax Expt Code S

Tax Rate/Area DEN

Person/Corporation Code

Add'l Ind Tax ID 113.306.771.113

Work With Customer Master Customer Master Revision

4. Complete the tax information for the customer.
5. Optionally, you can enter other tax identification number.

See Also

- *Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions*
- *Setting up Address Book Information*

Setting Up AAI for Taxes

If you are required to collect taxes on customer invoices, you must distribute the tax amounts to the correct G/L accounts. When you set up AAI for a specific type of tax, such as VAT or use tax, you designate what accounts you want to debit and credit for an invoice tax amount.

Which AAI Do You Need to Set Up for Taxes?

When you enter a sales order, the system uses the 4250 AAI with the tax explanation code S (sales tax). This AAI looks for a combination of the company number, order type, and G/L class code. The system retrieves the G/L class code from the G/L offset that you defined for the tax rate and area.

When you use a value-added tax code, the system uses the Financial AAI for receivables taxes (RT). You must set up an AAI item RTyyyy to point to various types of account number. You must have a corresponding AAI for each G/L offset account that you use in the tax rate/area table.

The character code yyyy represents a G/L offset account for the tax rate/area, such as RTSALE or RTVAT. The character code _ _ _ _ means that there is no G/L offset account. This code points to the AAI item, which, in turn, points to the appropriate tax accounts. For example, for the code RTVATB, RT is the AAI item for a receivables tax account, and VATB is the character code that identifies the G/L offset account that you defined in the tax rate area.

Each tax explanation code has corresponding AAI items that identify the debit and credit tax accounts. The types of tax explanation codes are:

- Value-added tax codes
- VAT plus sales tax codes
- Tax-exempt tax codes

See Also

- *Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions*
- *Assigning Tax Information to Customers*

Value-added Tax Codes

The tax explanation codes for value-added taxes and their AAI items are as follows:

Value-added tax code V When you enter an invoice, you credit the G/L distribution accounts for the goods. The system debits an A/R account and credits a VAT payable account.

RTyyyy identifies the VAT payable account and RCyyyy identifies the A/R trade account. For example:

- Dr 1100 RCyyyy Gross (A/R for goods of 1000 + VAT of 100)
- Cr 1000 G/L distribution (goods of 1000)
- Cr 100 RTyyyy (VAT recoverable account for the tax rate/area)

Value-added tax code V+ (calculated as a tax on a tax) The accounts are the same as those for V.

Value-added tax code VT (taxes only) The accounts are the same as those for V. For example:

- Dr 100 RCyyyy Gross (A/R for VAT of 100)
- Cr 0 G/L distribution (goods of 0)
- Cr 100 RTyyyy (VAT payable account for the tax rate/area)

The amount distributed to the general ledger includes the goods and the sales tax because this is the true cost of purchased goods. VAT is not included in the G/L distribution amount because a company is usually reimbursed for any VAT that is paid when the company sells those goods.

The post program generates the VAT amount.

VAT plus Sales Tax Codes

The tax explanation codes for VAT plus sales taxes and their AAI items are as follows:

VAT plus sales tax code C (GST + seller-assessed PST/Canada only)

When you enter an invoice, you credit G/L distribution accounts (for the goods + PST). The system debits an A/R account and credits a GST payable account. RTyyyy identifies the A/R account. For example:

- Dr 1155 RCyyyy Gross (A/R for goods of 1000 + GST of 100 + PST of 55)
- Cr 100 RTyyyy (GST payable account for the tax rate/area)
- Cr 1055 G/L distribution (goods of 1000 + PST of 55)

VAT plus sales tax code CT (GST + seller-assessed PST/Canada only)

Taxes only. Accounts are the same as those for C. For example:

- Dr 155 RCyyyy Gross (A/R for GST of 100 + PST of 55)
- Cr 55 G/L distribution (PST of 55)
- Cr 100 RTyyyy (GST payable account for the tax rate/area)

Tax Exempt Tax Code

The tax explanation code for exempt and its AAI item are as follows:

Tax Exempt Tax Code E

When you enter an invoice, the system performs no tax calculations. You credit G/L distribution accounts and the system debits an A/R account. For example:

- Dr 1000 RCyyyy Gross (A/R for goods of 1000)
- Cr 1000 G/L distribution (goods of 1000)

Setup



System Setup

Before you use the Sales Order Management system, you need to define certain information that the system will use during processing. You use this information to customize the system for your business needs. For example, you might want to set up default customer information to simplify the order entry process and avoid repetition.

System setup includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Defining related addresses
- ☐ Setting up customer billing instructions
- ☐ Setting up constants
- ☐ Setting up order line types
- ☐ Setting up order activity rules
- ☐ Setting up order templates
- ☐ Setting up order hold information
- ☐ Setting up commission information
- ☐ Setting up branch sales markups
- ☐ Setting up automatic accounting instructions
- ☐ Defining flexible accounting numbers

The following describes the information that you must set up for this system.

Related Addresses

You can designate related addresses – Ship To, Sold To, and Parent – or a parent address for a customer, such as invoicing addresses, in addition to the Ship To address.

Customer billing instructions

You can set up customer information that the system uses as default order, shipping, billing, and freight information. The system retrieves this information every time you enter an order for a customer.



Constants	<p>You set up constants to provide the system with the following types of default information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• System constants determine which functions to perform.• Batch control constants determine whether an application requires management approval and batch control.• Branch/plant constants control day-to-day transactions within a branch/plant.• Location format determines how you identify item storage locations in a branch/plant.• Item availability defines how the system calculates the number of items that each branch/plant contains.
Order line types	<p>You can define codes that determine how the system processes a detail line in an order.</p>
Order activity rules	<p>You can establish the sequence of steps to process an order.</p>
Order templates	<p>You create and assign order templates to speed up the order entry process. A template contains information about frequently ordered items.</p>
Order hold information	<p>You can set up the information that the system uses to place sales orders on hold.</p>
Commission information	<p>You can set up commission information for a specific salesperson or a group of salespeople.</p>
Branch sales markups	<p>You can define the additional costs that are associated with interbranch sales orders.</p>
Automatic accounting instructions (AAIs)	<p>You set up AAIs to provide the Sales Order Management system with accounting information and general ledger relationships that are needed to interact with the General Accounting system.</p>
Flexible accounting numbers	<p>You use flexible sales accounting for account numbers that use the standard J.D. Edwards format, which is businessunit.object.subsidiary. The flexible format lets you customize each segment of the account number.</p>

Defining Related Addresses

When you create a sales order, you must specify the address to which you send the invoice (sold to address) and the address to which you send the shipment (ship to address). These two addresses can be different.

You can simplify the process of entering more than one address for a sales order by defining default addresses for each customer. For a given ship to address, you can define a related sold to address. For a sold to address, you can define a related ship to address. When you enter either address in a sales order, the system automatically fills in the other.

You can also designate other related addresses or a parent address for a customer. For example, a customer might have a parent address to which you send all invoices and multiple subsidiary addresses to which you send shipments.

Complete the following tasks to define related customer addresses:

- ☐ Enter related addresses
- ☐ Define the invoicing address
- ☐ Define default address types

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that the customer address and all related addresses have been entered in the Address Book table (F0101). See *Entering Basic Address Book Information* in the *Address Book Guide*.
- ☐ Verify that the customer has been set up in the Customer Master table (F0301). See *About Customer Information* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide*.

Entering Related Addresses

The Address Book table allows you to maintain information about all the companies and people with whom you do business. For each customer, you must define any and all of the following related addresses in the Address Book:

- Ship To
- Sold To
- Parent

A related address must have an assigned number from the address book before it can be included on the Address Book - Additional Info form. If no related addresses exist, these fields contain the same address book number assigned to the customer.

To enter related addresses

From the Customer Revisions menu (G4221), choose Customer Address Book Revisions.

You enter basic address book information to create employee, customer, and supplier profiles.

1. On Work With Addresses, choose the appropriate address book record.
2. Click Select to access Address Book Revision.

- To enter more address information for the record, click the Related Address tab.

Address Book Revisions - [Address Book Revision]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Cancel Dismiss Mouse

Links A/R Previous Next OLE ... Internet

Address Number 3001

Address Book Mailing Additional **Related Address** Cat Code 1 - 10 Cat Code 11 - 30

Parent Number		
1st Address Number	3001	Global Enterprises
2nd Address Number	3001	Global Enterprises
3rd Address Number	3001	Global Enterprises
4th Address Number	3001	Global Enterprises
5th Address Number	3001	Global Enterprises
Factor/Special Payee	3001	Global Enterprises

Work With Addresses Address Book Revision

- On Related Addresses, complete any of the following fields:
 - Parent Number
 - 1st Address Number

You can use the supplementary address number fields to enter additional information of the primary address.

- Factor/Special Payee
- Click OK to save and update your information.

Field	Explanation
Parent Number	<p>The address book number of the parent company. The system uses this number to associate a particular address with a parent company or location. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Subsidiaries with parent companies• Branches with a home office• Job sites with a general contractor <p>This address must exist in the Address Book Master table (F0101) for validation purposes. Any value you enter in this field updates the Address Book Organizational/Structure table (F0150) for the blank structure type.</p> <p>The value you enter in the Parent Number field updates the Address Organization Structure Master table (F0150) if the Structure Type field is blank.</p>
1st Address Number	<p>An alternate address number in the Address Book system. You can use this field for any secondary business address that relates to the primary address. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Salesperson• Law firm• Accountant• Securities agent• Bonding agent <p>If you leave this field blank on an entry form, the system supplies the primary address from the Address Number field.</p>
Factor/Special Payee	<p>An address book number that identifies a special payment address for A/P.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank on an entry form, the system supplies the primary address from the Address Number field. This address must exist in the Address Book Master table (F0101) for validation purposes.</p>

Defining the Invoicing Address

After you enter related addresses in the address book, you must define the address to which you will send all invoices. You must also enter the parent address here, if you have entered it in the address book.

To define the invoicing address

From Customer Revisions (G4221), choose Customer Master Information.

1. On Work with Customer Master, to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system, click Find.

2. Choose the customer and click Select.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]". It has a menu bar with File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Window, and Help. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with buttons for OK, Cancel, Dismiss, Abort, and a "Links" dropdown. The main area contains several input fields and checkboxes. The "Invoices" tab is selected, showing fields for Payment Terms - A/R (001), Payment Instrument (Default), Hold Invoices (unchecked), Send Invoice to (C), Customer, Bal Fwd-Open Item (0), Alternate Payor (4242), Parent Number, Auto Receipt (Y/N) (checked), Auto Receipts Execution List, Currency Code (USD), U.S. Dollar, and A/B Amount Codes (USD). The status bar at the bottom shows "Work With Customer Master" and "Customer Master Revision".

3. On Customer Master Revisions, click the Invoices tab and complete the following fields:
 - Hold Invoices
 - Send Invoice to C/P
 - Alternate Payor
 - Address Number – Parent

Defining Default Address Types

You can simplify the process of entering more than one address for a sales order by defining default address information. You can define which of the following address types the system uses as the default for a customer:

- Sold to address only (Billing Address Type B)
- Ship to address only (Billing Address Type S)
- Sold to and ship to address (Billing Address Type X)

You can also define a related address in the customer billing instructions. This is the same as the related address you entered in the address book.

► To define default address types

From Customer Revisions (G4221), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, to access Customer Master Information, choose the customer and click Select.
2. On Customer Master Revisions, click the Billing Page 1 tab.

3. Complete the following fields:
 - Billing Address Type
 - Related – Address Number
 - Credit Check Level

Field	Explanation
Billing Address Type	Code that tells the system to use this address as a Sold To address, a Ship To address, or both. Valid codes are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> X Indicates a bill to and a ship to address S Indicates a ship to address only B Indicates a bill to address only

Field	Explanation
Related – Address No.	<p>Related Address Number is used most frequently in those instances where the customer asks us to ship to a variety of locations across the country, but wishes us to send all invoices to a single address. In that case, we would have an address for each shipping destination, each coded with an “S”, meaning Ship-to only; the Billing Instruction record for each of these addresses would, in turn, point to a common Related Address Number. This value, (1 through 5) would point to one of the 5 related addresses.</p>
Credit Check Level	<p>A code that controls the way the system conducts credit checking.</p> <p>Codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> P Credit check based on the customer’s parent number (P for Parent) C Credit check against the customer number only S Credit check against the customer number only <p>If you use method P, the system compares the open accounts receivable and open sales orders for the sum of the children and the parent against the credit limit for the parent number. Use this, for example, when a customer with multiple offices or branches, each of which order from you, asks that all credit checking be reflected in a single account.</p> <p>NOTE: Even though credit checking can be conducted at the parent or customer number level, all accounts receivable will be posted to the customer number (SDAN8) during Sales Update (P42800).</p>

Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions

Before you process sales orders, you must set up default customer information in the Customer Billing Instructions.

Setting up customer billing instructions includes the following tasks:

- Enter billing information
- Enter freight and delivery information
- Enter item restrictions
- Enter commission information
- Enter credit information
- Enter collection information

For example, if a customer wants you to bill the parent company for items that are shipped to several branch offices, you can specify this information in the customer billing instructions. The system retrieves this default information every time that you enter an order for this customer.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that address book records exist for your customers.
- ☐ Verify that you have specified default and related addresses for each customer. You must specify the address to which you send the invoice and the address to which you send the shipment. See *Defining Related Addresses*.



To enter billing information

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, to access Customer Master Information, choose the customer and click Select.
2. On Customer Master Revisions, click the Billing Page 1 tab.

Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

Links Who's... Previo... Next OLE ... Internet

Customer Number 4242 Capital System

Long Address Number

Company 00000

Invoices Credit Collection **Billing Page 1** Billing Page 2 G / L Distribution Tax Information

Billing Address Type ☒ Bill To and Ship To Address Customer PO Required ☐
Related Address Num 1 Parent Exempt from Credit Hold ☐
Customer Price Group PREFER Preferred Customers Delivery Note ☐
Minimum Order Value 1,500 Invoice Consolidation ☐
Maximum Order Value Backorders Allowed ☒
Print Message Substitutes Allowed ☒
Order Template BIKES Bicycles Partial Shipments Allowed ☒
Credit Check Level C Customer (Sold To) Partial Order Shipments Allowed ☒
Price Pick List ☒
Apply Freight ☒
Certificate Of Analysis Print ☐

Work With Customer Master Customer Master Revision

3. Complete the following fields to define invoice and related address information:
 - Billing Address Type
 - Related – Address Number
4. Complete the following fields:
 - Customer Price Group
 - Discount – Trade
 - Maximum Order Value
 - Minimum Order Value
 - Print Message
 - Order Template
 - Credit Check Level
5. To indicate your customer's requirements, click any of the following options:
 - Customer PO Required (Y/N)
 - Credit Hold Exempt
 - Invoice Consolidation
 - Backorders Allowed (Y/N)
 - Substitutes Allowed (Y/N)
 - Price Pick List (Y/N)
6. Click the Billing Page 2 tab.

Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Can... Dis... Abo Links Who's... Previo... Next OLE ... Internet

Customer Number 4242 Capital System

Long Address Number

Company 00000

Invoices Credit Collection Billing Page1 **Billing Page2** G / L Distribution Tax Information

Invoice Copies

Hold Orders Code Blank - Hold Codes 42/HC

Priority Processing Code 0 Default

Weight Display U/M

Volume Display U/M

Freight Handling Code

Zone Number Blank - Shipping Zone

Commission Code 1 6001

Commission Rate 1 5.000

Commission Code 2

Commission Rate 2

Work With Customer Master Customer Master Revision

7. Complete the following fields:

- Invoice Copies
- Hold Orders Code
- Priority – Processing

Field	Explanation
Customer Price Group	A user defined code (40/PC) that identifies a customer group. You can group customers with similar characteristics, such as comparable pricing.
Trade Discount	Percentage by which the system reduces the price of each item. This is the only discount that will be applied. You can override it if you enter a price. Enter the percentage as a whole number (that is, 5 for 5%).
Maximum Order Value	Value above which an order is placed on hold. If you try to enter an order whose total is more than the maximum order value, the system displays an error message. This field is maintained as an integer without decimals.
Minimum Order Value	Value below which an order is placed on hold. If you try to enter an order that has a total amount that is less than the minimum order value, the system displays an error message. This field is maintained as an integer without decimals.

Field	Explanation
Print Message	A user defined code that you assign to each print message. Examples of text used in messages are engineering specifications, hours of operation during holiday periods, and special delivery instructions.
Order Template	A list of items that you frequently order. The items are often grouped based on the product type, such as fuels, lubricants, and packaged goods.
Credit Check Level	<p>A code that controls the way the system conducts credit checking.</p> <p>Codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> P Credit check based on the customer's parent number (P for Parent) C Credit check against the customer number only S Credit check against the customer number only <p>If you use method P, the system compares the open accounts receivable and open sales orders for the sum of the children and the parent against the credit limit for the parent number. Use this, for example, when a customer with multiple offices or branches, each of which order from you, asks that all credit checking be reflected in a single account.</p> <p>NOTE: Even though credit checking can be conducted at the parent or customer number level, all accounts receivable will be posted to the customer number (SDAN8) during Sales Update (P42800).</p>
Customer PO Required	This field is used to indicate if the Customer Purchase Order Number field is required to be entered for the customer. This field is edited during Sales Order Entry.
Exempt from Credit Hold	<p>Code indicating if the customer is exempt from credit checking in the Sales Order Processing cycle. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Sales order entry should not check the customer's credit. N This customer is not exempt from credit checking. If credit checking is activated through the Sales Order Entry processing options and the customer goes over the limit, the order will be put on hold. (You set up a credit limit for the customer in the address book).

Field	Explanation
Invoice Consolidation	<p>Code that tells the system whether a customer wants consolidated invoices. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Customer wants consolidation. N Customer does not want consolidation. <p>If you specify consolidation, the system generates a single invoice from multiple sales orders.</p> <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that a customer wants consolidated invoices.</p>
Backorders Allowed	<p>A code that indicates whether you allow backorders for this item. You can allow backorders by item (through Item Master or Item Branch/Plant), by customer (through Billing Instructions), or by branch/plant (through Branch/Plant Constants).</p> <p>For WorldSoftware, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Yes, allow backorders for this item. N No, do not allow backorders for this item, regardless of the backorders code assigned to the customer. <p>For OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that backorders are allowed.</p>
Substitutes Allowed	<p>Code associated with each customer specifying whether that customer will accept substitute items. Enter N to disallow or Y to allow substitutions. The system will interpret a blank value as a Y.</p>
Price Pick List	<p>A code that indicates whether price information will appear on the customer's pick list, purchase order, or sales order.</p> <p>In WorldSoftware, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Yes, which is the default N No. <p>In OneWorld software, a checkmark indicates that price information will appear on the customer's pick list, or the purchase order.</p>
Invoice Copies	<p>The number of invoice copies required by the customer. The system prints the number of invoices specified in this field. The system always prints at least one invoice.</p>
Hold Orders Code	<p>A user defined code (42/HC) that identifies why an order is on hold.</p>

Field	Explanation
Priority Processing Code	<p>A code that tells the system to handle this customer's orders on a priority basis. Use this value to set up print pick slips so you can choose to print them on a priority basis. This code is assigned from the Customer Billing Instructions.</p> <p>In addition, the backorder print report and automatic batch release program can be sequenced by this code to release those orders with the highest priority first.</p>

► To enter freight and delivery information

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, click Find to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system.
2. Choose the customer and click Select.
3. On Customer Master Revision, click the Billing Page 1 tab.

4. Click the following options to indicate your customer's requirements:
 - Delivery Note
 - Partial Line Shipments Allowed (Y/N)
 - Partial Order Shipments Allowed (Y/N)
 - Apply Freight – Y/N

5. Complete the following field:
 - Delivery Instructions Line 1
6. Click the Billing Page 2 tab.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Form", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dis...", "Abo", "Links", "Who's...", "Previo...", "Next", "OLE ...", and "Internet". The main form area contains several input fields and labels. At the top, there are fields for "Customer Number" (containing "4242"), "Capital System", "Long Address Number", and "Company" (containing "00000"). Below these are tabs for "Invoices", "Credit", "Collection", "Billing Page1", "Billing Page2" (which is selected), "G / L Distribution", and "Tax Information". The "Billing Page2" tab shows a grid of fields. On the left side of the grid are "Invoice Copies", "Hold Orders Code", "Priority Processing Code" (containing "0"), "Weight Display U/M", "Volume Display U/M", "Freight Handling Code", and "Zone Number". On the right side are "Commission Code 1" (containing "6001"), "Commission Rate 1" (containing "5.000"), "Commission Code 2", and "Commission Rate 2". There are also labels like "Blank - Hold Codes 42/HC" and "Blank - Shipping Zone". At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar with two buttons: "Work With Customer Master" and "Customer Master Revision".

7. Complete the following fields:
 - Freight Handling Code
 - Route Code
 - Stop Code
 - Zone Number
 - Carrier Number
 - Unit of Measure – Volume Display
 - Unit of Measure – Weight Display
8. Continue to enter the customer record by entering item restriction information (optional).

Field	Explanation
Delivery Note	<p>Code that indicates whether the system prints delivery notes for this customer.</p> <p>In WorldSoftware, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y The customer's order can produce delivery notes.N The system will not generate delivery notes for the customer. <p>If you leave this field blank, the system uses N.</p> <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system prints delivery notes for this customer.</p>
Apply Freight	<p>A code indicating whether the system performs freight calculations during processing.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y Perform calculations. This is the default.N Do not perform calculations. <p>For OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system should perform freight calculations during processing.</p>
Delivery Instructions	<p>One of two fields that you use to enter delivery instructions.</p>
Freight Handling Code	<p>A user defined code (42/FR) designating the method by which supplier shipments are delivered. For example, the supplier could deliver to your dock, or you could pick up the shipment at the supplier's dock.</p> <p>You can also use these codes to indicate who has responsibility for freight charges. For example, you can have a code indicating that the customer legally takes possession of goods as soon as they leave the supplier warehouse and is responsible for transportation charges to the destination.</p>
Route Code	<p>The route field is a user defined code (system 42, type RT) that represents the delivery route on which the customer resides. This field is one of several factors used by the freight summary facility to calculate potential freight charges for an order.</p> <p>For picking, use the route code with the stop and zone codes to group all of the items that are to be loaded onto a delivery vehicle for a specific route.</p> <p>You set up a default for each of these fields on the Customer Billing Instruction form.</p>

Field	Explanation
Stop Code	<p>The stop code is a user defined code (system 42, type SP) that represents the stop on a delivery route. This field is one of several factors used by the freight summary facility to calculate potential freight charges for an order.</p> <p>For picking, you can use the stop code with the route and zone codes to group all items that are to be loaded onto a delivery vehicle for a specific route.</p> <p>You set up the default for each of these fields on the Customer Billing Instructions form.</p>
Zone Number	<p>The zone field is a user defined code (system 40, type ZN) that represents the delivery area in which the customer resides. This field is one of several factors used by freight summary facility to calculate potential freight charges for an order.</p> <p>For picking you can use the zone code with the route and stop codes to group all item that are to be loaded onto a delivery vehicle for a specific route.</p> <p>You set up the default for each of these fields on the Customer Billing Instructions form.</p>
Carrier Number	<p>The address number for the preferred carrier of the item. The customer or your organization might prefer a certain carrier due to route or special handling requirements.</p>
Volume Display U/M	<p>A user defined code (00/UM) that identifies the unit of measure that the system uses to display volume for this branch/plant. The system inputs a value in this field from Branch/Plant Constants – Page 2 (P410012). You can override this default value.</p>
Weight Display U/M	<p>A user defined code (00/UM) that identifies which unit of measure the system should use to display the weight of individual order lines and the order as a whole for this customer when you use the order summary form.</p>

► To enter item restrictions

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work With Customer Master, click Find to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system.
2. Choose the customer and click Select.
3. On Customer Master Revision, review the default information and make any changes.

4. Click the Billing Page 1 tab and complete the following field:
 - Item Restrictions
5. From the Form menu, choose Item Restrict.

6. On Item Restriction Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Item Description
 - Item Number – Unknown Format Entered

Field	Explanation
Item Restrictions	<p>A code that designates whether restrictions have been placed on the sale of items to this customer.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blank No restrictions. I A customer can be sold only those items set up on the Item Restrictions screen. E A customer cannot be sold the items set up on the Item Restrictions screen.

► **To enter commission information**

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, click Find to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system.
2. Choose the customer and click Select.
3. On Customer Master Revision, click the Billing Page 2 tab.

The screenshot displays the 'Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]' window. The 'Billing Page2' tab is active. The form contains the following fields and values:

Field	Value
Customer Number	4242
Capital System	
Long Address Number	
Company	00000
Invoice Copies	
Hold Orders Code	
Priority Processing Code	0
Weight Display U/M	
Volume Display U/M	
Freight Handling Code	
Zone Number	
Blank - Shipping Zone	
Commission Code 1	6001
Commission Rate 1	5.000
Commission Code 2	
Commission Rate 2	

4. Complete the following fields:
 - Commission Code 1
 - Rate – Commission 1
 - Commission Code 2
 - Rate – Commission 2
5. Continue to enter the customer record by entering credit information (optional).

► To enter credit information

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

When you create a customer record, you can enter credit information for the customer. For example, you can assign a credit limit to a customer and designate a credit manager to perform credit reviews.

1. On Work with Customer Master, click Find to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system.
2. Choose the customer and click Select.
3. On Customer Master Revision, click the Credit tab.

The screenshot displays a software window titled "Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Form", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with buttons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dis...", "Abo...", "Links", "Who's...", "Previo...", "Next", "OLE...", and "Internet". The main area of the window contains a form with several sections. The top section has fields for "Customer Number" (4242), "Capital System", "Long Address Number", and "Company" (00000). Below this is a tabbed interface with tabs for "Invoices", "Credit" (selected), "Collection", "Billing Page1", "Billing Page2", "G / L Distribution", and "Tax Information". The "Credit" tab contains a grid of fields: "Credit Limit", "Recall for Review Date", "Credit Manager" (ABBOT), "Date of Last Credit Review", "Credit Message", "Date Account Opened" (4/22/97), "Temporary Credit Message" (7), "On Credit Hold per Accounting", "Person Opening Account" (DEMO), "ABC Code Sales" (A), "Last Reviewed By", "ABC Code Margin" (C), "Financial Stmts on Hand", and "ABC Code Average Days" (C). At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "Work With Customer Master" and "Customer Master Revision".

4. Complete any of the following optional fields:
 - Credit Limit
 - Credit Manager
 - Credit Message
 - Temporary Credit Message
 - Person Opening Account
 - Last Reviewed By
5. To specify when you receive financial statements from the customer, complete the following field:
 - Financial Stmts on Hand

6. To specify credit reporting information for the customer, complete either, or both, of the following fields:
 - Dun & Bradstreet Date
 - TRW Date
7. To specify credit review dates, complete the following fields:
 - Recall for Review Date
 - Date of Last Credit Review
 - Date Account Opened
8. To rate a customer by sales activity, average investment, and average days to pay an invoice, complete the following fields:
 - ABC Code Sales
 - ABC Code Margin
 - ABC Code Average Days
9. Continue to enter the customer record by entering collection information (optional).

Field	Explanation
Credit Limit	<p>The credit limit for a customer. This value is used throughout the credit management programs. The system maintains this credit limit by customer and is not rolled to the parent company. The system sends credit messages for each child that is over their credit limit.</p> <p>When you change the credit limit, the system sends a workflow message to the credit manager. The message specifies that the change is pending approval. This credit limit change will not be reflected on the Customer Master Revisions form until the change has been approved.</p>
Credit Manager	The name of the credit manager responsible for approval of this customer's accounts.
Temporary Credit Message	A user defined code that identifies a temporary credit status. Generally, the code is assigned when an account becomes past due. If the rules of the policy are broken, this code is updated if the credit message is specified in the Customer Master by Line of Business table (F03012), after you run the Credit Analysis Refresh (R03B525).
Person Opening Account	The person who entered the account in the Address Book. The system supplies the data for this field.
Last Reviewed By	The person who completed the last credit review. The system updates this field when the credit limit is reviewed and changed.
Financial Stmtns on Hand	The date that financial statements are received.

Field	Explanation
Dun & Bradstreet Date	The date Dun & Bradstreet ratings were available.
TRW Date	The date in which TRW ratings were available.
Recall for Review Date	The review date for the customer's credit information.
Date of Last Credit Review	The date on which the credit manager last examined this customer's payment record and assigned a credit status to the account.
Date Account Opened	The date the account was entered in the Address Book.
ABC Code Sales	A grade that indicates the level of sales activity for a customer or inventory item. This code documents the 80/20 principle (80% of the significant results is attributable to 20% of the business effort). The possible grades are A (best) to F (worst).
ABC Code Margin	<p>A code that represents an item's ranking by average investment. You can assign a code here or let the system assign it. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A Assign this item to the first amount ranking B Assign this item to the second amount ranking C Assign this item to the third amount ranking D Skip this item in the ABC Analysis <p>If you leave this field blank, the ABC Analysis program (P4164) assigns this code based on an item's value as follows:</p> $\text{Total Item Average Investment divided by Business Unit Average Investment equals the Item's Calculated Value Total}$
ABC Code Average Days	A grade that indicates the average number of days a customer takes to pay a bill. This code documents the 80/20 principle. The possible grades are A (best) to F (worst).

To enter collection information

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

When entering a customer record, you can enter collection information for the customer. For example, you can assign a collection manager to a customer or designate a customer for automated delinquency processing.

1. On Work with Customer Master, click Find to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system.
2. Choose the customer and click Select.

- On Customer Master Revision, click the Collection tab.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Customer Billing Instructions - [Customer Master Revision]". It has a menu bar with File, Edit, Preferences, Form, Window, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with buttons for OK, Cancel, Dismiss, and Abort, along with navigation buttons like Links, Who's..., Previous, Next, OLE..., and Internet. The main area contains several input fields and checkboxes. The "Collection" tab is active, showing fields for Customer Number (4242), Capital System, Long Address Number, Company (00000), Collection Manager, Policy Name, Deduction Manager (0), Send Statement to (C), Statement Cycle (C), Number of Reminders to Send, Percentage Factor (.010000), Collection Report (checked), Print Statement (checked), Apply Finance Charges (unchecked), and Delinquency Notice (checked). At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Work With Customer Master" and "Customer Master Revision".

- Complete the following optional fields:
 - Collection Manager
 - Policy Name
 - Deduction Manager
- To process statements for the customer, click the Print statement option and complete the following fields:
 - Send Invoice to
 - Statement Cycle
- To process late payment information for the customer, click the following options:
 - Collection Report (Y/N)
 - Delinquency Notice (Y/N)
- To specify the number of statements to send the customer, complete the following field:
 - Number of Reminders to Send
- To assess finance charges for the customer click the following option:
 - Apply Finance Charges (Y/N)

Field	Explanation
Collection Manager	The name of the collection manager responsible for this customer's account.
Policy Name	This field is used to group policies under a common name, such as "Standard." For example, you might assign a policy to customers that do not pay their invoices on time. This instructs the system to treat the group of customers the same way during delinquency processing.
Statement Cycle	<p>A code that indicates when the customer should be billed during the next monthly cycle. For example, billing could be done alphabetically:</p> <p>A–F On the 5th day of the month G–L On the 10th M–R On the 15th S–Z On the 20th</p> <p>The first letter of the customer's alpha name is the default value for this statement cycle.</p>
Collection Report	An option that indicates whether invoices for a particular customer appear for collection. If you select this field, invoices appear on the collection report after you send the maximum number of reminders to the customer and the system generates the final collection report. If you do not select this option, the customer's invoices do not appear on the collection report.
Delinquency Notice	<p>An option that allows you to determine whether delinquency notices or payment reminders should be sent to the customer:</p> <p>On Send the notice to the customer. Off Do not send the notice to the customer.</p>
Number of Reminders to Send	<p>This field is not used in OneWorld.</p> <p>For WorldSoftware, the number of payment reminders to send to a customer. Valid codes are:</p> <p>1 Send a single, very strong (level 3) reminder. 2 Send a strong (level 2) reminder. If the customer does not respond, send a very strong (level 3) reminder in the next cycle. 3 Send a mild (level 1) reminder. If necessary, send a level 2 reminder in the next cycle and a level 3 in the following cycle after that.</p> <p>NOTE: The Delinquency Notice field must be set to Y.</p>

Setting Up Constants

A constant is a piece of information that you associate with a branch/plant. The system uses constants as default information in many J.D. Edwards systems.

After you determine the information that you want to use throughout your system, you can enter the appropriate values or change any predefined values.

Setting up constants includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Defining branch/plant constants
- ☐ Defining item availability
- ☐ Defining system constants
- ☐ Defining batch control constants
- ☐ Setting up location control

Before You Begin

- ☐ Create an address book record for the branch/plant
- ☐ Set up a branch/plant named ALL
- ☐ Set up the branch/plant as a business unit

See Also

- *Setting Up System Constants* in the *Advanced Pricing Guide* for more information on additional system constants that you can define
- *Setting Up Branch/Plant Constants* in the *Enterprise-Wide Profitability Solution Guide* for more information about setting up product costing for individual branch/plants.

Defining Branch/Plant Constants

Branch/plant constants allow you to customize the processing of daily transactions for each branch/plant in your distribution and manufacturing systems.

► To define branch/plant constants

From Sales Order Management Setup (G4241), choose Branch/Plant Constants.

1. On Work With Branch Plant Constants, click Add.

2. On Branch/Plant Constants, complete the following fields and click OK:

- Branch/Plant
- Address Number
- Short Item Number Identifier
- Second Item Number Identifier
- Third Item Number Identifier
- Number of Days in Year
- Customer Cross Ref. Code
- Supplier Cross Ref. Code
- Purchasing Costing Method
- Sales/Inventory Costing Method

- Purchase Order Issue Cost
 - Inventory Carrying Cost (%)
 - Approval Route Code
3. Choose the following options:
- Write Units to Journal Entries
 - Warehouse Control (Y/N)
 - Use Product Cost Detail (Y/N)
 - Quality Control (Y/N)
 - Location Control (Y/N)
 - Interface G/L (Y/N)

Field	Explanation
Short Item Number Identifier	<p>A symbol that identifies the 8-character short item number when you do not want to use it as the primary number.</p> <p>A blank in this field indicates that you want to use this item number as the primary number. That is, you use it most often to enter or review information. If this is not the primary number, you must enter a special symbol to identify it. Use a symbol that is not significant for any other purposes of entry such as /, *, or &. Do not use a period or a comma as a symbol. When you enter this item number on any other form, you must include this symbol as the first character.</p> <p>NOTE: Only one of the fields for item number symbols (SYM1, SYM2, SYM3, or SYM6) can be blank to identify it as the primary number. All others must include a unique symbol.</p>
Number of Days in Year	The number of days in a year that your company is open for business. This field is required. You must specify a number from 252 to 365. The Procurement system uses this number to calculate the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ).
Purchasing Costing Method	A user defined code (40/CM) that indicates the cost method that the system uses to determine the cost of the item for purchase orders. Cost methods 01-19 are reserved for J.D. Edwards use.

Field	Explanation								
Interface G/L (Y/N)	<p>A code that indicates whether inventory transactions that are processed through this branch/plant create general ledger entries.</p> <p>In WorldSoftware, valid values are:</p> <table><tr><td>Y</td><td>Yes, the system creates general ledger entries for inventory transactions for this branch/plant.</td></tr><tr><td>N</td><td>No, the system does not create general ledger entries for inventory transactions for this branch/plant.</td></tr></table> <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system creates general ledger entries for inventory transactions for this branch/plant.</p>	Y	Yes, the system creates general ledger entries for inventory transactions for this branch/plant.	N	No, the system does not create general ledger entries for inventory transactions for this branch/plant.				
Y	Yes, the system creates general ledger entries for inventory transactions for this branch/plant.								
N	No, the system does not create general ledger entries for inventory transactions for this branch/plant.								
Location Control (Y/N)	<p>A code that indicates which type of location control the system requires. You should use location control if you want to use only locations that are in the Location Master table (F4100).</p> <p>For WorldSoftware, valid codes are:</p> <table><tr><td>Y</td><td>Yes, use only locations in the Location Master table.</td></tr><tr><td>N</td><td>No, do not restrict locations to those in Location Master. Use all locations that conform to the location format defined on Branch/Plant Constants – Page 2.</td></tr></table> <p>If Warehouse Control is set to Yes, Location Control must also be set to Yes.</p> <p>For OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system uses only locations that are defined in the Location Master table.</p>	Y	Yes, use only locations in the Location Master table.	N	No, do not restrict locations to those in Location Master. Use all locations that conform to the location format defined on Branch/Plant Constants – Page 2.				
Y	Yes, use only locations in the Location Master table.								
N	No, do not restrict locations to those in Location Master. Use all locations that conform to the location format defined on Branch/Plant Constants – Page 2.								
Current Inventory Period	<p>A number (from 1 to 14) that identifies the current accounting period . The system uses this number to generate error messages, such as PBCO (posted before cut off) and PACO (posted after cut off).</p>								
Purchase Order Issue Cost	<p>The amount that the Procurement system uses to calculate the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ). This cost should be the estimate of the cost of materials, labor, and overhead that you incur when you issue a single purchase order. The default value is .00.</p> <p>The following example shows how EOQ is determined using the Purchase Order Issue Cost method:</p> <table><tr><td>S</td><td>Purchase Order Issue Cost = 15.0</td></tr><tr><td>I</td><td>Inventory Carrying Cost = .09 (9%)</td></tr><tr><td>Y</td><td>Annual Sales in Units = 3,000</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>Unit cost of Item = 10.0</td></tr></table> <p>$EOQ = \text{the square root of } ((2S/I) \times (Y/C))$ The square root of $[(2)(15) \text{ divided by } 0.09] \times 3,000$ divided by 10.0 = 316.23</p>	S	Purchase Order Issue Cost = 15.0	I	Inventory Carrying Cost = .09 (9%)	Y	Annual Sales in Units = 3,000	C	Unit cost of Item = 10.0
S	Purchase Order Issue Cost = 15.0								
I	Inventory Carrying Cost = .09 (9%)								
Y	Annual Sales in Units = 3,000								
C	Unit cost of Item = 10.0								

Field	Explanation
Inventory Carrying Cost (%)	<p>The percentage of inventory investment that the Procurement system uses to calculate Economic Order Quantity (EOQ). The default is .00. Enter the percentage as a decimal value.</p> <p>The following example shows how EOQ is determined using the Inventory Carrying Cost Percentage:</p> <p>S Purchase Order Issue Cost = 15.0 I Inventory Carrying Cost = .09 (9%) Y Annual Sales in Units = 3,000 C Unit Cost of Item = 10.0</p> <p>$EOQ = \text{Square root of } ((2S/I) \times (Y/C)) = \text{the square root of } (2(15) \text{ divided by } .09) \times (3000 \text{ divided by } 10) = 316.23$</p> <p>NOTE: Access field help for the Economic Order Quantity field for more information about the EOQ formula.</p>

Defining Item Availability

You must define how to calculate item availability for each branch/plant. This calculation impacts how the system calculates backorders, cancellations, and customer delivery time.

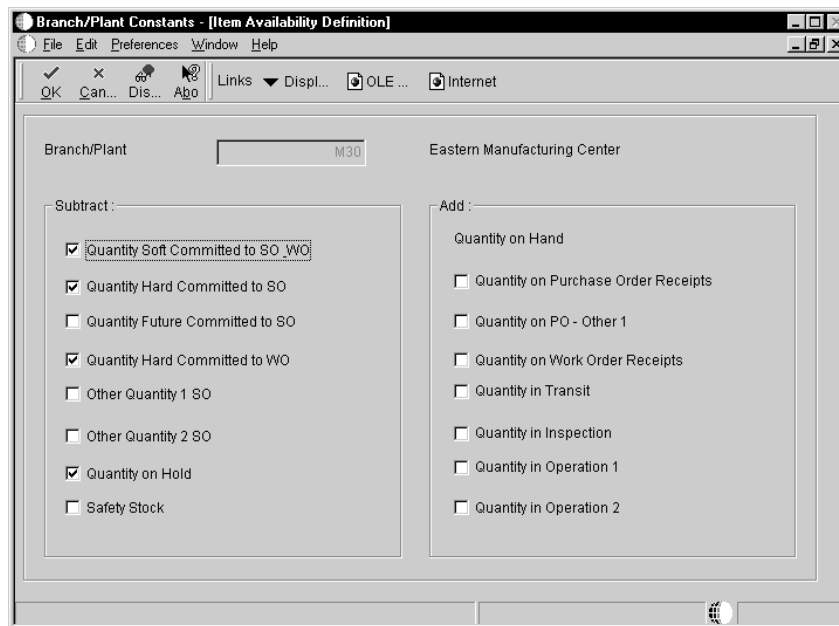
If you are using Configuration Management system, you must set the Check Availability field in Configurator Constants to check availability during sales order entry. If the system finds the exact item and string match, a window displays all locations containing the specific configuration. See *Setting Up Constants* in the *Sales Configurator Guide* for more information.



To define item availability

From Sales Order Management Setup (G4241), choose Branch/Plant Constants.

1. On Work With Branch/Plant Constants, enter a branch/plant and click Find.
2. Choose the row that contains the branch/plant for which you want to define item availability.
3. From the Row menu, choose Availability.



4. On Item Availability Definition, under the Subtract and Add headings, choose the applicable options and click OK.

Defining System Constants

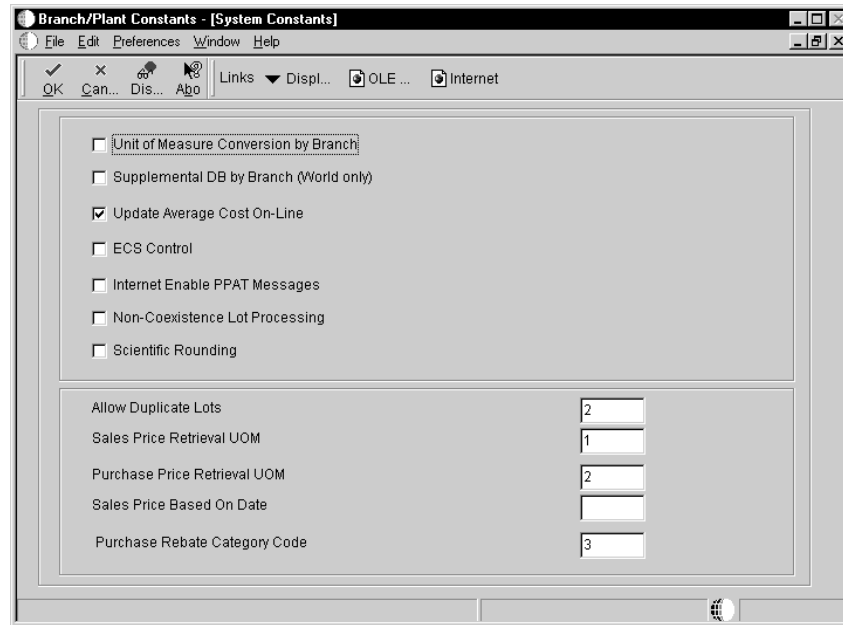
You define system constants to determine which functions to perform. For example, assume that you have several branch/plants and you use different units of measure for the items in each branch/plant. You can set a system constant to automatically convert units of measure by branch.

System constants apply to all branch/plants. You cannot customize the settings for each branch/plant.

► To define system constants

From Sales Order Management Setup (G4241), choose Branch/Plant Constants.

1. On Work with Branch/Plant Constants, from the Form menu, choose System Constants.



2. On System Constants, complete the following fields for advanced price adjustments:
 - Sales Price Retrieval UOM
 - Sales Price Based On Date
3. If you use Advanced Pricing for Procurement, complete the following fields:
 - Purchase Price Retrieval UOM
 - Purchase Rebate Category Code
4. Click OK.

Field	Explanation
Sales Price Retrieval UOM	<p>A code that specifies the unit of measure that the system uses for retrieving base prices and price adjustments during sales order processing. The system allows you to define your base prices in the Base Price table (F4106) and price adjustments in the Adjustment Detail table (F4072) in various unit of measures.</p> <p>If you specify the unit of measure for transaction or pricing and the system does not find a record in that unit of measure, the system repeats the process using the primary unit of measure of the item.</p>

Field	Explanation
Sales Price Based On Date	A code that determines how the system updates the Price Effective Date in the Sales Order Header (F4201) and Detail (F4211) tables. In the Sales Order Management system, the system uses the Price Effective Date to retrieve the base price from the Sales Order Header table (F4106) and price adjustments from Sales Order Detail table (F4072).
Purchase Price Retrieval UOM	<p>A code that represents the unit of measure that the system retrieves for the purchase base price (F41061) during purchase order processing.</p> <p>If you specify the unit of measure for transaction or pricing and the system does not find a record in that unit of measure, the system repeats the process using the primary unit of measure of the item.</p>
Purchase Rebate Category Code	A number that determines which category code the system uses in the criteria for inclusion comparison.

Defining Batch Control Constants

You define batch control constants to prevent the system from applying changes that unauthorized personnel make to the general ledger. Also, you can define a constant that requires you to enter batch control information before the system runs a batch processing job. You might enter batch control information to compare the anticipated size of the job to the end result.

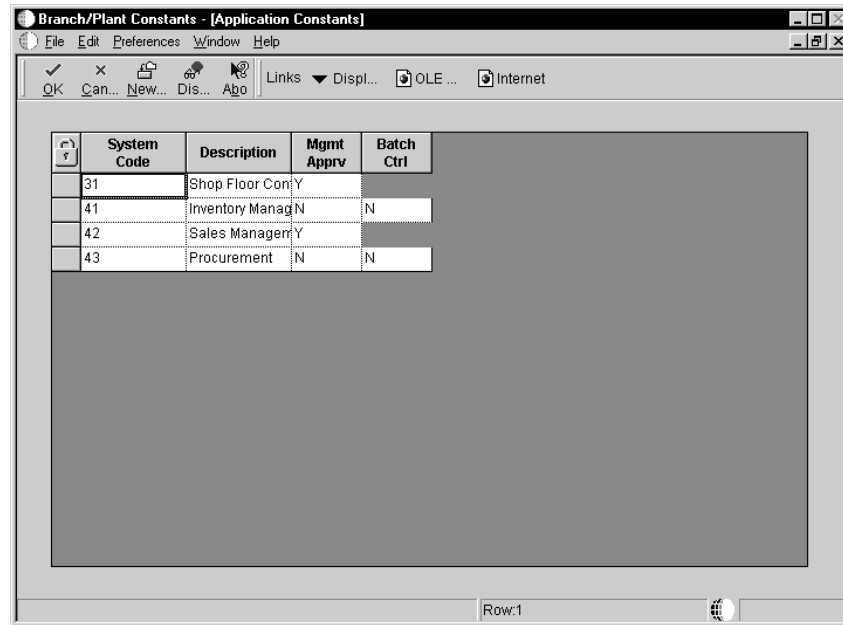
You must define management approval and batch control separately for each distribution and manufacturing system that you use.



To define batch control constants

From Sales Order Management Setup (G4241), choose Branch/Plant Constants.

1. On Work With Branch/Plant Constants, from the Form menu, choose Application Constants.



2. On Application Constants, complete the following fields, if available, and then click OK:

- System Code
- Mgmt Apprv
- Batch Ctrl

Field	Explanation
System Code	A user defined code (98/SY) that identifies a J.D. Edwards system.
Mgmt Apprv	A code that indicates whether you want to require approval of batches before they can be posted to the general ledger. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Yes, assign a status of Pending to each batch that you create within the listed systems. N No, assign a status of Approved to each batch.

Field	Explanation				
Batch Ctrl	<p>A code that indicates whether to require entry of batch control information. For each batch, the system displays a batch control form on which you must enter information about the number of documents and the total amount of the transactions that you expect in the batch. The system uses these totals to edit and display differences from the actual transactions you entered. This field applies only to the Inventory Management and the Purchase Order Management systems. In Inventory Management, Y indicates that the system displays a batch control form before you issue, adjust, or transfer inventory. In Purchase Order Management, Y indicates that the system displays a batch control form before you enter receipts.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <table><tr><td>Y</td><td>Yes, require entry of batch control information.</td></tr><tr><td>N</td><td>No, do not require entry of batch control information.</td></tr></table>	Y	Yes, require entry of batch control information.	N	No, do not require entry of batch control information.
Y	Yes, require entry of batch control information.				
N	No, do not require entry of batch control information.				

Setting Up Location Control

You can designate location information that is specific to each branch/plant. In each branch/plant, you can set up unique information about specific item locations.

Location control is a J.D. Edwards feature that you activate through the branch/plant constants. Location control is required for the Warehouse Management system, but optional for all other distribution systems.

Setting up location control includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Defining the location format
- ☐ Setting up locations in branch/plants

Defining the Location Format

Defining the location format allows you to determine how to set up item locations. You can define elements that contain more specific information about the actual location. For example, an element can represent an aisle, bin, shelf, or any other location that you use in a branch/plant.

You can define a location format using up to 10 different elements, such as aisle, shelf, and bin. For each element, you can define the following:

- Length
- Justification
- Separator character

Technical Considerations

Location length

The total length of all elements, including separators, cannot exceed 20 characters. The system does not store separators in the tables, but uses separators to edit a location on a form or report. If you do not want to use separators, leave the separator field blank. The system displays the location as one string of characters.

If you are using the Advanced Warehouse Management system, you must also define default units of measure for volumes, dimensions, and weights.

To define the location format

From Sales Order Management Setup (G4241), choose Branch/Plant Constants.

1. On Work with Branch/Plant Constants, enter a branch/plant and click Find.
2. Choose the branch/plant for which you want to define the format and click Select.
3. From the Row menu, choose Location Definition.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Branch/Plant Constants - [Branch Location Definition]". It has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dis...", and "Abo". The main area is divided into three tabs: "Location Format Specification", "Location Segment Specification", and "Warehouse Control". The "Location Format Specification" tab is selected. It contains a "Location Separator Character" field. Below this are three groups of fields, each with a "Length" and "Left/Right" justification option. The first group includes "Aisle" (Length: 2, Left/Right: Left), "Bin" (Length: 3, Left/Right: Left), "Code 3" (Length: 2, Left/Right: Left), and "Code 4" (Length: 1, Left/Right: Left). The second group includes "Code 5" (Length: 1, Left/Right: Left), "Code 6" (Length: 1, Left/Right: Left), "Code 7" (Length: 1, Left/Right: Left), and "Code 8" (Length: 1, Left/Right: Left). The third group includes "Code 9" (Length: 1, Left/Right: Left) and "Code 10" (Length: 1, Left/Right: Left).

4. On Branch Location Definition, complete the following fields:
 - Location Separator Character
 - Aisle
 - Bin
 - Code 3
 - Code 4
 - Code 5
 - Code 6
 - Code 7
 - Code 8
 - Code 9
 - Code 10
5. For each element, click the following justification option and click OK:
 - Left/Right
6. If you use the Warehouse Management system, complete the following fields:
 - Request Inclusion Version
 - Dimension Unit of Measure
 - Receiving Location

- Shipping Location
- Weight Display UOM
- Volume Display UOM

Field	Explanation
Location Separator Character	<p>A character that divides the elements of the location when you display them on forms or reports. For example, you might use a slash (/) as a separator character to divide elements such as aisle, bin, and shelf in a location code. The location code can contain up to 20 characters, including separators.</p> <p>Separators are not stored in the tables, but are used to edit a location on a form or report. If you do not want to use separators, leave this field blank. However, you must enter characters and spaces to equal the correct length of each element in the location code. The system then displays the location as one string of characters.</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The system uses the character you enter in this field to separate the combination of tank/owner and aisle/bin as it appears on forms or reports. Companies commonly use a period (.) as the separator character.</p>
Aisle	A number that identifies the number of characters to represent the tank (or aisle for packaged stock). Valid values are numbers 1 through 8.
Bin	A number that identifies the number of characters to represent the owner for commingled bulk stock (or bin for packaged stock). Valid values are numbers 1 through 8.
Code 3	The number of characters to represent Code 3 in the location format specification.
Code 4	The number of characters to represent Code 4 in the location format specification.

Field	Explanation
Request Inclusion Version	<p>A user defined code (40/RV) that identifies an inclusion rule that you want the system to use for this branch/plant. The Manufacturing and Warehouse Management systems use inclusion rules as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For Manufacturing: Allows multiple versions of resource rules for running MPS, MRP, or DRP.• For Warehouse Management: Allows multiple versions of inclusion rules for running putaway and picking. The system processes only those order lines that match the inclusion rule for a specified branch/plant. <p>If you leave this field blank, the system does not update the capacity plan when you create a work order or change the status of a work order.</p>
Dimension Unit of Measure	<p>A user defined code (system 00/type UM) that identifies the unit of measure that the system uses to display dimensions for the warehouse. The system provides the ability to establish inches, centimeters, meters, and so forth, as a measuring standard.</p>
Receiving Location	<p>The area in the warehouse where you receive inventory. The format of the location is user defined and you enter the location format for each branch/plant.</p>
Shipping Location	<p>The location that the system uses as the default when you pick inventory and move the inventory for shipping. The format of the location is user defined by branch/plant (P410012).</p>

Setting Up Locations in Branch/Plants

After you have defined the format for your locations, you must define all of the locations in a warehouse. To locate items more easily, you can create a hierarchy of locations within the warehouse and enter information about zones.

You can define a primary location to store basic information about items in a warehouse. A primary location is not an actual physical location. For example, you could designate a primary location as “Location A” and then assign every time in the warehouse to a location that begins with “A”.

You can also define a blank location as the primary location for inventory items. How the system displays the primary location depends on the location format specifications that you define for the branch/plant.

► To set up locations in branch/plants

From Sales Order Management Setup (G4241), choose Branch/Plant Constants.

You can set up locations for branch/plants after you have defined the location format for the branch/plant.

1. On Work with Branch/Plant Constants, enter a branch/plant and click Find.
2. Choose the branch/plant for which you want to set up locations.
3. From the Row menu, choose Locations.

4. On Enter Location Information, complete the following fields, if available, and then click OK:
 - Location
 - Pick Zone
 - Put Zone
 - Zone – Replenishment
 - LOD
 - Aisle
 - Bin
 - Loc 03
 - Loc 04

- Loc 05
- Loc 06
- Loc 07
- Loc 08
- Loc 09
- Loc 10

Field	Explanation
Location	<p>The area in the warehouse where you receive inventory. The format of the location is user defined and you enter the location format for each branch/plant.</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>A location format comprises elements and, optionally, a separator character. Elements represent more specific locations in a branch/plant. If the tank contains commingled stock, include the separator character defined on Branch/Plant Constants – Page 2 and identify the owner.</p> <p>The total length of all elements in this field, including separators, cannot exceed 20 characters. The location for a single tank can contain up to the number of characters identified in the Length of Tank/Aisle field on Branch/Plant Constants – Page 2.</p> <p>The owner ID can contain up to the number of characters identified in the Length of Owner/Bin field on Branch/Plant Constants – Page 2.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank and do not use a separator character, the system displays the location as an asterisk. If you use a separator character, the system displays the location with the correct number of spaces for each element, followed by the separator character.</p>
Pick Zone	A code (system 46/type ZN) that identifies an area from which items are picked for shipment.
Put Zone	A code (system 46/type ZN) that identifies areas in the warehouse where goods are put away or stored.
Replen Zone	A code (system 46/type ZN) that identifies the areas in the warehouse from which items are retrieved to replenish or refill picking locations.

Field	Explanation
LOD	<p>A code that summarizes or classifies locations and provides a hierarchy of locations for review purposes. For example, you can assign aisles to level 2, and individual bins within the aisle as level 3.</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Use the Detail Level field to specify the beginning level of detail that you want the system to display for the location.</p>
Aisle	A code that identifies a location in a warehouse. This code is used in conjunction with a bin and lot identifier, to indicate a specific, tangible storage area within a warehouse or yard.
Bin	A specific storage location within a warehouse or store. The system uses the bin with an aisle location to identify a storage area whose width, depth, and height can be readily measured.
Loc 03	<p>A code that the system uses for one of two purposes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To identify a specific location within a Branch/Plant as part of the location identifier. • To use as a general reporting code for location information.

Setting Up Order Line Types

When you enter detail information for a sales or purchase order, you enter the quantity, price, and cost for each item or service. You can also enter a credit item, a non-stock item, and text information in the same sales or purchase order.

Each entry is a line. A line is the information for an item or service that you are ordering as it pertains to the order. The system processes each line based on a line type.

A line type is a code that the system uses to process each detail line that you enter for a specific order type. For example, you can specify line type S for stock items. The system determines whether it should increase or decrease the quantity of the item in inventory. You can specify line type F for freight charges. The system determines from your definition of the line type that this item is not an inventory item.

You can specify how the system uses line types in the general ledger and with the Inventory Management system. For example, when you purchase or sell an inventory item, you might assign a line type for stock items. The system records the transaction according to the information that you specified for the line type. In this case, the system reflects the cost or price of the item in the general ledger. The transaction line also affects item availability in the Inventory Management system.

The line types that you define are applicable throughout distribution systems. For example, the system processes line types in the same way for the Sales Order Management system as it processes line types for the Procurement system.

Adding A Message using a Text Line Type

During order entry, you can enter a message on order detail line by using a text line type. For example, you can enter an order detail line for a stock item, such as a bike, and then enter an order detail line for text, such as “Some Assembly Required”. This order detail line then functions like a message. Based on the line type definition, the information in an order detail line with a line type denoted by the text feature is a memo-only line. The system does not verify the information in the item field, which is your message, against information in the Item Branch/Plant table (F4102), and the transaction does not interface with any of the other systems, such as Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable.

Assigning a Line Type for Non-Stock Items

You can set up the line type for non-stock items that retrieves information from the Item Master but does not commit quantities. The flag, Edit The Item Master for Non-Stock Items, is only used in conjunction with an Inventory Interface that is set to D. You use this feature for direct ship orders.

During direct ship order entry, the system verifies the item number in the Item Branch table (F4102) and the cost and price information in the Cost (F4105) and Base Price tables (F4106). However, the system does not create commitments or perform availability checks.

► To set up order line types

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Order Line Types.

1. On Work With Line Types, click Add.

2. On Line Type Constants Revisions, choose the following options:

- Line Type
- G/L Interface Y/N – Distribution
- A/R Interface Y/N – Distribution
- A/P Interface Y/N – Distribution
- CSMS Interface

- Text (Y/N)
 - Reverse Sign (Y/N)
 - Apply Freight – Y/N
 - Apply Retainage – Y/N
 - Generate Workorder
 - Include in Cash Discount Calculation
 - Include Sales/COGS for Gross Profit
 - Record Variance (Y/N)
3. Complete the following fields:
- Inventory Interface Y/N – Distribution
 - *SAME
 - Include in Tax 1
 - Column to Include on Sales Journal
4. If you are entering a line type for non-stock items, choose the following option:
- Edit Item Master for Non-Stock Item

Field	Explanation														
Line Type	<p>A code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces, such as General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management. It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. Codes include the following:</p> <table><tr><td>S</td><td>Stock item</td></tr><tr><td>J</td><td>Job cost</td></tr><tr><td>N</td><td>Nonstock item</td></tr><tr><td>F</td><td>Freight</td></tr><tr><td>T</td><td>Text information</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>Miscellaneous charges and credits</td></tr><tr><td>W</td><td>Work order</td></tr></table>	S	Stock item	J	Job cost	N	Nonstock item	F	Freight	T	Text information	M	Miscellaneous charges and credits	W	Work order
S	Stock item														
J	Job cost														
N	Nonstock item														
F	Freight														
T	Text information														
M	Miscellaneous charges and credits														
W	Work order														

Field	Explanation
G/L Interface	<p>A code that indicates whether the system reflects the monetary amount or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in the general ledger.</p> <p>For World, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y The system reflects the monetary amount or unit value in the general ledger.N The system does not reflect the monetary amount or unit value in the general ledger. <p>For OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system reflects the monetary amount or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in the general ledger.</p>
A/R Interface	<p>A code that indicates whether the system will reflect the monetary amount or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in Accounts Receivable.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y The system reflects the monetary amount or unit value in the Accounts Receivable system.N The system does not reflect the monetary amount or unit value in the Accounts Receivable system. <p>For OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system reflects the monetary amount or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in the Accounts Receivable system.</p>
A/P Interface	<p>A code that indicates whether the system reflects the dollar or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in Accounts Payable. In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y Reflect the dollar or unit value of any activity containing this order type in Accounts Payable.N Do not reflect the dollar or unit value of any activity containing this order type in Accounts Payable. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system reflects the dollar or unit value of any activity containing this order type in Accounts Payable.</p>
CSMS Interface	<p>A code that indicates whether this order line appears on the second document in a series of four documents that relate to this order. For example, it might be necessary to include receiving information in a purchase order that provides instructions about the desired disposition of goods. Although this information is vital to the proper handling of the order, it should not appear on the purchase order that is delivered to the supplier.</p>

Field	Explanation
Sales Journal Col	<p>The Sales Journal report has four columns. The value in this field controls which of the four columns receives the sales value, if any, of this line. Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Column 1 receives the sales value (if any). 2 Column 2 receives the sales value (if any). 3 Column 3 receives the sales value (if any). 4 Column 4 receives the sales value (if any).
Text Line	<p>A code that indicates whether the information with this order line type contains only text information.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y This line contains only text information. N This line contains more than text information. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the information with this order line type contains only text information.</p>
Reverse Sign	<p>A code that indicates whether the system reverses the sign of the quantity in the line. This code is used to allow easy entry of credit memos.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Reverse the sign of the quantity. N Do not reverse the sign of the quantity. This is the default. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system reverses the sign of the quantity in the line.</p>
Apply Freight	<p>A code indicating whether the system performs freight calculations during processing.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Perform calculations. This is the default. N Do not perform calculations. <p>For OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system should perform freight calculations during processing.</p>
Apply Retainage	<p>A code that indicates whether the system includes the item's values in the calculation of an accounts payable retainage. Use this field only if the interface between the Procurement system and Accounts Payable system is active.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y Include the item's values in the accounts payable retainage calculation. N Do not include the item's values in the accounts payable retainage calculation. This is the default. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system includes the item's values in the accounts payable retainage calculation.</p>

Field	Explanation
Generate Workorder	<p>A code indicating whether the system automatically generates an internal work order for this order detail line.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y Generate an internal work order.N Do not generate an internal work order. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system generates an internal work order for this order detail line.</p>
Include in Cash Discount	<p>A code indicating whether the system includes the extended monetary amount of the transaction in the cash discount or payment terms discount calculation.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y Include the extended monetary amount of the transaction in the discount calculation.N Do not include the extended monetary amount of the transaction in the discount calculation. This is the default. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system includes the extended monetary amount of the transaction in the cash discount calculation.</p>
Include Sales/COGS for Gross Profit	<p>A code that indicates that the system includes sales and cost of goods sold in gross profit calculations.</p> <p>In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y Include the sales and costs of goods sold in gross profit calculations.N Do not include the sales and costs of goods sold in gross profit calculations. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that the system includes the sales and costs of goods sold in gross profit calculations.</p>
Voucher Match Variance Account	<p>A code that indicates the account to which the system books a variance. In World software, valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y A variance that is generated during voucher match should be booked to the variance account.N Book any variance back to the expense account for the order detail line. <p>In OneWorld, a checkmark indicates that a variance that is generated during voucher match should be booked to the variance account.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is used in conjunction with an inventory interface of A or B in the Procurement system only.</p>

Field	Explanation
Inv. Interface	<p>A code that identifies the type of interface to the Inventory Management system. Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Y The dollar or unit value of any activity containing this line type will be reflected in inventory. The system also edits the item that you enter to ensure that it is a valid item. Y is the default. A The system recognizes the number that you enter as a G/L account number. The system uses this code in purchasing only. B The system performs edits when using format 4 in purchase order entry. The system retrieves price data from the inventory tables, but does not update the quantity on the purchase order. This code is valid only when you have set the G/L Interface field to Y (yes). Budget checking is fully functional when you use this interface code. D The item in this line is an inventory item that will not affect availability or quantities. N The item is not an inventory item. <p>To verify whether the item exists in the Item Master file, use Inventory Interface N in conjunction with the flag, Edit the Item Master for Non-Stock Items.</p>
G/L Offset	<p>A user defined code (41/9) that identifies the G/L offset that system uses when it searches for the account to which it posts the transaction. If you do not want to specify a class code, you can enter **** (four asterisks) in this field.</p> <p>You can use automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) to predefine classes of automatic offset accounts for the Inventory, Procurement, and Sales Order Management systems. You might assign G/L class codes as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IN20 Direct Ship Orders IN60 Transfer Orders IN80 Stock Sales <p>The system can generate accounting entries based upon a single transaction. For example, a single sale of a stock item can trigger the generation of accounting entries similar to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sales-Stock (Debit) xxxxx.xx A/R Stock Sales (Credit) xxxxx.xx Posting Category: IN80 Stock Inventory (Debit) xxxxx.xx Stock COGS (Credit) xxxxx.xx <p>The system uses the class code and the document type to find the AAI.</p>

Field	Explanation
Include in Tax 1	<p>A code that indicates whether the monetary value of this order line is subject to applicable taxes and which taxes to apply. Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Y The line is subject to applicable taxes.N The line is not subject to applicable taxes.3–8 Yes, the line is subject to applicable taxes at the rate indicated by the group number (3-8). The system uses group numbers for VAT (value added tax).
Edit Item Master for Non-Stock Item	<p>A OneWorld code that indicates whether the system validates the sales order line's item against the Item Master table. Use this flag in conjunction with the nonstock inventory interface only.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">0 The system will not validate the line item against the Item Master table.1 The system will validate the line item against the Item Master table and will display an error if the item is invalid.

Setting Up Order Activity Rules

To advance an order line through the order process, you must create order activity rules. The system uses order activity rules to establish a sequence of steps for processing.

The system processes an order line based on the order activity rules that you set up for the order type and line type combination. For example, you could set up the order activity rules for stock line types in sales orders as follows:

- Enter order
- Print pick slip
- Confirm shipment

For stock line types on purchase orders, you could set up the order activity rules as follows:

- Enter order
- Approve order
- Print

You must assign a status code for every step in the order process. A status code is a number that the system uses to identify the current status of an order line. You must also identify next status codes that determine the next step to which the system will advance the order. You must arrange status codes in ascending numerical order for the system to establish the sequence of steps.

You can change the progression of steps or include alternate steps in the order activity rules. For example, you can set up order activity rules for non-stock items in sales orders so that the system bypasses the step to print pick slips and advances the order line to shipment confirmation.

You can specify at which point in the order process the system writes records to the general ledger for sales and purchasing.

In order processing, you can use the order activity rules for the following:

- To locate the status of an order
- To select orders for batch processing
- To prepare reports based on the current status of an order

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up the status codes in the user defined codes table (system 40, type AT).
- ☐ Verify that you have set up order types in the user defined codes table (system 00, type DT).
- ☐ Verify that you have set up line types. See *Setting Up Order Line Types*.

► To set up order activity rules

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Order Activity Rules.

1. On Work With Order Activity Rules, click Add.

Order Type	Line Type	Last Status	Description	Next Status	Other 1	Other 2	Other 3	Other 4	Other 5	Ledger (Y/N)
CO	C	520	Enter Credit Order	580	560	620				N
CO	C	560	Confirm Return	580						N
CO	C	580	Print Credit Memo	620						N
CO	C	620	Sales Update	999						N
CO	C	999	Complete - Ready to Purge							N
CO	T	520	Enter Credit Order	580						N
CO	T	580	Print Credit Memo	999						N
CO	T	999	Complete - Ready to Purge							N
NF	J	760	Receipt Fiscal Note	780	760					N
NF	J	780	Print Fiscal Note	999	780					N
NF	J	999	Complete - Ready to Purge							N
NF	N	760	Receipt Fiscal Note	780	760					N
NF	N	780	Print Fiscal Note	999	780					N
NF	N	999	Complete - Ready to Purge							N
NF	S	760	Receipt Fiscal Note	780	760					N
NF	S	780	Print Fiscal Note	999	780					N
NF	S	999	Complete - Ready to Purge							N

2. On Order Activity Rules - Revisions, complete the following fields and click OK:

- Order Type
- Line Type
- Order Type Next Number
- Next Status
- Last Status
- Ledger Y/N

You can copy an order activity rule by accessing a current combination of an order type and a line type combination and making the necessary changes.

Field	Explanation																				
Order Type	<p>A user defined code (00/DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)</p> <p>The following document types are defined by J.D. Edwards and should not be changed:</p> <table> <tr><td>P</td><td>Accounts Payable documents</td></tr> <tr><td>R</td><td>Accounts Receivable documents</td></tr> <tr><td>T</td><td>Payroll documents</td></tr> <tr><td>I</td><td>Inventory documents</td></tr> <tr><td>O</td><td>Purchase Order Processing documents</td></tr> <tr><td>J</td><td>General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents</td></tr> <tr><td>S</td><td>Sales Order Processing documents</td></tr> <tr><td>OS</td><td>Subcontract</td></tr> <tr><td>OP</td><td>Purchase Order</td></tr> <tr><td>R2</td><td>Contract Billing</td></tr> </table>	P	Accounts Payable documents	R	Accounts Receivable documents	T	Payroll documents	I	Inventory documents	O	Purchase Order Processing documents	J	General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents	S	Sales Order Processing documents	OS	Subcontract	OP	Purchase Order	R2	Contract Billing
P	Accounts Payable documents																				
R	Accounts Receivable documents																				
T	Payroll documents																				
I	Inventory documents																				
O	Purchase Order Processing documents																				
J	General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents																				
S	Sales Order Processing documents																				
OS	Subcontract																				
OP	Purchase Order																				
R2	Contract Billing																				
Line Type	<p>A code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces, such as General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management. It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. Codes include the following:</p> <table> <tr><td>S</td><td>Stock item</td></tr> <tr><td>J</td><td>Job cost</td></tr> <tr><td>N</td><td>Nonstock item</td></tr> <tr><td>F</td><td>Freight</td></tr> <tr><td>T</td><td>Text information</td></tr> <tr><td>M</td><td>Miscellaneous charges and credits</td></tr> <tr><td>W</td><td>Work order</td></tr> </table>	S	Stock item	J	Job cost	N	Nonstock item	F	Freight	T	Text information	M	Miscellaneous charges and credits	W	Work order						
S	Stock item																				
J	Job cost																				
N	Nonstock item																				
F	Freight																				
T	Text information																				
M	Miscellaneous charges and credits																				
W	Work order																				
Order Type Next Number	<p>A code that tells the system which next number series to use when creating order numbers for this order type. There are ten available Next Number series.</p> <p>This field addresses the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Purchase requisitions that carry order numbers different from bid requests and purchase orders • Blanket sales orders numbered in a different number range from standard sales orders 																				
Next Status	A user defined code (40/AT) that indicates the next step in the order process.																				

Field	Explanation				
Last Status	A user defined code (40/AT) that indicates the status of the line.				
Ledger Y/N	<p>A code that tells the system to write a record to the history table (F42199 for Sales Order Management and F43199 for Purchase Order Management). Valid codes are:</p> <table><tr><td>Y</td><td>Write a record for selected fields to the history table</td></tr><tr><td>N</td><td>Do not write a record to the history table</td></tr></table>	Y	Write a record for selected fields to the history table	N	Do not write a record to the history table
Y	Write a record for selected fields to the history table				
N	Do not write a record to the history table				

Setting Up Order Templates

You create and assign order templates to speed up the order entry process. A template contains information about frequently ordered items.

Setting up order templates includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Creating a standard template
- ☐ Updating an existing template
- ☐ Creating a system-generated template

A standard template applies to all customers. For example, you might want to create a OFFICE template that lists the most frequently ordered office supplies. Or, you could identify a standard template that lists all of the most frequently ordered items regardless of their classification.

You should regularly update existing order templates to ensure that the order entry process remains accurate and efficient. For example, you might need to change the quantities or sequences on an existing template.

After a customer has an established ordering history, you can have the system automatically create order templates. The Customer Template Rebuild program is a standard J.D. Edwards batch program. After you have entered orders for a customer and run the Update Customer Sales programs, the system creates a record of the customer's ordering history in the Sales Order Detail History table. You can identify the appropriate data selection criteria and run the Customer Template Rebuild program to do the following:

- Create a standard template based on sales history
- Update a template based on current sales patterns

Before You Begin

- ☐ Create a user defined code name for all templates.

Creating a Standard Template

You create a template for frequently ordered items to speed the order entry process. You can create a standard template that applies to all customers and assign it to display every time you enter an order. You can create as many standard templates as you need. If you enter a template name in the processing options for Sales Order Entry, the system displays the template that is specified in the processing options each time you enter an order.

You assign one standard template to a customer through Customer Billing Instructions. This template will then display each time you enter an order for the customer. A customer-specific template contains the customer's Address Book number and includes only that customer's most frequently ordered items and quantities. You can create multiple templates for a customer, or you can use the same template for more than one customer.

You can access any templates during sales order entry and select one that is appropriate to your customer's needs.

► To create a standard template

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Customer Template Revisions.

1. On Work with Available Order Templates, click Add.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Customer Template Revisions - [Order Template Revisions]". It has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Form", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Del...", "Can...", "New...", "Dis...", and "Abo", along with buttons for "Links", "Order...", "OLE...", and "Internet". The main area contains two input fields: "Sold To" with a dropdown arrow and "Order Template" with a text box containing "BIKES". Below these is a table with the following columns: "Item Number", "Usual Quantity", "UM", "Seq No.", "Effective From", "Effective Thru", and "Item Description". The table contains four rows of data:

Item Number	Usual Quantity	UM	Seq No.	Effective From	Effective Thru	Item Description
210	10		5	3/27/97	12/31/10	Mountain Bike, Red
220	5		10	3/27/97	12/31/10	Touring Bike, Red
221	5		15	3/27/97	12/31/10	Touring Bike, Blue
222	5		20	3/27/97	12/31/10	Touring Bike, Green

At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar that says "Row:1".

2. On Order Template Revisions, complete the following fields and click OK:

- Order Template
- Item Number
- Usual Quantity
- UM
- Seq No.
- Effective From
- Effective Thru
- Item Description
- Supplier Name

Field	Explanation
Order Template	A list of items that you frequently order. The items are often grouped based on the product type, such as fuels, lubricants, and packaged goods.
Item Number	A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format. For process work orders, the item number is the process.
Usual Quantity	The quantity that is usually ordered.
UM	A user defined code (00/UM) that indicates the quantity in which to express an inventory item, for example, CS (case) or BX (box).
Seq No.	For OneWorld, the sequence by which users can set up the order in which their valid environments are displayed. For World, a sequence or sort number that the system uses to process records in a user defined order.
Effective From	The date when a transaction, text message, contract, obligation, preference, or policy rule becomes effective.
Effective Thru	The date on which a transaction, text message, agreement, obligation, or preference has expired or been completed.
Item Description	A description can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brief information about an item • A remark • An explanation
Supplier Name	A user defined name or remark.

Updating an Existing Template

To ensure the accuracy and efficiency of the order entry process, you should maintain current templates. You can change the items, quantities, or sequences on any existing template at any time.

To update an existing template

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Customer Template Revisions.

1. On Work with Available Order Templates, click Find to access existing templates.
2. Select the template that you want to update.
3. On Order Template Revisions, review the following fields:
 - Order Template
 - *SAME
 - Units – Usual Ordered
 - Unit of Measure as Input
 - Seq No.
 - Effective From
 - Effective Thru
 - Item Description
 - Supplier Name
4. To use details from a previous order as a template, choose Order History from the Form menu.
5. On Work with Sales Order History, choose the order that the system will use to create a template.
6. To review the sales order, choose Details from the Row menu.
7. Click OK.

Creating a System-Generated Template

From the Sales Order Advanced and Technical Operations menu (G4231), choose Customer Template Rebuild.

You can use the Customer Template Rebuild program to automate the process of creating templates. Customer Template Rebuild is a batch program that creates a template from a customer's established ordering history.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that orders exist for the customer in the Sales Order Detail History table

Processing Options for Customer History Template Rebuild

Process 1

- 1. Enter Order Template to be created. _____
- Sequencing : 1=Version Seq, 2=Most freq ordered
- 2. Enter template sequence selection. _____
- Maximum number of lines to include.
Blank will include all.
- 3. Enter maximum number of lines. _____
- Minimum number of lines to include.
Blank will include all.
- 4. Enter minimum number of lines. _____
- Enter the effective dates to use on the template(optional).
- 5. Effective From Date. _____
- 6. Effective Thru Date. _____

Process 2

- Order Template Address Selection.
- 1. Enter 1 for Sold To, 2 for Ship To _____
- 2. Enter 1 to put Avg Qty in Usual Qty. _____

Setting Up Order Hold Information

You can put an order on hold to prevent the order from being processed. You might want to do this because the order:

- Does not meet the minimum order amount
- Exceeds the customer's credit limit
- Does not meet or exceeds your sales margin

You can define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold and attach those conditions to a hold code. For example, you can define minimum and maximum order values. If the total order amount is not within this range, the system assigns the hold code to the order to place the order on hold and stop further processing.

You can also define sales margin and credit holds. Based on this information, the system places an order on hold if the order or order line does not meet the sales margin. The system also places an order on hold if the order exceeds the customer's credit limit.

Setting up order hold information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Defining order hold codes
- ☐ Setting up minimum and maximum order amounts
- ☐ Setting up order hold codes for credit checking
- ☐ Setting up order hold codes for margin checking
- ☐ Setting up partial order holds
- ☐ Assigning hold codes during order entry
- ☐ Assigning hold codes in the customer billing instructions

See Also

- *Releasing Orders on Hold*

Defining Order Hold Codes

You can set up order hold information that the system uses to place orders on hold. The system applies this information if you set the appropriate processing options for the Sales Order Entry program.

Additionally, you can use hold codes in conjunction with the Product Allocation preference. This way, you can restrict the amount of an item or item group that a customer or customer group can purchase.

You must set up the Product Allocation preference in the Preference Master (P40070), and activate the preference through the Preference Selection (R40400). In Order Hold Information (P42090), you set up the hold code (UDC 42/HC) and define the hold information. In the processing options for Sales Order Entry you must enter the product allocation hold code to activate order hold processing and activate preference profile processing.

See Also

- *Entering Custom Preference Information* for more information about the Product Allocation preference.

► To define order hold codes

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Order Hold Information.

1. On Work With Hold Order Constants, click Add.

2. On Order Hold Information, complete the following fields for each hold code:
 - Hold Code
 - Branch/Plant
 - Person Responsible
 - Aging Period for Credit Check
 - Password
3. Click OK.
4. On Work with Order Hold Constants, complete any of the following fields or click Find to review existing order hold codes:
 - Hold Code
 - Branch/Plant
 - Code Type
 - Limit Type
 - Percent Past Due
 - Person Responsible
 - Limit – Lower Comparison
 - Limit – Upper Comparison

Field	Explanation
Hold Code	A user defined code (42/HC) that identifies why an order was placed on hold (for example, credit, budget, or margin standards were exceeded).
Branch/Plant	<p>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, branch, or plant.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, employee, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p>Note: The system uses the job number for journal entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</p>

Field	Explanation
Person Responsible	The address book number of the person who is responsible for reviewing and releasing orders placed on hold.
Age From	Number that designates the aging period the system should use when you specify a credit check based on the aging of the customer's accounts receivable.
Password	A series of characters that you must enter before the system updates a table. In the Distribution systems, the password secures commissions setup and the release of held orders. Only users with access to the password can release an order. The system does not display the password on the form. You should not enter blanks anywhere in the password.

Setting Up Minimum and Maximum Order Amounts

You can set minimum and maximum order amounts that your customer must order before the system advances the order through the processing cycle. For example, you might offer your customer a trade discount if the customer orders a minimum amount.

You define a range between the minimum and maximum order amounts in Customer Billing Instructions or you can define a minimum or maximum amount. Then, you set up hold codes for the system to compare the order or line amount againsts the values that you defined in the Customer Billing Instructions.

After you have activated this hold process with the corresponding processing options in the sales order entry program, the system compares the minimum or maximum values against the order amount. To define a range, you must enter hold for the minimum value and a hold code for the maximum value. If the order amount is not within the appropriate range, the system displays an error message and does not process the order.



To set up minimum and maximum order amounts

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, to access Customer Master Information, choose the customer and click Select.
2. Click the Billing Page 1 tab.

3. Complete the following fields:

- Maximum Order Value
- Minimum Order Value

See Also

- *Converting Customer Limit Amounts* for information about converting minimum and maximum order amounts to another currency

Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Credit Checking

You can set up a credit hold code to automatically compare the credit limit that you set up for your customer in Customer Master Information against the order and any outstanding balances in accounts receivable. For example, you can set a customer's credit limit to 1,000 USD. If your customer has an accounts receivable balance of 100 USD, the order must be 900 USD or less or the system will place the order on hold.

You can also specify a hold based on the percentage of the outstanding balance in accounts receivables. You must specify aging periods, such as 0 to 30 days or 31 to 60 days, to verify balance information. If you specify the 31 to 60 day period, the system does not include balance information from the first period in its comparison.

For example, a customer has a total accounts receivable balance of 6,000 USD, 5,000 USD in the 0 to 30 day period and 1,000 USD in the 31 to 60 day period. You set up a hold based on the percentage of the outstanding balance to be 20% of the total accounts receivable balance. You specify the 31 to 60 day aging

period for the system to compare against the allowable percentage. Based on this information, the maximum allowable outstanding balance for the 31 to 60 day period is 1,200 USD. With an outstanding balance of 1,000 USD in the 31 to 60 day aging period, this customer would pass a credit check.

See Also

- *Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions* to set up credit and collection information

► To set up order hold codes for credit checking

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Order Hold Information.

1. On Work With Hold Order Constants, click Add.

2. On Order Hold Information, complete the following fields for each hold code:
 - Hold Code
 - Business Unit
 - Person Responsible
 - Code Type
 - Limit Type
 - Percent Past Due

- Password
3. In the processing options for Sales Order Entry, enter this order hold code in the field for Customer Credit Check.

Field	Explanation
Code Type	A code that determines whether the hold code applies to an individual line within an order (L) or the order as a whole (O). For credit holds, the hold code applies to the whole order. For margin holds, you can apply the hold code to a line or the whole order.
Limit Type	A code that indicates whether there is an amount limit (A) or a percentage limit (%) for the order. Limit type typically applies only on order or line gross margin limits.
Allowable %	<p>Number that tells the system what percentage of total receivables to accept in the column specified in the Age From field. When aging credit checking is used, the allowable % field is required entry.</p> <p>For example, Your customer has a total A/R balance of 10,000 and 2,500 of that is in the 31-60 day column. The Age From value is 3 (31-60 days) and the Acceptable % value is 10 (10%). Therefore, this customer could have as much as 1,000 (10,000 x 10%) in columns 3 through 6 and still pass this credit check. Since the customer has more, the system will place its orders on hold.</p>

Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Margin Checking

You can set up a hold code to verify that all sales orders or sales order detail lines meet any margin that you specify.

The system uses the following equation to calculate margin:

$$(\text{Price} - \text{Cost}) / \text{Price} = \text{Margin}$$

For example, if you purchase an item for \$.42 and sell it for \$1.00, the calculation is:

$$(1 - .42) / 1 = .58 \text{ or } 58\%$$

You can set up a hold code that verifies the sales margin percentage of a detail line or an entire order. If you set up a hold code that compares the sales margin to detail lines in the sales order, the system verifies that each detail line is between the minimum and maximum margins that you specify. For example, if your sales margin is between 25% and 27%, but the margin for one item is 28%, the system places the order on hold.

You can set up hold code information that verifies the sales margin of the order total. The system verifies that the order total meets the minimum and maximum margins that you specify. For example, if your sales margin is between 25% and 27%, and the margin for one item is 28%, but the margin for your order total is 25%, the system will not place the order on hold.

► To set order hold codes for margin checking

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Order Hold Information.

1. On Work With Hold Order Constants, click Add.

2. On Order Hold Information, complete the following fields for each hold code:
 - Hold Code
 - Business Unit
 - Person Responsible
 - Code Type
 - Limit – Upper Comparison
 - Limit – Lower Comparison
3. In the processing options for Sales Order Entry, enter this order hold code in the field for Order Margin Check or Line Margin Check.

Setting Up Partial Order Holds

You can set up a hold code so that if quantity is not available to complete an order detail line, the system places the entire order on hold until the quantity is available. Use this order hold when backorders and partial shipments are allowed.

If the system does not have the quantity available to fill an order detail line, the system backorders or cancels available quantities based on backorder information in the Customer Billing Instructions.

If the customer does not allow backorders, the system cancels the order detail line. With a partial order hold, the system holds the order detail line until quantity is available. If the customer does not allow backorders, but does allow partial orders or line shipments, you can set up a partial order hold so that the system does not cancel the order detail line.

A partial order hold is a hold in which there is not enough quantity to fill an order detail line, but the customer does allow partial orders. A partial order hold is not a backorder; you can release a partial order hold at any time, whereas you can only release a backorder when quantity for an order detail line is available.

► To set up a partial order hold

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Order Hold Information.

1. On Work With Hold Order Constants, click Add.

The screenshot shows the 'Order Hold Information' window with the following fields and values:

Field	Value
Hold Code	C1
Credit Hold	
Branch/Plant	M30 Eastern Manufacturing Center
Person Responsible	6446 Bennett, Jody
Limit Type	A Amount
Code Type	O Order basis
Age From	Blank Aging Period
Allowable %	
Upper Limit	
Lower Limit	
Password	C1

2. On Order Hold Information, complete the following fields for each hold code:
 - Hold Code
 - Business Unit
 - Person Responsible
 - Password
 - Code Type
 - Limit Type
3. In the processing options for Sales Order Entry, enter the order hold code in the Partial Order holds field.

Assigning Hold Codes during Order Entry

You must specify hold codes in the sales order entry processing options to activate hold codes. The system automatically compares the information in the order, such as accounts receivable information, order and line margin percentages, and partial orders, against every order. To exempt specific customers from credit checking, you must activate the Exempt from Credit Hold option in the Customer Billing Instructions. If the system places an order on hold, you must release all orders in the Order Release program.

Additionally, you can manually enter a hold code in the order heading information. A value in the hold code field prevents the system from processing that specific order.

If you have activated the workflow process, JDESOENTRY, the system processes the order through order hold checking. After you click OK to accept the order, the system checks the processing options for hold codes and compares the order against the order hold information.

If the system puts the order on hold, an action message is sent to address book number defined in the hold code as the Person Responsible. This message indicates that the order is on hold. The person responsible for releasing the orders can review messages sent during the workflow process and access orders to release by way of the Work Center.

Assigning Hold Codes in the Customer Billing Instructions

You can specify a hold code in customer billing instructions. The system does not process the customer's orders until the person responsible for reviewing that customer's orders releases the order into the processing cycle.

You can use the Batch Order Holds program to update a customer's existing order with the hold code that has been entered in customer billing instructions. For example, if you have entered an order before you have reconciled administrative issues with a customer, you can withdraw the order from the processing cycle by placing the order on hold.

After you set up the hold code in customer billing instructions, you can run the Batch Order Holds program to update a customer's open sales orders. This batch program can be run on an individual customer or all customers with hold code fields that are non-blank.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up the hold codes in user defined codes.

Setting Up Commission Information

To define commission information in the Sales Order Management system, you must associate a salesperson or a sales group, a commission percentage, a customer, and an order type.

You can specify the method that the system uses to calculate commission percentages. A commission percentage is the percentage of an order calculated from the gross margin, or the order total that is distributed to a salesperson or a group of salespeople. If you set up commissions based on the gross margin, the system will calculate the sales margin for the order or line before calculating commissions.

Setting up commission information includes the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up a sales group
- ☐ Assigning commission information
- ☐ Setting up additional commission information
- ☐ Reviewing commission information

You can set up your commission information to reflect your company's sales environment. You can assign a maximum of two salespeople or two sales groups to each customer. After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies a calculated commission amount to the salesperson's address book number or the address book number of each salesperson in the sales group. After the sales update, you can review commission information to ensure that your salespeople receive the correct amount.

You can set up a sales group to distribute commissions to a group of two or more salespeople who contribute to a customer's sale. For example, if your sales group consists of a sales manager, account representative, and sales assistant, you assign a group code that represents the three salespeople. Sales groups are useful for identifying salespeople who are responsible for a customer's orders and maintaining multiple commission percentages.

You can set up commission percentages according to your company's commission payment policies. You can distribute commissions by entering a fixed commission percentage or variable commission percentages. When you set a fixed commission percentage, the system applies the same percentage for any order type that generates a commission.

You can also set variable commission percentages for an individual salesperson. The system includes variables, such as effective dates, order types, fixed costs and minimum amounts, before calculating commissions. For example, you might have a different commission percentage for sales orders than you have for blanket orders. Or, you might need to deduct fixed costs from an order before you calculate commissions.

If you assign a sales group to a customer, you can distribute commissions on a fixed commission percentage. You can set a fixed percentage that distributes the same commission percentage to each salesperson within a group.

You can also set a variable commission percentage for the group or variable commission percentages for salespeople within the sales group. If commission percentages differ within a group, you can set up different commission percentages for each salesperson. For example, a manager might have a higher rate of commission than a sales assistant.

Note: You must perform a sales update before you review commission information. You must set the appropriate processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to update the Sales Commission table (F42005).

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that address book numbers exist for all salespeople.
- ☐ Verify that you have set the processing options for the Sales Update program to update the commission information. See *Updating Sales Information*.

Setting Up a Sales Group

You set up a sales group to distribute commissions to a group of two or more salespeople who are responsible for a customer's order. For example, if your sales group consists of a sales manager, account representative, and sales assistant, you assign a group code that represents the three salespeople.

After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies the corresponding commission amounts to the address book numbers of the salespeople in the sales group.

You can set a variable commission percentage for the group or variable commission percentages for salespeople within the sales group. If commission percentages differ within a group, you can set up different commission percentages for each salesperson. For example, a manager might have a higher rate of commission than a sales assistant.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up a code for the sales group in the user defined code table (system 42, type RS).

► To set up a sales group

From the Commission/Royalty Management menu (G4223), choose Commission/Royalty Related Salesperson.

1. On Work with Related Salesperson, click Add.

Sales Code	Salesprsn Number	Effective Date	Expiration Date	Rel Slsprsn	L/O Code	Related Percent
645	8001	11/20/97	12/31/10	0	0	5.000
645	8444	11/20/97	12/31/10	0	0	5.000

2. On Related Salesperson Revisions, complete the following fields and click OK:
 - Sales Code
 - Salesprsn Number
 - Date – Effective (Julian)
 - Rel Slsprsn
 - L/O Code
 - Percent – Related

Field	Explanation
Sales Code	A code that you use in place of the salesperson number when more than 2 salespersons are responsible for an order.
Salesprsn Number	<p>The standard for commission calculations requires a maximum of two salespersons and respective commission rates for each order line.</p> <p>To create a commission liability for more than two salespersons, you can relate individuals or entities (for royalties) to a single order line. To do so, set up a sales/commission/salesperson code that represents not one but many salespersons in the related salesperson file. The system inserts this code in the billing instructions record for any customer or during sales order entry to create multiple commission records at the appropriate point in the order processing cycle (one record for each related salesperson).</p>
Effective Date	The date on which a level within a pricing method takes effect. There can be multiple records within a pricing method that have the same level identifier, discount percentage, and so forth, with the only difference being the effective date. This may occur due to special promotion periods.
Rel Slsprsn	A code that designates whether the system calculates commissions using Invoice Amount or Gross Margin.
L/O Code	A code that indicates whether the system bases commissions on order totals (O) or line amounts (L).
Related Percent	The percent of the sale for which a related salesperson is responsible. A related salesperson is any salesperson in a designated (related) sales group. For a given group, the percent of the sale does not have to equal 100%.

Assigning Commission Information

You can set up your commission information to reflect your company's sales environment. You can assign a maximum of two salespeople or two sales groups to each customer. After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies a calculated commission amount to the salesperson's address book number or the address book number of each salesperson in the sales group.

You can set up commission percentages according to your company's commission payment policies. You can distribute commissions by entering a fixed commission percentage or variable commission percentages.

When you set a fixed commission percentage, the system applies the same percentage rate for any order. If you assign a group of salespeople to a customer, you can distribute commissions on a fixed commission percentage. However, when you assign a fixed commission percentage in the customer billing instructions for a group, the system distributes the commission amount to the group number. You can use this option if you distribute commissions to an entity, such as a branch office. The system will not automatically divide the fixed commission percentage between the salespeople within the group.

When you assign a fixed commission percentage in Customer Billing Instructions, the system calculates the commission amount based on the order total.

You cannot assign commission percentages in Customer Billing Instructions for a salesperson if you want to calculate variable commission percentages or set up additional commission information. To distribute the same commission percentage to the salespeople within a group, you must specify the commission percentage for each salesperson.

See Also

- *Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions*



To assign commission information

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Customer Billing Instructions.

1. On Work with Customer Master, to locate customers that have been set up in the Address Book system, click Find.
2. To access Customer Master Information, choose the customer and click Select.
3. On Customer Master Information, review the default information and make any changes.
4. Click on the Billing Page 2 tab.
5. Complete the following fields:
 - Commission Code 1
 - Rate – Commission 1
 - Commission Code 2
 - Rate – Commission 2

Setting Up Additional Commission Information

You can include additional information before calculating the commission amount for a salesperson, a sales group, or salespeople within a group. The system compares the additional commission information such as order type, fixed costs, and effective dates against the order information before calculating the commission percentage. You can designate different commission percentages for order types. For example, you can designate that a salesperson earns 5% commission on a sales order, 2% on a direct ship order, and 7% on a blanket order.

You can also designate commission percentages for a limited period of time with variables that apply during the effective dates. For example, you might specify that a sales trainee earns a 7% commission on sales order totals during the training period. During that time, the order must meet a minimum gross margin amount or the system does not calculate commissions. If the order qualifies for a commission, then you must deduct fixed costs before calculating the commission percentage. After the training period, the salesperson earns a 5% commission on the gross margin of all orders after the system deducts the fixed costs. You can enter multiple commission percentages at one time when you anticipate changes in the future.

You can assign additional information to a sales group or salespeople within a group. To specify additional commission information for the group, you must assign the additional information to the group code. For example, you can specify that the group must meet the assigned minimum gross margin before the system will calculate the commission. To calculate additional commission information for salespeople within the group, you can assign additional information to each salesperson's number.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you set up a code for the salesperson group in the user defined code table (system 42, type RS).
- ☐ Verify that the commission rate codes are blank for each customer in Customer Billing Instructions.

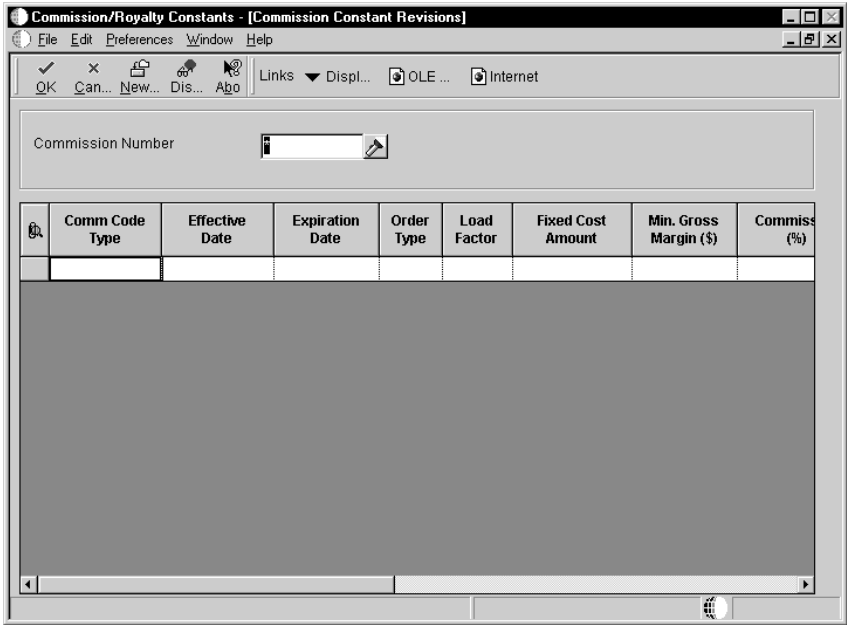


To set up additional commission information

From Commission/Royalty Setup (G4223), choose Commission/Royalty Constants.

After you complete the steps to assign a salesperson or group to a customer, you can set up additional information.

1. On Work with Commission Constants, click Add.



2. On Commission Constant Revisions, complete the following fields:
- Commission Code Type
 - Date – Effective (Julian)
 - Date – Expiration (Julian)
 - Order Type
 - Load Factor
 - Min. Gross Margin (\$)
 - Commission (%)
 - Category Code
 - Geographic Region
 - Freight Handling Code
 - Password

Field	Explanation
Comm Code Type	A code that designates whether the system calculates commission using Invoice Amount or Gross Margin. No matter which item the system uses, you should consider an amount as the starting point in the commission calculation and apply loading factors, fixed costs, minimum margins and so on.

Field	Explanation
Order Type	<p>A user defined code (00/DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)</p> <p>The following document types are defined by J.D. Edwards and should not be changed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">P Accounts Payable documentsR Accounts Receivable documentsT Payroll documentsI Inventory documentsO Purchase Order Processing documentsJ General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documentsS Sales Order Processing documentsOS SubcontractOP Purchase OrderR2 Contract Billing
Load Factor	The factor that the system uses as multiplier of product cost.
Min. Gross Margin (\$)	The order-based minimum gross margin. If the gross margin is not equal to at least this amount, then the order does not qualify for a commission.
Commission (%)	The percentage of an order sales amount payable to the salesperson.
Category Code	<p>One of thirty reporting codes that you can assign to an address in the Address Book system. Use these codes to identify addresses for reports, mailings, and so on. Category codes are user-defined (system 01, types 01 through 30). Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Category code 01 – Location or BranchCategory code 02 – SalespersonCategory code 03 – New tenantCategory code 04 – Credit officer
Geographic Region	<p>One of thirty reporting codes that you can assign to an address in the Address Book system. Use these codes to identify addresses for reports, mailings, and so on. Category codes are user-defined (system 01, types 01 through 30). Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Category code 01 – Location or BranchCategory code 02 – SalespersonCategory code 03 – New tenantCategory code 04 – Credit officer

Field	Explanation
Freight Handling Code	<p>A user defined code (42/FR) designating the method by which supplier shipments are delivered. For example, the supplier could deliver to your dock, or you could pick up the shipment at the supplier's dock.</p> <p>You can also use these codes to indicate who has responsibility for freight charges. For example, you can have a code indicating that the customer legally takes possession of goods as soon as they leave the supplier warehouse and is responsible for transportation charges to the destination.</p>
Password	<p>A series of characters that you must enter before the system updates a table. In the Distribution systems, the password secures commissions setup and the release of held orders. Only users with access to the password can release an order. The system does not display the password on the form. You should not enter blanks anywhere in the password.</p>

Reviewing Commission Information

You can set up your commission information to reflect your company's sales environment. You can assign a maximum of two salespeople or two sales groups to each customer. After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies a calculated commission amount to the salesperson's address book number or the address book number of each salesperson in the sales group.

After the sales update, you can review commission information to ensure your salespeople receive the correct amount. If necessary, you can modify existing information if you have proper security access.



To review commission information

From the Commission/Royalty Setup menu (G4223), choose Commission/Royalty Maintenance.

1. On Work with Commission Maintenance, to locate commission information, click Find or complete any of the following fields:
 - Salesperson
 - Customer Number
 - Document (Order No, Invoice, etc.)
 - Item Number

2. Review the information in the following fields:

- Amount – Sales Total Order
- Amount – Sales Total Line
- Percent – Commission
- Amount – Commission
- Amount – Order Gross Margin
- Load Factor
- Amount – Fixed Cost
- Amount – Sales Line Total Cost

Field	Explanation
Total S/O	The total dollar value of the extended list prices for the items on this order, less any applicable discounts.
Line Total	The total dollar value of the extended list price for the item on this line minus any applicable discounts.
Comm %	The percentage of an order sales amount payable to the salesperson.
Commission Amount	The system computes this dollar amount as a potential commission liability. Based upon the sales amount at the order or line level, this amount might be the result of cost of sales, overhead “load” factor, minimum gross margin, and so forth. See Commission Constants.
Gross Margin	The initial amount of gross profit (Sales Amount minus Cost of Sales) on an order before the system adds or subtracts other factors in the commission liability calculation.
Fixed Cost Amount	The dollar amount of processing overhead per order.
Line Cost	The Cost of Sales amount. The system subtracts this amount from the line sales amount to calculate the gross profit amount for this order line.

Setting Up Branch Sales Markups

You use branch sales markups to set up the additional costs that are associated with an interbranch sales order. You enter an interbranch sales order to fill a sales order from a different branch/plant where you placed the order. For example, if your company sells from one location but fills and ships orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse, you can have the order shipped from the central supply warehouse directly to the customer.

Companies can apply additional costs to interbranch sales. The additional costs that you set in the Branch Sales Markup program are the amounts that the branch/plant charges in addition to the base price.

You can use the Branch Sales Markup program to set the markup amount for any interbranch sales order. You can also define the relationship between the selling branch/plant and the supplying branch/plant. For example, if you are setting up the branch sales markup table from the perspective of a central supply warehouse, you can define the amount that you charge every location that places an order.

You can also set markup amounts that are specific to either an item or an item group. For example, any time you fill an order that contains an item with an additional markup amount, the system adds the markup amount for that item to the order total. Or, any time that you fill an order that contains an item from a specific group, the system adds the markup amount for the group. You cannot set a markup for both an item and a markup for a group that includes the item.

To set up branch sales markups

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Branch Sales Markups.

1. On Work with Branch Transfer Markup, click Add.

From Branch	To Branch	Cat Cd	Item Number	Effective From	Effective Thru	Percent Markup
M10	M30		2013	4/30/97	12/31/10	0.00
M10	M30		2014	4/30/97	12/31/10	0.00

2. On Branch Transfer Markup Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - From Branch
 - To Branch
 - Item Number
 - Effective From
 - Effective Thru
 - Percent Markup
3. Click OK.

Branch Sales Markups - [Work With Branch Transfer Markup]

File Edit Preferences Row Window Help

Select Find Add Del... Close Seg... New... Dis... Ago Links ▼ Branc... OLE ... Internet

Item Number

From Branch	To Branch	2nd Item Number	Cat Cd	Effective From	Effective Thru	Percent Markup	From Des
30	10			3/26/97	12/31/10	10.00	Eastern Distrib
30	20			3/26/97	12/31/10	10.00	Eastern Distrib
30	40			3/26/97	12/31/10	10.00	Eastern Distrib
M10	M30	2013		4/30/97	12/31/10	0.00	Western Manuf
M10	M30	2014		4/30/97	12/31/10	0.00	Western Manuf

Row:4

4. On Work with Branch Transfer Markup, complete any of the following fields or click Find to review markup amounts:

- Item Number
- From Branch
- To Branch
- Effective Thru
- Effective From
- Percent Markup

Field	Explanation
From Branch	<p>A code that represents a high-level business unit. Use this code to refer to a branch or plant that might have departments or jobs, which represent lower-level business units, subordinate to it. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Branch/Plant (MMCU) • Dept A (MCU) • Dept B (MCU) • Job 123 (MCU) <p>Business unit security is based on the higher-level business unit.</p>

Field	Explanation
To Branch	<p>A secondary or lower-level business unit. The system uses the value that you enter to indicate that a branch or plant contains several subordinate departments or jobs. For example, assume that the component branch is named MMCU. The structure of MMCU might be as follows:</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Branch/Plant – (MMCU) Dept A – (MCU) Dept B – (MCU) Job 123 – (MCU)</p>
Item Number	<p>The number assigned to an item. It can be in short, long, or third item number format.</p>
Effective From	<p>A date that indicates one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When a component part goes into effect on a bill of material• When a routing step goes into effect as a sequence on the routing for an item• When a rate schedule is in effect <p>The default is the current system date. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Items that are no longer effective in the future can still be recorded and recognized in Product Costing, Shop Floor Management, and Capacity Requirements Planning. The Material Requirements Planning system determines valid components by effectivity dates, not by the bill of material revision level. Some forms display data based on the effectivity dates you enter.</p>
Effective Thru	<p>A date that indicates one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When a component part is no longer in effect on a bill of material• When a routing step is no longer in effect as a sequence on the routing for an item• When a rate schedule is no longer active <p>The default is December 31 of the default year defined in the Data Dictionary for Century Change Year. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Items that are no longer effective in the future can still be recorded and recognized in Product Costing, Shop Floor Management, and Capacity Requirements Planning. The Material Requirements Planning system determines valid components by effectivity dates, not by the bill of material revision level. Some forms display data based on the effectivity dates you enter.</p>
Percent Markup	<p>The percent markup is the percent of the cost that the system uses as mark up when the item is transferred from one branch to another.</p>

Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions

Automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) are the links between your day-to-day functions, chart of accounts, and financial reports. The system uses AAIs to determine how to distribute G/L entries that the system generates. For example, in the Sales Order Management system, AAIs indicate how to record the transaction when you sell a stock item to a customer.

For distribution systems, you must create AAIs for each unique combination of company, transaction, document type, and G/L class that you anticipate using. Each AAI is associated to a specific G/L account that consists of a business unit, an object, and optionally, a subsidiary.

If you are required to collect taxes on customer invoices, you must distribute the tax amounts to the correct G/L accounts. When you set up AAIs for a specific type of tax, such as VAT or use tax, you designate what accounts you want to debit and credit for an invoice tax amount.

The system stores AAIs in the Automatic Accounting Instructions Master table (F4095).

See Also

- *Setting Up AAIs for Cost Components* in the *Enterprise-Wide Profitability Solution Guide* for more information about setting up AAIs for product and activity-based costing.
- *Setting Up AAIs for Taxes* for information about setting up automatic accounting instructions for tax information.

AAIs for the Sales Order Management System

Cost of Goods (COGS) Sold (4220)	Provides the expense/cost amount to the cost of goods sold account.
Revenue (4230)	Provides the actual sales price of inventory in the sales revenue account.
Inventory (4240)	Credits the cost amount to an inventory account.

A/R Trade (4245)	Debits the sales amount to an accounts receivable account. The system writes the accounts receivable offset entries to the general ledger only if the accounts receivable update option is turned off.
Tax Liability (4250)	Provides journal entries to tax liability accounts that were created during a sales update.
Price Adjustments (4270)	Provides the journal entries for individual price adjustments that were created during a sales update.
Rebates Payable (4280)	Provides the offset entries of accrued accounts.
Ship and Debit (4234)	Adjusts the profit margins affected by ship and debit agreements.

The Distribution Automatic Account form shows each predefined AAI item and information about the document type, G/L class, and accounts that are affected by transactions.

To set up automatic accounting instructions

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Automatic Accounting Instructions.

1. On Work With AAIs, choose the row that contains the AAI table that you want to set up.
2. From the Row menu, choose Details.

Co	Do Ty	Description	G/L Cat	Description G/L	Cost Type	Branch Plant	Obj Acct	Sub
000	CO	Credit Order	IN30	Inventory		30	6020	
00000	SD	Direct Ship	IN30	Inventory			6020	
00000	SD	Direct Ship	IN99	Inventory		10	6020	
00000	SI	Interbranch Sales	****			30	6020	
00000	SK	Sales Intercompany	IN30	Inventory			6020	
00000	SO	Sales Order	IN30	Inventory			6020	
00000	SO	Sales Order	IN99	Inventory		10	6020	
00000	SR	Sales Order - Rush	IN30	Inventory			6020	
00000	SR	Sales Order - Rush	IN99	Inventory		10	6020	
00000	ST	Transfer Sale	IN30	Inventory			6020	
00000	ST	Transfer Sale	IN99	Inventory		10	6020	
00001	SO	Sales Order	IN30	Inventory	A1	30	6020	A1

3. On Account Revisions, scroll down to the bottom of the form, complete the following fields, and click OK:

- Co
- Do Ty
- G/L Cat
- Branch Plant
- Obj Acct
- Sub

Field	Explanation
Co	<p>A code that identifies a specific organization, fund, entity, and so on. The company code must already exist in the Company Constants table (F0010) and must identify a reporting entity that has a complete balance sheet. At this level, you can have intercompany transactions.</p> <p>Note: You can use Company 00000 for default values, such as dates and automatic accounting instructions. You cannot use Company 00000 for transaction entries.</p>

Field	Explanation
Do Ty	<p>A user defined code (00/DT) that identifies the origin and purpose of the transaction.</p> <p>J.D. Edwards reserves several prefixes for document types, such as vouchers, invoices, receipts, and timesheets.</p> <p>The reserved document type prefixes for codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">P Accounts payable documentsR Accounts receivable documentsT Time and Pay documentsI Inventory documentsO Ordering document types <p>The system creates offsetting entries as appropriate for these document types when you post batches.</p>
G/L Cat	<p>A user defined code (41/9) that identifies the G/L offset that the system uses when it searches for the account to which it posts the transaction. If you do not want to specify a class code, you can enter **** (four asterisks) in this field.</p> <p>You can use automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) to predefine classes of automatic offset accounts for the Inventory, Procurement, and Sales Order Management systems.</p> <p>The system can generate accounting entries based upon a single transaction. For example, a single sale of a stock item can trigger the generation of accounting entries similar to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Sales-Stock (Debit) xxxxx.xxA/R Stock Sales (Credit) xxxxx.xxStock Inventory (Debit) xxxxx.xxStock COGS (Credit) xxxxx.xx

Field	Explanation
Branch Plant	<p>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, branch, or plant.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, employee, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p>Note: The system uses the job number for journal entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system uses the business unit that you entered on the work order, in the Charge to Cost Center field.</p>
Obj Acct	<p>The portion of a general ledger account that refers to the division of the Cost Code (for example, labor, materials, and equipment) into subcategories. For example, dividing labor into regular time, premium time, and burden.</p> <p>Note: If you are using a flexible chart of accounts and the object account is set to 6 digits, J.D. Edwards recommends that you use all 6 digits. For example, entering 000456 is not the same as entering 456, because if you enter 456, the system enters three blank spaces to fill a 6-digit object.</p>
Sub	<p>A subdivision of an object account. Subsidiary accounts include more detailed records of the accounting activity for an object account.</p> <p>..... <i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system uses the value you entered on the work order in the Cost Code field.</p>

Defining Flexible Account Numbers

You use flexible sales accounting to create a flexible format for account numbers in your chart of accounts. Flexible account numbers use the standard J.D. Edwards format, which has three segments, business unit.object.subsidiary. The flexible format lets you customize each segment of the account number.

For example, you might use a format that includes more information, such as, salesperson, branch, sales territory, and other address book category codes. Or, you can set up the structure of the flexible account number based on how you track the performance of items and customers through sales detail and the general ledger.

The standard J.D. Edwards account structure is formatted with the following segments:

- Business unit
- Object account
- Subsidiary account
- Subledger

Flexible format accounts have the same segments. The length of all segments cannot exceed 34 characters. Each segment of the flexible format account has a character limit:

Business unit	12 characters
Object account	6 characters
Subsidiary account	8 characters
Subledger	8 characters

To create a flexible account number, you define one or more of these segments. To do this, you associate one or more pieces of information with each segment. Each piece of information is associated with a field and is stored in one of the following tables:

- Address Book Master (F0101)
- Price Adjustment History (F4074)
- Item Master (F4101)
- Item Branch (F4102)
- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Sales Order Detail (F4211)

To associate information with a segment, you must know the data item name that J.D. Edwards has defined for the corresponding field in the table.

You cannot define an object segment. You must define the object account through AAIs.

The subledger account is not visible online, but is stored in the Account Ledger table (F0911).

You activate flexible sales accounting through the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program.

Before you create a flexible account number, consider the following:

Using a consistent account structure

You must use the same account structure for all companies and all business units in your organization. This is necessary for multi-company consolidations and automated intercompany settlements.

If you use flexible accounting in the J.D. Edwards financial systems, the business unit and subsidiary account that you define through distribution flexible sales accounting must have the same number of characters as the business unit and subsidiary account that you define through financial flexible accounting.

Defining one subledger per account

You can define only one subledger type for each account. It is important that you review your account structure before you set up flexible accounts to determine how you will use subledgers.

Example: Flexible Account Number

A pharmaceutical company sells its products nationwide to hospitals and pharmacies. It also sells non-prescription products to retail outlets.

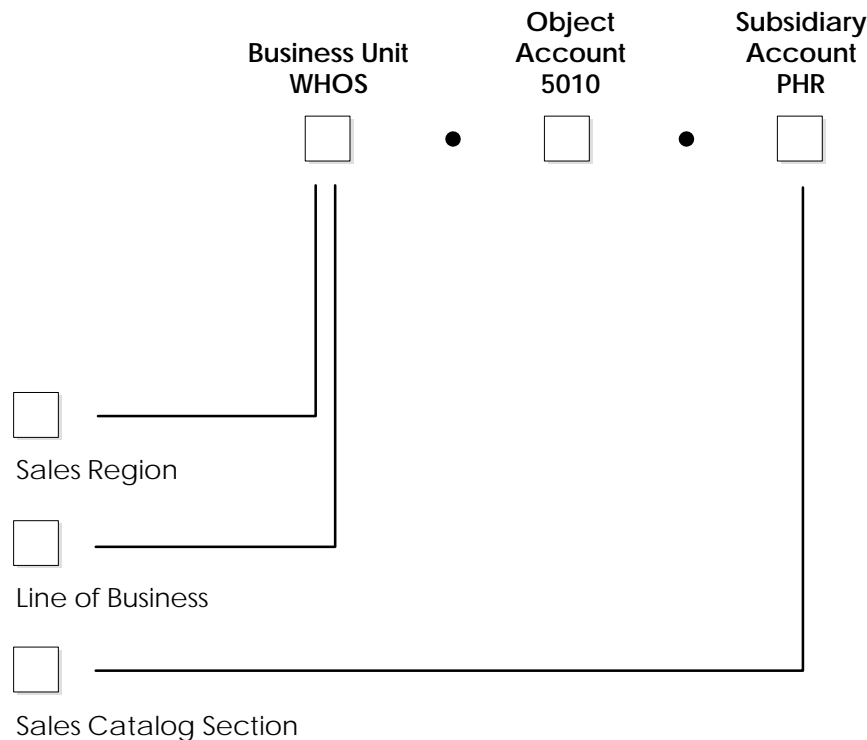
The company tracks sales by region of the country, hospital versus retail pharmacies, and pharmacy (prescription) versus over-the-counter (non-prescription) sales. The company can direct the sales, COGS, and inventory charges to accounts that are made up of different combinations of these three categories to track their sales information.

The company could define the flexible account number as follows:

- Business unit, in two segments:
 - Address book category code, such as sales region (for example, W for West)
 - Address book category code, such as line of business (for example, HOS for hospital or RET for retail)
- General ledger object account from the AAI, such as 5010
- Subsidiary account, in one segment (optional):
 - Item master reporting code, such as sales catalog section (for example, PHR for pharmacy, or OTC for over-the-counter)

In this example, if a hospital buys a prescription drug for its pharmacy, the revenue would go to the following account:

WHOS.5010.PHR



What Are the Rules for Defining a Flexible Format?

Consider the following rules about flexible account numbers:

Total length

The total account number cannot exceed 34 characters, including the separator character. Each element is also limited to a specific number of characters:

- Business unit, less than or equal to 12
- Object account, less than or equal to 6
- Subsidiary account, less than or equal to 8
- Subledger, less than or equal to 8

Information associated with each segment

Each piece of information that you associate with a segment corresponds to a J.D. Edwards field. Each of these fields is hard-coded in user defined code table 40/DI. You can view valid fields on Flexible Sales Accounting.

To use a field that is not included in these tables, you must develop custom programming.

Base Sales Order Management AAI

You can define a flexible account number only for the following base sales order management AAI tables:

- 4220 (Cost of Goods Sold)
- 4230 (Sales)
- 4240 (Inventory)
- 4250 (Sales Tax Payable)

When the system searches for an account for these AAI, it searches the Flexible Sales Accounting table (F4096) as follows:

- The system checks for a flexible account number that has been defined for a specific AAI and a specific company.
- If no account has been defined for a specific AAI and a specific company, the system checks for an account that has been defined for a specific AAI and company 00000.

Advanced Pricing AAI

You can define a flexible account number for only the following advanced pricing AAI tables:

- 4270 (Adjustments)
- 4280 (Accruals)

When the system searches for an account for these AAI, it searches the Flexible Sales Accounting table (F4096) as follows:

- The system checks for a flexible account number that has been defined for a specific AAI, a specific company, and an adjustment name.
- If no account has been defined for a specific AAI, a specific company, and an adjustment name, the system checks for a flexible account number that has been defined for a specific AAI and a specific company.
- If no account has been defined for a specific AAI and a specific company, the system checks for a flexible account number that has been defined for a specific AAI, company 00000, and an adjustment name.
- If no account has been defined for a specific AAI, company 00000, and an adjustment name, the system checks for a flexible account number that has been defined for a specific AAI and company 00000.

How Does the System Determine Account Information?

When you process a transaction that requires the system to record information to the general ledger, it searches for each part of the flexible account number as follows:

Determining the business unit

To determine the business unit, the system:

- Searches for the business unit in the AAI.
- If no business unit has been defined in the AAI, the system uses the flexible format business unit you define.
- If no flexible format business unit exists, the system uses the business unit that you specify through the processing options of the sales update program.

Determining the subsidiary account

To determine the subsidiary account, the system:

- Searches for a subsidiary account that has been defined in the AAI.
- If no subsidiary account has been defined in the AAI, the system uses the flexible format subsidiary account that you define.

Determining the subledger

To determine the subledger, the system:

- Searches for the subledger account that you specified in sales order detail.
- If no subledger account has been specified in sales order detail, the system uses the flexible format subledger account that you define.
- If no flexible format subledger account exists, the system uses the subledger that you specify through the processing options of the sales update program.

The system searches for flexible account information only if you have set up the appropriate processing options in the Update Customer Sales program.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Determine the information that you want to associate with each segment of the account number
- ☐ Define AAIs with object account information only

See Also

- *Setting Up Flex Accounting Rules* in the *Cost Management Solution Guide* for more information about setting up product costing for individual branch/plants.

► To define a flexible account number

From the Sales Order Management Setup menu (G4241), choose Flexible Sales Accounting.

1. On Work with Flexible Sales Accounts, click Add.

Seq	B U	S B	S L	I T	C O	CO Type	File Name	Len	Description	Data Item
1										

2. On Flexible Sales Account Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - AAI Table Number
 - Company
 - Adjustment Name
 - Subledger Type
3. To associate the flexible segment to the standard format segment, complete one of the following fields:
 - Business Unit
 - Sub Account
 - Subledger

4. To associate the data item with this segment, complete the following field:
 - Data Item
5. Complete the following field if the data item you entered is a field that is stored in the Address Book Master table.
 - Data Type

Advanced & Technical



Interoperability

To fulfill the information requirements of an enterprise, companies sometimes use products from different software and hardware providers. For example, a company might receive purchase orders from customers and can automatically produce sales orders in the OneWorld Sales Order Management system.

Interoperability between different products is key to successfully implementing an enterprise solution. Full interoperability between different systems results in a flow of data between the different products that is transparent to the user. OneWorld provides interoperability functions to facilitate the exchange of data with systems that are external to OneWorld.

Inbound Transactions

In an inbound transaction, you accept data from another system into OneWorld. Interoperability for inbound transactions consists of these tasks:

1. The external system sends data to the OneWorld interface tables, which hold the data before it is copied to the application tables. The external system is responsible for conforming to the format and other requirements for the interface tables. If the external system cannot write the information in the required format, it can write the data to a flat file, and you can use the OneWorld Inbound Flat File Conversion program to convert the data to the required format.
2. You run a transaction process (a batch program) that validates the data, updates valid data from the interface tables to the OneWorld application tables, and sends action messages to the Employee Work Center about invalid data.
3. You use an inquiry function to interactively review and revise the incorrect data, and then run the transaction process again. You repeat this step as often as needed to correct errors.

Outbound Transactions

In an outbound transaction, you send data from OneWorld to an external system. Interoperability for outbound transactions requires that you set a processing option specifying the transaction type. Using the master business function for the type of transaction, the system creates a copy of the transaction and places it in the interface table where external systems can access it.



Interoperability consists of the following tasks:

- ☐ Setting up interoperability
- ☐ Receiving transactions into OneWorld
- ☐ Reviewing and revising interoperability transactions
- ☐ Sending transactions from OneWorld
- ☐ Purging transaction records

See Also

- *EDI Document Processing* in the *Data Interface for Electronic Data Interchange* for more information about electronic commerce.
- See *Detailed Tasks for OneWorld Operations* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about interoperability methods
- See *OneWorld Interoperability Models* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about implementing asynchronous, synchronous, and batch transactions in OneWorld

Setting Up for Interoperability Transactions

External systems can use a variety of methods to send data to the interoperability interface tables. One method is to write the data to a flat file. If you use this method, the system converts the flat file to the interface table. In order for the system to convert data from the flat file to the interface table, you must identify the transaction, which includes the following information:

- Transaction type, which is a unique description to identify the transaction
- Whether the transaction is inbound or outbound
- Record type, the data that is imported or exported
- The application, the source or destination of the transaction

You can set a processing option to start the transaction process automatically when the conversion completes successfully. The transaction process copies the data from the interface tables to the application tables, from which OneWorld applications can access the data.

Setting up for interoperability transactions consists of the following tasks:

- ☐ Reviewing record types
- ☐ Setting up transaction types
- ☐ Setting up data export controls
- ☐ Setting up the flat file cross-reference
- ☐ Running the conversion program

Before You Begin

- ☐ Ensure that the flat file is a comma-delimited ASCII text (flat) file to which the workstation has read and write access.
- ☐ Ensure that the data conforms to the required format. See *Converting Data from Flat Files into EDI Interface Tables* in the *Data Interface for Electronic Data Interchange Guide* for requirements.

Reviewing Record Types

When you set up flat file cross-reference information, you must specify the record types. Record types indicate the sort of information that is exchanged between OneWorld and external systems, such as addresses, header or detail transactions, text, or additional information.

You can review hard-coded record types in the user defined code table (00/RD). The system uses these codes to identify the forms from which the system stores information for outbound documents and to which the system stores information for inbound documents.

► To review record types

From the Interoperability menu (G42A313), choose Record Type.

1. On Work with User Defined Codes, to review record types, click Find.

Codes	Description 01	Special Handling	Hard Coded
1	Header		Y
2	Detail		Y
3	Additional Header		Y
4	Additional Detail		Y
5	SDQ		Y
6	Address		Y
7	Header Text		Y
8	Detail Text		Y

2. On User Defined Codes, review the following fields:

- User Defined Code
- Description

The user defined records types are hard coded by J.D. Edwards and can not be changed.

Setting Up Transaction Types

In order to identify the transactions that the system uses in the flat-file cross reference, you can add codes, or transaction types, to the user defined code table (00/TT). After you set up the transaction type, you use the transaction type to identify whether the information exchange is inbound or outbound, and to identify the corresponding applications and versions. You must set up transaction types prior to defining data export controls and flat file cross-reference information.

► **To set up transaction types**

From the Interoperability menu (G42A313), choose Transaction Types.

On User Defined Codes, complete the following fields:

- User Defined Code
- Description

For every transaction type, you must set up data export controls. If you cannot transfer or receive information with an external system, then you use the transaction type when you set up flat file cross-reference information.

Setting Up Data Export Controls

You define the export information for outbound transactions only. To set up data export controls properly, you must indicate the transaction, document type, batch application or function, and version from which the external system retrieves information from the interface tables.

You can define export controls based on either of the following:

Function Name and Library	You can specify a vendor-specific function name and library to identify the external custom program that accesses the OneWorld interface tables.
UBE or batch processor	You can specify a vendor-specific outbound batch processor that accesses the OneWorld interface tables.

See Also

- *Detailed Tasks for Custom Programming* in the *Interoperability Guide* for information about vendor-specific applications and functions.

► **To set up data export controls**

From the Interoperability menu (G42A313), choose Data Export Controls.

1. On Work With Data Export Controls, click Add.

Seq	UBE Name	Version	Function Name	
1.00	R31SYN01	XJDE0001		
2.00				

2. On Data Export Control Revisions, enter a specific transaction type in the following field:
 - Transaction
3. Enter Order Type in the following field:
 - Order Type
4. Enter a specific application or function in either of the following field:
 - UBE Name
 - Function Name

You can define data export control for either a vendor-specific batch process or function. If you enter information in fields for vendor-specific batch processors or functions, the system uses the batch process.

5. If you identified an vendor-specific batch process, enter a specific version of UBE in the following field:
 - Version
6. If you identified a vendor-specific function, enter a specific function library and location in the following fields:
 - Function Library
7. Enter 1 or 0 in the following fields:
 - Execute For Add
 - Execute For Upd
 - Execute For Del
 - Ext DB Exp Mode
 - Launch Immediately
 - Execute For Inq
 - Flat File Exp Mode
 - Ext API Exp Mode
8. Click OK.

Field	Explanation														
Transaction	A code that identifies a transaction by type.														
Order Type	<p>A user defined code (00/DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)</p> <p>The following document types are defined by J.D. Edwards and should not be changed:</p> <table> <tr> <td>P</td><td>Accounts Payable documents</td></tr> <tr> <td>R</td><td>Accounts Receivable documents</td></tr> <tr> <td>T</td><td>Payroll documents</td></tr> <tr> <td>I</td><td>Inventory documents</td></tr> <tr> <td>O</td><td>Purchase Order Processing documents</td></tr> <tr> <td>J</td><td>General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents</td></tr> <tr> <td>S</td><td>Sales Order Processing documents</td></tr> </table>	P	Accounts Payable documents	R	Accounts Receivable documents	T	Payroll documents	I	Inventory documents	O	Purchase Order Processing documents	J	General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents	S	Sales Order Processing documents
P	Accounts Payable documents														
R	Accounts Receivable documents														
T	Payroll documents														
I	Inventory documents														
O	Purchase Order Processing documents														
J	General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents														
S	Sales Order Processing documents														

Field	Explanation
UBE Name	<p>The OneWorld architecture is object based. This means that discrete software objects are the building blocks for all applications, and that developers can reuse the objects in multiple applications. Each object is stored in the Object Librarian. Examples of OneWorld objects include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Batch Applications• Interactive Applications• Business Views• Business Functions• Business Functions Data Structures• Event Rules• Media Object Data Structures
Version	<p>A version is a user-defined set of specifications. These specifications control how applications and reports run. You use versions to group and save a set of user-defined processing option values and/or data selection and sequencing options. Interactive versions are associated with applications (usually as a menu selection). Batch versions are associated with batch jobs or reports. To run a batch process you must choose a version.</p>
Execute For Add	<p>A code that determines whether the system uses the batch application to process an added transaction record.</p> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1 Use batch application to process an added transaction record0 Do not use batch application to process an added transaction record
Execute For Upd	<p>A code that determines whether the system uses the batch application to process an updated transaction record.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1 Use batch application to process an updated transaction record0 Do not use batch application to process an updated transaction record
Execute For Del	<p>A code that determines whether the system uses the batch application to process a deleted transaction record.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1 Use batch application to process a deleted transaction record0 Do not use batch application to process a deleted transaction record

Field	Explanation
Ext DB Exp Mode	<p>A code that determines whether the transaction record should be exported to an external database. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Export transaction record to an external database. 0 Do not export transaction record to an external database.
Launch Immediately	<p>This field controls the immediate execution of a batch job. If the field is set to a 1, the job will execute immediately.</p>
Execute For Inq	<p>A code that determines whether the system uses the batch application to process an inquiry of a transaction record.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Use batch application to process an inquiry of a transaction record 0 Do not use batch application to process an inquiry of a transaction record
Flat File Exp Mode	<p>A code that determines whether the system exports the transaction record to a flat file.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Export transaction record to a flat file 0 Do not export transaction record to a flat file
Ext API Exp Mode	<p>A code that determines whether the system exports the transaction record to an external API.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Export transaction record to an external API 0 Do not export transaction record to an external API

Setting Up the Flat File Cross-Reference

When you exchange data between OneWorld and an external system, you use flat file cross-reference information for the following conditions:

- For inbound transactions, if the external system cannot write data to the interface tables in the required format for OneWorld, the external system can write the data to a specific flat file for each transaction and record type.
- For outbound transactions, if OneWorld cannot write data to the interface tables in the format required by the external system, OneWorld can write the data to a specific flat file for each transaction and record type.

See Also

- *Converting Data from Flat Files into EDI Interface Tables* in the *Data Interface for Electronic Data Interchange Guide* for information about this process, which works the same for interoperability functions

► To set up cross-references

From the Interoperability menu (G42A313), choose Flat File Cross-Reference.

1. On Work With Flat File Cross-Reference, click Add.

Record Type	Record Type Description	File Name
1	Header	F4801Z1

2. On Flat File Cross-Reference, enter a specific transaction type in the following field:
 - Transaction
3. Depending on whether this transaction type is Inbound or Outbound, complete the following field:
 - Direction Indicator
4. Complete the following field to indicate the information source:
 - Record Type
5. Enter the specific file name in the following field:
 - File Name

The file name refers to the application table from which the system exchanges information, defined by the record type.

6. Click OK.

Running the Conversion Program

From the Interoperability menu (G42A313), choose Inbound Flat File Conversion.

The Inbound Flat File Conversion program converts the flat file to the interface table. If you set the appropriate processing option, the system starts the related transaction process following successful conversion.

See Also

- *Importing from Flat Files* in the *Interoperability Guide* for setup requirements for flat file conversion

Processing Options for Inbound Flat File Conversion

Transaction

1. Enter the transaction to process. _____

Separators

1. Enter the field delimiter. _____
2. Enter the text qualifier. _____

Process

1. Enter the inbound processor to run after successful completion of the conversion. _____
2. Enter the version for the inbound processor. If left blank, XJDE0001 will be used. _____

Receiving Transactions into OneWorld

When receiving data, OneWorld stores the unedited data sent from the external system in interface tables. For outbound transactions, OneWorld writes data to the interface tables. The data is then sent to an external system. With this method, unedited transactions do not affect application tables. The next step is to run the appropriate transaction process to edit the transactions and update the appropriate OneWorld application tables.

In order to be received into the interface tables, data from an external system must conform to the minimum field requirements specified for the interface table.

The receiving transaction process performs the following tasks:

- Validates the data in the interface table to ensure that data is correct and conforms to the format defined for the application table system
- Updates the associated application table with validated data
- Produces a report that lists invalid transactions and sends an action message for each invalid transaction to the Employee Work Center
- Marks in the interface tables those transactions that have been successfully updated to the application tables

If the report indicates errors, access the Employee Work Center from the Workflow Management menu (G02) and review the messages in the message center. Then use the associated inquiry function to review and revise the transactions and rerun the transaction process.

Note: When you run the Inbound Flat File Conversion program and it completes successfully, the system automatically starts the transaction process if specified in the processing option for the conversion.

See Also

- *Reviewing and Revising Interoperability Transactions* for more information about using the Inquiry function
- *Receiving Documents* in the *Data Interface for Electronic Data Interchange* for more information about receiving inbound EDI documents

- *Transactions Into OneWorld* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more technical information about receiving inbound transactions
- *Checking for Errors* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about reviewing error messages in the Employee Work Center.

Reviewing and Revising Interoperability Transactions

Running an inbound transaction process often identifies one or more invalid inbound transactions in the interface table. For example, an inventory item on an order might have an invalid address book number, Ship To address or Sold To address. The program cannot add that transaction to the Sales Order Detail table. When an error occurs, the program sends an error message to the Employee Work Center, indicating the transaction number for the transaction in error. You can inquire on the following transactions to review and revise undedited sales transactions.

Use the inquiry menu selections to add, change, or delete transactions containing errors. Then run the appropriate transaction process again. Continue to make corrections and rerun the transaction process until the program runs without errors.

You can use the processing log to review inbound and outbound transactions. See *Reviewing the Processing Log* for more information.

See Also

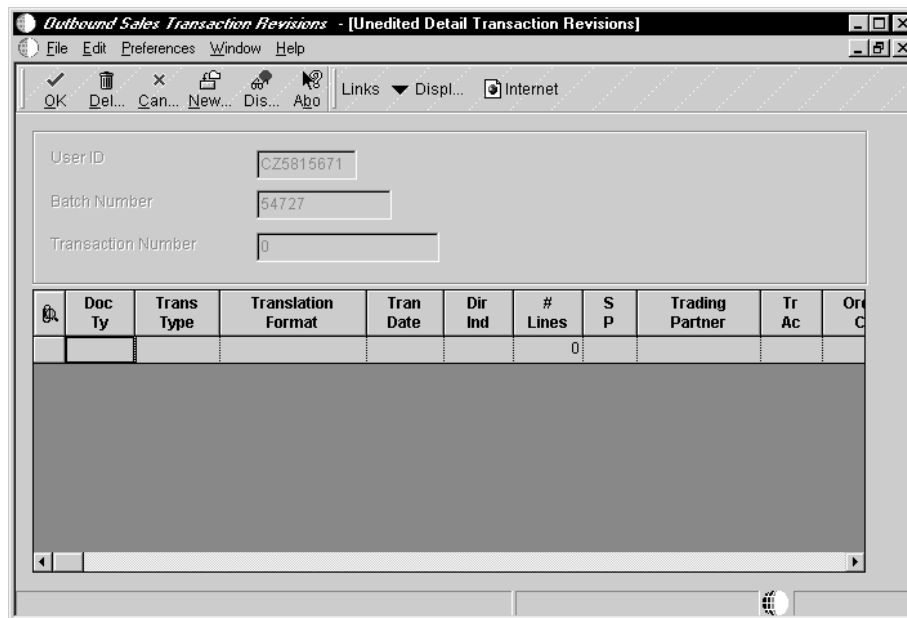
- *EDI Document Inquiry and Revision* in the *Data Interface for Electronic Data Interchange Guide* for information
- *Use the Revisions Application* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about reviewing and revising interoperability transactions



To review and revise interoperability transactions

From the Interoperability menu (G42A313), choose Outbound Sales Transaction Revisions.

1. On Work with Sales Order Unedited Transactions, to limit the search to specific transactions, complete the following fields:
 - User ID
 - Batch Number
 - Transaction Number
2. Click Find.
3. Choose the transaction to review and revise and click Select.



4. On Sales Order Unedited Detail Transactions Revisions, review and revise as needed, and click OK.
5. If applicable, choose Detail Revisions from the Row menu to review or change additional detail information, and click OK when finished.

After you correct the errors identified by the Inbound Transaction Process, run the transaction process again. If other errors are identified, correct them and run the transaction process again.

Field	Explanation
User ID	The source of the transaction. This can be a user ID, a workstation, the address of an external system, a node on a network, and so on. This field helps identify both the transaction and its point of origin.
Batch Number	The number that the transmitter assigns to the batch. During batch processing, the system assigns a new batch number to the J.D. Edwards transactions for each control (user) batch number it finds.
Transaction Number	This is the number that an Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) transmitter assigns to a transaction. In a non-EDI environment, you can assign any number that is meaningful to you to identify a transaction within a batch. It can be the same as a J.D. Edwards document number.

Reviewing the Processing Log

You can use the processing log to review whether the system has processed inbound and outbound transactions. With the processing log, you can review whether a vendor-specific transaction has been successfully processed. The processing log contains key information from the Data Export Control table about the interoperability transaction, such as the transaction type, order type, sequence number, batch process or function, and corresponding version. The system creates a record for every transaction that is processed.

The information in the processing log is for review only and can not be changed in either the processing log or OneWorld applications.

See Also

- *Subscribing to Outbound Transactions* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about the data export control table and the processing log

Sending Transactions from OneWorld

You might send transactions you create or change in the Sales Order Management system to an external system. For example, if your organization sends order acknowledgements to customers, you can use Interoperability transactions to convey order and price information.

The default outbound transaction is a copy of a data transaction after you created or changed it (an *after image*). With OneWorld interoperability features, you can also send a copy of each transaction as it was before you changed it (a *before image*). Creating and sending before images requires additional processing time. To control the type of image, you set a processing option in the application programs that create transactions.

You can send transactions from OneWorld to an external system using any of the following interoperability methods:

Batch extraction processor

When you run an extraction process, the application retrieves data from the J.D. Edwards application tables for the transaction and copies the data to the interface tables. The system then generates an audit report that lists the processed documents.

Batch and subsystem process

All outbound master business functions used to create transactions have processing options that control the interoperability transaction. For batch and subsystem processing, you set up the processing options in the appropriate business function version for interoperability and then specify that application and version in the data export controls.

In order to enable outbound processing, you must set a processing option in the following Sales Order Management applications:

- Sales Order Entry
- Ship Confirm

The system places a copy of the transaction in the interface table for that type of transaction. For example, when you run Sales Order Entry with the Interoperability processing option turned on, the system places a copy of sales order in the interface table. The data is then available for an external system to use.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Define the data export controls for the type of outbound transaction. The system uses data export controls to determine the batch programs or business processes that third parties supply for use in processing transactions.

See Also

- *Sending Product Activity Data (852/INVRPT)* in the *Data Interface for Electronic Data Interchange Guide* for more information about issues, transfers, and adjustments
- See *Detailed Tasks for OneWorld Operations* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about interoperability methods
- See *OneWorld Interoperability Models* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about implementing asynchronous, synchronous, and batch transactions in OneWorld

Purging Interoperability Transaction Records

When data becomes obsolete or you need more disk space, you can use purge programs to remove data from interface files.

The Interoperability menu contains a purge option for both inbound and outbound transactions. Use the following purges to remove data from the corresponding interface tables:

- Purging Sales Transactions Records (R4211Z1P)

See Also

- *Purge Batch Process and Named Event Rules* in the *Interoperability Guide* for more information about purging information from the interface tables

Appendices



Appendix A: Vertex Quantum for Sales and Use Tax

If your company wants to apply sales taxes automatically, you can use the Vertex Quantum for Sales and Use Tax system (Quantum) with the following J.D. Edwards systems:

- General Accounting
- Accounts Receivable
- Accounts Payable
- Sales Order Management
- Procurement
- Customer Service Management System (CSMS)
- Contract Billing
- Service Billing

Caution: If you are using the J.D. Edwards Payroll system, you are required to use the Quantum for Payroll Tax System. See *Setting Up Tax Information* in the *Payroll Guide*.

Quantum software integrates with the J.D. Edwards OneWorld tax calculation software, which means that you can perform tax calculations using either the Quantum software, the J. D. Edwards tax calculation software, or both. However, if you want to perform a tax-only calculation, you must use the J.D. Edwards software.

Working with Quantum consists of:

- ☐ Setting up the J.D. Edwards/Quantum interface
- ☐ Assigning GeoCodes to address book records
- ☐ Working with Quantum taxes
- ☐ Processing Quantum tax information

When tax laws change, the Quantum software accesses the new requirements for each taxing authority so that you can apply the taxes correctly. Quantum software:

- Reduces the setup required for multiple tax rate areas
- Reduces processing time and rate maintenance



- Creates tax compliant records
- Allows exceptions and overrides to the default tax rates

Quantum calculates tax based on the standard rates and rules for the U.S., its territories and possessions, and Canada. To perform all other foreign tax calculations, you have two options:

- Use the J.D. Edwards tax calculation software
- Use the Quantum system, but maintain tax rates for foreign locations using the Quantum Tax Decision Maker

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have access to the following Vertex documentation for Quantum for Sales and Use Tax for additional information:

- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax Reference Manual*
- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax GeoCoder Master List*
- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax National Tax Rate Directory*
- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax Tax Decision Maker Taxability Guide*
- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax User's Guide*
- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax Training Guide for Tax Professionals*
- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax Returns User's Guide*

J.D. Edwards Components

The interface between J.D. Edwards systems and Quantum software transfers selected J.D. Edwards parameters to Quantum and then returns tax information to J.D. Edwards systems.

The standard J.D. Edwards tax calculation software components can be used with Quantum in the following ways:

Tax authorities	You use tax authorities within J.D. Edwards software to define the government agencies that assess and collect taxes. You define tax authorities in the J.D. Edwards tax processing system only for international tax authorities because those for the U.S. and Canada are stored by Quantum.
Tax rates and tax areas	For U.S. and Canadian taxes, you specify a GeoCode for each tax rate and tax area to allow Quantum to identify the correct taxing jurisdictions.
Automatic Accounting Instructions (AAIs)	<p>For U.S. and Canadian taxes, you use the AAI code PT __ __ __ for the company.</p> <p>For non-United States and non-Canadian taxes, you assign an AAI to each taxing authority within each tax rate/area.</p>
Tax rules by company	<p>You can define tax rules for the Accounts Receivable, Accounts Payable, Sales Order Management, Procurement, CSMS, General Accounting, Contract Billing, and Service Billing systems. When you enter transactions for these systems, taxes are calculated according to these rules. The system uses these tax rules to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Calculate discounts on a gross amount that already includes tax.• Calculate tax on a gross amount that includes the discount amount.• Control when the system displays a warning message (or rejects a transaction altogether) when someone enters a tax that differs from the system-calculated tax. This does not apply to E, S, and U tax types. <p>This feature applies to taxes for all countries.</p>

Tax explanation codes

Tax explanation codes control how a tax is assessed and how it is distributed to the general ledger revenue and expense accounts. J.D. Edwards software provides a number of tax explanation codes. Tax codes E, S, and U are predefined for Quantum software. Because the tax explanation code is a user defined code (00/EX), you can set up additional codes to meet specific business needs; however, the Quantum interface recognizes only tax codes E, S, and U.

In Quantum software, you can use the tax explanation code to make a customer or a specific transaction tax exempt. For example, a customer with a tax explanation code of E is exempt. Any purchase or sales order; accounts receivable invoice; CSMS, contract or service billing invoice; and CSMS contract line item can be coded with E to make that specific transaction exempt. Currently, CSMS service order routings are taxable and cannot be overridden.

Other available codes are U (use) for use in the Procurement, Accounts Payable, and CSMS systems, and S (sales) for use in Sales Order Management, Accounts Receivable, CSMS, Contract Billing, and Service Billing systems.

Quantum Components

The Quantum for Sales and Use Tax system includes the following components:

Rate and GeoCode Data Modules

The data modules store tax rates and other pertinent jurisdictional tax data for all U.S. and Canadian tax authorities, which include over 66,000 locations. All states and counties are on file, as well as all cities with populations over 250. If a city has a population less than 250 and levies a tax, that city is also included in the data modules.

Vertex researches and maintains the data contained in the file by remaining in constant contact with all jurisdictions that levy a tax. Every month, Vertex updates its internal databases and issues new data module files to its subscribers.

Tax Decision Maker

You can customize the Quantum system for your special needs. You use the Tax Decision Maker Engine in conjunction with the Tax Decision Maker (TDM) to automate (separately or in combination) product, customers, or jurisdictional tax exceptions. TDM lets you set up and maintain tax exceptions and also override customer and product exemptions. You can access TDM from Quantum menus.

Tax Decision Maker Engine

The Tax Decision Maker Engine interfaces with J.D. Edwards Sales Order Management, Procurement, Accounts Receivable, Accounts Payable, CSMS, Contract Billing and Service Billing systems.

When a J.D. Edwards program calls the Tax Decision Maker Engine, the Tax Decision Maker Engine determines the following:

- Whether the transaction is interstate or intrastate
- The transaction's taxing jurisdiction
- The appropriate tax rate
- The maximum tax base
- Excess amounts, if applicable
- Tax exceptions, if applicable

The Tax Decision Maker Engine then:

- Retrieves the appropriate tax rate
- Calculates tax amounts
- Returns the amount to the calling program

The module can also store tax history for an audit trail and for management reports and returns preparation (as an independent function outside the scope of J.D. Edwards generated reports). Because the Data Module isolates the state, county, city, and district rates, Quantum can calculate the four levels individually.

Quantum Tax Register file

From the Quantum Register file, the Tax Decision Maker Engine produces detail and summary sales tax register reports sequenced by state, county, and city for any billing period. You generate these reports from Quantum menus.

Returns Module

If you purchase the Returns Module in addition to the Quantum for Sales and Use Tax system, the Returns Module completes the sales tax cycle by automating state and local returns preparation. After calculating the amount to be paid to the appropriate tax authorities, the system automatically generates signature-ready sales and use tax forms and check requests.

Interface Considerations

Before you set up the J.D. Edwards/Quantum Sales Tax Interface to reflect your environment, carefully consider the specific conditions and requirements of the company, the product, the customer or supplier, and international tax obligations.

Company and Divisional Considerations

You should understand any special dispensations that the company has arranged with state or local jurisdictions for collecting sales and use taxes at a reduced rate. Then, consider whether tax returns are filed for just one company or for multiple companies.

Product Considerations

You should understand the business and how products fit into appropriate tax categories. For example, rebuilt machinery might be taxed differently than spare parts for the same machinery. Decide how the company intends to set up the taxing policies for J.D. Edwards and Quantum software.

Customer and Supplier Considerations

You must properly identify the tax category to which customers and suppliers belong. For example, a customer might be a provider of goods or services, a reseller, a charitable organization, or other tax group. Decide how you will set up customers and suppliers into both the J.D. Edwards and Quantum software modules.

International Tax Considerations

Be aware of international tax obligations. Know whether to use the J.D. Edwards Tax Calculation software or Quantum to manage and process non-U.S. and non-Canadian tax transactions.

**Coexistence
Considerations**

Although you can work with OneWorld and WorldSoftware in a coexistent environment, the Vertex Sales and Use Tax Compliance product for WorldSoftware and Quantum for Sales and Use Tax for OneWorld do not coexist with each other. Quantum, however, has utilities that allow you to copy and merge information from the Compliance product to Quantum.

If you are coexistent, you can:

- Manage and maintain the TDM in the legacy Compliance system. Then, you can copy the Compliance TDM to the Quantum TDM using Quantum utilities.
- Merge the register tables created in both the Compliance and Quantum products into the Quantum product with Quantum utilities.

Note: The Compliance product has no utilities to copy the Quantum TDM or merge the Quantum register tables into the legacy system.

Setting Up the J.D. Edwards/Quantum Interface

If your company wants to apply sales taxes automatically, you can use Quantum software along with the J.D. Edwards system. Quantum software can coexist with the J.D. Edwards tax calculator software, which means that you can perform tax calculations using either system or both of them. However, if you want to perform a tax-only calculation, you must use the J.D. Edwards software.

Setting up Quantum consists of:

- ☐ Activating Quantum
- ☐ Testing the Quantum Connection
- ☐ Activating Quantum Logging
- ☐ Setting up automatic accounting instructions for Quantum
- ☐ Setting up user defined codes for Quantum
- ☐ Assigning non-stock product categories to order types
- ☐ Defining tax information for items

Before You Begin

- ☐ Review order line types. See *Setting Up Order Line Types* in the *Sales Order Management and Procurement Guides*.
- ☐ Review order activity rules. See *Setting Up Order Activity Rules in the Sales Order Management and Procurement Guides*.
- ☐ Verify that each customer address book record has a corresponding record in customer master information, and that all suppliers have a record in supplier master information.

What You Should Know About

Tax only calculations

For tax only calculations, use tax types ST (sales tax) and UT (use tax) along with the J.D. Edwards tax rate/area code. You cannot use these tax types with a Quantum GeoCode.

For records with ST and UT tax types, records are not to be written to the Quantum Tax Register file, even if Quantum is active.

Returns Module

If you plan to use the Quantum Sales Tax Returns Module, you should install it after performing all other setup steps.

Activating Quantum

You must activate the Quantum interface prior to using the Quantum system with J.D. Edwards OneWorld software.

Note: Constants settings load during software initialization. Therefore, in order for the constants settings to take effect, you must exit and restart OneWorld.

Before You Begin

- ☐ You must set up database connections to establish communication to the Quantum databases, both Quantum for Sales and Use Tax and Quantum for Payroll.

See *Setting Up Database Connections* in the *OneWorld Installation Guide* for more information.

To activate Quantum

From the Vertex Quantum Sales and Use Tax menu (G731), choose Constants.

1. On Work with Quantum Constants Revision, complete the following fields:
 - Quantum Active
 - U.S. Country Code
 - Canada Country Code
2. Complete the following fields for sales tax category codes:
 - Division Code
 - Customer Class Code
 - Product Category/ID
3. Complete the following fields for use tax category codes and click OK:
 - Division Code
 - Customer Class Code
 - Product Category/ID

Field	Explanation
Quantum Active	This value determines whether the system uses Quantum Sales and Use Tax for tax calculations.
Y	Use Quantum system to calculate taxes.
N	Do not use Quantum system to calculate taxes. Instead, use JDE tax calculations.

Field	Explanation
U.S. Country Code	The code that indicates the United States in the Quantum Sales and Use Tax system. This code must match the value in the Country field on the Mailing tab on the Address Book Revision form. For U.S. domestic customers, this field is typically blank.
Canada Country Code	The code that indicates Canada in the Vertex Sales and Use Tax System. This value must be CA, and must match the value in the Country field on the Mailing tab on the Address Book Revisions form.
Division Code	The Address Book Category Code that the Quantum Tax Interface uses for Division/Store Code for Sales Tax. The Address Book Category Code is passed to Quantum and matched to the Division/Store Code in the Quantum Tax Decision Maker module.
Customer Class Code	The Address Book Category Code that the Quantum Tax Interface uses for Customer Class Code for Sales Tax. The Customer Class Code is passed to Quantum and matched to the Customer Class Code in the Quantum Tax Decision Maker module.
Product Category/ID	The Item Branch/Plant Category Code that the Quantum Tax Interface uses for Product Category/ID for Sales Tax. The Item Branch/Plant Category Code is passed to Quantum and matched to the Product Category/ID field in the Quantum Tax Decision Maker module.
Division Code	The Address Book Category Code that the Quantum Tax Interface uses for Division/Store Code for Use Tax. The Address Book Category Code is passed to Quantum and matched to the Division/Store Code in the Quantum Tax Decision Maker module.
Customer Class Code	The Address Book Category Code that the Quantum Tax Interface uses for Customer Class Code for Use Tax. The Customer Class Code is passed to Quantum and matched to the Customer Class Code in the Quantum Tax Decision Maker module.
Product Category/ID	The Item Branch/Plant Category Code that the Quantum Tax Interface uses for Product Category/ID for Use Tax. The Item Branch/Plant Category Code is passed to Quantum and matched to the Product Category/ID field in the Quantum Tax Decision Maker module.

Testing the Quantum Connection

After you activate Quantum and set the country codes, J.D. Edwards recommends that you conduct a test to determine whether you have successfully connected to the Quantum system.

Before You Begin

- ☐ You must exit and restart OneWorld in order for the constants settings to take effect.

► To test the Quantum connection

1. Enter P73GEO in the fast path.

Geo Code	County	City	Begin Zip Code	End Zip Code

2. On Retrieve GeoCode, complete the following fields as follows:
 - Type CO in the State field
 - Type Denver in the City field
3. Click Find.
 - If you are properly connected to the Quantum system, 060310140 appears in the GeoCode column.
 - If nothing appears in the GeoCode column, a setup or configuration error might have occurred. Check the following:
 - The Quantum Active field must be set to Y, and the Canada Country Code set to CA, on Work With Quantum Constants Revision.
 - The constants values are initialized by exiting and restarting OneWorld.
 - The Data Source, Server, User ID, and Password must be set up properly in the Database Connections table. See *Setting Up Database Connections* in the *OneWorld Installation Guide*.

- All of the required business functions must be mapped to the server where the Quantum software is located. See OCM Mapping in the *OneWorld Installation Guide*.

Activating Quantum Logging

You might want to review the values you send to the Quantum interface, and then review the values generated by Quantum after processing. The Quantum Logging feature provides you with the ability to review these Before and After values.

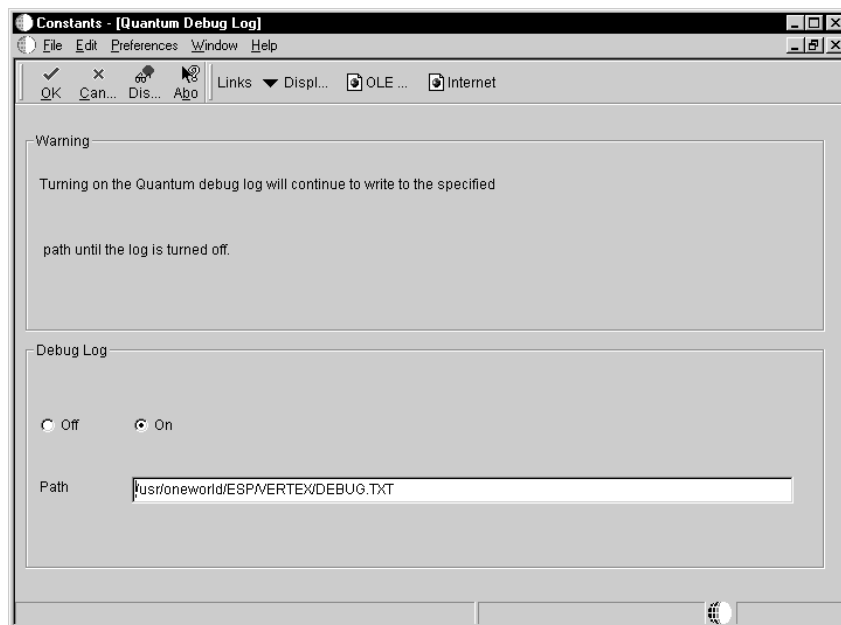
The Quantum Logging feature creates a two-page text file with the Before values you send on the first page, and the After values Quantum generates on the second page.

Caution: Use this feature with caution, because two pages of data are printed for every transaction going through the Tax Calculator for all users. Keeping this feature turned on after initial testing and setup negatively impacts system performance.

► To activate Quantum logging

From the Vertex Quantum Sales and Use Tax menu (G731), choose Constants.

1. On Work With Quantum Constants Revision, choose Quantum Log from the Form menu.



2. On Quantum Debug Log, complete the following fields and click OK:

- Debug Log
- Path

Field	Explanation
Debug Log	An option that determines whether to enable the Quantum debug log. If you choose On, the Vertex Link Parm Area will be printed before and after calling the Vertex Tax Calculator Program. Use this feature with caution, because two pages of data are printed for every transaction going through the Tax Calculator for all users.
Path	The path and file name where the Quantum debug log will reside, such as C:\Debug\QuantumDebug.txt.

See Also

- *Quantum for Sales and Use Tax - Reference Manual* for more information about Quantum Logging

Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions for Quantum

You must create AAIs for each unique combination of company, transaction, document type, and G/L class (G/L offset account) that you want to use. Each AAI is associated with a specific G/L account that consists of a business unit, an object, and optionally, a subsidiary.

If you are required to collect taxes on customer invoices, you must distribute the tax amounts to the correct G/L accounts. When you set up AAIs for a specific type of tax, such as VAT or use tax, you designate the accounts to debit and credit for an invoice tax amount. The AAIs, PT_ _ _ (for payables) and RT_ _ _ (for receivables), are used only for taxes. The system is hard coded to look at the tax AAIs for the company. The system uses the state code prefix of the GeoCode as a subsidiary to search the Account Master (F0901) for the appropriate G/L account. If none is found, the system uses the business unit and object account in the company.

When you set up AAIs to use Quantum, you can set up G/L accounts by state. You must add the state code value as the subsidiary of the base account. During the post process, the system verifies the state code against the GeoCodes to search for the proper account.

Hierarchy for Quantum AAI Values

OneWorld identifies the proper G/L account according the following hierarchy:

1. The system retrieves the Business Unit and Object that the PT____ or RT____. AAI indicates based on the company on the invoice or voucher.
2. The system retrieves the value in the State portion of the GeoCode.
3. The system attaches the State value to the Business Unit and Object as the Subsidiary.
4. The system searches the Account Master for that Business Unit, Object, and Subsidiary combination. If found, the system uses this account combination as the G/L account.
5. If still not found, the system searches the Account Master using just the Business Unit and Object. If found, the system uses this account combination as the G/L account.
6. If still not found, it searches the Account Master using the Business Unit and Object for Company 00000 for that particular PT____ or RT____ AAI. If found, the system uses this account combination as the G/L account.

See Also

- *Understanding AAI for General Accounting* in the *General Accounting Guide*

Setting Up User Defined Codes for Quantum

The Quantum interface uses a user defined code (UDC) table (73/ST) that contains all of the address book Search Types that have GeoCodes assigned to them or that can have their GeoCodes revised. GeoCodes can be assigned only if the Search Type on the address book record is found in the GeoCode Assignment Search Type UDC table.

Typically, people who use Quantum set up the following Search Types:

- C - Customer
- V - Supplier
- E - Employee
- F - Facilities

Assigning Non-Stock Product Categories to Order Types

Quantum processes the taxing of both stock and non-stock items. Stock items are typically products that need to have records in the J.D. Edwards Inventory Master tables (F4101 and F4102). Non-stock items are not required to have records in these master tables, but still can exist on an order and have taxes

assigned to them. For both stock and non-stock items, Quantum looks for a value for the Product Category/ID and Transaction Type to be used in the TDM.

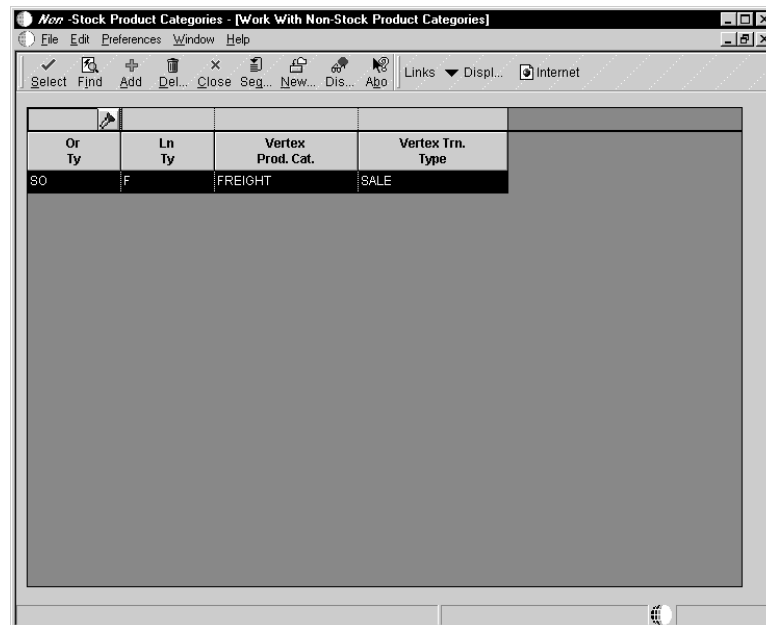
You can specify a Quantum product category or a Quantum transaction type for each order type and line type combination. The Quantum product category is used for product exceptions in TDM. The Quantum transaction type indicates to Quantum the type of transaction that is being processed (for example, sales, purchase, rental, or service) so Quantum can apply the appropriate tax type.

For stock items, the Product Category/ID is typically derived from the Category Code on the Item Branch/Plant record. The Transaction Type is usually derived from the System Code of the order. For Accounts Payable and Procurement, the Transaction Type is PURCH, and for Accounts Receivable and Sales Order Management, the Transaction Type is SALE.

For non-stock order lines (such as freight or lease charges), use the Non-Stock Product Categories program (P7307) to specify the Product Category/ID and Transaction Type.

► To assign non-stock product categories to order types

From Vertex Quantum Sales and Use Tax menu (G731), choose Non-Stock Product Categories.



1. On Work with Non-Stock Product Categories, click Add.

2. On Non-Stock Product Categories Revision, complete the following fields and click OK:
 - Order Type
 - Line Type
 - Vertex Product Category
 - Vertex Transaction Type

Hierarchy for Product Category/ID and Transaction Type Values

OneWorld derives the specific values to be passed to the Quantum Product Category/ID and Transaction Type in TDM according to the following hierarchy:

1. The system scans the value in the Item Balance Category field of the Quantum Constants.
 - If the field is blank, the system goes to step 2.
 - If the field is not blank, the system goes to step 3.
2. If the value in the Item Balance Category field of the Quantum Constants is blank:
 - The system goes to the Quantum Non-Stock Product Categories table (F7307) and uses the Document Type and Line Type of the order.
 - If a record exists in the F7307 table for that Document Type and Line Type combination, the system uses the Product Category/ID and Transaction Type corresponding to that record.

- If no record exists in the F7307 table for that Document Type and Line Type combination, the system uses a blank for the Product Category/ID, and the Transaction Type is determined by the System Code of the order.
3. If the value in the Item Balance Category field of the Quantum Constants is *not* blank, the system goes to the corresponding Category Code in the Item Branch/Plant record for that item on the order. Then:
- If an Item Branch/Plant record does not exist, or if the respective Category Code on the Item Branch/Plant record is blank, the system goes to step 2 to determine *both* the Product Category/ID and the Transaction Type.
 - If the Item Branch/Plant record does exist, and if the respective Category Code on the Item Branch/Plant record is not blank:
 - The system uses the Category Code value for the Product Category/ID.
 - The system uses step 2 to determine the Transaction Type.

Defining Tax Information for Items

To apply tax to the sales or purchase of an item, you perform two tasks to specify that the item is taxable:

- Activate the tax fields for the item on Item Branch/Plant Information to yes.
- Assign the item to a tax category.

In Quantum, the tax category corresponds to product categories that you define in Tax Decision Maker (TDM) for any special tax exceptions or overrides. For example, when you sell a stock item, the J.D. Edwards Sales Order Management system passes the tax category code to the Quantum system.

Before Quantum calculates the tax, it compares the tax category code to TDM product categories. If it finds a match (for example, the TDM setting for the category) taxable, exempt, or otherwise, it dictates how Quantum specifies a tax. If it does not find a match, Quantum taxes the item at the standard rate for that jurisdiction.

Taxes are calculated for items only if the customer is also taxable. If the value in the taxable field is No, the system writes the transaction to the Quantum Tax Register as exempt.

To define tax information for items

From the Inventory Master/Transactions menu (G4111), choose Item Branch/Plant.

1. On Work With Item Branch, locate the item whose tax information you want to define.
2. Complete the following fields:
 - Sales Taxable
 - Purchasing Taxable
3. Access Item Branch Class Codes.
4. On Item Branch Class Codes, complete fields as follows:
 - For sales tax, complete the field that corresponds to the value that you specified in the Item Balance Category field under Sales Tax Category Code on the Quantum Tax System Constants form.
 - For use tax, complete the field that corresponds to the value you specified in the Item Balance Category field under Use Tax Category Code on the Quantum Tax System Constants form.

Assigning GeoCodes to Address Book Records

After you activate the Vertex Quantum for Sales and Use Tax system, you must assign GeoCodes to existing address book records. That is, you must set up GeoCodes for every customer, supplier, Ship To, Ship From, warehouse, or branch/plant in the address book. The Tax Decision Maker Engine uses GeoCodes to calculate sales and use taxes for each customer and specific location.

A GeoCode is a nine-digit code that represents a taxing jurisdiction. All GeoCodes are defined and maintained by Vertex. Each GeoCode has the following format:

XXYYYYZZZZ

where

XX = State

YYY = County

ZZZZ = City

You can assign GeoCodes to address book records manually or by using a batch program. You should start with the batch program to complete as many address book records as possible. Then, after reviewing the resulting report, you can use the manual process to change GeoCodes, if necessary. You can also use the manual process to assign a GeoCode to a new address book record.

Complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Assigning GeoCodes globally to address book records
- ☐ Assigning GeoCodes manually to address book records
- ☐ Calculating taxes for related addresses

If you use Quantum for Sales and Use Tax, the Tax Rate/Area field in the J.D. Edwards master and transaction tables are used to store the assigned GeoCode. However, a client can choose to use the Quantum tax system as well as the J.D. Edwards tax system.

To distinguish GeoCodes from J.D. Edwards tax area codes, each GeoCode is prefixed with V, M, or O within J.D. Edwards systems:

V (Vertex GeoCode)	A V prefix to the nine-digit GeoCode identifies the code as a literal Vertex GeoCode.
M (Multi-County Situation)	The system assigns M as the prefix to the GeoCode when you run the batch assignment program and it finds postal codes that cross two or more county boundaries. When this occurs, you must review the records and manually assign the appropriate GeoCode based on the county.
O (Outside City Limits)	If an address that is specified in the address book record is not physically located within the city limits and therefore is not subject to city tax, you must manually change the first character of the GeoCode from V to O. This indicates to Quantum not to calculate the city tax for that GeoCode.

Note: Vertex has not defined GeoCodes for non-U.S. or non-Canadian jurisdictions and does not maintain tax rates for these jurisdictions. However, you can create GeoCodes, beginning each GeoCode with 77 (in the state field), which lets you create records in TDM for each non-U.S. or non-Canadian jurisdiction.

Additionally, you can set up the Quantum Override table to maintain tax rates for each non-U.S. or non-Canadian taxing authority.

Before You Begin

- ☐ Verify that you have set up the address book search types in the user defined code table (73/ST) for GeoCode assignments. When you update GeoCodes, the system determines which address book records to update with GeoCodes based on the search type.

Assigning GeoCodes Globally to Address Book Records

You can use the following batch processes to update GeoCode information in multiple address book records:

- Update Address Book GeoCodes (R730101)
- Effective Address Update (R01840)

Update Address Book GeoCodes

From the Vertex GeoCode Tax Processing menu (G731), choose Update Address Book GeoCodes.

Use the Update Address Book GeoCodes (R730101) program to add GeoCodes to existing address book records. The system stores the GeoCode in the Tax Rate/Area field of either the Customer Master Information (F03012) table or the Supplier Master Information (F0401) table.

When you perform a batch address book record update, the system populates the Tax Rate/Area field with the appropriate GeoCode. The system does not enter a value in the field if:

- An address book record crosses multiple tax jurisdictions.
- Not enough information is available on the address to find a GeoCode.
- The country code on the address does not match the codes set up in the Constants for the United States and Canada.
- The state code on the address is incorrect.

The system produces reports that specify the number of GeoCodes that were not updated. The GeoCodes are categorized by the type of issue that prevented them from being updated. Additionally, the system sends messages to the Work Center that identify unmatched records. Messages in the Work Center are sent to the person that is processing the batch report, based on the User ID. For example, when an address book record can have more than one GeoCode assigned to it, the system does not match the address book record with a GeoCode. Use these reports and messages to identify any address book records that were not updated with GeoCodes. You will need to manually update those records.

Effective Address Update

From the A/B Advanced Technical Operations menu (G0131), choose Effective Address Update.

When you run the Effective Address Update, the system verifies effective dates of addresses and updates corresponding supplier and customer records accordingly. The system stores the GeoCode in the Tax Rate/Area field of either

the Customer Master by Line of Business (F03012) or the Supplier Master (F0401) table.

When you perform a batch update based on effective dates, the system populates the Tax Rate/Area field with the appropriate GeoCode. The Effective Address Update does not update the Supplier Master and Customer Master records if the:

- Tax Explanation Code is missing the correct code of S, U, or E
- Tax Rate/Area field contains a value that is not a GeoCode or is blank
- Geocode cannot be assigned because of incomplete information or an address book record crossing multiple tax jurisdictions

The system produces reports that show both unmatched records and records that you might want to match. Additionally, the system sends messages to the Work Center that identify unmatched records. Messages in the Work Center are sent to the person that is processing the batch report, based on the User ID. For example, when an address book record can have more than one GeoCode assigned to it, the system does not match the address book record with a GeoCode. Use these reports to identify any address book records that were not updated with GeoCodes. You will need to manually update those records.

Assigning GeoCodes Manually to Address Book Records

The system assigns a GeoCode to the Business Unit Master, Supplier Master, and Customer Master records based on the following fields in the mailing address for the corresponding address book record:

- City
- State
- Postal Code
- County

You might have to manually change or assign GeoCodes for the following reasons:

- Records were not updated when you ran the Update Address Book GeoCodes and Effective Address Update processes due to data errors.
- A multi-county situation exists for an address book record.
- The address falls outside city limits.
- You have added a new address book record for a customer or supplier.
- An existing Address Book Record was changed.

When an address book record can have more than one GeoCode assigned to it, you use the Search and Select form to choose a GeoCode. The Quantum

GeoCode Select form lists all possible GeoCodes that correspond to county names and postal code ranges.

When you change an address, the system updates any existing GeoCodes. If the address change results in a different GeoCode, the system also updates the Tax Rate/Area field on the Customer Master Information (F03012) and Supplier Master Information (F0401) tables. If any of the following conditions exist, the Tax Rate/Area field is not updated:

- The proper Tax Explanation code is not assigned (S, U, or E).
- Errors occurred.
- The mailing address resides in multiple tax jurisdictions.
- The current value in the Tax Rate/Area field is blank or is an existing GeoCode.

Depending on the type of address book record, perform one of the following tasks to assign GeoCodes to business units, suppliers, and customers:

- Manually assigning GeoCodes to business units
- Manually assigning GeoCodes to suppliers
- Manually assigning GeoCodes to customers

Note: When you access the Search and Select Window from the visual assist for the Tax Rate/Area field on any form, the system verifies whether Quantum is active in the Quantum Constants. If so, the system first displays GeoCodes from which you can review and select appropriately. To review J.D. Edwards tax rates/areas, click Cancel on the GeoCode inquiry form. The system then displays J.D. Edwards tax rates.



To manually assign GeoCodes to business units

From the Organization and Account Setup menu (G09411), choose Revise Single Business Unit.

1. On Work with Business Units, locate the business unit and click Select.
2. On Revise Business Unit, click the More Detail tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Revise Single Business Unit' window. The 'Business Unit' is set to '1' (Financial/Distribution Company). The 'More Detail' tab is selected, showing fields for 'Description Line 2', 'Description Line 3', and 'Description Line 4'. Below these are fields for 'Address Number' (set to '1' and 'Financial/Distribution Company'), 'Tax Rate/Area', 'Project Number', and 'Posting Edit' (checkbox). A 'Post Transactions' button is at the bottom right. The status bar at the bottom shows 'Work With Business Units' and 'Revise Business Unit'.

3. Complete the following field and click OK:

- Tax Rate/Area

If you try to access GeoCode information using the Visual Assist in the Tax Rate/Area field, you must ensure that the business unit is assigned to an address book number.

Because there is no tax explanation code, if you are working with CSMS, the business unit tax explanation code is always a sales tax (S).

► To manually assign GeoCodes to suppliers

From the Daily Processing menu (G01), choose Address Book Revisions.

1. On Work with Addresses, locate the address book record whose GeoCode you want to change or add.
2. Choose A/P from the Row menu.

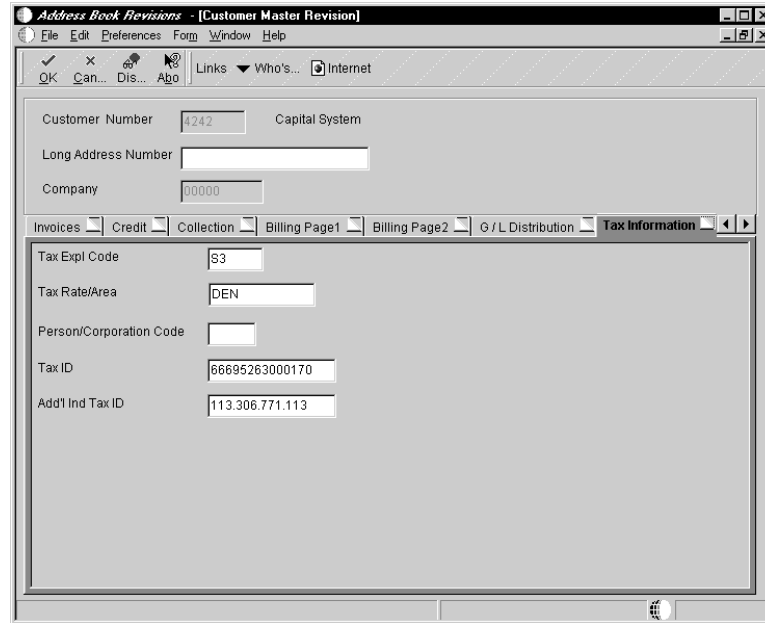
The screenshot shows a software window titled "Address Book Revisions - [Supplier Master Revision]". It has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Form", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dismiss", and "Apply", along with buttons for "Links", "Bank...", and "Internet". The main form area contains several input fields and tabs. The "Tax Information" tab is currently selected. The fields are: "Supplier Number" (4343), "Long Number" (empty), "Tax Expl Code 2" (empty), "Tax Rate / Area" (empty), "Person/Corporation" (2), "Corporate entity" (checked), "Tax ID" (61148391000180), "Add'l Ind Tax ID" (103.705.130.113), "Tax Authority" (empty), and "Percent" (empty). Other tabs visible are "Vouchers", "Purchasing 1", "Purchasing 2", "G/L Distribution", and "EDI Information".

3. On Supplier Master Revision, click the Tax Information tab and complete the following fields:
 - Tax Expl (Explanation) Code 2
 - Tax Rate/Area

► To manually assign GeoCodes to a customer

From the Daily Processing menu (G01), choose Address Book Revisions.

1. On Work with Addresses, locate the address book record whose GeoCode you want to change or add.
2. Choose A/R from the Row menu.



Address Book Revisions - [Customer Master Revision]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Cancel Dismiss Abort

Customer Number 4242 Capital System

Long Address Number

Company 90000

Invoices Credit Collection Billing Page1 Billing Page2 G / L Distribution **Tax Information**

Tax Expl Code S3

Tax Rate/Area DEN

Person/Corporation Code

Tax ID 66695263000170

Add'l Ind Tax ID 113.306.771.113

3. On Customer Master Revision, click the Tax Information tab and complete the following fields:
 - Tax Expl (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Calculating Taxes for Related Addresses

In order for Quantum to calculate taxes for various jurisdictions, laws and regulations, the GeoCodes might be based on one of the following three parameters:

Ship To

The Ship To location is generally the customer's location in a sales or purchase transaction. For example, your cost center, office, or plant location for the customer might be the Ship To. The system calculates Consumer's Use Tax if you are the customer for the purchase.

Ship From

The Ship From location is generally the seller's plant or warehouse that is delivering the product or service. It is crucial to a sales tax calculation, because different rules might apply for intrastate (Ship To and Ship From are in the same state) or interstate (Ship To and Ship From are in different states) transactions.

Order Acceptance

The Order Acceptance location is the place where the seller accepts, acknowledges, or receives the actual order. This is crucial for determining the correct tax on an interstate or intrastate transaction.

The GeoCode Hierarchy

When you enter an address book number to represent a customer (Sold To, Ship To), supplier or branch/plant (Ship From), the system uses different rules for each system.

Accounts Payable - Use or Exempt Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Use Tax:

Ship To

- GeoCode assigned to the Business Unit on the voucher. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Business Unit on the voucher. If no Address Number is assigned to the Business Unit, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Company of the Business Unit on the voucher.
- If no Address number is assigned to the Company, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

Ship From

- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record of the Supplier entered on the voucher.
- If no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

Order Acceptance

Same as Ship To hierarchy.

Accounts Payable - Sales Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for verifying Sales Tax:

Ship To

- GeoCode assigned to the Business Unit on the voucher. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Business Unit on the voucher. If no Address Number is assigned to the Business Unit, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Company of the Business Unit on the voucher.
- If no Address number is assigned to the Company, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

Ship From

- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record of the Supplier entered on the voucher.
- If no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

Order Acceptance

Same as Ship From hierarchy.

Accounts Receivable - Sales Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Sales Tax:

Ship To

- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record of the Address Number on the invoice for the Company entered on the invoice. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record for that Company, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Company 00000 of the Address Number on the invoice.
- If no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record for Company 00000, the system returns an error.

Ship From

- GeoCode assigned to the Business Unit on the Invoice. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Company entered on the invoice for the Address Number of the Business Unit on the invoice. If no GeoCode is assigned to this Customer Master record, the hierarchy goes to the next step (step 3). if no Address Number is assigned to the Business Unit, the hierarchy goes to step 4:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for Company 00000 for the Address Number of the Business Unit on the invoice. If no GeoCode is assigned to this Customer Master record, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Company of the Business Unit on the invoice for the Address Number assigned to the Company of the Business Unit on the invoice.
- If no Address Number is assigned to the Company, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, the system returns an error.

Order Acceptance

Same as Ship From hierarchy.

Sales Order Management - Sales Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Sales Tax:

Ship To

- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Address Number on the Order Detail Line.
- If no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, the system returns an error.

Ship From

- GeoCode assigned to the Branch/Plant on the Order Detail Line. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Address Number of the Branch/Plant on the Order Detail Line. If no Address Number is assigned to Branch/Plant, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Address Number of the Company of the Branch/Plant on the Order Detail Line.
- If no Address Number is assigned to the Company, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, the system returns an error.

Order Acceptance

- GeoCode assigned to the Branch/Plant on the Order Header. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Address Number of the Branch/Plant on the Order Header. If no Address Number is assigned to Branch/Plant, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Address Number of the Company of the Branch/Plant on the Order Header.
- If no Address Number is assigned to the Company, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, the system returns an error.

Procurement - Use Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Use Tax:

Ship To

- GeoCode assigned to the Branch/Plant on the Order Detail Line. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Branch/Plant on the Order Detail Line. If no Address Number is assigned to Branch/Plant, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Company of the Branch/Plant on the Order Detail Line.
- If no Address Number is assigned to the Company, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

Ship From

- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number on the Order Header.
- If no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

Order Acceptance

- GeoCode assigned to the Branch/Plant on the Order Header. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Branch/Plant on the Order Header. If no Address Number is assigned to Branch/Plant, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Company of the Branch/Plant on the Order Header.
- If no Address Number is assigned to the Company, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

CSMS - Service Contract Sales Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Service Contract Sales Tax:

Ship To

- GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record of the Site Address Number on the Contract Detail Line.
- If no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, the system returns an error.

Ship From

- GeoCode assigned to the Business Unit on the Contract Detail Line. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Business Unit on the Contract Detail Line.
- If no Address Number is assigned to Business Unit, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

Order Acceptance

- GeoCode assigned to the Business Unit on the Contract Header. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Responsible Business Unit, then:
- GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Business Unit on the Contract Header.
- If no Address Number is assigned to Business Unit, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error.

CSMS - Service Order Sales Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Service Order Sales Tax:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Ship To | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record of the Site Address Number on the Service Order.• If no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, the system returns an error. |
| Ship From | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Responsible Business Unit on the Service Order. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Responsible Business Unit, then:• GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Responsible Business Unit on the Service Order.• If no Address Number is assigned to Responsible Business Unit, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error. |
| Order Acceptance | Same as Ship From hierarchy. |

CSMS - Service Order Use Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Service Order Use Tax:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Ship To | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Responsible Business Unit on the Service Order. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Responsible Business Unit, then:• GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Responsible Business Unit on the Service Order.• If no Address Number is assigned to Responsible Business Unit, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error. |
| Ship From | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record of the Site Address Number on the Service Order.• If no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error. |
| Order Acceptance | Same as Ship To hierarchy. |

CSMS - Call Sales Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Call Sales Tax:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Ship To | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record of the Site Address Number on the Call.• If no GeoCode is assigned to the Customer Master record, the system returns an error. |
| Ship From | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Responsible Business Unit on the Call. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Responsible Business Unit, then:• GeoCode assigned to the Supplier Master record for the Address Number of the Responsible Business Unit on the Call.• If no Address Number is assigned to Responsible Business Unit, or if no GeoCode is assigned to the Supplier Master record, the system returns an error. |
| Order Acceptance | Same as Ship From hierarchy. |

Contract/Service Billing - Sales Tax

OneWorld uses the following hierarchy for accruing Sales Tax:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Ship To | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record of the Address Number on the Workfile Transaction. |
| Ship From | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• GeoCode assigned to the Business Unit of the Workfile Transaction. If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit, then:• GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Address Number of the Business Unit on the Workfile Transaction. If no GeoCode is assigned to this Customer Master record or no Address Number is assigned to the Business Unit then:• GeoCode assigned to the Customer Master record for the Address Number assigned to the Company of the Business Unit on the invoice.• If no GeoCode is assigned to the Business Unit or Customer Master, the system returns an error. |
| Order Acceptance | Same as Ship From hierarchy. |

Working with Quantum Taxes

After you assign GeoCodes to address book records, you might need to override a GeoCode on an invoice, voucher, sales order, purchase order, service order, contract, or call.

Complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on an invoice
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on a voucher
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on a sales order
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on a purchase order
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on a service contract
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on a service order
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on a call
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on contract billing
- ☐ Overriding GeoCodes on service billing

When you enter a sales or purchase order, invoice, service order quote, voucher, or call, you can inquire on the order and review product information as well as calculated taxes. The system retrieves the tax information from the Tax Rate/Area field in the J.D. Edwards master and transaction tables, which are used to store the assigned GeoCode or J.D. Edwards tax code.

The Tax Decision Maker interfaces with the following programs in the J.D. Edwards systems:

Accounts Payable

- Supplier Master
- Multi-Company Voucher Entry (P041016)
- Multi-Voucher Entry (P041017)
- Standard Voucher Entry (P0411)
- Speed Voucher Entry (P0411SV)

Procurement	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Purchase Order Entry (P4310)• Purchase Order Workbench (P43101)• Voucher Match (P4314)• Order Revision History (43205)• Release Open Quotes (P43360)
Accounts Receivable	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Customer Master (P03013)• Standard Invoice Entry (P03B11)• Speed Invoice Entry (P03B11SI)• Speed Status Change (P03B114)
Sales Order Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sales Order Entry (P4210)• Online Invoice Inquiry (P42230)
Customer Service Management System (CSMS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Contract Revisions (P1721)• Service Order Entry (P17714)• Service Order Quote (R17711)• Online Service Order Quote (P17717)• Call Entry (P17501)
Contract Billing	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Contract Billing Line Details (P5202)• Work Order Entry (P48201)• Job Cost Master Revisions (P510006)• Revise Single Business Unit (P0006)
Service Billing	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Tax Derivation Table (P48127)• Work Order Entry (P48201)• Job Cost Master Revisions (P510006)• Revise Single Business Unit (P0006)

When a J.D. Edwards program calls the Tax Decision Maker, the Tax Decision Maker Engine determines the following information:

- Whether the transaction is interstate or intrastate
- The transaction's taxing jurisdiction
- The appropriate tax rate
- The maximum tax base
- Excess amounts, if applicable

The Tax Decision Maker then:

- Retrieves the appropriate tax rate
- Calculates tax amounts
- Returns the amount to the calling program

Note: In CSMS, the system does not calculate taxes until you run Service Contract Workfile Generation (R1732) or Service Order Workfile Generation (R1775) in final mode. However, the system does calculate taxes when you create a service order quote or enter a call.

See Also

- *Reviewing and Approving Vouchers* in the *Accounts Payable Guide* for more information about reviewing voucher information
- *Working with Invoices* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide* for more information about invoice information
- *Managing Service Contracts*, *Working with Service Orders*, and *Working With Calls* in the *Customer Service Management System Guide*
- *Reviewing Sales Order Information* in the *Sales Order Management Guide* for more information about reviewing sales orders
- *Working with Purchase Order Information* in the *Procurement Guide* for more information about reviewing purchase orders

Overriding GeoCodes on an Invoice

After you assign GeoCodes to your customers, the system uses the GeoCode to supply default tax information when you enter an invoice. If you want to override the tax information supplied by the system, you can do so when you enter the invoice.

The system makes accounting entries for sales taxes when you post the invoice based on the AAI item RT _ _ _ _ , which points to the sales tax account.

Note: You can also override tax information during Speed Invoice Entry and Multi-Invoice Entry.



To override a GeoCode on an invoice

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G03B11), choose Standard Invoice Entry.

1. On Work with Customer Ledger Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Standard Invoice Entry, follow the steps to enter an invoice with taxes.

See *Entering an Invoice with Taxes (P03105)* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide*.

3. Complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Amount (optional)

- Tax Area
- Tax Expl (Explanation) Code (optional)

Field	Explanation
Tax Expl Code 1	<p>A user defined code (00/EX) that controls how a tax is assessed and distributed to the general ledger revenue and expense accounts.</p> <p>A single invoice can have both taxable and non-taxable items. The entire invoice, however, must have one tax explanation code.</p> <p>The Tax Explanation Code is used in conjunction with the Tax Rate Area and Tax Rules by Company to determine how the tax is calculated. Each transaction pay item can be defined with a different tax explanation code, including E, to exempt the pay item from calculating taxes.</p>
Amount – Taxable	The amount on which taxes are assessed.

Overriding GeoCodes on a Voucher

After you assign GeoCodes to your suppliers, the system uses the GeoCode to supply default tax information when you enter a voucher. If you want to override the tax information supplied by the system, you can do so when you enter the voucher.

The system makes accounting entries for use taxes when you post the voucher. AAI item PT_ _ _ _ (no G/L offset) points to the use tax account.

Note: You can also override tax information during Multi-Company Voucher entry, Multi-Voucher Entry, and Speed Voucher Entry.

To override a GeoCode on a voucher

From Supplier and Voucher Entry (G0411), choose Standard Voucher Entry.

1. On Supplier Ledger Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Enter Voucher - Payment Information, follow the steps to enter basic information for a standard voucher.

See *Entering Standard Vouchers* in the *Accounts Payable Guide*.

3. Complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Ex (Explanation) Code (optional)

- Tax Rate/Area
- Tax Amount (optional)
- Taxable Amount

Field	Explanation
Tax Explanation 2	<p>A user defined code (00/EX) that controls how a tax is assessed and distributed to the general ledger revenue and expense accounts. You assign this code to a customer or supplier to set up a default code for their transactions.</p> <p>Do not confuse this with the taxable, non-taxable code. A single invoice can have both taxable and non-taxable items. The entire invoice, however, must have one tax explanation code.</p>
Amount – Taxable	The amount on which taxes are assessed.

Overriding GeoCodes on a Sales Order

When you enter a sales order, you can inquire on the order and review product information as well as calculated taxes. The system retrieves the tax information for the order from the Tax Rate/Area field in the J.D. Edwards master and transaction tables that are used to store the assigned GeoCode or J.D. Edwards tax code.

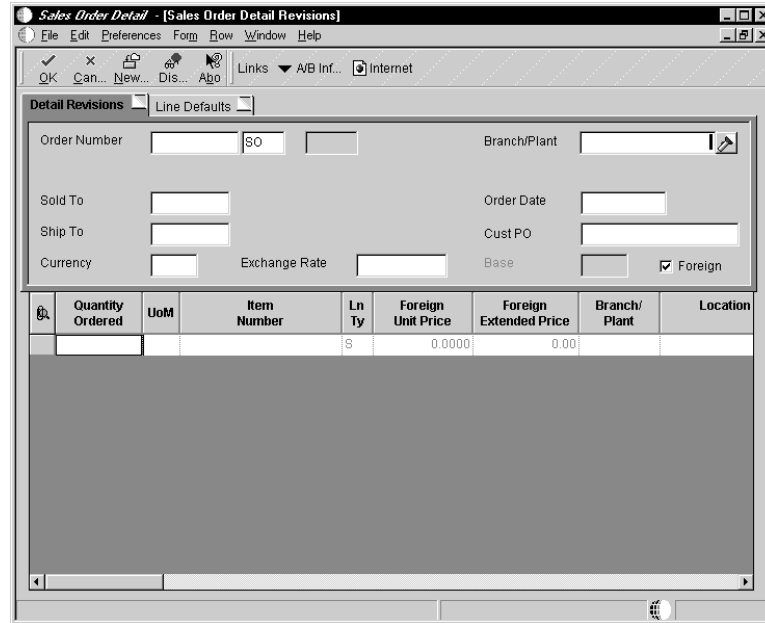
You can enter tax information that is specific to a detail line. This information determines whether taxes apply to the items or services on the detail line and how the system calculates the taxes.

To override GeoCodes on a sales order

From the Sales Order Processing menu (G4211), choose Sales Orders Detail.

1. On Customer Service Inquiry, click Add.
2. On Sales Order Detail Detail Revisions, complete the steps to enter an order.

To enter sales orders, see *Working with Detail Information* in the *Sales Order Management Guide*.



Sales Order Detail - [Sales Order Detail Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Form Row Window Help

OK Can... New... Dis... Abo Links ▾ A/B Inf... Internet

Detail Revisions **Line Defaults**

Order Number Branch/Plant

Sold To Order Date

Ship To Cust PO

Currency Exchange Rate Base ☒ Foreign

Quantity Ordered	UoM	Item Number	Ln Ty	Foreign Unit Price	Foreign Extended Price	Branch/Plant	Location
			S	0.0000	0.00		

- On Sales Order Detail Revisions, chose the order detail line and choose SOE – Additional from the Row menu.



Sales Order Detail - [SOE - Additional Information]

File Edit Preferences Window Help

OK Can... Dis... Abo Links ▾ Displ... Internet

Order Number Line Number

Additional Info1 **Additional Info2**

Addresses

Sold To Capital System

Ship To

Carrier

Dates

Requested

Scheduled Pick

Promised Delivery

Cancel

Ship

Freight Information

Apply Freight ☒

Shipping Commodity Blank-Shipping Com

Shipping Conditions Blank-Shipping Con

Rate Code Blank-Rate Code 4

Route Code Blank-Route Code

Stop Code Blank-Stop Code 4

Zone Number Blank-Shipping Zon

Mode of Trn blank

Extended Volume

Extended Weight

Commission and Tax

Apply Commission ☒

Salesperson 1

Rate 1

Salesperson 2

Rate 2

Sales Taxable ☒

Tax Expl Code

Tax Rate/Area

- Click the Additional Info 2 tab and complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Expl Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Overriding GeoCodes on a Purchase Order

When you enter a purchase order, you can inquire on the order and review product information as well as calculated taxes. The system retrieves the tax information for the order from the Tax Rate/Area field in the J.D. Edwards master and transaction tables that are used to store the assigned GeoCode or J.D. Edwards tax code.

You can enter tax information that is specific to a detail line. This information determines whether taxes apply to the items or services on the detail line and how the system calculates the taxes.

Note: You can review and change tax information on the Purchase Order Workbench and Voucher Match.

► To override GeoCodes on a purchase order

From the Purchase Order Processing (G43A11), choose Enter Purchase Orders.

1. On Work With Order Headers, click Add.
2. On Order Headers, complete the steps to enter an order and click OK.

See *Entering Purchase Order Detail Information* in the *Procurement Guide*.

Item Number	Quantity Ordered	Tr. UoM	Unit Cost	Extended Cost	Pu. UoM	Ln Ty	Description
220	100	EA	495.4788	49,547.88	EA	S	Touring Bike, Red
221	10	EA	1.0000	10.00	EA	S	Touring Bike, Two
2200	10	EA	1.0000	10.00	EA	S	Tire Pump
				0.00			

3. On Order Detail, select the Order Detail tab and choose Tax/Terms from the Row menu.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Enter Purchase Orders - [Order Detail - Page 1]". It features a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Preferences", "Window", and "Help". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "OK", "Cancel", "Dis..." (Disable), "Add", "Links", "Displ..." (Display), and "Internet". The main content area is divided into two columns. The left column contains fields for "Taxable" (a checkbox), "Expl Code", "Rate/Area", "Discount Factor" (with a value of "1.0000"), "Item Price Group", "Pricing Cat. Level", and "Print Message". The right column contains fields for "Line Branch" (with a value of "M30"), "Lot/Serial", "Location", "Asset ID", and "Adjustment Schedule".

4. On Order Detail – Page 1, complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Expl (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Overriding GeoCodes on a Service Contract

When you enter a service contract, you are accessing the starting point of the contract programs. When you enter service contracts, you can review and override detail information about the contract such as customer entitlements, service packages, item numbers, and billing information, as necessary.

You can override tax information on a contract when you create a contract using direct entry.

Note: In CSMS, the system does not calculate taxes until you run Service Contract Workfile Generation (R1732) in final mode.

► To override GeoCodes on a service contract

From the Daily Service Contract Processing menu (G1714), choose Service Contract Detail.

1. On Work with Contracts, click Add.

2. On Contract Revisions, complete the steps to enter a service contract,

See *Entering Service Contracts* in the *Customer Service Management System Guide*.

3. Then, complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Explanation Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Overriding GeoCodes on a Service Order

You can override tax information when you enter or modify a service order. You must enter a service order under the following circumstances:

- You need to bill for the parts required to fix a piece of equipment.
- You need to send a technician to the site to repair the problem.
- You use a service provider to resolve the problem and you need to create a voucher for payment.

You can retrieve numerous default values from a parent service order. For example, you can use values from a parent service order to retrieve the following information:

- Service type
- Start date
- Planned completion date

Note: In CSMS, the system calculates taxes when you create a service order quote. The system does not calculate final taxes until you run CSMS Service Order Workfile Generation (R1775) in final mode.

► To override a GeoCode on a service order

From the Daily Service Order Processing menu (G1712), choose Service Order Entry.

1. On Work with Service Orders, click Add.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Order Entry - [Service Work Order Revisions]' window. The 'Accounting' tab is selected. The 'Service Order Number' is 451291, and the 'Service Type' is 'On-site Repair'. The 'Estimated Cost of Service Order' section includes fields for Labor Hours, Labor Amount, Material Amount, Other Amount, and Total Amount. The 'Actual Cost of Service Order' section includes fields for Labor Hours, Labor Amount, Material Amount, and Total Amount. The 'Service Contract' section includes fields for Contract Number/Type (1), Contract Company (00200), Contract Change Number (001), Contract Line Number (.002), and Entitlement Check (1). The 'Transaction Entit' field is also visible.

2. On Service Work Order Revisions, complete the steps to enter a service work order and click the Accounting tab.

To enter a service order, see *Working with Service Order Entry* in the *Customer Service Management System Guide*.

3. Complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Explanation Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Overriding GeoCodes on a Call

When you receive a call from a customer, you enter, store and track a customer's question or problem. Depending on the issue, you might need to override tax information.

You can override this tax information at the time you directly enter the call.

Note: To calculate taxes on a call, you must turn on the Customer Call MBF Processing Options (P1700140).

► To override a GeoCode on a call

From the Daily Call Processing Menu (G1713), choose Call Entry.

1. On Work with Calls, click Add.

2. On Customer Call Entry, complete the steps to enter a call.

See *Entering Calls* in the *Customer Service Management System Guide*.

3. Choose Billing Information from the Form menu.

4. On Billing Information, click the Pricing Info tab.
5. Complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Expl (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Overriding GeoCodes on Contract Billing

When you bill your customers, you might need to override or set up tax information to meet specific tax requirements associated with the work you perform for your customer. The Contract Billing system provides you with a hierarchy for entering tax information, depending on the contract. The system allows you to override information in the Customer Master and apply taxes at a line, work order, or business unit level.

To override tax information, the system uses the following tables, in the order listed, to search for and calculate tax information:

- Contract Billing Line Detail (F5202)
- Work Order Master File (F4801)
- Business Unit Master (F0006)

Depending on how you need to record taxable information for billing purposes, perform one of the following tasks to override GeoCodes for contract billing:

- Overriding a GeoCode using a contract billing line
- Overriding a GeoCode using a work order

- Overriding a GeoCode using a business unit

► **To override a GeoCode using a contract billing line**

From the Daily Processing menu (G5210), choose Contract Billing Line Details.

1. On Contract Billing Line Details, click Add.

2. On Contract Billing Line Detail Revisions, click the General tab and complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tx Ex (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate

► **To override a GeoCode using a work order**

From the Work Order Processing menu (G4811), choose Work Order Entry.

1. On Work With Work Orders, click Add.

Work Order Entry - [Enter Work Orders]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Can... Dis... Abol Links Recor... OLE... Internet

Order Number

Description

General Dates/Assignments Classification

Status Comment Parent Number

Search X-Ref Charge to BU

W.O. Status Cost Code

Type Est. Hours

Priority Est. Amount

Std. Description Tax Expl Code

Flash Message Tax Rate/Area

Subledger Inact

2. On Enter Work Orders, click the General tab, and complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Expl (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

► To override a GeoCode using a job

From the Job Budget Setup menu (G5111), choose Job Cost Master Revisions.

1. On Work with Job Master, click Add.

Job Cost Master Revisions - [Job Master Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Cancel Dismiss Abort

Links Address Previous Next OLE Internet

Job Number 2002

Posting Edit

Level of Detail 2

Type Business Unit JB

Model Job

Project

Company 00050

Job Site Address

Owner Address 500

Contract Type P

State

Threshold % Complete

Subledger Inactive

Description

MTC Enterprises

Project Management Company

Gas StationA

Progress

2. On Job Master Revisions, complete the following fields:
 - Level of Detail
 - Type Business Unit
 - Project
 - Company
 - Job Site Address
 - Contract Type
 - Description
3. Choose Job Dates/Others from the Form menu.

4. On Job Dates & Other Information, complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Expl (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Overriding GeoCodes on Service Billing

When you bill your customers, you might need to override or set up tax information to meet specific tax requirements associated with the service you perform for your customer. The Service Billing system provides you with a hierarchy for entering tax information, depending on the service. The system allows you to override information in the Customer Master and apply taxes using the Tax Derivation Information table (F48127) a work order, or a business unit.

To override tax information, the system uses the following tables, in the order listed, to search for and calculate tax information:

- Tax Derivation Information (F48127)
- Work Order Master File (F4801)
- Business Unit Master (F0006)

Depending on how you need to record taxable information for billing purposes, perform one of the following tasks to override GeoCodes for Service Billing:

- Overriding a GeoCode using the Tax Derivation Information table (F48127)

- Overriding a GeoCode using a work order
- Overriding a GeoCode using a business unit

► **To override a GeoCode using a tax derivation**

From the Table Information menu (G48S41), choose Tax Derivation Table.

1. On Work with Tax Derivation Table, click Add.

2. On Tax Derivation Revisions, complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Rate/Area
 - Tax Expl (Explanation) Code

► **To override a GeoCode using a work order**

From the Work Order Processing menu (G4811), choose Work Order Entry.

1. On Work With Work Orders, click Add.

2. On Enter Work Orders, click the General tab, and complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Tax Expl (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

► To override a GeoCode using a job

From the Job Budget Setup menu (G5111), choose Job Cost Master Revisions.

1. On Work with Job Master, click Add.

Job Cost Master Revisions - [Job Master Revisions]

File Edit Preferences Form Window Help

OK Cancel Dismiss Abort Links Address Previous Next OLE Internet

Job Number: 2002

Posting Edit: ☐

Level of Detail: 2

Type Business Unit: JB

Model Job: ☐

Project:

Company: 00050

Job Site Address:

Owner Address: 500

Contract Type: P

State:

Threshold % Complete:

Subledger Inactive: ☐

Description: MTC Enterprises

Project Management Company

Gas StationA

Progress

2. On Job Master Revisions, complete the following fields to override tax information:
 - Level of Detail
 - Type Business Unit
 - Project
 - Company
 - Job Site Address
 - Contract Type
 - Description
3. Choose Job Dates/Others from the Form menu.

Job Cost Master Revisions - [Job Dates & Other Information]

File Edit Preferences Window Help

OK Can... Dis... Abo Links Displ... OLE ... Internet

Job Number: 2002 MTC Enterprises

Equipment Rate Code: []

Tax Entity-Property Tax: []

Tax Expl - Tax Rate/ Area: [] []

Job Dates

Planned Start Date: [] Actual Start Date: []

Planned End Date: [] Actual End Date: []

Other Date 5: [] Other Date 6: []

Job Payroll Information

Labor Load Factor: 1 EEO Code (Y/N): N

Flat Burden Factor: 1.0000 Tax Area-Payroll: []

Certified Job (Y/N): N

4. On Job Dates & Other Information, complete the following fields to override tax information:
- Tax Expl (Explanation) Code
 - Tax Rate/Area

Processing Quantum Tax Information

During transaction processing, you can choose to print tax information when you print documents for your customers. When you post accounts payable and accounts receivable information to the general ledger, the system posts Quantum tax information to the Quantum Tax Register and J.D. Edwards tax information to the J.D. Edwards tax table (F00018). You can specify the G/L accounts to which the system posts the taxes.

Complete the following tasks:

- ☐ Printing tax information
- ☐ Posting tax information

Printing Tax Information

You can print calculated taxes when you print a contract, sales order, purchase order, invoice, or voucher in the following J.D. Edwards programs:

Accounts Payable	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Voucher Journal (R04305)
Procurement	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Purchase Orders (R43500)• Print Order Detail (R4401P)
Accounts Receivable	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Invoice Print (R03B505)
Sales Order Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Invoice (R42565)• Open Orders by Item Report (R42632)• Open Orders by Customer Report (R42620)• Held Orders Report (R42640)
CSMS	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Service Order Quote (R17711)• Invoice Print (R48504)
Contract/Service Billing	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Invoice Print (R48504)

Posting Tax Information

In the standard J.D. Edwards tax processing system, the system calculates any taxes that have not been previously calculated and posts financial record information to the J.D. Edwards tax table (F0018).

In the Quantum for Sales and Use Tax system, the system taxes based on the GeoCode and records the pertinent information in the Quantum Tax Register.

OneWorld writes to the Quantum Tax Register at various times, depending on what program application is calculating taxes. Three different OneWorld product suites can create records in the Quantum Tax Register. They are the Financial, Distribution, and CSMS product suite applications.

Financial Processes

When OneWorld financial applications like the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable systems create financial records, the General Ledger Post Report program (R09801) writes A/R and A/P information to the Quantum Tax Register.

Distribution Processes

When financial records are created in a distribution application such as Sales Order Management or Procurement, those applications write the records to the Quantum Tax Register. OneWorld financial programs ignore these records and do not write to the Quantum Tax Register.

For example, when the Sales Update program (R42800) creates A/R records, the General Ledger Post Report program (R09801) ignores these A/R records and does not write to the Quantum Tax Register. When the Voucher Match program (P4314) creates A/P records, it also writes to the Quantum Tax Register. The General Ledger Post Report program (R09801) ignores the Voucher Match records.

CSMS Processes

With CSMS, the Service Billing system writes the tax information to the Quantum Tax Register. Again the A/R and A/P Post program ignores the CSMS tax records.

Contract and Service Billing Processes

If the financial records are created in the Contract or Service Billing systems, the system writes the tax information to the Quantum Tax Register when you create records in the Customer Ledger (F03B11) and Account Ledger (F0911) tables. This occurs at Billing Invoice A/R Journal Generation (R48199). Unlike tax

processing in the J.D. Edwards system, the system does not write the tax information when you post the resulting batches.

See Also

- *Voucher Processing* in the *Procurement Guide*
- *Updating Sales Information* in the *Sales Order Management Guide*
- *Billing Contracts* in the *Customer Service Management Guide*
- *Posting Journal Entries* in the *General Accounting Guide*
- *Posting Vouchers* in the *Accounts Payable Guide*
- *Posting Invoices* in the *Accounts Receivable Guide*
- *Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions for Quantum*

Index

Index

A

A/R Customer Master – Billing Instructions form, 11–5
AAIs. *See* Automatic accounting instructions
Accessing serial numbers during purchase order receipts, 7–15
Account Revisions form, 14–90
Acknowledgements, printing, 5–35
Activating preferences, 12–45
Adding messages to sales orders, 2–13
Additional Item Master Information, 11–6
Additional Line Items form, 7–25
Additional order processing during ship confirm, 7–19
Address Book – Additional Information form, 13–4
Address book records
 defining default address types, 14–7
 entering basic information, 14–4
Address Book Revisions (P01012)
 manually assigning GeoCodes to a customer, A–27
 manually assigning GeoCodes to suppliers, A–26
Address Book Revisions form, 13–4, 14–4
Application Constants form, 14–34
Arranging the preference hierarchy, 12–12
As if currency
 Customer Service Inquiry, 5–23
 invoices, 9–14
Assigning a customer to a preference group, 12–15
Assigning an item to a preference group, 12–20
Assigning commission information, 14–78
Assigning customers and items to groups, 12–15
Assigning GeoCodes to address book records, A–21
 global updates, A–23
 manual updates, A–24
 business units, A–25

 customer, A–27
 suppliers, A–26
Assigning hold codes during order entry, 14–72
Assigning hold codes in the customer billing instructions, 14–73
Assigning tax information to customers, 13–19
Associated items
 entering on sales orders, 2–33
 setting up cross-references, 2–33
Authorize Prepayment Transactions, processing options, 8–7
Authorizing credit card transactions, 8–7
Automatic accounting instructions, 14–89
 Distribution Automatic Account form, 14–90
 flexible account numbers, 14–99
 in sales update, 10–22
 setting up, 14–89

B

Backorder Release, processing options, 4–10
Backorder Release and Report, processing options, 4–16
Backorders
 batch release, 4–16
 described, 4–3
 online release, 4–7
Base pricing
 See also Pricing
 changing existing prices, 11–36
 changing multiple prices, 11–36
 converting price levels, 11–40
 creating future prices, 11–36
 described, 11–35
 generating new base prices in a different currency, 11–43
 price group relationships, 11–22
 price preference hierarchy, 11–6

- updating, 11-2, 11-35
- Base/Price Maintenance – Batch, processing options, 11-37
- Based-on-date invoicing, 9-4
- Batch control constants, Application Constants form, 14-34
- Batch Order Entry, processing options, 2-92
- Batch Order Entry form, 2-89
- Batch orders
 - See also* Store and forward processing batch of one, 2-111
 - Batch Order Entry form, 2-89
 - correcting, 2-110
 - processing, 2-92, 2-109
 - Upload Store and Forward Transactions form, 2-109
- Batch types, for interbranch orders, 4-56, 10-6
- Bi-weekly invoicing, 9-4
- Bill of Lading, 7-44
 - processing options, 7-45
- Billing information
 - described, 5-31
 - printing order acknowledgements, 5-35
 - reviewing online invoices, 5-31
- Blanket orders
 - creating a sales order from, 4-36
 - described, 4-35
 - entering, 4-36
 - releasing, 4-38
- Branch sales markups, 14-85
 - overview, 14-85
- Branch/plant constants, setting up constants
 - defining batch control constants, 14-34
 - defining branch/plant constants, 14-28
 - defining item availability, 14-31
 - defining system constants, 14-32
 - defining the location format, 14-36
- Branch/Plant Constants form, 14-28

C

- Calculation rules, 9-3
- Calculations
 - setting up rules, 13-15
 - taxes, 13-20

- Changing existing prices, 11-36
- Changing prepayment transactions during order processing, 8-9
- Changing tax information, 2-18
- Check Price and Availability, processing options, 5-7
- Codes
 - Tax explanation code types, 13-19
 - Value-added tax codes, 13-26
- Commissions, 14-75
 - assigning, 14-78
 - calculating additional information, 14-80
 - setup, 14-75
- Commitments
 - Inventory Commitment preference, 12-33
 - using the Grade and Potency preference, 12-32
- Complementary items. *See* Substitute/Associated Items
- Configured items, overview, 2-95, 2-99
- Confirming shipments, 7-23
 - additional non-inventory line items, 7-25
 - described, 7-19
 - printing related documents, 7-43
 - Shipment Confirmation form, 7-24
 - Working with Shipment Confirmation form, 6-29, 7-23
- Confirming shipments in batches, 7-40
- Confirming tare and pack information, 6-28
- Connection to Quantum, testing, A-12
- Constants (P7306), A-10, A-14
- Conversion, flat files to Interoperability, 15-11
- Conversion programs, Address Book
- Conversion for customers, 10-27
- Converting customer limit amounts, 10-27
- Converting flat files to the interface tables, 15-3
- Converting price levels, 11-40
- Correcting batch sales orders, 2-110
- Creating a sales order from a blanket order, 4-36
- Creating a sales order from a quote order, 4-44
- Creating a standard template, 14-58
- Creating a system-generated template, 14-60
- Creating future prices, 11-36

Creating orders that you store and forward, 2-106
 Creating shipments for sales orders, 2-23, 6-24
 Creating taxes for related addresses, A-29
 Credit and collections information, entry, 14-22, 14-24
 Credit orders
 entering automatically, 4-22
 entering manually, 4-21
 holds, release, 4-4, 8-10
 overview, 4-21
 Cross-references, kit restrictions, 2-97
 Customer billing instructions, 14-11
 commissions, 14-78
 setup, 14-11
 Customer currency preference, 12-26
 Customer History Template Rebuild, processing options, 14-61
 Customer ledger information, 5-18
 Customer Master Information form, 11-4
 Customer price groups
 described, 11-3
 generating price group relationships, 11-22
 setting up, 11-3
 Customers
 converting customer limit amounts, 10-27
 working with ledger information, 5-18
 Cycle billing, invoiced and not invoiced order lines, 9-11
 Cycle billing journal entries, 9-10
 Cycle Billing Transaction report, 9-11

D

Daily invoicing, 9-3
 Data Export Control Revisions form, 15-6
 Data export controls, setting up, 15-5
 Default address types, 14-7
 Defining batch control constants, 14-34
 Defining branch/plant constants, 14-28
 Defining default address types, 14-7
 Defining documents for sales proposal generation, 2-75
 Defining flexible account numbers, 14-95
 Defining item availability, 14-31

Defining order hold codes, 8-5, 14-64
 Defining related addresses, 14-3
 Defining system constants, 14-32
 Defining tax information for items, A-19
 Defining the invoicing address, 14-6
 Defining the pricing hierarchy, 11-6
 Delivery Date preference, example, 12-28, 12-37
 Delivery date preference, 12-27
 Delivery notes
 printing, 7-45
 reviewing, 5-28
 Delivery Notes Inquiry, processing options, 5-29
 Delivery Notes Print, processing options, 7-46
 Detail information
 Customer Service Inquiry form, 2-82
 default line information, 2-26
 duplicating, 5-3
 entering, 2-23
 entering item information, 2-24
 overview, 2-15
 processing options, 2-39
 reviewing order information, 2-27, 2-82
 Sales Detail Line Defaults form, 2-27
 Substitute/Associated Items form, 2-34
 substituting items, 2-33
 Direct ship orders, 4-31
 entering, 4-34
 restrictions for kits, 2-97
 Distribution Automatic Account form, 14-90
 Document Distribution preference, 12-29
 example, 12-29
 Document Set preference, 12-30
 example, 12-30
 Download Store and Forward Tables form, 2-105
 Downloading master tables to the PC, 2-104
 Duplicating sales order information, 5-3

E

EDI. *See* Electronic data interchange
 Edit and Creation program, 2-102
 Effective Address Update (R01840), A-23

Electronic mail messages, posting errors and other messages, 10–45
Elements, location code, 14–36
End of day processing, 10–1
 described, 10–1
 reviewing sales journals and reports, 10–24
 Update Customer Sales (P42800) program, 10–4
 updating sales information, 10–3
End Use preference, 12–31
End-of-month invoicing, 9–4
Enter Purchase Orders (P4310), A–43
Entering, basic address book information, 14–4
Entering a blanket order, 4–36
Entering a quote order, 4–44
Entering batch sales orders, 2–90
Entering commission information, 2–19
Entering credit orders, 4–21
Entering credit orders manually, 4–21
Entering custom preference information, 12–26
Entering detail information, 2–23
Entering direct ship orders, 4–31, 4–33
Entering ECS information, 2–22
Entering interbranch orders, 4–51, 4–53, 4–55
Entering item and quantity information, 2–17
Entering kit orders, 2–96
Entering multi-currency information, 2–19
Entering orders for agreements, 2–22
Entering recurring sales orders, 2–89
Entering related addresses, 14–4
Entering sales orders with templates, 2–85
Entering serial number requirements during initial item entry, 7–14
Entering serial numbers during order entry, 7–15
Entering serial numbers during shipment confirmation, 7–16
Entering standard preference information, 12–23
Entering substitute and associated items, 2–33
Entering system-generated credit orders, 4–22
Entering transfer orders, 2–62, 4–27

Entering UCC 128 header and shipment information, 6–24
Error messages, posting, 10–45
External systems, data exchange through Interoperability, 15–1

F

Features, of Sales Order Management system, 1–1, 1–21
Flat File Cross-Reference form, 15–10
Flat files
 converting to Interoperability, 15–3
 cross-reference for Interoperability, 15–9
Flexible account numbers, 14–95
 Automatic accounting instructions
 advanced pricing, 14–99
 base sales order management, 14–99
 business units, 14–100
 considerations, 14–98
 example, 14–97
Flexible Sales Accounting Inquiry form, 14–101
 overview, 14–95
 subledger, 14–100
 subsidiary account, 14–100
Flexible Accounting Inquiry form, 14–101
Forms
 A/R Customer Master – Billing Instructions, 11–5
 Account Revisions, 14–90
 Additional Header Information, 2–9
 Additional Item Master Information, 11–6
 Additional Line Items, 7–25
 Address Book – Additional Information, 13–4
 Address Book Additional Information, 14–4
 Address Book Revisions, 13–4
 Application Constants, 14–34
 Batch Order Entry, 2–89
 Branch/Plant Constants, 14–28
 Customer Master Information, 11–4
 Customer Service Inquiry, 2–82, 5–23
 Data Export Control Revisions, 15–6
 Define Header Columns to Detail, 2–13
 Distribution Automatic Account, 14–90

Download Store and Forward Tables, 2–105
 Flat File Cross-Reference, 15–10
 Flexible Accounting Inquiry, 14–101
 Item Availability Definition, 14–31
 Item Master Maintenance – UCC 128, 6–21
 Item Master Revisions, 11–5
 Item Search, 5–4
 Line Types Constants Revisions, 14–46
 Order Activity Rules – Revisions, 14–54
 Order Hold Information, 14–64, 14–68, 14–70
 Preference Master, 12–10
 Sales Detail Line Defaults, 2–26, 2–27
 Sales Ledger Inquiry, 5–26
 Sales Order Detail Revisions, 2–24
 Scheduled Invoice Dates, 9–8
 Shipment Confirmation, 7–24
 Shipment Workbench, 6–24
 Store and Forward Revisions, 2–107
 Substitute/Associated Items, 2–34
 Tax Rate/Area Revisions, 13–8
 Tax Rules Revisions, 13–14
 Transfer Order Entry Base Information, 4–28
 Update Status Code, 7–3
 Upload Store and Forward Transactions, 2–109
 Work With AAIs, 14–90
 Work With Addresses, 13–3
 Work with Available Templates, 2–86
 Work with Backorders, 4–8
 Work with Branch/Plant Constants, 14–32
 Work with Customer Master, 11–4
 Work With Data Export Controls, 15–6
 Work With Flat File Cross-Reference, 15–10
 Work with Held Orders, 4–4
 Work With Hierarchical Configuration Definition, 6–15
 Work With Hold Order Constants, 14–64, 14–68, 14–70, 14–71
 Work with Item Branch, 11–5
 Work With Line Types, 14–46
 Work With Order Activity Rules, 14–54
 Work with Shipment Confirmation, 6–29, 7–23
 Work with Store and Forward, 2–107
 Work With Tax Rate/Area, 13–7

Work With Tax Rules, 13–14
 Freight preference, 12–31

G

General Journal by Account, processing options, 10–40
 General Ledger Post Report, processing options, 10–42
 General Ledger Post report, 10–45
 Generate Base Price/Currency, processing options, 11–44
 Generating a proposal, 2–71
 Generating a proposal during order entry, 2–81
 Generating order status reports, 5–23
 Held Orders, 5–25
 Open Orders by Customer, 5–24
 Open Orders by Item, 5–24
 Generating price group relationships, 11–22
 Generating sales history reports, 5–29
 Sales Analysis Summary, 5–30
 Sales Ledger Detail, 5–29
 Generating the Held Orders report, 5–25
 Generating the Open Orders by Customer report, 5–24
 Generating the Open Orders by Item report, 5–24
 Generating the Sales Analysis Summary report, 5–30
 Generating the Sales Ledger Detail report, 5–29
 Grade and Potency preference, 12–32

H

Header information, 2–5
 Additional Header Information form, 2–9
 Define Header Columns to Detail table, 2–13
 duplicating, 5–3
 entering, 2–7
 processing options, 2–39
 purging, 10–48
 updating header to detail information, 2–12

Held Order Release, processing options, 4-6

Held orders, releasing, 4-3

Held Sales Order report, 4-4, 8-10

Hierarchical configurations, setup, 6-14

Hierarchies, preferences, 12-12

Hold codes, 14-63

- credit checking, 14-67

- defining, 8-5, 14-64

- margin checking, 14-69

- setup, 14-63

I

Inbound Flat File Conversion, processing options, 15-11

Inbound transactions, 15-1

- Interoperability overview, 15-1

Integrating other systems with sales order entry, 2-20

Interbranch orders

- batch types for, 4-56, 10-6

- branch sales markups, 14-85

- entering, 4-51, 4-55

- system updates, 10-6

Interface tables

- conversion program for Interoperability, 15-11

- converting flat files for Interoperability, 15-3

- flat file cross-reference for Interoperability, 15-9

Interoperability

- converting flat files, 15-3

- inbound transactions, converting, 15-11

- outbound transactions, 15-19

- overview, 15-1

- setup, 15-3

Inventory Commitment preference, 12-33

- example, 12-33

- specifying percent-to-fill value, 12-34

Invoice cycle calculation rules, 9-3

- scheduled invoice date example, 9-4

Invoice Journal report, 10-24

Invoice setup

- default address types, 14-7

- invoice cycle calculation rules, 9-3

- invoicing address, 14-6

- related addresses, 14-3

- scheduled date calculation, 9-4

- scheduled invoice dates, 9-8

Invoices, 9-1

- “as if” currency, 9-14

- consolidated, 9-14

- for quote orders, 4-44

- online, reviewing, 5-31

- Print Invoices (P42565) program, 9-1

- summarized, 9-14

- tax information, 9-15

Item Availability, processing options, 5-10

Item Availability Definition form, 14-31

Item Branch/Plant (P41026), A-20

Item Hierarchy (Web), processing options, 3-7

Item Information, generating the Open Orders by Customer report, 5-24

Item information

- described, 5-3

- generating the Open Orders by Item report, 5-24

- Item Search form, 5-4

- reviewing

 - price and availability, 5-4, 5-7

 - quantities, 5-7

- UCC 128 processing, 6-20

Item master information, sales price level, 11-9

Item Master Maintenance – UCC 128 form, 6-21

Item Master Revisions, 11-5

Item price groups, 11-5

- generating price group relationships, 11-22

- setup, 11-5

Item Sales Price Level Conversion, processing options, 11-40

Item Search form, 5-4

Item Search with Word Search program, 5-4

Items

- associated, 2-33

- configured items, 2-99

- obsolete, 2-33

- setting up cross-references for, 2-33

- substituting, 2-33

- using order holds, 4-4

J

Journal entries
 batches, 10–35
 cycle and non-cycle billing, 9–10
 posting, 10–41
 reviewing, 10–35
 verifying the post, 10–45
 Justification, location code, 14–36

K

Kits, 2–96
 entering, 2–95
 freight calculation restrictions, 2–97
 overview, 2–95
 restrictions, 2–97
 stocking parent items, 2–97
 transfer order restrictions, 4–28
 types, 2–95

L

Limit amounts, converting limit amounts to another currency, 10–27
 Line default information
 Sales Detail Line Defaults form, 2–27
 sales order entry, 2–27
 shipment confirmation, 7–25
 Line of Business preference, 12–35
 Line types, overview, 14–45
 Line Types Constants Revisions form, 14–46
 Locating
 price and availability information, 5–4, 5–7
 quantity information, 5–7
 Locating preferences, 12–46
 Locating price and availability information, 5–4
 Locating quantity information, 5–7
 Locations, defining the location format, 14–36
 Logging, Quantum Sales and Use Tax, A–14

M

Maintaining integrity between related sales and purchase orders, 4–32
 Manually updating transaction status, 8–12
 Margin checking, release, 4–4, 8–10
 Messages
 adding to sales orders, header information, 2–13
 electronic mail, 10–45
 Multi-currency, processing international orders, 2–1
 Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations preference, 12–35

N

Next Order Status preference, 12–36
 Non-cycle billing journal entries, 9–10
 Non-Stock Product Categories (P7307), A–17
 Non-stock items, Additional line items form, 7–25

O

Online Invoice Inquiry, processing options, 5–34
 Online Invoice program, 5–31
 Online invoices, reviewing, 5–31
 Open SO Print, processing options, 5–25
 Order acknowledgements, 5–35
 Order activity rules, 14–53
 status codes, 14–53
 Order Activity Rules – Revisions form, 14–54
 Order entry
 See also Sales orders
 backorder release, 4–7
 detail information, 2–15
 header information, 2–5
 overview, 1–24
 processing options, 2–39
 using Store and Forward processing, 2–107
 using templates, 2–85

- Order Hold Information form, 14–64, 14–68, 14–70
- Order holds
 - Held Orders report, 5–25
 - Held Sales Order report, 4–4, 8–10
 - releases, 4–3
- Order line types, 14–45
 - overview, 14–45
 - setup, 14–45
- Order Preparation Days preference, 12–37
- Order process, described, 1–1, 1–21
- Order release
 - backorders
 - batch, 4–16
 - online, 4–7
 - blanket orders, 4–38
 - multiple, 4–40
 - by item number, 4–7
 - described, 4–1
 - overview, 4–3
 - quote orders, 4–46
 - multiple, 4–49
- Order status, generating reports for, 5–23
- Outbound transactions, 15–1
 - Interoperability overview, 15–1
- Overriding GeoCodes on a contract, A–44
- Overriding GeoCodes on a purchase order, A–43
- Overriding GeoCodes on a sales order, A–41
- Overriding GeoCodes on a service order, A–45
- Overriding GeoCodes on a voucher, A–40
- Overriding GeoCodes on an invoice, A–39

P

- Payment Terms preference, 12–38
- Picking documents, pick slips, 7–5
- Post General Ledger (Pre–post) program, 10–41
- Posting, error messages, 10–45
- Posting journal entries, 10–41
 - interbranch sales, 10–42
- Posting tax information, A–58
- Preference Master form, 12–10

- Preference Profile Processing Options, processing options, 12–46
- Preferences, 12–1
 - activating, 12–45
 - assigning customers to groups, 12–15
 - Customer Currency, 12–26
 - Delivery Date, 12–27
 - example, 12–28, 12–37
 - described, 2–61, 12–1, 12–45
 - Document Distribution, 12–29
 - example, 12–29
 - Document Set, 12–30
 - example, 12–30
 - End Use, 12–31
 - forms, Preference Master, 12–9
 - Freight, 12–31
 - Grade and Potency, 12–32
 - hierarchy
 - described, 12–9
 - example, 12–13
 - Inventory Commitment, 12–33
 - kit limitations, 2–97
 - Line of Business, 12–35
 - locating, 12–46
 - Multiple Shipping and Receiving Locations, 12–35
 - Next Order Status, 12–36
 - Order Preparation Days, 12–37
 - Payment Terms, 12–38
 - Preference Master form, 12–10
 - Price Adjustment Schedule, 12–39
 - Pricing Unit of Measure, 12–39
 - Product Allocation, 12–40
 - Quality, 12–41
 - Revenue Cost Center, 12–42
 - Sales Commission, 12–43
 - setting up
 - hierarchy, 12–12
 - Preference Master information, 12–9
 - types, 12–23
 - table of, 12–4
- Preparing the shipment, 6–23
- Prepayment processing
 - authorizing transactions, 8–7
 - overview, 8–1
 - settling transactions, 8–17
 - setup, 8–3
 - updating transactions, 8–9
 - working with drafts, 8–19

- Prepayment Transaction Report, processing options, 8–15
- Price Adjustment Schedule preference, 12–39
- Pricing
 - See also* Base pricing; Repricing
 - adjustments, 11–23
 - base
 - change existing price, 11–36
 - future prices, 11–36
 - generating new prices in a different currency, 11–43
 - updating, 11–2, 11–35
 - branch sales markups, 14–85
 - converting price levels, 11–40
 - defining, 11–9
 - hierarchy, 11–6
 - defining, 11–6
 - overview, 11–1
 - overview of pricing in Sales Order Management, 11–1
 - preferences, Pricing Unit of Measure, 12–39
 - repricing, updating customer prices, 11–2, 11–37
 - structure, 11–3
 - customer price groups, 11–3
 - item price groups, 11–5
 - price group relationships, 11–22
 - pricing hierarchy, 11–6
- Pricing Unit of Measure preference, 12–39
- Print Invoices, processing options, 9–15
- Print Invoices (P42565) program, 9–1
- Print Pick Slips, processing options, 7–7
- Print Sales Order Acknowledgements, processing options, 5–35
- Printing
 - Bill of Lading, 7–44
 - held orders, 4–4, 8–10
 - order acknowledgements, 5–35
- Printing bills of lading, 7–44
- Printing Delivery Notes, 7–45
- Printing intercompany invoices, 4–55
- Printing order acknowledgements, 5–35
- Printing Shipping Documents, 7–43
- Printing standard invoices, 9–13
- Printing tax information, A–57
- Processing
 - online invoices, 5–31
 - order acknowledgements, 5–35
 - overview, 7–1
 - sales orders, 7–1
- Processing batch sales orders, 2–92, 2–109
- Processing Option For Generated Document, processing options, 2–81
- Processing options
 - Authorize Prepayment Transactions, 8–7
 - Backorder Release, 4–10
 - Backorder Release and Report, 4–16
 - Base/Price Maintenance – Batch, 11–37
 - Batch Order Entry, 2–92
 - Bill of Lading, 7–45
 - Check Price and Availability, 5–7
 - Customer History Template Rebuild, 14–61
 - Delivery Notes Inquiry, 5–29
 - Delivery Notes Print, 7–46
 - General Journal by Account, 10–40
 - General Ledger Post Report, 10–42
 - Generate Base Price/Currency, 11–44
 - Held Order Release, 4–6
 - Inbound Flat File Conversion, 15–11
 - Item Availability, 5–10
 - Item Hierarchy (Web), 3–7
 - Item Sales Price Level Conversion, 11–40
 - Online Invoice Inquiry, 5–34
 - Open SO Print, 5–25
 - Preference Profile Processing Options, 12–46
 - Prepayment Transaction Report, 8–15
 - Print Invoices, 9–15
 - Print Pick Slips, 7–7
 - Print Sales Order Acknowledgements, 5–35
 - Processing Option For Generated Document, 2–81
 - R4210Z Sales Order Batch Trans. Editor, 2–111
 - Repost Active Sales Orders, 10–31
 - Sale Order Batch Price/Cost Update, 11–39
 - Sales Analysis Summary, 5–30
 - Sales Blanket Order Release, 4–40
 - Sales Journal Print, 10–25
 - Sales Ledger Inquiry, 4–25, 5–27
 - Sales Ledger Report, 5–30
 - Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor, 2–93
 - Sales Order Entry, 2–39
 - Sales Order Quote Release, 4–49

- Sales Update And Report, 10–9
- Settle Prepayment Transactions, 8–17
- Supply and Demand Inquiry, 5–12
- Tax Rates Options, 13–12
- Processing recurring orders, 2–92
- Processing serial number information, 7–13
- Processing serial number requirements, 2–19
- Processing shipments for UCC 128 processing, 6–23
- Processing tax information, A–57
 - posting, A–58
 - printing, A–57
- Product Allocation preference, 12–40
- Programs and IDs
 - P0006 (Revise Single Business Unit), A–25
 - P00140 (download store and forward tables), 2–105
 - P0041Z1 (Store and forward transactions), 2–107
 - P01012 (Address Book Revisions)
 - manually assigning GeoCodes to a customer, A–27
 - manually assigning Geocodes to suppliers, A–26
 - P01012 (Work With Addresses), 14–4
 - P0301A (customer master information), 11–4
 - P0301B (work with customer master), 11–4
 - P0301F (A/R customer master – billing instructions), 11–5
 - P03B2002 (Standard Invoice Entry), A–39
 - P0411 (Standard Voucher Entry), overriding a GeoCode on a voucher, A–40
 - P1720 (Service Contract Detail), A–44
 - P4001Z (batch order entry), 2–89
 - P4001ZP (batch order files purge), 10–48
 - P4004Z (Store and forward order revisions), 2–107
 - P40070 (preference master), 12–10
 - P40204
 - order activity rules (revisions), 14–54
 - work with order activity rules, 14–54
 - P40205
 - line type constants revisions, 14–46
 - work with line types, 14–46
 - P40296 (flexible sales accounting inquiry), 14–101
 - P40950
 - account revisions, 14–90
 - work with AAIs, 14–90
 - P40950 (distribution automatic account), 14–90
 - P41001
 - application constants, 14–34
 - branch/plant constants, 14–28
 - item availability definition, 14–31
 - P4101D (item master revisions), 11–5
 - P4101E (work with item branch), 11–5
 - P4101G (additional item master information), 11–6
 - P41020 (item master maintenance – UCC 128), 6–21
 - P41026 (Item Branch/Plant), A–20
 - P4201P (sales order header purge), 10–48
 - P42025 (sales ledger inquiry), 5–26
 - P42040 (status code update), 7–3
 - P4205 (shipment confirmation), 7–24
 - P4207 (shipment workbench), 6–24
 - P42090
 - order hold information, 14–64, 14–68, 14–70
 - work with hold order constants, 14–64, 14–68, 14–70, 14–71
 - P4210 (Sales Order Detail), A–41
 - P4210 (sales order entry), 2–24
 - P42101Z (upload store and forward trans), 2–109
 - P42117 (backorder release-online), 4–8
 - P42118 (backorder release-batch), 4–16
 - P42260 (substitute/associated items), 2–34
 - P42565 (print invoices), 9–1
 - P42800 (update customer sales), 10–4
 - P42996 (purge details to history), 10–49
 - P43070 (release holds), 4–4
 - P4310 (Enter Purchase Orders), A–43
 - P4314P (extended text purge), 10–48
 - P47HL (hierarchical configuration definition), 6–15
 - P48201 (Service Order Entry), A–46
 - P49085 (scheduled invoice dates), 9–8
 - P7306 (Constants), A–10, A–14
 - P7307 (Non-Stock Product Categories), A–17
 - R01840 (Effective Address Update), A–23

R730101 (Update Address Book Geocodes), A-23
 Purging data, 10-47, 15-21
 active order lines, 10-48
 batch order files, 10-48
 extended text, 10-48
 move sales order detail to history, 10-49
 prerequisites, 10-47
 sales order header, 10-48
 Purging interoperability transaction records, 15-21

Q

Quality Management preference, 12-41
 Quantum
 Sales and Use Tax, A-1
 AAIs, A-15
 activating logging, A-14
 assigning GeoCodes, A-21
 components, A-4
 constants, A-10
 interface considerations, A-6
 interface overview, A-3
 item tax information, A-19
 overriding GeoCodes, A-37
 overview, A-1
 posting tax information, A-57
 setup, A-9
 testing the quantum connection, A-12
 Vertex documentation, A-2
 Quote orders
 creating sales orders from, 4-44
 described, 4-2
 entering, 4-43, 4-44
 invoices for, 4-44
 releasing, 4-46

R

R4210Z Sales Order Batch Trans. Editor, processing options, 2-111
 Receiving transactions into OneWorld, 15-13
 Recommitting future sales orders, 10-29
 Recurring orders, 2-89
 Transaction control revisions, 2-107

Related addresses, 14-4
 Release
 See also Order release
 blanket, 4-38
 held orders, 4-3
 quote orders, 4-46
 Release Hold (P43070) program, 4-4
 Releasing a blanket order, 4-38
 Releasing a quote order, 4-46
 Releasing backorders in a batch, 4-16
 Releasing backorders online, 4-7
 Releasing multiple blanket orders, 4-40
 Releasing multiple quote orders, 4-49
 Releasing orders on hold, 4-4, 8-10
 Reports
 Cycle Billing Transaction, 9-11
 General Ledger Post, 10-45
 Held Orders, 5-25
 Invoice Journal, 10-24
 Open Orders by Customer, 5-24
 Open Orders by Item, 5-24
 Print Held Orders, 4-4, 8-10
 Print Invoices, 9-1
 Sales Analysis Summary, 5-30
 sales history, 5-29
 Sales Journal, 10-25
 Sales Ledger Detail, 5-29
 Sales update, 10-24
 Repost Active Sales Orders, processing options, 10-31
 Reposting orders, 10-29
 Repricing
 See also Pricing
 updating customer prices, 11-2, 11-37
 Restoring active sales orders, 10-30
 Retrieving a base price, 2-17
 Revenue Business Unit preference, example, 12-42
 Revenue Cost Center preference, 12-42
 Reviewing and approving journal entries, 10-35
 Reviewing and revising interoperability, 15-15
 Reviewing commission information, 14-83
 Reviewing customer account information, 2-7, 3-25, 5-15
 Reviewing customer ledger information, 5-18
 Reviewing default line information, 2-26
 Reviewing delivery notes, 5-28

- Reviewing online invoices, 5-31
- Reviewing order information, 2-27, 2-82
- Reviewing price and availability information, 5-4
- Reviewing quality and test results, 2-21
- Reviewing record types, 15-4
- Reviewing sales journals and reports, 10-24
 - Invoice journal, 10-24
 - Sales journals, 10-25
- Reviewing sales ledger information, 5-25
- Reviewing sales orders, 5-20
 - customer account information, 5-15
- Reviewing sales update reports, 10-24
- Reviewing shipment status, 3-28
- Reviewing supply and demand information, 5-11
- Reviewing the Cycle Billing Transaction report, 9-11
- Reviewing the electronic mail for sales update errors, 10-9
- Reviewing the Invoice Journal, 10-24
- Reviewing the Sales Journal, 10-25
- Reviewing transaction status, 8-15
- Revise Single Business Unit (P0006), A-25
- Revising. *See* Changing
- Running detail to history, 10-49
- Running special purges, 10-47
- Running the batch receiver purge, 10-48
- Running the conversion program, 15-11
- Running the extended text purge, 10-48
- Running the sales order header purge, 10-48

S

- Sale Order Batch Price/Cost Update, processing options, 11-39
- Sales Analysis Summary, processing options, 5-30
- Sales Blanket Order Release, processing options, 4-40
- Sales Commission preference, 12-43
- Sales Detail Line Defaults form, 2-27
- Sales groups
 - calculating additional commission information, 14-80
 - setup, 14-76
- Sales Journal, 10-25

- Sales Journal Print, processing options, 10-25
- Sales ledger
 - detailed report, 5-25
 - inquiry
 - form, 5-26
 - program, 5-26
 - reviewing, 5-25
- Sales Ledger Inquiry, processing options, 4-25, 5-27
- Sales Ledger Inquiry form, 5-26
- Sales Ledger Inquiry program, 5-26
- Sales Ledger Report, processing options, 5-30
- Sales order, detail information, reviewing order information, 2-27, 2-82
- Sales Order Batch Transaction Editor, processing options, 2-93
- Sales Order Detail (P4210), A-41
- Sales Order Detail Revisions form, 2-24
- Sales Order Entry, processing options, 2-39
- Sales order entry, preferences, types, 12-26
- Sales Order Management
 - cross-system integration, 1-22
 - features, 1-1, 1-21
 - menus, 1-31
- Sales Order Quote Release, processing options, 4-49
- Sales orders
 - See also* Detail information; Header information
 - backorder release, 4-7
 - batch mode
 - correcting, 2-110
 - processing, 2-92, 2-109
 - Recurring and Batch Order Entry form, 2-89
 - billing information, 5-31
 - described, 5-1
 - printing order acknowledgements, 5-35
 - reviewing online invoices, 5-31
 - configured items, 2-99
 - confirming shipments, 7-23
 - customer account information, 5-15
 - described, 5-1
 - detail information, 2-15
 - default line information, 2-26
 - described, 2-2
 - entering, 2-23

- end of day processing, 10-1
- generating order status reports, 5-23
- header information, 2-5
 - adding messages, 2-13
 - described, 2-2
 - entering, 2-7
- invoices, 9-1
- item information, 5-3
 - described, 5-1
 - price and availability, 5-4, 5-7
 - quantities, 5-7
- kits, 2-95
- order holds, release, 4-4, 8-10
- order templates, 14-57
- pick slips, 7-5
- prerequisites, 2-3
- processing, 7-1
- processing options, 2-39
- reviewing, 5-20
- reviewing period-to-date amounts, 5-29
- reviewing sales orders in an as if currency, 5-23
- reviewing year-to-date amounts, 5-29
- Substitute/Associated Items form, 2-34
- substituting items, 2-33
- types of
 - blanket, 4-35
 - credit, 4-21
 - direct ship, 4-31
 - interbranch, 4-51, 4-55
 - kits, 2-96
 - quote, 4-43
 - recurring, 2-89
 - transfer, 4-27
- updated tables, 2-2
- updating header to detail information, 2-12
- updating sales information, 10-3
 - modes, 10-5
 - versions, 10-5
- using templates, 2-85
- Sales price level conversions, 11-40
- Sales quotes, entering, 4-44
- Sales Update And Report, processing options, 10-9
- Scheduled invoice date calculation, example, 9-4
- Scheduled Invoice Dates form, 9-8
- Semi-monthly invoicing, 9-4
- Sending transactions from OneWorld, 15-19
- Sending transactions to external systems, 15-19
- Separator character, location code, 14-36
- Serial number, processing during shipment confirmation, 7-25
- Serial Shipping Container Code (SSCC)
 - bar code label, 6-9
 - structure, 6-6
- Service Contract Detail (P1720), A-44
- Service Order Entry (P48201), A-46
- Setting up. *See* Setup
- Setting up a base pricing structure, 11-3
- Setting up a sales group, 14-76
- Setting up AAI's for Quantum, A-15
- Setting up AAI's for taxes, 13-25
- Setting up additional commission information, 14-80
- Setting up automatic accounting instructions, 14-89, 14-90
- Setting up base prices, 11-9
- Setting up boilerplate text, 2-73
- Setting up branch sales markups, 14-85
- Setting up calculation rules for A/R, 13-15
- Setting up commission information, 14-75
- Setting up complex customer price groups, 11-17
- Setting up complex item price groups, 11-20
- Setting up constants, 14-27
- Setting up contract pricing, 11-32
- Setting up customer billing instructions, 14-11
- Setting up customer information for UCC 128 processing, 6-13
- Setting up customer price groups, 11-3
- Setting up data export controls, 15-5
- Setting up for interoperability transactions, 15-3
- Setting up hierarchical configurations for UCC 128 processing, 6-14
- Setting up inventory pricing rules, 11-24
- Setting up invoice cycle calculation rules, 9-3
- Setting up invoice cycles, 9-3
- Setting up item information for UCC 128 processing, 6-20
- Setting up item price groups, 11-5
- Setting up location control, 14-36
- Setting up minimum and maximum order amounts, 14-66

- Setting up order activity rules, 14-53
- Setting up order hold codes for credit checking, 14-67
- Setting up order hold codes for margin checking, 14-69
- Setting up order hold information, 14-63
- Setting up order line types, 14-45
- Setting up order templates, 14-57
- Setting up partial order holds, 14-71
- Setting up preference master information, 12-9
- Setting up preferences, 12-23
- Setting up prepayment hold codes, 8-5
- Setting up prepayment processing, 8-3
- Setting up prepayment types, 8-4
- Setting up proposal components, 2-71, 2-72
- Setting up sales quotes for proposals, 2-73
- Setting up ship notice/manifest requirements, 6-18
- Setting up tax rates and areas, 13-7
- Setting up tax rules by company, 13-13
- Setting up text substitution tags, 2-74
- Setting up the flat file cross-reference, 15-9
- Setting up the J.D. Edwards/Quantum interface, A-9
 - AAIs, A-15
 - activating Quantum constants, A-10
 - item tax information, A-19
- Setting up the status flow for prepayments, 8-3
- Setting up tolerance information for A/R, 13-14
- Setting up trade discounts, 11-30
- Setting up transaction types, 15-5
- Setting up UCC 128 processing, 6-13
- Setting up variable commissions within a group, 14-76
- Settle Prepayment Transactions, processing options, 8-17
- Settling prepayment transactions, 8-17
- Setup
 - automatic accounting instructions, overview, 14-89
 - branch sales markups, 14-85
 - calculation rules, 13-15
 - commissions, 14-75
 - calculating additional information, 14-80
 - overview, 14-75
 - sales groups, 14-76
 - customer billing instructions, 14-11
 - flexible account numbers, 14-95
 - defining, 14-101
 - example, 14-97
 - overview, 14-95
 - order activity rules, 14-53
 - order holds, 14-63
 - credit checking, 14-67
 - defining hold codes, 8-5, 14-64
 - margin checking, 14-69
 - order line types, 14-45
 - preferences
 - hierarchy, 12-12
 - master information, 12-9
 - types of, 12-23
 - pricing
 - customer groups, 11-3
 - pricing hierarchy, 11-6
 - structure, 11-3
 - tolerance information, 13-14
- Shipment confirmation. *See* Confirming shipments
- Shipment information, reviewing shipment status, 3-28
- Shipment Workbench form, 6-24
- Shipments
 - confirming, 7-23
 - related documents
 - Bill of Lading, 7-44
 - printing, 7-43
 - Shipment Confirmation form, 7-24
 - Work with Shipment Confirmation form, 6-29, 7-23
- Shipping Container Code (SCC)
 - aggregates, 6-21
 - bar code label, 6-8
 - structure, 6-5
- Standard Invoice Entry (P03B2002), A-39
- Standard Voucher Entry (P0411), overriding a GeoCode on a voucher, A-40
- Status Code Update form, 7-3
- Status codes
 - See also* Order activity rules
 - confirming shipments, 7-23
 - invoices, 9-1
- Store and Forward Order Revisions form, 2-107

Store and forward processing
 Batch Edit and Creation program, 2-92, 2-109
 creating orders, 2-106
 Download Store and Forward Tables form, 2-105
 Downloading master tables to the PC, 2-104
 order entry, 2-107
 overview, 2-101
 Store and Forward Order Revisions form, 2-107
 Transaction Control Revisions form, 2-107
 Upload Store and Forward Transactions form, 2-109
 Work with Store and Forward Order form, 2-107
 Substitute/Associated Items
 form, 2-34
 overview, 2-33
 program, 2-34
 setting up cross-references, 2-33
 Substituting items. *See* Substitute/Associated Items
 Supply and demand information, reviewing, 5-11
 Supply and Demand Inquiry, processing options, 5-12
 Supply/Demand Inquiry program, 5-11
 System setup, setting up constants
 defining batch control constants, 14-34
 defining branch/plant constants, 14-28
 defining item availability, 14-31
 defining system constants, 14-32
 defining the location format, 14-36

T

Tax information
 on invoices, 9-15
 Selecting AAls for taxes, 13-25
 types of tax explanation codes, 13-19
 Value-added tax codes, 13-26
 Tax Rate/Area Revisions form, 13-8
 Tax Rates Options, processing options, 13-12
 Tax Rules Revisions form, 13-14

Taxes, Work With Tax Rules form, 13-14
 Templates, 14-57
 entering sales orders, 2-85
 overview, 14-57
 standard, 14-58
 system-generated, 10-49, 14-60
 updating, 3-15, 14-60
 working with, 14-57
 Testing the Quantum Connection, A-12
 Tolerance information, setting up, 13-14
 Tracking shipments, reviewing shipment status, 3-28
 Transaction Control Revisions form, 2-107
 Transfer Order Entry Base Information form, 4-28
 Transfer Orders, program, 4-28
 Transfer orders
 described, 2-62, 4-27
 entering, 4-28
 form, 4-28
 restrictions for kits, 2-97, 4-28

U

UCC 128 Processing
 identification codes, 6-4
 pack information, 6-28
 preparing the shipment, 6-23
 selecting sales orders for shipment, 6-24
 setup
 customer information, 6-13
 hierarchical configurations, 6-14
 item information, 6-20
 tare information, 6-28
 Understanding compliance procedures, 6-3
 Understanding batch of one, 2-111
 Understanding configured item orders, 2-99
 Understanding default information in sales order detail revisions, 2-16
 Understanding draft collection for prepayments, 8-19
 Understanding Header Information, 2-6
 Understanding pre-authorized drafts for prepayments, 8-19
 Understanding serial number processing in the distribution system, 7-14

- Understanding UCC 128 Compliance, 6-3
 - bar code labels, 6-8
 - SCCs, 6-5
 - SSCCs, 6-6
 - UCC identification codes, 6-4
 - UPCs, 6-5
- Understanding workflow processing during sales order entry, 2-20
- Universal Product Code (UPC)
 - bar code label, 6-8
 - structure, 6-5
- Update Address Book Geocodes (R730101), A-23
- Update Customer Sales (P42800) program
 - AAIs, 10-22
 - choosing proof or final mode, 10-5
 - journal batches, 10-35
 - reviewing electronic mail for update errors, 10-9
 - versions, 10-5, 10-8
- Update Status Code program, 7-3
- Updating an existing template, 14-60
- Updating base prices, 11-2, 11-35
- Updating customer sales, 10-3
- Updating header default information, 2-12
- Updating header information to the detail form, 2-12
- Updating interbranch sales information, 4-56, 10-6
- Updating interbranch/intercompany transactions, 4-56
- Updating prepayment transactions, 8-9
- Updating prices for a customer, 11-2, 11-37
- Updating sales information, 10-3
 - batches, 10-35
 - choosing proof or final mode, 10-5
 - field limitations, 10-36
 - journal entries, reviewing, 10-35
 - reports
 - Invoice Journal, 10-24
 - Sales Journal, 10-25
 - reviewing the electronic mail for update errors, 10-9
 - sales information, reviewing journals and reports, 10-24
- Update Customer Sales (P42800) program, 10-4
 - using interactive versions, 10-8
 - versions, 10-5
- Updating status codes, 7-3

- Upload Store and Forward Transactions form, 2-109
- Uploading orders to the server, 2-108
- User defined codes, invoice cycles, 9-5
- Using AAIs with sales update, 10-22

V

- Verifying the post of journal entries, 10-45
- Vertex. *See* Quantum

W

- Weekly invoicing, 9-3
- Work With AAIs form, 14-90
- Work With Addresses form, 13-3
- Work with Available Templates form, 2-86
- Work with Backorders form, 4-8
- Work with Branch/Plant Constants form, 14-32
- Work with Customer Master form, 11-4
- Work With Data Export Controls form, 15-6
- Work With Flat File Cross-Reference form, 15-10
- Work with Held Orders form, 4-4
- Work With Hierarchical Configuration form, 6-15
- Work with Item Branch form, 11-5
- Work With Line Types form, 14-46
- Work With Order Activity Rules form, 14-54
- Work With Order Hold Constants form, 14-64, 14-68, 14-70, 14-71
- Work with Store and Forward form, 2-107
- Work With Tax Rate/Area form, 13-7
- Work With Tax Rules form, 13-14
- Working with billing information, 5-31
- Working with blanket orders, 4-35
- Working with customer and sales information, 5-15
- Working with detail information, 2-15
- Working with direct ship orders, 4-31
- Working with drafts, 8-19
- Working with header information, 2-5
- Working with interbranch orders, 4-51, 4-55
- Working with intercompany orders, 4-51
- Working with item information, 5-3

Working with kits and configured items,
2-95

Working with order releases, 4-3

Working with pack information, 6-28

Working with picking documents, 7-5

Working with preference master and
hierarchy, 12-9

Working with preferences, 12-45

Working with Quantum taxes, A-37

Working with quote orders, 4-43

Working with serial numbers in a
Branch/Plant, 7-17

Working with shipments, 7-19

Working with standard price adjustments,
11-23

Working with store and forward orders,
2-101

Working with subsystem processing in sales
order entry, 2-35

XXXX
